



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

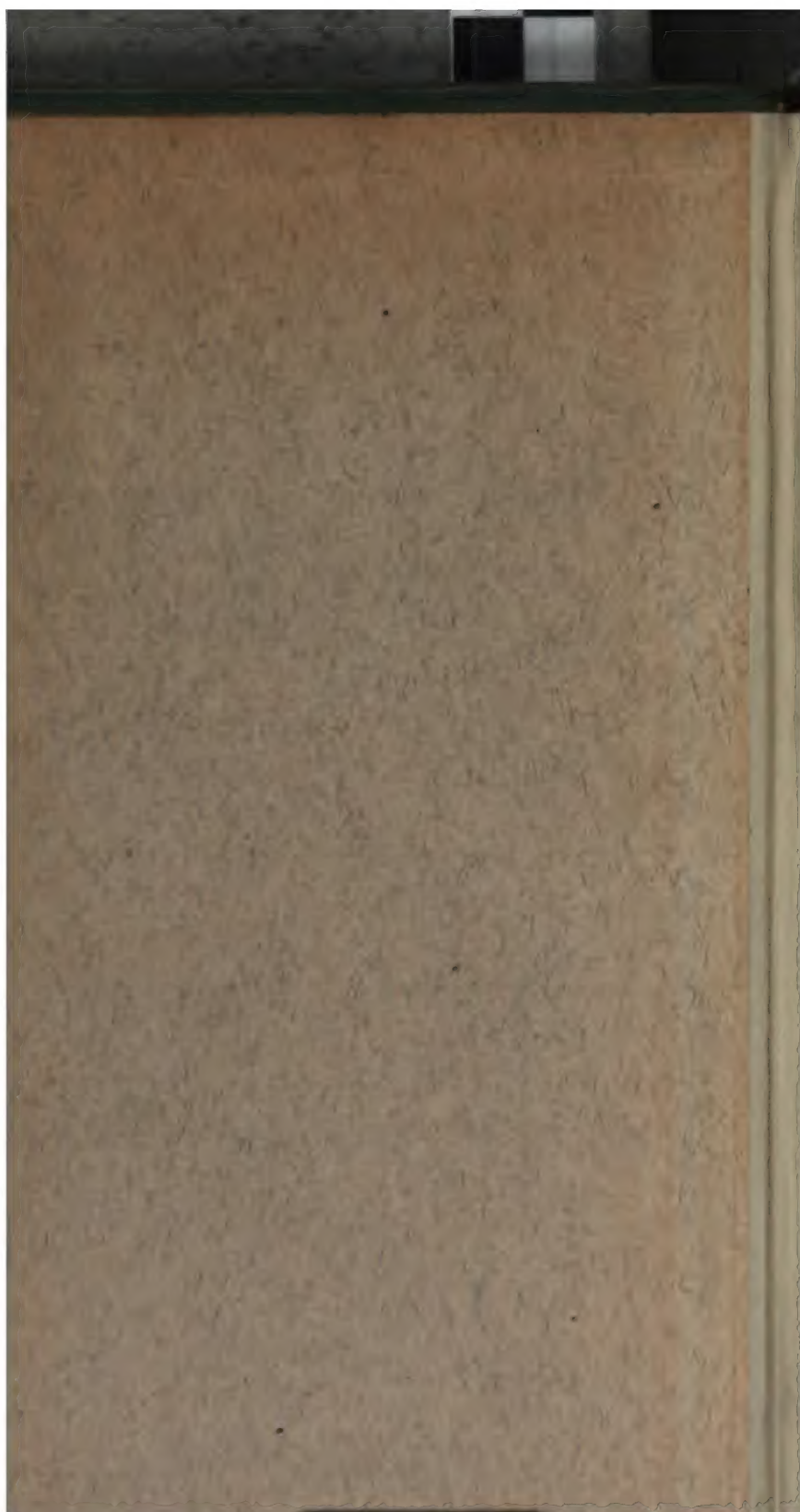
About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>

NYPL RESEARCH LIBRARIES



3 3433 01870392 0

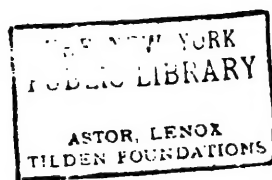


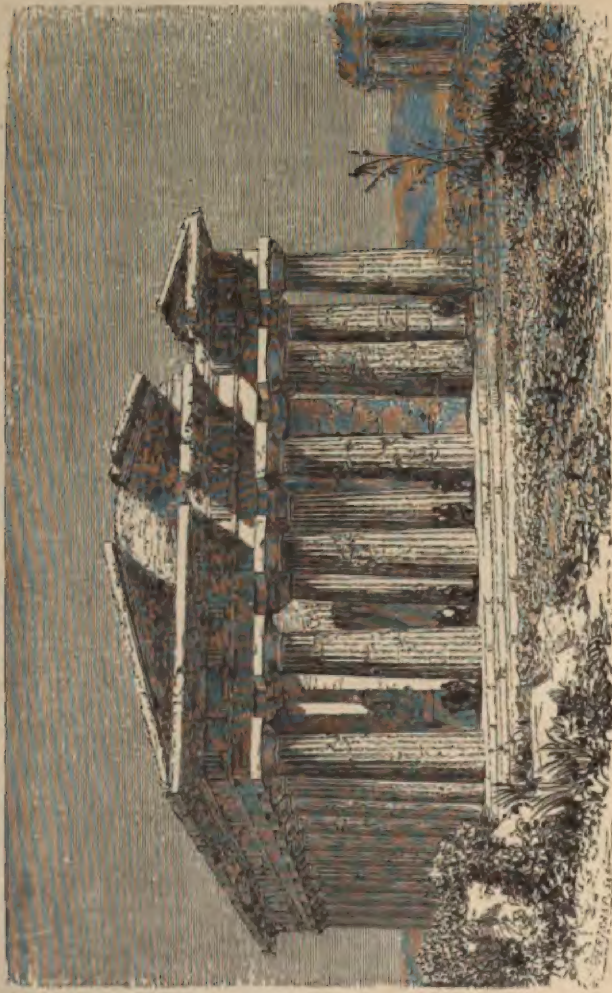
ANNEX ANNEX

Hatfield

2-115







TEMPLE OF NEPTUNE, AT PAESTUM.

25

THE
AMERICAN HOUSE CARPENTER.

A TREATISE

ON THE

1
ART OF BUILDING.

COMPRISING

STYLES OF ARCHITECTURE, STRENGTH OF MATERIALS,

AND

**THE THEORY AND PRACTICE OF THE CONSTRUCTION OF FLOORS, FRAMED
GIRDERS, ROOF TRUSSES, ROLLED-IRON BEAMS, TUBULAR-IRON
GIRDERS, CAST-IRON GIRDERS, STAIRS, DOORS,
WINDOWS, MOULDINGS, AND CORNICES;**

TOGETHER WITH

A COMPEND OF MATHEMATICS.

**A MANUAL FOR THE PRACTICAL USE OF
ARCHITECTS, CARPENTERS, STAIR-BUILDERS,
AND OTHERS.**

**EIGHTH EDITION,
REWRITTEN AND ENLARGED.**

BY

R. G. HATFIELD, ARCHITECT,

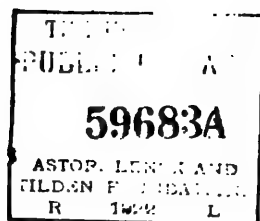
LATE FELLOW OF THE AMERICAN INSTITUTE OF ARCHITECTS, MEMBER OF THE AMERICAN
SOCIETY OF CIVIL ENGINEERS, ETC.

AUTHOR OF "TRANSVERSE STRAINS."

EDITED BY O. P. HATFIELD, F.A.I.A., ARCHITECT.

NINTH EDITION.

**NEW YORK:
JOHN WILEY & SONS, 15 ASTOR PLACE
1883.**



COPYRIGHT 1880,
BY THE ESTATE OF R. G. HATFIELD.

NOV 1880
LIBRARY
ASTOR LENOX
TILDEN FOUNDATION

PREFACE.

SINCE the publication of the first edition of this work, six subsequent editions have been issued; but, although from time to time many additions to its pages and revisions of its subject-matter have been made, still its several issues have always been printed substantially from the original stereotype plates. In this edition, however, the book has been extensively remodelled and expanded, the greater portion of it rewritten, and the whole put in a new dress by being newly set up in type uniform in style with that of the late author's recent work, *Transverse Strains*. To this revision—a labor of love to him—he devoted all the time he could spare from his other pressing engagements for a year or more, and by close and arduous application brought the book to a successful termination, notwithstanding the engrossing nature of his customary business avocations. Although essentially an elementary work, and intended originally for a class of minds not generally favored with opportunities for securing a very extended form of education, either in the store of information acquired or in the discipline of mind which culture confers, still it has been his aim to embody in its pages so complete and exhaustive a treatment of the various subjects discussed, and so practical and useful a collection of data and the rules governing their application, as to make it also not unworthy the attention of those who have been more highly favored in that respect.

In all the various trades connected with building it is the intelligent workman that commands the greatest respect, and who receives in all cases the highest remuneration. As apprentice, journeyman, and master-builder, his course is upward and onward, and success crowns his efforts in all that he undertakes. There is a kind of freemasonry in the very air that surrounds the skillful, intelligent man, that gives him a pass at once into the appreciation and recognition of all those whose regard is valuable. We admire and respect the plodding toil of the honest, patient laborer, whose humble task may tax his muscles though not his mind, but we yield a deeper homage to the skillful hand and tutored eye that accomplish wonders in art and science through perseverance in aspiring studies. It was to excite in the minds of workmen like these an ambition to excel in their calling, and to point out to them the surest path to that consummation, that the preparation of this volume was undertaken; that all its tendencies are in that direction, and that it cannot well fail

of its purpose when judiciously used, must be the conviction of all who will take the trouble to examine its pages.

In the first part of the book matters more particularly relating to building are treated of. The first section is in the nature of an introduction, serving by its historical references to excite an interest in the general subject, while in the second are presented the methods of erecting edifices in accordance with the acknowledged principles of sound construction. In the remaining sections of Part I. the several well-defined branches of house-building, as stairs, doors and windows, etc., are illustrated and explained. In the second part the more useful rules and simple problems of mathematics are reduced to an easily acquired form, and adapted to the necessities of the ordinary workman. By studying the latter, the young mechanic may not only improve and strengthen his mind, but grow more self-reliant daily, demonstrating in his own experience that scientific knowledge gives power. By carefully studying this part of the book he will see how easy it is to acquire the knowledge of solving problems by signs and symbols, commonly called *Algebra* (although looked upon by the uninitiated as almost incomprehensible), and thus find it easy to understand all the illustrations of the various subjects wherein those condensed forms of expression are used. Useful problems in geometry, described in simple language, and hints upon the subject of drawing and shading, are also to be found in Part II. A glossary of architectural terms and many useful tables are provided in the Appendix, and finally, an Index is added to aid in referring to special subjects. The full-plate illustrations are inserted to make it attractive to the general reader, and at the same time to serve as explanatory of the historical portion of the volume.

It will not be denied that the class of information herein furnished is one of the most instructive and useful that can be presented to the practical mind of a workingman, or to any mind engaged in mechanical pursuits. The impress stamped upon it by the author's peculiar line of study is not to be effaced, but this has given it characteristics of originality and strength not to be found in a mere compilation.

THE EDITOR.

NEW YORK, 31 Pine Street,
January 6, 1880.

CONTENTS.

For a Table of Contents more in detail, see p. 613, and for Index, see p. 657.

PART I.

	PAGE.
SECTION I.—Architecture.....	5
“ II.—Construction.....	57
“ III.—Stairs.....	240
“ IV.—Doors and Windows.....	315
“ V.—Mouldings and Cornices.....	323

PART II.

SECTION VI.—Geometry.....	347
“ VII.—Ratio or Proportion.....	366
“ VIII.—Fractions.....	378
“ IX.—Algebra.....	392
“ X.—Polygons.....	439
“ XI.—The Circle.....	468
“ XII.—The Ellipse.....	481
“ XIII.—The Parabola.....	492
“ XIV.—Trigonometry.....	510
“ XV.—Drawing.....	536
“ XVI.—Practical Geometry.....	544
“ XVII.—Shadows.....	596
“ Table of Contents in detail.....	613

APPENDIX.

Glossary.....	627
Table of Squares, Cubes and Roots.....	638
Rules for the Reduction of Decimals.....	647
Table of Circles.....	649
Table showing the Capacity of Wells, Cisterns, etc.....	653
Table of the Weights of Materials.....	654
Index.....	657





THE PARTHENON, ATHENS.

PART I.

SECTION I.—ARCHITECTURE.

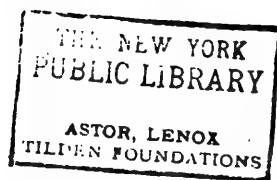
ART. 1.—Building Defined.—Building and Architecture are technical terms by some thought to be synonymous; but there is a distinction. Architecture has been defined to be—"the art of building;" but more correctly it is—"the art of designing and constructing buildings, in accordance with such principles as constitute stability, utility, and beauty." The literal signification of the Greek word *architecton*, from which the word *architect* is derived, is chief-carpenter; and the architect who designs and builds well may truly be considered the chief *builder*. Of the three classes into which architecture has been divided—viz., Civil, Military, and Naval—the first is that which refers to the construction of edifices known as dwellings, churches, and other public buildings, bridges, etc., for the accommodation of civilized man—and is the subject of the remarks which follow.

2.—Antique Buildings; Tower of Babel.—Building is one of the most ancient of the arts: the Scriptures inform us of its existence at a very early period. Cain, the son of Adam, "builded a city, and called the name of the city after the name of his son, Enoch;" but of the peculiar style or manner of building we are not informed. It is presumed that it was not remarkable for beauty, but that utility and perhaps stability were its characteristics. Soon after the deluge—that memorable event, which removed from existence all traces of the works of man—the Tower of Babel

was commenced. This was a work of such magnitude that the gathering of the materials, according to some writers, occupied three years; the period from its commencement until the work was abandoned was twenty-two years; and the bricks were like blocks of stone, being twenty feet long, fifteen broad, and seven thick. Learned men have given it as their opinion that the tower in the temple of Belus at Babylon was the same as that which in the Scriptures is called the Tower of Babel. The tower of the temple of Belus was square at its base, each side measuring one furlong, and consequently half a mile in circumference. Its form was that of a pyramid, and its height was 660 feet. It had a winding passage on the outside from the base to the summit, which was wide enough for two carriages.

3.—Ancient Cities and Monuments.—Historical accounts of ancient cities, such as Babylon, Palmyra, and Nineveh of the Assyrians; Sidon, Tyre, Aradus, and Serepta of the Phœnicians; and Jerusalem, with its splendid temple, of the Israelites—show that architecture among them had made great advances. Ancient monuments of the art are found also among other nations; the subterraneous temples of the Hindoos upon the islands Elephanta and Salsetta; the ruins of Persepolis in Persia; pyramids, obelisks, temples, palaces, and sepulchres in Egypt—all prove that the architects of those early times were possessed of skill and judgment highly cultivated. The principal characteristics of their works are gigantic dimensions, immovable solidity, and, in some instances, harmonious splendor. The extraordinary size of some is illustrated in the pyramids of Egypt. The largest of these stands not far from the city of Cairo: its base, which is square, covers about 11½ acres, and its height is nearly 500 feet. The stones of which it is built are immense—the smallest being full thirty feet long.

4.—Architecture in Greece.—Among the Greeks, architecture was cultivated as a fine art. Dignity and grace were added to stability and magnificence. In the Doric order, their first style of building, this is fully exemplified. Phidias, Ictinus, and Calicrates are spoken of as masters in





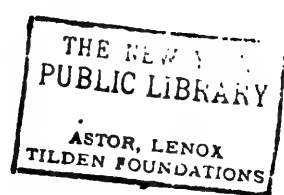
THE PANTHEON ROME.

the art at this period: the encouragement and support of Pericles stimulated them to a noble emulation. The beautiful temple of Minerva, called the Parthenon, erected upon the acropolis of Athens, the Propyleum, the Odeum, and others, were lasting monuments of their success. The Ionic and Corinthian orders were added to the Doric, and many magnificent edifices arose. These exemplified, in their chaste proportions, the elegant refinement of Grecian taste. Improvement in Grecian architecture continued to advance until perfection seems to have been attained. The specimens which have been partially preserved exhibit a combination of elegant proportion, dignified simplicity, and majestic grandeur. Architecture among the Greeks was at the height of its glory at the period immediately preceding the Peloponnesian war; after which the art declined. An excess of enrichment succeeded its former simple grandeur; yet a strict regularity was maintained amid the profusion of ornament. After the death of Alexander, 323 B.C., a love of gaudy splendor increased: the consequent decline of the art was visible, and the Greeks afterwards paid but little attention to the science.

5.—Architecture in Rome.—While the Greeks illustrated their knowledge of architecture in the erection of their temples and other public buildings, the Romans gave their attention to the science in the construction of the many aqueducts and sewers with which Rome abounded; building no such splendid edifices as adorned Athens, Corinth, and Ephesus, until about 200 years B.C., when their intercourse with the Greeks became more extended. Grecian architecture was introduced into Rome by Sylla; by whom, as also by Marius and Cæsar, many large edifices were erected in various cities of Italy. But under Cæsar Augustus, at about the beginning of the Christian era, the art arose to the greatest perfection it ever attained in Italy. Under his patronage Grecian artists were encouraged, and many emigrated to Rome. It was at about this time that Solomon's temple at Jerusalem was rebuilt by Herod—a Roman. This was 46 years in the erection, and was most probably of the Grecian style of building—perhaps of the

Corinthian order. Some of the stones of which it was built were 46 feet long, 21 feet high, and 14 thick; and others were of the astonishing length of 82 feet. The porch rose to a great height; the whole being built of white marble exquisitely polished. This is the building concerning which it was remarked: "Master, see what manner of stones, and what buildings are here." For the construction of private habitations also, finished artists were employed by the Romans: their dwellings being often built with the finest marble, and their villas splendidly adorned. After Augustus, his successors continued to beautify the city, until the reign of Constantine, who, having removed the imperial residence to Constantinople, neglected to add to the splendor of Rome; and the art, in consequence, soon fell from its high excellence.

6.—Rome and Greece.—Thus Rome was indebted to Greece for her knowledge of architecture—not only for the knowledge of its principles, but also for many of the best buildings themselves; these having been originally erected in Greece, and stolen by the unprincipled conquerors—taken down and removed to Rome. Greece was thus robbed of her best monuments of architecture. Touched by the Romans, Grecian architecture lost much of its elegance and dignity. The Romans, though justly celebrated for their scientific knowledge as displayed in the construction of their various edifices, were not capable of appreciating the simple grandeur, the refined elegance of the Grecian style; but sought to improve upon it by the addition of luxurious enrichment, and thus deprived it of true elegance. In the days of Nero, whose palace of gold is so celebrated, buildings were lavishly adorned. Adrian did much to encourage the art; but not satisfied with the simplicity of the Grecian style, the artists of his time aimed at inventing new ones, and added to the already redundant embellishments of the previous age. Hence the origin of the pedestal, the great variety of intricate ornaments, the convex frieze, the round and the open pediments, etc. The rage for luxury continued until Alexander Severus, who made some im-





CATHEDRAL OF NOTRE DAME, PARIS.

provement; but very soon after his reign the art began rapidly to decline, as particularly evidenced in the mean and trifling character of the ornaments.

7.—Architecture Debased.—The Goths and Vandals overran Italy, Greece, Asia, and Africa, destroying most of their works of ancient architecture. Cultivating no art but that of war, these savage hordes could not be expected to take any interest in the beautiful forms and proportions of their habitations. From this time architecture assumed an entirely different aspect. The celebrated styles of Greece were unappreciated and forgotten; and modern architecture made its first appearance on the stage of existence. The Goths, in their conquering invasions, gradually extended it over Italy, France, Spain, Portugal, and Germany, into England. From the reign of Galienus may be reckoned the total extinction of the arts among the Romans. From this time until the sixth or seventh century, architecture was almost entirely neglected. The buildings which were erected during this suspension of the arts were very rude. Being constructed of the fragments of the edifices which had been demolished by the Visigoths in their unrestrained fury, and the builders being destitute of a proper knowledge of architecture, many sad blunders and extensive patch-work might have been seen in their construction—entablatures inverted, columns standing on their wrong ends, and other ridiculous arrangements characterized their clumsy work. The vast number of columns which the ruins around them afforded they used as piers in the construction of arcades—which by some is thought, after having passed through various changes, to have been the origin of the plan of the Gothic cathedral. Buildings generally, which are not of the classical styles, and which were erected after the fall of the Roman empire, have by some been indiscriminately included under the term *Gothic*. But the changes which architecture underwent during the Mediæval age show that there were then several distinct modes of building.

8.—The Ostrogoths.—Theodoric, a friend of the arts, who reigned in Italy from A.D. 493 to 525, endeavored to

restore and preserve some of the ancient buildings; and erected others, the ruins of which are still seen at Verona and Ravenna. Simplicity and strength are the characteristics of the structures erected by him; they are, however, devoid of grandeur and elegance, or fine proportions. These are properly of the **GOthic** style; by some called the *old Gothic*, to distinguish it from the pointed Gothic.

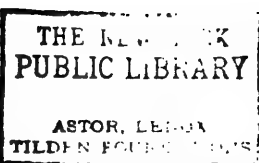
9.—The Lombards, who ruled in Italy from A.D. 568, had no taste for architecture nor respect for antiquities. Accordingly, they pulled down the splendid monuments of classic architecture which they found standing, and erected in their stead huge buildings of stone which were greatly destitute of proportion, elegance, or utility—their characteristics being scarcely anything more than stability and immensity combined with ornaments of a puerile character. Their churches were decorated with rows of small columns along the cornice of the pediment, small doors and windows with circular heads, roofs supported by arches having arched buttresses to resist their thrust, and a lavish display of incongruous ornaments. This kind of architecture is called the **LOMBARD** style, and was employed in the seventh century in Pavia, the chief city of the Lombards; at which city, as also at many other places, a great many edifices were erected in accordance with its peculiar forms.

10.—The Byzantine Architects, of Byzantium, Constantinople, erected many spacious edifices; among which are included the cathedrals of Bamberg, Worms, and Mentz, and the most ancient part of the minster at Strassburg; in all of these they combined the classic styles with the crude Lombardian. This style is called the **LOMBARD-BYZANTINE**. To the last style there were afterwards added cupolas similar to those used in the East, together with numerous slender pillars with elaborate capitals, and the many minarets which are the characteristics of the proper *Byzantine*, or *Oriental* style.

11.—The Moors.—When the Arabs and Moors destroyed the kingdom of the Goths, the arts and sciences were mostly



MOSQUE AT CAIRO.



in possession of the Musselmen-conquerors; at which time there were three kinds of architecture practised; viz.: the Arabian, the Moorish, and the Lombardian. The ARABIAN style was formed from Greek models, having circular arches added, and towers which terminated with globes and minarets. The MOORISH is very similar to the Arabian, being distinguished from it by arches in the form of a horseshoe. It originated in Spain in the erection of buildings with the ruins of Roman architecture, and is seen in all its splendor in the ancient palace of the Mohammedan monarchs at Grenada, called the *Alhambra*, or *red-house*. The style which was originated by the Visigoths in Spain by a combination of the Arabian and Moorish styles, was introduced by Charlemagne into Germany. On account of the changes and improvements it there underwent, it was, at about the 13th or 14th century, termed the *German* or *romantic* style. It is exhibited in great perfection in the towers of the minster of Strassburg, the cathedral of Cologne and other edifices. The most remarkable features of this lofty and aspiring style are the lancet or pointed arch, clustered pillars, lofty towers, and flying buttresses. It was principally employed in ecclesiastical architecture, and in this capacity introduced into France, Italy, Spain, and England.

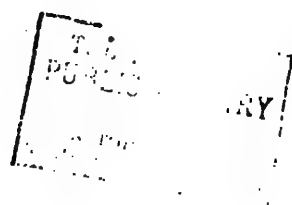
12.—The Architecture of England: is divided into the *Norman*, the *Early-English*, the *Decorated*, and the *Perpendicular* styles. The Norman is principally distinguished by the character of its ornaments—the chevron, or *zigzag*, being the most common. Buildings in this style were erected in the 12th century. The Early-English is celebrated for the beauty of its edifices, the chaste simplicity and purity of design which they display, and the peculiarly graceful character of its foliage. This style is of the 13th century. The Decorated style, as its name implies, is characterized by a great profusion of enrichment, which consists principally of the crocket, or feathered-ornament, and ball-flower. It was mostly in use in the 14th century. The Perpendicular style, which dates from the 15th century, is distinguished by its high towers, and parapets surmounted with spires similar in number and grouping to oriental minarets.

13.—Architecture Progressive.—The styles erroneously termed *Gothic* were distinguished by peculiar characteristics as well as by different names. The first symptoms of a desire to return to a pure style in architecture, after the ruin caused by the Goths, was manifested in the character of the art as displayed in the church of St. Sophia at Constantinople, which was erected by Justinian in the 6th century. The church of St. Mark at Venice, which arose in the 10th or 11th century, is a most remarkable building; a compound of many of the forms of ancient architecture. The cathedral at Pisa, a wonderful structure for the age, was erected by a Grecian architect in 1016. The marble with which the walls of this building were faced, and of which the four rows of columns that support the roof are composed, is said to be of an excellent character. The Campanile, or leaning-tower as it is usually called, was erected near the cathedral in the 12th century. Its inclination is generally supposed to have arisen from a poor foundation; although by some it is said to have been thus constructed originally, in order to inspire in the minds of the beholder sensations of sublimity and awe. In the 13th century, the science in Italy was slowly progressing; many fine churches were erected, the style of which displayed a decided advance in the progress towards pure classical architecture. In other parts of Europe, the Gothic, or pointed style was prevalent. The cathedral at Strassburg, designed by Irwin Steinbeck, was erected in the 13th and 14th centuries. In France and England during the 14th century, many very superior edifices were erected in this style.

14.—Architecture in Italy.—In the 14th and 15th centuries, architecture in Italy was greatly revived. The masters began to study the remains of ancient Roman edifices; and many splendid buildings were erected, which displayed a purer taste in the science. Among others, St. Peter's of Rome, which was built about this time, is a lasting monument of the architectural skill of the age. Giocondo, Michael Angelo, Palladio, Vignola, and other celebrated architects, each in their turn, did much to restore the art to its



INTERIOR OF ST. SOPHIA, CONSTANTINOPLE.



former excellence. In the edifices which were erected under their direction, however, it is plainly to be seen that they studied not from the pure models of Greece, but from the remains of the deteriorated architecture of Rome. The high pedestal, the coupled columns, the rounded pediment, the many curved-and-twisted enrichments, and the convex frieze, were unknown to pure Grecian architecture. Yet their efforts were serviceable in correcting, to a good degree, the very impure taste that had prevailed since the overthrow of the Roman empire.

15.—The Renaissance.—The Italian masters and numerous artists who had visited Italy for the purpose, spread the Roman style over various countries of Europe; which was gradually received into favor in place of the pointed Gothic. This fell into disuse; although it has of late years been again cultivated. It requires a building of great magnitude and complexity for a perfect display of its beauties. In America, the pure Grecian style was at first more or less studied; and perhaps the simplicity of its principles would be better adapted to a republican country than the more intricate mediæval styles; yet these, during the last quarter of a century, have been extensively studied, and now wholly supersede the Grecian styles.

16.—Styles of Architecture.—It is generally acknowledged that the various styles in architecture were the results of necessity, and originated in accordance with the different pursuits of the early inhabitants of the earth; and were brought by their descendants to their present state of perfection, through the propensity for imitation and desire of emulation which are found more or less among all nations. Those that followed agricultural pursuits, from being employed constantly upon the same piece of land, needed a permanent residence, and the wooden *hut* was the offspring of their wants; while the shepherd, who followed his flocks and was compelled to traverse large tracts of country for pasture, found the *tent* to be the most portable habitation; again, the man devoted to hunting and fishing—an idle and vagabond way of living—is naturally supposed to have been

content with the *cavern* as a place of shelter. The latter is said to have been the origin of the Egyptian style; while the curved roof of Chinese structures gives a strong indication of their having had the tent for their model; and the simplicity of the original style of the Greeks (the Doric) shows quite conclusively, as is generally conceded, that its original was of wood. The pointed, or ecclesiastical style, is said to have originated in an attempt to imitate the bower, or grove of trees, in which the ancients performed their idol-worship. But it is more probably the result of repeated scientific attempts to secure real strength with apparent lightness; thus giving a graceful, aspiring effect.

17.—Orders: or styles, in architecture are numerous; and a knowledge of the peculiarities of each is important to the student in the art. An ORDER, in architecture, is composed of three principal parts, viz.: the Stylobate, the Column, and the Entablature. This appertains chiefly to the classic styles.

18.—The Stylobate: is the substructure, or basement, upon which the columns of an order are arranged. In Roman architecture—especially in the interior of an edifice—it frequently occurs that each column has a separate substructure; this is called a *pedestal*. If possible, the pedestal should be avoided in all cases; because it gives to the column the appearance of having been originally designed for a small building, and afterwards pieced out to make it long enough for a larger one.

19.—The Column: is composed of the base, shaft, and capital.

20.—The Entablature: above and supported by the columns, is horizontal; and is composed of the architrave, frieze, and cornice. These principal parts are again divided into various members and mouldings.

21.—The Base: of a column is so called from *basis*, a foundation or footing.



INTERIOR OF ST. STEPHENS, PARIS.

THE NEW YORK
PUBLIC LIBRARY
ASTOR, LENOX
TILDEN FOUNDATIONS

22.—The Shaft: the upright part of a column standing upon the base and crowned with the capital, is from *shafto*, to dig—in the manner of a well, whose inside is not unlike the form of a column.

23.—The Capital: from *kephale* or *caput*, the head, is the uppermost and crowning part of the column.

24.—The Architrave: from *archi*, chief or principal, and *trabs*, a beam, is that part of the entablature which lies in immediate connection with the column.

25.—The Frieze: from *fibron*, a fringe or border, is that part of the entablature which is immediately above the architrave and beneath the cornice. It was called by some of the ancients *sophorus*, because it was usually enriched with sculptured animals.

26.—The Cornice: from *corona*, a crown, is the upper and projecting part of the entablature—being also the uppermost and crowning part of the whole order.

27.—The Pediment: above the entablature, is the triangular portion which is formed by the inclined edges of the roof at the end of the building. In Gothic architecture, the pediment is called a *gable*.

28.—The Tympanum: is the perpendicular triangular surface which is enclosed by the cornice of the pediment.

29.—The Attic: is a small order, consisting of pilasters and entablature, raised above a larger order, instead of a pediment. An attic story is the upper story, its windows being usually square.

30.—Proportions in an Order.—An order has its several members proportioned to one another by a scale of 60 equal parts, which are called minutes. If the height of buildings were always the same, the scale of equal parts would be a fixed quantity—an exact number of feet and inches. But as buildings are erected of different heights, the column and

its accompaniments are required to be of different dimensions. To ascertain the scale of equal parts, it is necessary to know the height to which the whole order is to be erected. This must be divided by the number of diameters which is directed for the order under consideration. Then the quotient obtained by such division is the length of the scale of equal parts—and is, also, the diameter of the column next above the base. For instance, in the Grecian Doric order the whole height, including column and entablature, is 8 diameters. Suppose now it were desirable to construct an example of this order, forty feet high. Then 40 feet divided by 8 gives 5 feet for the length of the scale; and this being divided by 60, the scale is completed. The upright columns of figures, marked *H* and *P*, by the side of the drawings illustrating the orders, designate the height and the projection of the members. The projection of each member is reckoned from a line passing through the axis of the column, and extending above it to the top of the entablature. The figures represent minutes, or 60ths, of the major diameter of the shaft of the column.

31.—Grecian Styles.—The original method of building among the Greeks was in what is called the *Doric* order: to this were afterwards added the *Ionic* and the *Corinthian*. These three were the only styles known among them. Each is distinguished from the other two by not only a peculiarity of some one or more of its principal parts, but also by a particular destination. The character of the Doric is robust, manly, and Herculean-like; that of the Ionic is more delicate, feminine, matronly; while that of the Corinthian is extremely delicate, youthful, and virgin-like. However they may differ in their general character, they are alike famous for grace and dignity, elegance and grandeur, to a high degree of perfection.

32.—The Doric Order; (*Fig. 2.*) is so ancient that its origin is unknown—although some have pretended to have discovered it. But the most general opinion is, that it is an improvement upon the original wooden buildings of the



ST. PETER'S CHURCH, ROME.

THE
PUBLIC LIBRARY
ASTOR, LENOX
TILDEN FOUNDATION

Grecians. These no doubt were very rude, and perhaps not unlike the following figure.



FIG. 1.—SUPPOSED ORIGIN OF DORIC TEMPLE.

The trunks of trees, set perpendicularly to support the roof, may be taken for columns; the tree laid upon the tops of the perpendicular ones, the architrave; the ends of the cross-beams which rest upon the architrave, the triglyphs; the tree laid on the cross-beams as a support for the ends of the rafters, the bed-moulding of the cornice; the ends of the rafters which project beyond the bed-moulding, the mutules; and perhaps the projection of the roof in front, to screen the entrance from the weather, gave origin to the portico.

The peculiarities of the Doric order are the triglyphs—those parts of the frieze which have perpendicular channels cut in their surface; the absence of a base to the column—as also of fillets between the flutings of the column; and the plainness of the capital. The triglyphs should be so disposed that the width of the metopes—the space between the triglyphs—shall be equal to their height.

33.—The Intercolumniation: or space between the columns, is regulated by placing the centres of the columns under the centres of the triglyphs—except at the angle of the building; where, as may be seen in *Fig. 2*, one edge of

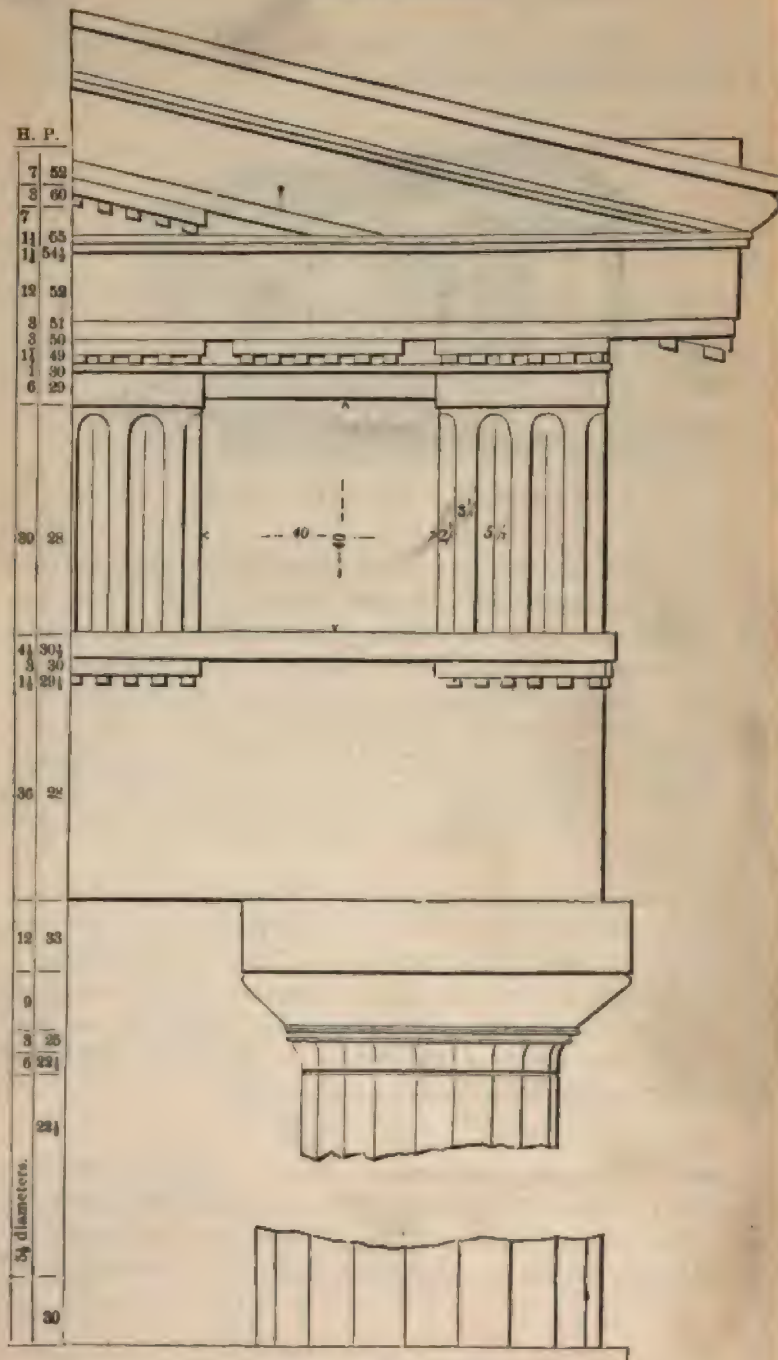


FIG. 2.—GRECIAN DORIC.

the triglyph must be over the centre of the column.* Where the columns are so disposed that one of them stands beneath every other triglyph, the arrangement is called *mono-triglyph* and is most common. When a column is placed beneath every third triglyph, the arrangement is called *diastyle*; and when beneath every fourth, *aræostyle*. This last style is the worst, and is seldom adopted.

34.—The Doric Order: is suitable for buildings that are destined for national purposes, for banking-houses, etc. Its appearance, though massive and grand, is nevertheless rich and graceful. The Patent Office at Washington, and the Treasury at New York, are good specimens of this order.

35.—The Ionic Order. (*Fig. 3.*)—The Doric was for some time the only order in use among the Greeks. They gave their attention to the cultivation of it, until perfection seems to have been attained. Their temples were the prin-

* GRECIAN DORIC ORDER. When the width to be occupied by the whole front is limited, to determine the diameter of the column.

The relation between the parts may be expressed thus :

$$x = \frac{60a}{d(b+c) + (60-c)}$$

Where a equals the width in feet occupied by the columns, and their intercolumniations taken collectively, measured at the base; b equals the width of the metope, in minutes; c equals the width of the triglyphs in minutes; d equals the number of metopes, and x equals the diameter in feet.

Example.—A front of six columns—hexastyle—61 feet wide; the frieze having one triglyph over each intercolumniation, or mono-triglyph. In this case, there being five intercolumniations and two metopes over each, therefore there are $5 \times 2 = 10$ metopes. Let the metope equal 42 minutes and the triglyph equal 28. Then $a = 61$; $b = 42$; $c = 28$; and $d = 10$; and the formula above becomes

$$x = \frac{60 \times 61}{10(42 + 28) + (60 - 28)} = \frac{60 \times 61}{10 \times 70 + 32} = \frac{3660}{732} = 5 \text{ feet} = \text{the diameter required.}$$

Example.—An octastyle front, 8 columns, 184 feet wide, three metopes over each intercolumniation, 21 in all, and the metope and triglyph 42 and 28 as before. Then

$$x = \frac{60 \times 184}{21(42 + 28) + (60 - 28)} = \frac{11040}{1502} = 7.351\frac{3}{32} \text{ feet} = \text{the diameter required.}$$

capital objects upon which their skill in the art was displayed; and as the Doric order seems to have been well fitted, by its massive proportions, to represent the character of their male deities rather than the female, there seems to have been a necessity for another style which should be emblematical of feminine graces, and with which they might decorate such temples as were dedicated to the goddesses. Hence the origin of the Ionic order. This was invented, according to historians, by Hermogenes of Alabanda; and he being a native of Caria, then in the possession of the Ionians, the order was called the Ionic.

The distinguishing features of this order are the *volute*s or spirals of the capital; and the *dentils* among the bed-mouldings of the cornice: although in some instances dentils are wanting. The volutes are said to have been designed as a representation of curls of hair on the head of a matron, of whom the whole column is taken as a semblance.

The Ionic order is appropriate for churches, colleges, seminaries, libraries, all edifices dedicated to literature and the arts, and all places of peace and tranquillity. The front of the Custom-House, New York City, is a good specimen of this order.

36.—The Intercolumniation: of this and the other orders—both Roman and Grecian, with the exception of the Doric—are distinguished as follows. When the interval is one and a half diameters, it is called *pyncostyle*, or columns thick-set; when two diameters, *systyle*; when two and a quarter diameters, *eustyle*; when three diameters, *diastyle*; and when more than three diameters, *arcæostyle*, or columns thin-set. In all the orders, when there are four columns in one row, the arrangement is called *tetrastyle*; when there are six in a row, *hexastyle*; and when eight, *octastyle*.

37.—To Describe the Ionic Volute.—Draw a perpendicular from *a* to *s* (*Fig. 4*), and make *as* equal to 20 min. or to $\frac{1}{4}$ of the whole height, *ac*; draw *so* at right angles to *sa*, and equal to $1\frac{1}{4}$ min.; upon *o*, with $2\frac{1}{4}$ min. for radius.

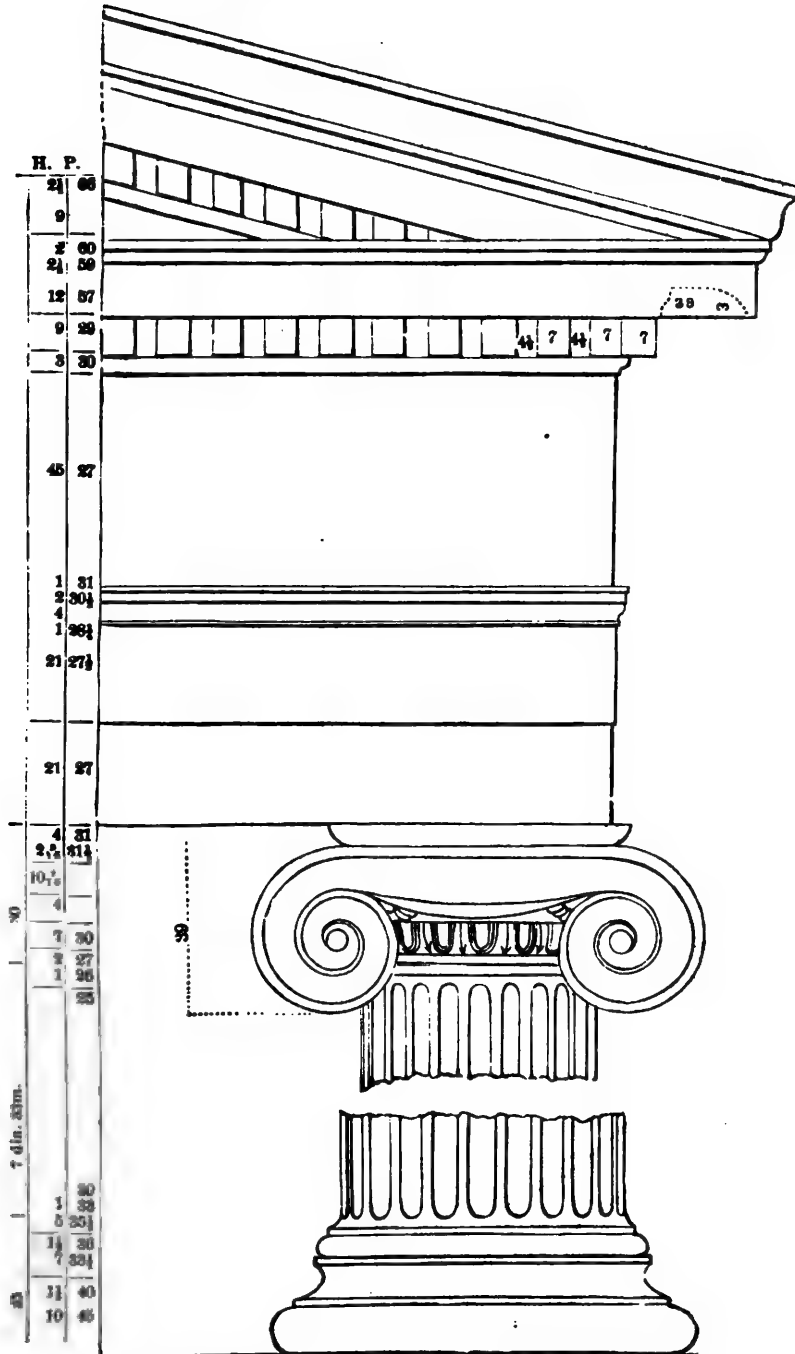


FIG. 3.—GRECIAN IONIC.

describe the eye of the volute; about *o*, the centre of the eye, draw the square, *r t i 2*, with sides equal to half the diameter of the eye, viz. $2\frac{1}{2}$ min., and divide it into 144 equal parts, as shown at *Fig. 5*. The several centres in rotation are at the angles formed by the heavy lines, as figured, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, etc. The position of these angles is determined by commencing at the point, 1, and making each heavy line one part less in length than the preceding one. No. 1 is the

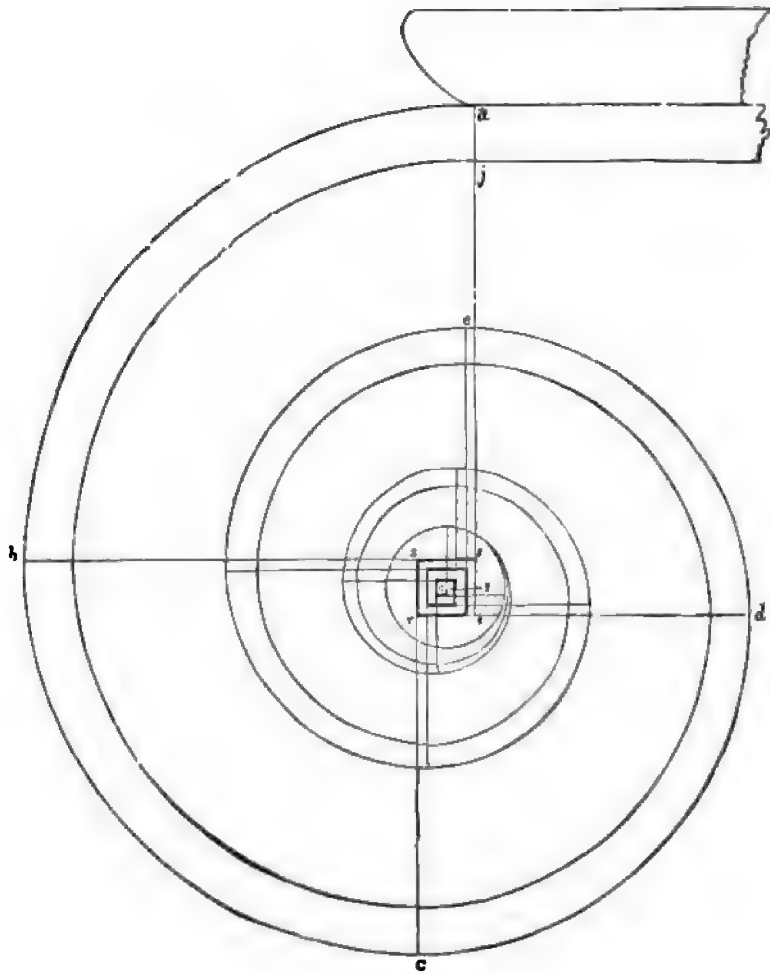


FIG. 4.—IONIC VOLUTE.

centre for the arc $a b$ (Fig. 4;) 2 is the centre for the arc $b c$; and so on to the last. The inside spiral line is to be described from the centres, x, x, x , etc. (Fig. 5), being the centre of the first small square towards the middle of the eye from the centre for the outside arc. The breadth of the fillet at $a j$ is to be made equal to $2\frac{3}{16}$ min. This is for a spiral of *three* revolutions; but one of any number of revolutions, as 4 or 6, may be drawn, by dividing $o f$ (Fig. 5) into a corresponding number of equal parts. Then divide the part nearest the centre, o , into two parts, as at h ; join o and 1, also o and 2; draw $h 3$ parallel to $o 1$, and $h 4$ parallel to o

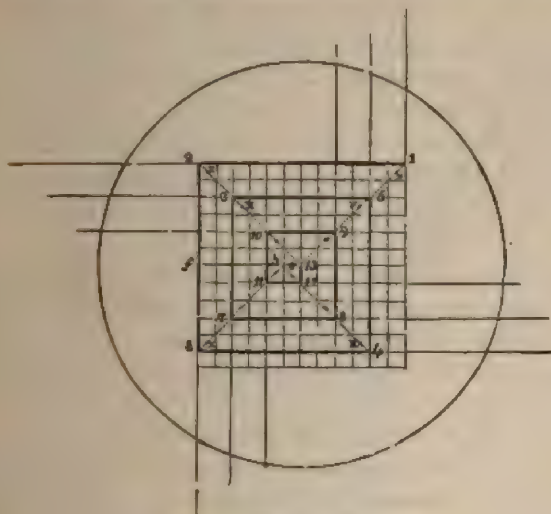


FIG. 5.—EYE OF VOLUTE.

2; then the lines $o 1$, $o 2$, $h 3$, $h 4$ will determine the length of the heavy lines, and the place of the centres. (See *Art.* 288.)

38.—The Corinthian Order: (Fig. 7,) is in general like the Ionic, though the proportions are lighter. The Corinthian displays a more airy elegance, a richer appearance; but its distinguishing feature is its beautiful capital. This is generally supposed to have had its origin in the capitals

of the columns of Egyptian temples, which, though not approaching it in elegance, have yet a similarity of form with the Corinthian. The oft-repeated story of its origin which



FIG. 6.

is told by Vitruvius—an architect who flourished in Rome in the days of Augustus Cæsar—though pretty generally considered to be fabulous, is nevertheless worthy of being again recited. It is this: A young lady of Corinth was sick, and finally died. Her nurse gathered into a deep basket such trinkets and keepsakes as the lady had been

fond of when alive, and placed them upon her grave, covering the basket with a flat stone or tile, that its contents might not be disturbed. The basket was placed accidentally upon the stem of an acanthus plant, which, shooting forth, enclosed the basket with its foliage, some of which, reaching the tile, turned gracefully over in the form of a volute.

A celebrated sculptor, Calimachus, saw the basket thus decorated, and from the hint which it suggested conceived and constructed a capital for a column. This was called Corinthian, from the fact that it was invented and first made use of at Corinth.

The Corinthian being the gayest, the richest, the most lovely of all the orders, it is appropriate for edifices which are dedicated to amusement, banqueting, and festivity—for all places where delicacy, gayety, and splendor are desirable.

39.—Persians and Caryatides.—In addition to the three regular orders of architecture, it was customary among the Greeks and other nations to employ representations of the human form, instead of columns, to support entablatures; these were called *Persians* and *Caryatides*.

40.—Persians: are statues of men, and are so called in commemoration of a victory gained over the Persians by Pausanias. The Persian prisoners were brought to Athens



FIG. 7.—GRECIAN CORINTHIAN.

and condemned to abject slavery ; and in order to represent them in the lowest state of servitude and degradation, the statues were loaded with the heaviest entablature, the Doric.

41.—Caryatides: are statues of women dressed in long robes after the Asiatic manner. Their origin is as follows: In a war between the Greeks and the Caryans, the latter were totally vanquished, their male population extinguished, and their females carried to Athens. To perpetuate the memory of this event, statues of females, having the form and dress of the Caryans, were erected, and crowned with the Ionic or Corinthian entablature. The caryatides were generally formed of about the human size, but the persians much larger, in order to produce the greater awe and astonishment in the beholder. The entablatures were proportioned to a statue in like manner as to a column of the same height.

These semblances of slavery have been in frequent use among moderns as well as ancients ; and, as a relief from the stateliness and formality of the regular orders, are capable of forming a thousand varieties ; yet in a land of liberty such marks of human degradation ought not to be perpetuated.

42.—Roman Styles.—Strictly speaking, Rome had no architecture of her own ; all she possessed was borrowed from other nations. Before the Romans exchanged intercourse with the Greeks, they possessed some edifices of considerable extent and merit, which were erected by architects from Etruria ; but Rome was principally indebted to Greece for what she acquired of the art. Although there is no such thing as an architecture of Roman invention, yet no nation, perhaps, ever was so devoted to the cultivation of the art as the Roman. Whether we consider the number and extent of their structures, or the lavish richness and splendor with which they were adorned, we are compelled to yield to them our admiration and praise. At one time, under the consuls and emperors, Rome employed 400 architects. The public works—such as theatres, circuses, baths, aqueducts, etc.—were, in extent and grandeur, be-



PORCH OF THE ERECHTHEUM, ATHENS.

LIBRARY

LENOX
TENTATIONS

yond anything attempted in modern times. Aqueducts were built to convey water from a distance of 60 miles or more. In the prosecution of this work rocks and mountains were tunnelled, and valleys bridged. Some of the latter descended 200 feet below the level of the water; and in passing them the canals were supported by an arcade, or succession of arches. Public baths are spoken of as large as cities, being fitted up with numerous conveniences for exercise and amusement. Their decorations were most splendid; indeed, the exuberance of the ornaments alone was offensive to good taste. So overloaded with enrichments were the baths of Diocletian that on one occasion of public festivity great quantities of sculpture fell from the ceilings and entablatures, killing many of the people.

43.—Grecian Orders modified by the Romans.—The orders of Greece were introduced into Rome in all their perfection. But the luxurious Romans, not satisfied with the simple elegance of their refined proportions, sought to improve upon them by lavish displays of ornament. They transformed in many instances the true elegance of the Grecian art into a gaudy splendor, better suited to their less refined taste. The Romans remodelled each of the orders: the Doric (*Fig. 8*) was modified by increasing the height of the column to 8 diameters; by changing the echinus of the capital for an ovolo, or quarter-round, and adding an astragal and neck below it; by placing the *centre*, instead of one edge, of the first triglyph over the centre of the column; and introducing horizontal instead of inclined mutules in the cornice, and in some instances dispensing with them altogether. The Ionic was modified by diminishing the size of the volutes, and, in some specimens, introducing a new capital in which the volutes were diagonally arranged (*Fig. 9*). This new capital has been termed *modern Ionic*. The favorite order at Rome and her colonies was the Corinthian (*Fig. 10*). But this order the Roman artists, in their search for novelty, subjected to many alterations—especially in the foliage of its capital. Into the upper part of this they introduced the modified Ionic capital; thus

combining the two in one. This change was dignified with the importance of an *order*, and received the appellation

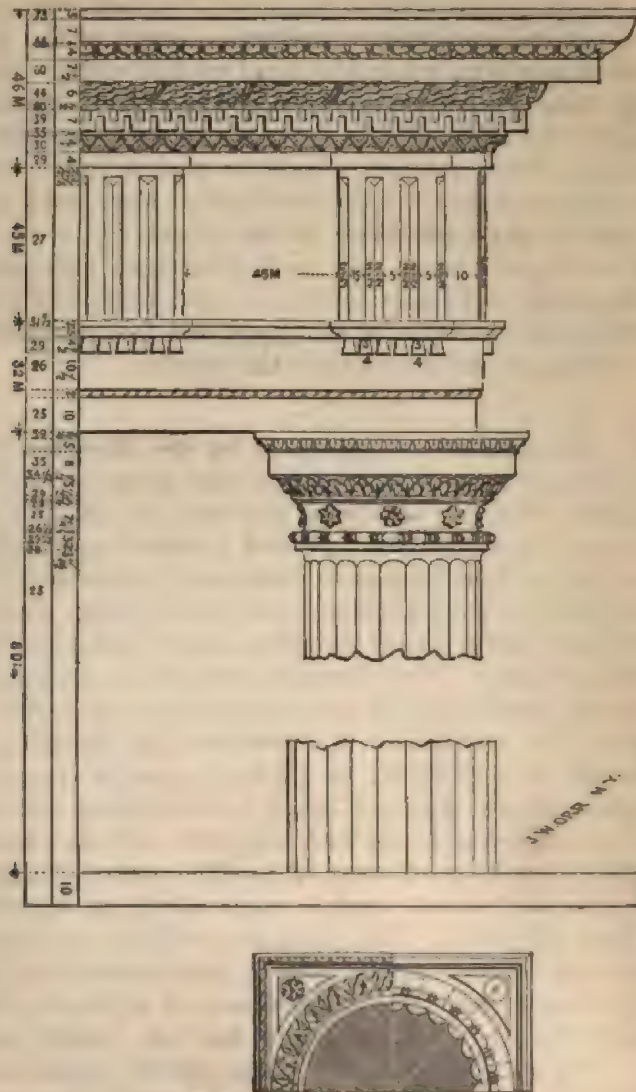
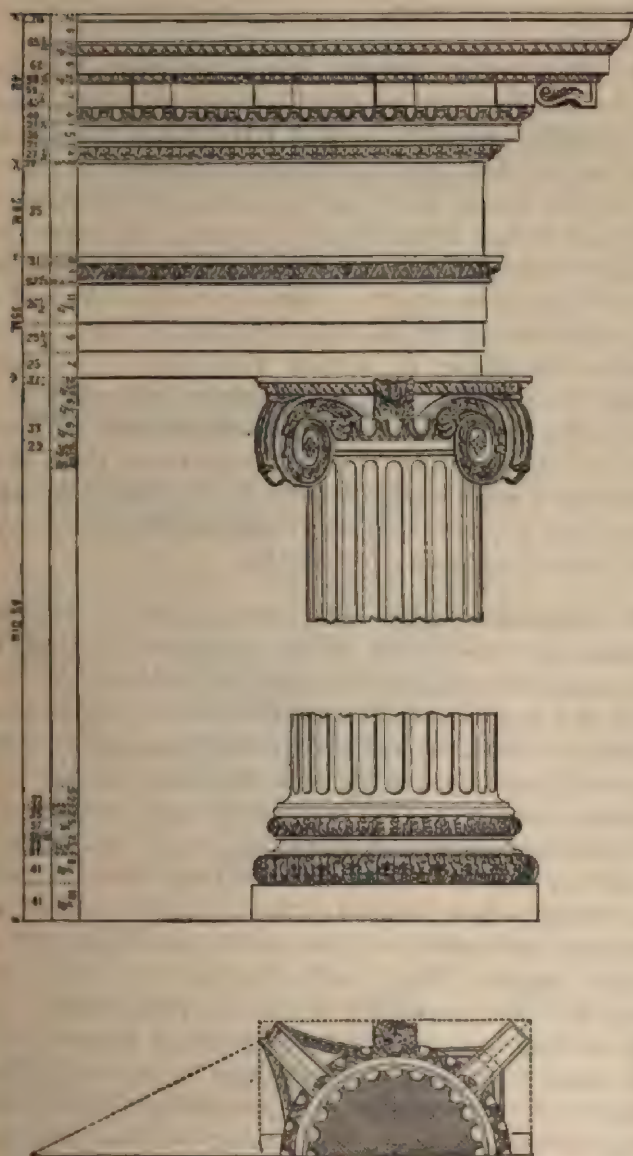


FIG. 8.—ROMAN DORIC.

of COMPOSITE, or *Roman*: the best specimen of which is found in the Arch of Titus (*Fig. 11*). This style was n



much used among the Romans themselves, and is but slightly appreciated now.

44.—The Tuscan Order: is said to have been introduced to the Romans by the Etruscan architects, and to have been the only style used in Italy before the introduction of the Grecian orders. However this may be, its similarity to the Doric order gives strong indications of its having been a rude imitation of that style: this is very probable, since history informs us that the Etruscans held intercourse with the Greeks at a remote period. The rudeness of this order prevented its extensive use in Italy. All that is known concerning it is from Vitruvius, no remains of buildings in this style being found among ancient ruins.

For mills, factories, markets, barns, stables, etc., where utility and strength are of more importance than beauty, the improved modification of this order, called the *modern Tuscan* (*Fig. 12*), will be useful; and its simplicity recommends it where economy is desirable.

45.—Egyptian Style.—The architecture of the ancient Egyptians—to which that of the ancient Hindoos bears some resemblance—is characterized by boldness of outline, solidity, and grandeur. The amazing labyrinths and extensive artificial lakes, the splendid palaces and gloomy cemeteries, the gigantic pyramids and towering obelisks, of the Egyptians were works of immensity and durability; and their extensive remains are enduring proofs of the enlightened skill of this once-powerful but long since extinct nation. The principal features of the Egyptian style of architecture are—uniformity of plan, never deviating from right lines and angles; thick walls, having the outer surface slightly deviating inwardly from the perpendicular; the whole building low; roof flat, composed of stones reaching in one piece from pier to pier, these being supported by enormous columns, very stout in proportion to their height; the shaft sometimes polygonal, having no base but with a great variety of handsome capitals, the foliage of these being of the palm, lotus, and other leaves; entablatures having simply an architrave, crowned with a huge cavetto orna-

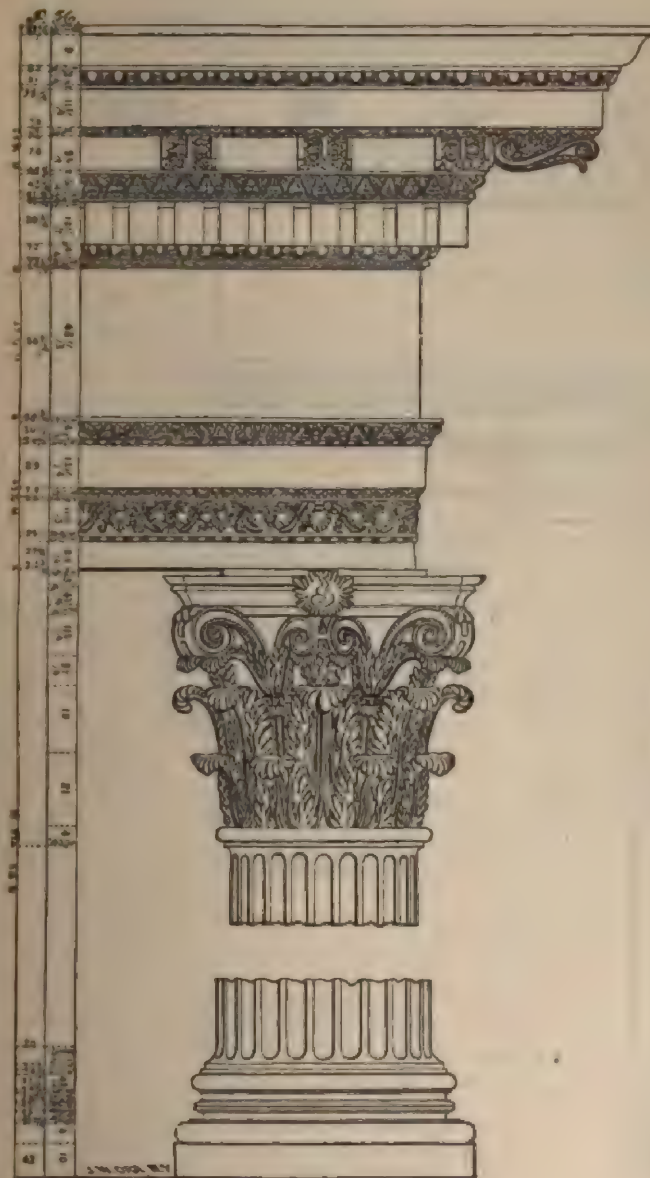


FIG. 10.—ROMAN CORINTHIAN.

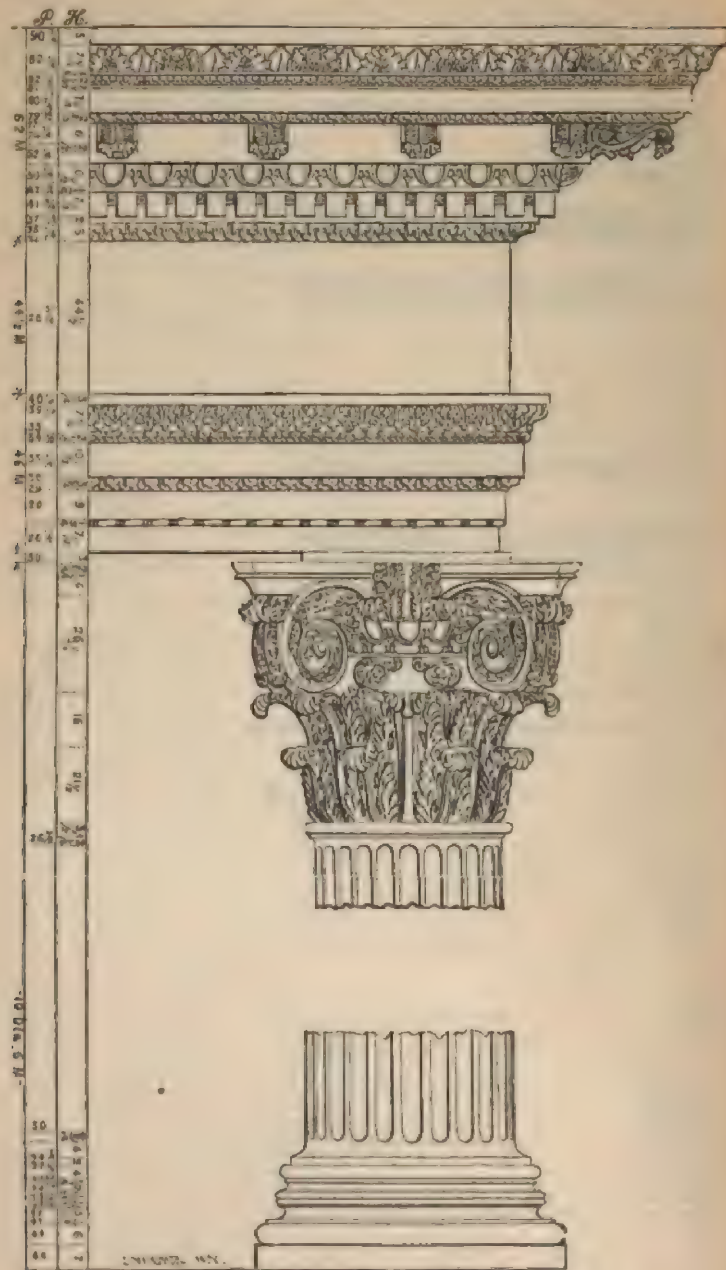


FIG. 11.—COMPOSITE ORDER—ARCH OF TITUS.

mented with sculpture; and the intercolumniation very narrow, usually $1\frac{1}{2}$ diameters and seldom exceeding $2\frac{1}{2}$. In the remains of a temple the walls were found to be 24 feet thick; and at the gates of Thebes, the walls at the foundation were 50 feet thick and perfectly solid. The immense stones of which these, as well as Egyptian walls generally, were built, had both their inside and outside surfaces faced, and the joints throughout the body of the wall as perfectly close as upon the outer surface. For this reason, as well as that the buildings generally partake of the pyramidal form, arise their great solidity and durability. The dimensions and extent of the buildings may be judged from the temple of Jupiter at Thebes, which was 1400 feet long and 300 feet wide—exclusive of the porticos, of which there was a great number.

It is estimated by Mr. Gliddon, U. S. Consul in Egypt, that not less than 25,000,000 tons of hewn stone were employed in the erection of the Pyramids of Memphis alone—or enough to construct 3000 Bunker Hill monuments. Some of the blocks are 40 feet long, and polished with emery to a surprising degree. It is conjectured that the stone for these pyramids was brought, by rafts and canals, from a distance of six or seven hundred miles.

The general appearance of the Egyptian style of architecture is that of solemn grandeur—amounting sometimes to sepulchral gloom. For this reason it is appropriate for cemeteries, prisons, etc.; and being adopted for these purposes, it is gradually gaining favor.

A great dissimilarity exists in the proportion, form, and general features of Egyptian columns. In some instances, there is no uniformity even in those of the same building, each differing from the others either in its shaft or capital. For practical use in this country, *Fig. 13* may be taken as a standard of this style. The Halls of Justice in Centre Street, New York City, is a building in general accordance with the principles of Egyptian architecture.

46.—Buildings in General.—In selecting a style for an edifice, its peculiar requirements must be allowed to govern.

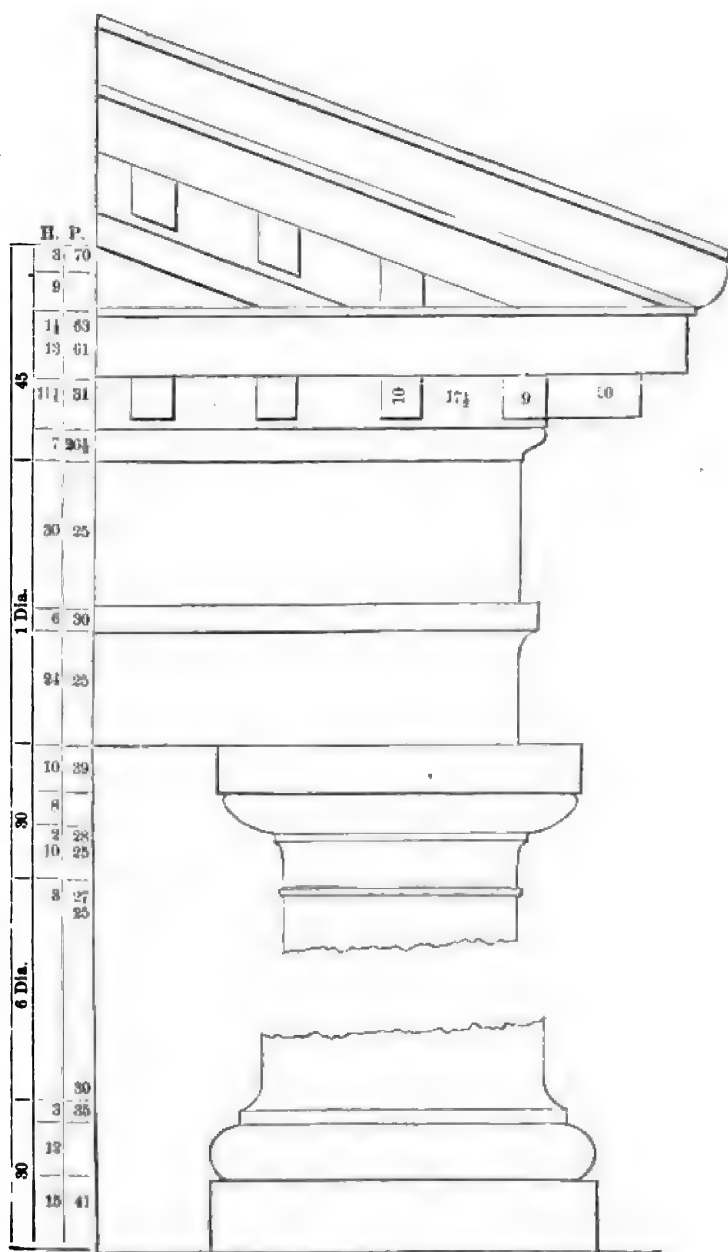


FIG. 12.—MODIFIED TUSCAN ORDER.

That style of architecture is to be preferred in which utility, stability, and regularity are gracefully blended with grandeur and elegance. But as an arrangement designed for a warm country would be inappropriate for a colder climate, it would seem that the style of building ought to be modified to suit the wants of the people for whom it is designed. High roofs to resist the pressure of heavy snows, and arrangements for artificial heat, are indispensable in northern climes; while they would be regarded as entirely out of place in buildings at the equator.

Among the Greeks, architecture was employed chiefly upon their temples and other large buildings; and the proportions of the orders, as determined by them, when executed to such large dimensions, have the happiest effect. But when used for small buildings, porticos, porches, etc., especially in country places, they are rather heavy and clumsy; in such cases, more slender proportions will be found to produce a better effect. The English cottage-style is rather more appropriate, and is becoming extensively practised for small buildings in the country.

47.—Expression.—Every building should manifest its destination. If it be intended for national purposes, it should be magnificent—grand; for a private residence, neat and modest; for a banqueting-house, gay and splendid; for a monument or cemetery, gloomy—melancholy; or, if for a church, majestic and graceful—by some it has been said, “somewhat dark and gloomy, as being favorable to a devotional state of feeling;” but such impressions can only result from a misapprehension of the nature of true devotion. “Her ways are ways of *pleasantness*, and all her paths are peace.” The church should rather be a type of that brighter world to which it leads. Simply for purposes of contemplation, however, the glare of the noonday light should be excluded, that the worshipper may, with Milton—

“Love the high, embowèd roof,
With antique pillars massy proof,
And storied windows richly dight,
Casting a dim, religious light.”

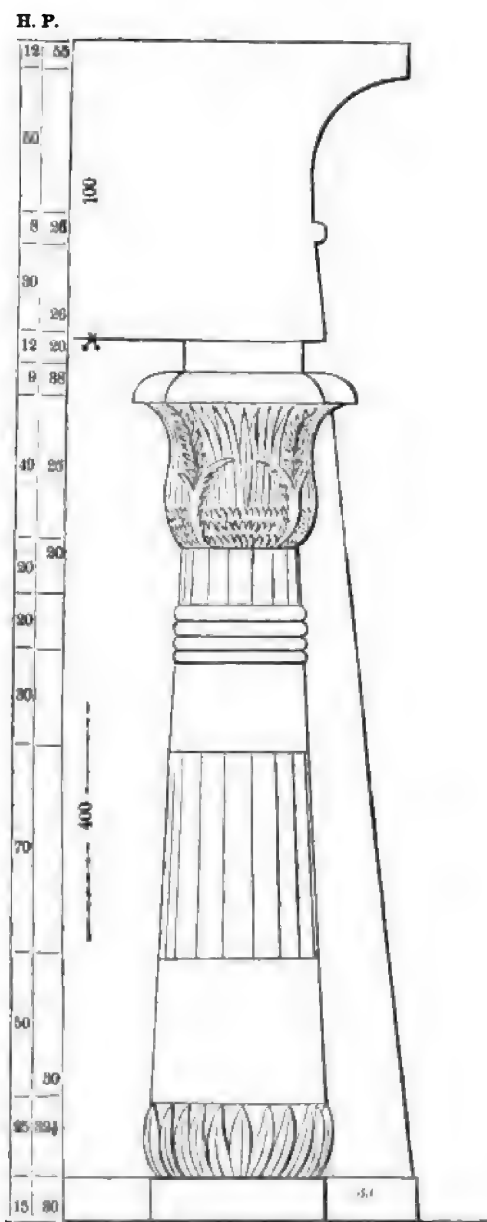


Fig. 13.—EGYPTIAN ARCHITECTURE.

However happily the several parts of an edifice may be disposed, and however pleasing it may appear as a whole, yet much depends upon its *site*, as also upon the character and style of the structures in its immediate vicinity, and the degree of cultivation of the adjacent country. A splendid country-seat should have the out-houses and fences in the same style with itself, the trees and shrubbery neatly trimmed, and the grounds well cultivated.

48.—Durability.—Europeans express surprise that we build so much with wood. And yet, in a new country, where wood is plenty, that this should be so is no cause for wonder. Still the practice should not be encouraged. Buildings erected with brick or stone are far preferable to those of wood: they are more durable; not so liable to injury by fire, nor to need repairs; and will be found in the end quite as economical. A wooden house is suitable for a temporary residence only; and those who would bequeath a dwelling to their children will endeavor to build with a more durable material. Wooden cornices and gutters, attached to brick houses, are objectionable—not only on account of their frail nature, but also because they render the building liable to destruction by fire.

49.—Dwelling-Houses: are built of various dimensions and styles, according to their destination; and to give designs and directions for their erection, it is necessary to know their situation and object. A dwelling intended for a gardener would require very different dimensions and arrangements from one intended for a retired gentleman—with his servants, horses, etc.; nor would a house designed for the city be appropriate for the country. For city houses, arrangements that would be convenient for one family might be very inconvenient for two or more. *Figs. 14, 15, 16, 17, 18, and 19* represent the *ichnographical projection*, or ground-plan, of the floors of an ordinary city house, designed to be occupied by one family only. *Fig. 21* is an *elevation*, or front view, of the same house. All these plans are drawn at the same scale—which is that at the bottom of *Fig. 21*.

Fig. 14 is a Plan of the Under-Cellar.

- a*, is the coal-vault, 6 by 10 feet.
- b*, is the furnace for heating the house.
- c, d*, are front and rear areas.

Fig. 15 is a Plan of the Basement.

- a*, is the library, or ordinary dining-room, 15 by 20 feet.
- b*, is the kitchen, 15 by 22 feet.
- c*, is the store-room, 6 by 9 feet.
- d*, is the pantry, 4 by 7 feet.
- e*, is the china closet, 4 by 7 feet.
- f*, is the servants' water-closet.
- g*, is a closet.
- h*, is a closet with a dumb-waiter to the first story above.
- i*, is an ash closet under the front stoop.
- j*, is the kitchen-range.
- k*, is the sink for washing and drawing water.
- l*, are wash-trays.

Fig. 16 is a Plan of the First Story.

- a*, is the parlor, 15 by 34 feet.
- b*, is the dining-room, 16 by 23 feet.
- c*, is the vestibule.
- c*, is the closet containing the dumb-waiter from the basement.
- f*, is the closet containing butler's sink.
- g, g*, are closets.
- h*, is a closet for hats and cloaks.
- i, j*, are front and rear balconies.

Fig. 17 is the Second Story.

- a, a*, are chambers, 15 by 13 feet.
- b*, is a bed-room, $7\frac{1}{2}$ by 13 feet.
- c*, is the bath-room, $7\frac{1}{2}$ by 13 feet.
- d, d*, are dressing-rooms, 6 by $7\frac{1}{2}$ feet.
- e, e*, are closets.
- f, f*, are wardrobes.
- g, g*, are cupboards.

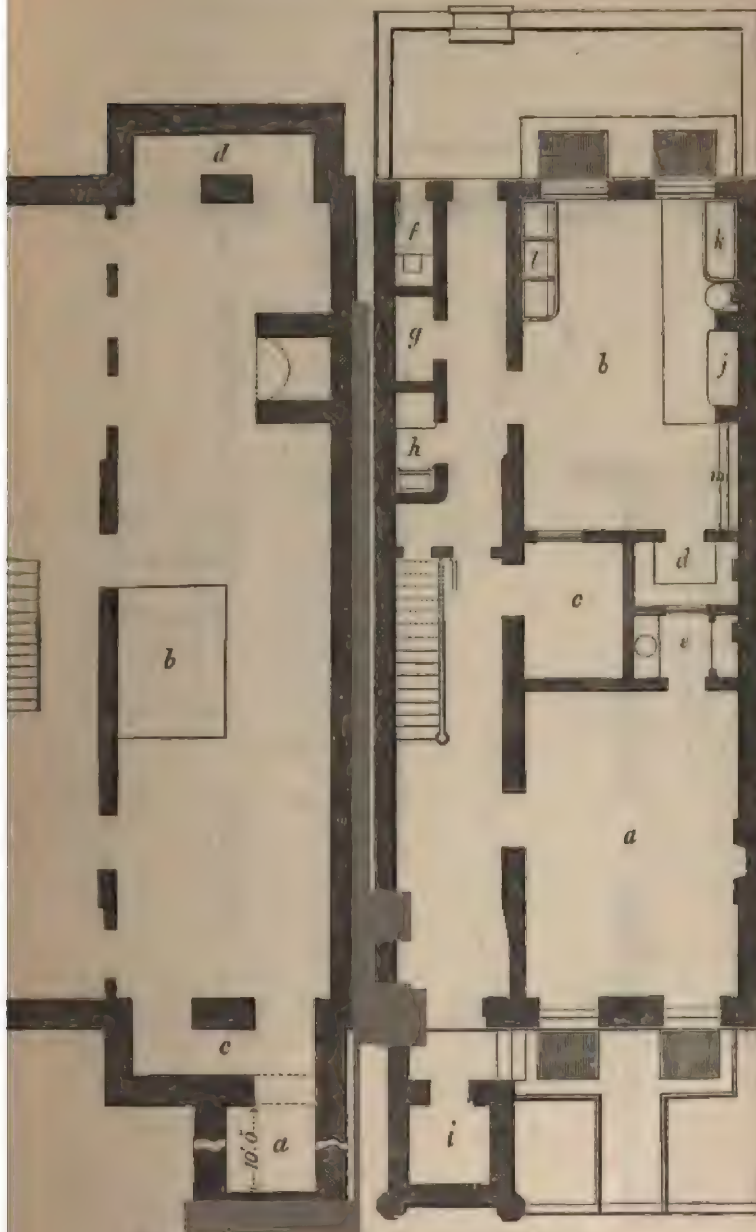


FIG. 14.
UNDERCELLAR.

CITY DWELLING.

FIG. 15.
BASEMENT.

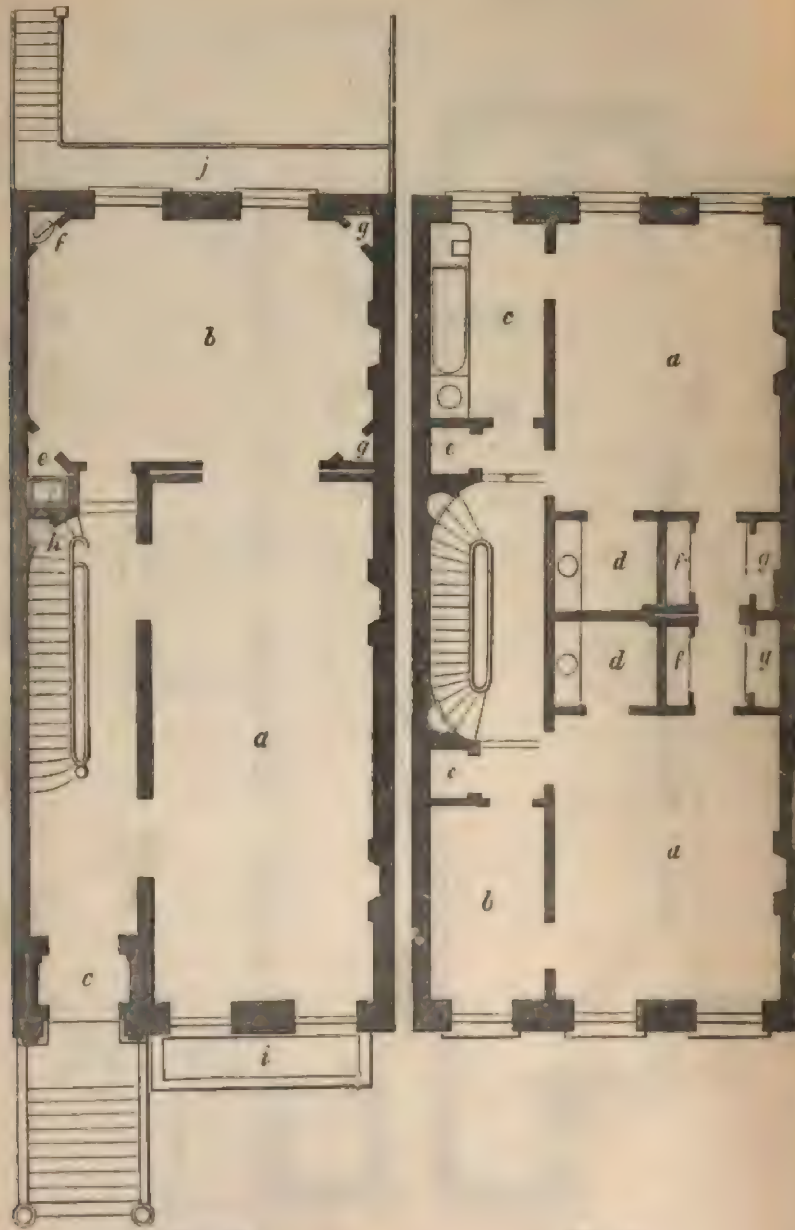


FIG. 16.
FIRST STORY.

CITY DWELLING.

FIG. 17.
SECOND STORY.

Fig. 18 is the Third Story.

- a, a,* are chambers, 15 by 19 feet.
b, b, are bed-rooms, $7\frac{1}{2}$ by 13 feet.
c, c, are closets.
d, is a linen-closet, 5 by 7 feet.

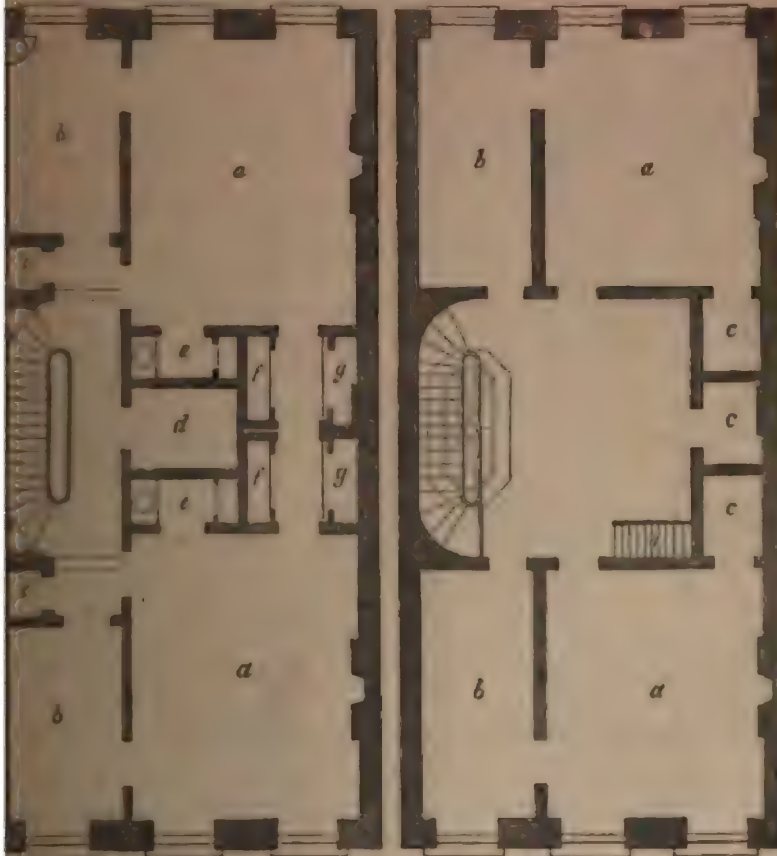


FIG. 18.
THIRD STORY.

CITY DWELLING.

FIG. 19.
FOURTH STORY.

- c, c,* are dressing-closets.
f, f, are wardrobes.
g, g, are cupboards.

Fig. 19 is the Fourth Story.

- a, a,* are chambers, 14 by 17 feet.

b, b, are bed-rooms, $8\frac{1}{2}$ by 17 feet.

c, c, c, are closets.

d, is the step-ladder to the roof.

Fig. 20 is the Section of the House showing the heights of the several stories.

Fig. 21 is the Front Elevation.

The size of the house is 25 feet front by 55 feet deep; this is about the average depth, although some are extended to 60 and 65 feet in depth.

These are introduced to give some general ideas of the principles to be followed in designing city houses. In placing the chimneys in the parlors, set the chimney-breasts equidistant from the ends of the room. The basement chimney-breasts may be placed nearly in the middle of the side of the room, as there is but one flue to pass through the chimney-breast above; but in the second story, as there are two flues; one from the basement and one from the parlor, the breast will have to be placed nearly perpendicular over the parlor breast, so as to receive the flues within the jambs of the fire-place. As it is desirable to have the chimney-breast as near the middle of the room as possible, it may be placed a few inches towards that point from over the breast below. So in arranging those of the stories above, always make provision for the flues from below.

50.—Arranging the Stairs and Windows.—There should be at least as much room in the passage at the side of the stairs as upon them; and in regard to the length of the passage in the second story, there must be room for the doors which open from each of the principal rooms into the hall, and more if the stairs require it. Having assigned a position for the stairs of the second story, now generally placed in the centre of the depth of the house, let the *winders* of the other stories be placed perpendicularly over and under them; and be careful to provide for head-room. To ascertain this, when it is doubtful, it is well to draw a vertical section of the whole stairs; but in ordinary cases this is not

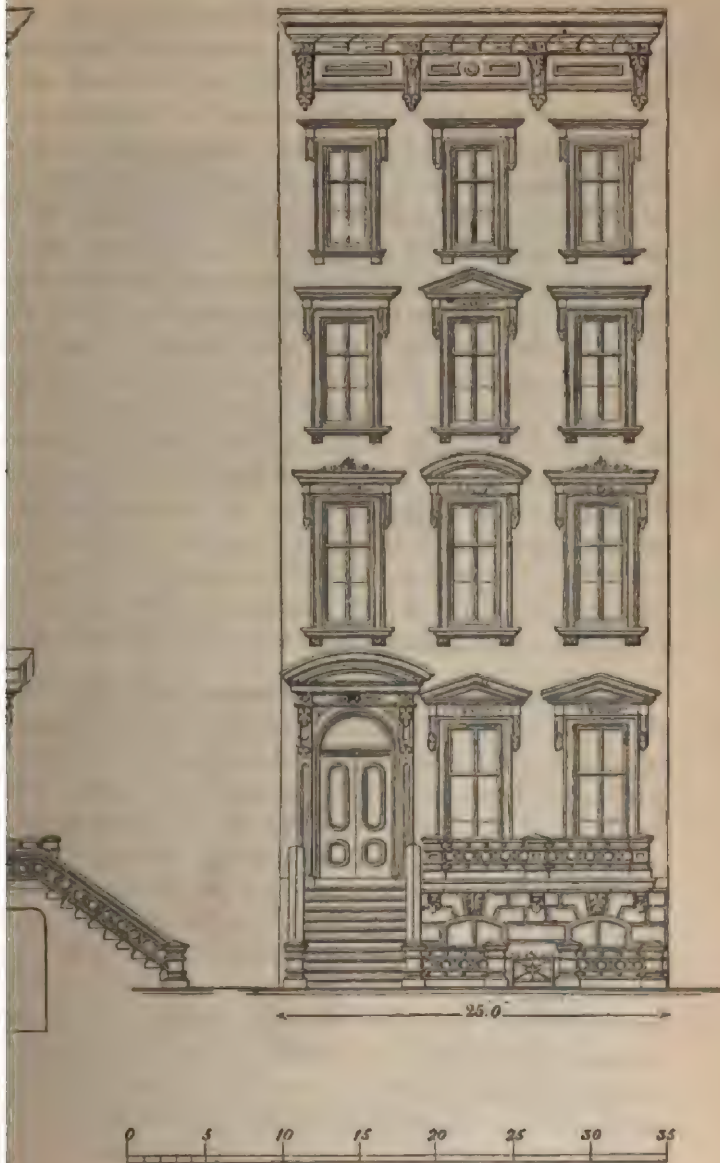


FIG. 21.
ELEVATION.

CITY DWELLING.

necessary. To dispose the windows properly, the middle window of each story should be exactly in the middle of the front; but the pier between the two windows which light the parlor should be in the centre of that room; because when chandeliers or any similar ornaments hang from the centre-pieces of the parlor ceilings, it is important, in order to give the better effect, that the pier-glasses at the front and rear be in a range with them. If both these objects cannot be attained, an approximation to each must be attempted. The piers should in no case be less in width than the window openings, else the blinds or shutters, when thrown open, will interfere with one another; in general practice, it is well to make the outside piers $\frac{3}{4}$ of the width of one of the middle piers. When this is desirable, deduct the amount of the three openings from the width of the front, and the remainder will be the amount of the width of all the piers; divide this by 10, and the product will be $\frac{1}{4}$ of a middle pier; and then, if the parlor arrangements do not interfere, give twice this amount to each corner pier, and three times the same amount to each of the middle piers.

51.—Principles of Architecture.—To build well requires close attention and much experience. The science of building is the result of centuries of study. Its progress towards perfection must have been exceedingly slow. In the construction of the first frail and rude habitations of men, the primary object was, doubtless, utility—a mere shelter from sun and rain. But as successive storms shattered his poor tenement, man was taught by experience the necessity of building with an idea to durability. And as the symmetry, proportion, and beauty of nature met his admiring gaze, contrasting so strangely with the misshapen and disproportioned work of his own hands, he was led to make gradual changes, till his abode was rendered not only commodious and durable, but pleasant in its appearance; and building became a fine art, having utility for its basis.

52.—Arrangement.—In all designs for buildings of importance, utility, durability, and beauty, the first great principles, should be pre-eminent. In order that the edifice be



CHATEAU OF CHAMFORD.

THE
PUBLIC
ASTOR, LENOX
TILDEN FOUNDATION

useful, commodious, and comfortable, the arrangement of the apartments should be such as to fit them for their several destinations; for public assemblies, oratory, state, visitors, retiring, eating, reading, sleeping, bathing, dressing, etc.—these should each have its own peculiar form and situation. To accomplish this, and at the same time to make their relative situation agreeable and pleasant, producing regularity and harmony, require in some instances much skill and sound judgment. Convenience and regularity are very important, and each should have due attention; yet when both cannot be obtained, the latter should in most cases give place to the former. A building that is neither convenient nor regular, whatever other good qualities it may possess, will be sure of disapprobation.

53.—Ventilation.—Attention should be given to such arrangements as are calculated to promote health: among these, *ventilation* is by no means the least. For this purpose, the ceilings of the apartments should have a respectable height; and the sky-light, or any part of the roof that can be made movable, should be arranged with cord and pulleys, so as to be easily raised and lowered. Small openings near the ceiling, that may be closed at pleasure, should be made in the partitions that separate the rooms from the passages—especially for those rooms which are used for sleeping apartments. All the apartments should be so arranged as to secure their being easily kept *dry* and *clean*. In dwellings, suitable apartments should be fitted up for *bathing* with all the necessary apparatus for conveying water.

54.—Stability.—To secure this, an edifice should be, designed upon well-known geometrical principles: such as science has demonstrated to be necessary and sufficient for firmness and durability. It is well, also, that it have the *appearance* of stability as well as the *reality*; for should it seem tottering and unsafe, the sensation of fear, rather than those of admiration and pleasure, will be excited in the beholder. To secure certainty and accuracy in the application of those principles, a knowledge of the strength and

other properties of the materials used is indispensable ; and in order that the whole design be so made as to be capable of execution, a practical knowledge of the requisite mechanical operations is quite important.

55.—Decoration.—The elegance of a design, although chiefly depending upon a just proportion and harmony of the parts, will be promoted by the introduction of ornaments, provided this be judiciously performed ; for enrichments should not only be of a proper character to suit the style of the building, but should also have their true position, and be bestowed in proper quantity. The most common fault, and one which is prominent in Roman architecture, is an excess of enrichment : an error which is carefully to be guarded against. But those who take the Grecian models for their standard will not be liable to go to that extreme. In ornamenting a cornice, or any other assemblage of mouldings, at least every alternate member should be left plain ; and those that are near the eye should be more finished than those which are distant. Although the characteristics of good architecture are utility and elegance, in connection with durability, yet some buildings are designed expressly for use, and others again for ornament : in the former, utility, and in the latter, beauty, should be the governing principle.

56.—Elementary Parts of a Building.—The builder should be acquainted with the principles upon which the essential, elementary parts of a building are founded. A scientific knowledge of these will insure certainty and security, and enable the mechanic to erect the most extensive and lofty edifices with confidence. The more important parts are the foundation, the column, the wall, the lintel, the arch, the vault, the dome, and the roof. A separate description of the peculiarities of each would seem to be necessary, and cannot perhaps be better expressed than in the following language of a modern writer on this subject, slightly modified :

THE TOWER—PLACE OF THE CLOCK TOWER.



THE
PUBLIC
ASTOR, LENOX
TILDEN FOUNDATION

57.—The Foundation: of a building should be begun at a certain depth in the earth, to secure a solid basis, below the reach of frost and common accidents. The most solid basis is rock, or gravel which has not been moved. Next to these are clay and sand, provided no other excavations have been made in the immediate neighborhood. From this basis a stone wall is carried up to the surface of the ground, and constitutes the foundation. Where it is intended that the superstructure shall press unequally, as at its piers, chimneys, or columns, it is sometimes of use to occupy the space between the points of pressure by an inverted arch. This distributes the pressure equally, and prevents the foundation from springing between the different points. In loose or muddy situations, it is always unsafe to build, unless we can reach the solid bottom below. In salt marshes and flats, this is done by depositing timbers, or driving wooden piles into the earth, and raising walls upon them. The preservative quality of the salt will keep these timbers unimpaired for a great length of time, and makes the foundation equally secure with one of brick or stone.

58.—The Column, or Pillar: is the simplest member in any building, though by no means an essential one to all. This is a perpendicular part, commonly of equal breadth and thickness, not intended for the purpose of enclosure, but simply for the support of some part of the superstructure. The principal force which a column has to resist is that of perpendicular pressure. In its shape, the shaft of a column should not be exactly cylindrical, but, since the lower part must support the weight of the superior part, in addition to the weight which presses equally on the whole column, the thickness should gradually decrease from bottom to top. The outline of columns should be a little curved, so as to represent a portion of a very long spheroid, or paraboloid, rather than of a cone. This figure is the joint result of two calculations, independent of beauty of appearance. One of these is, that the form best adapted for stability of base is that of a cone; the other is, that the figure,

which would be of equal strength throughout for supporting a superincumbent weight, would be generated by the revolution of two parabolas round the axis of the column, the vertices of the curves being at its extremities. The swell of the shafts of columns was called the *entasis* by the ancients. It has been lately found that the columns of the Parthenon, at Athens, which have been commonly supposed straight, deviate about an inch from a straight line, and that their greatest swell is at about one third of their height. Columns in the antique orders are usually made to diminish one sixth or one seventh of their diameter, and sometimes even one fourth. The Gothic pillar is commonly of equal thickness throughout.

59.—The Wall: another elementary part of a building, may be considered as the lateral continuation of the column, answering the purpose both of enclosure and support. A wall must diminish as it rises, for the same reasons, and in the same proportion, as the column. It must diminish still more rapidly if it extends through several stories, supporting weights at different heights. A wall, to possess the greatest strength, must also consist of pieces, the upper and lower surfaces of which are horizontal and regular, not rounded nor oblique. The walls of most of the ancient structures which have stood to the present time are constructed in this manner, and frequently have their stones bound together with bolts and clamps of iron. The same method is adopted in such modern structures as are intended to possess great strength and durability, and, in some cases, the stones are even dovetailed together, as in the lighthouses at Eddystone and Bell Rock. But many of our modern stone walls, for the sake of cheapness, have only one face of the stones squared, the inner half of the wall being completed with brick; so that they can, in reality, be considered only as brick walls faced with stone. Such walls are said to be liable to become convex outwardly, from the difference in the shrinking of the cement. *Rubble* walls are made of rough, irregular stones, laid in mortar. The stones should be broken, if possible, so as to produce horizontal

surfaces. The *coffer* walls of the ancient Romans were made by enclosing successive portions of the intended wall in a box, and filling it with stones, sand, and mortar promiscuously. This kind of structure must have been extremely insecure. The Pantheon and various other Roman buildings are surrounded with a double brick wall, having its vacancy filled up with loose bricks and cement. The whole has gradually consolidated into a mass of great firmness.

60.—The Reticulated Wall: of the Romans—composed of bricks with oblique surfaces—would, at the present day, be thought highly unphilosophical. Indeed, they could not long have stood, had it not been for the great strength of their cement. Modern brick walls are laid with great precision, and depend for firmness more upon their position than upon the strength of their cement. The bricks being laid in horizontal courses, and continually overlaying each other, or *breaking joints*, the whole mass is strongly interwoven, and bound together. Wooden walls, composed of timbers covered with boards, are a common but more perishable kind. They require to be constantly covered with a coating of a foreign substance, as paint or plaster, to preserve them from spontaneous decomposition. In some parts of France, and elsewhere, a kind of wall is made of earth, rendered compact by ramming it in moulds or cases. This method is called building in *pisé*, and is much more durable than the nature of the material would lead us to suppose. Walls of all kinds are greatly strengthened by angles and curves, also by projections, such as pilasters, chimneys, and buttresses. These projections serve to increase the breadth of the foundation, and are always to be made use of in large buildings, and in walls of considerable length.

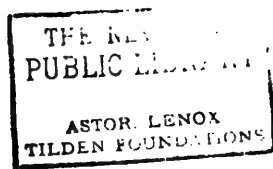
61.—The Lintel, or Beam: extends in a right line over a vacant space, from one column or wall to another. The strength of the lintel will be greater in proportion as its transverse vertical diameter exceeds the horizontal, the strength being always as the square of the depth. The *floor* is the lateral continuation or connection of beams by means of a covering of boards.

62.—The Arch : is a transverse member of a building, answering the same purpose as the lintel, but vastly exceeding it in strength. The arch, unlike the lintel, may consist of any number of constituent pieces, without impairing its strength. It is, however, necessary that all the pieces should possess a uniform shape,—the shape of a portion of a wedge,—and that the joints, formed by the contact of their surfaces, should point towards a common centre. In this case, no one portion of the arch can be displaced or forced inward; and the arch cannot be broken by any force which is not sufficient to crush the materials of which it is made. In arches made of common bricks, the sides of which are parallel, any *one* of the bricks might be forced inward, were it not for the adhesion of the cement. Any *two* of the bricks, however, by the disposition of their mortar, cannot collectively be forced inward. An arch of the proper form, when complete, is rendered stronger, instead of weaker, by the pressure of a considerable weight, provided this pressure be uniform. While building, however, it requires to be supported by a centring of the shape of its internal surface, until it is complete. The upper stone of an arch is called the *keystone*, but is not more essential than any other. In regard to the shape of the arch, its most simple form is that of the semicircle. It is, however, very frequently a smaller arc of a circle, or a portion of an ellipse.

63.—Hooke's Theory of an Arch.—The simplest theory of an arch supporting itself only is that of Dr. Hooke. The arch, when it has only its own weight to bear, may be considered as the inversion of a chain, suspended at each end. The chain hangs in such a form that the weight of each link or portion is held in equilibrium by the result of two forces acting at its extremities; and these forces, or tensions, are produced, the one by the weight of the portion of the chain below the link, the other by the same weight increased by that of the link itself, both of them acting originally in a vertical direction. Now, supposing the chain inverted, so as to constitute an arch of the same form and weight, the relative situations of the forces will be the same,



VIADUCT AT CHAUMONT.



only they will act in contrary directions, so that they are compounded in a similar manner, and balance each other on the same conditions.

The arch thus formed is denominated a *catenary* arch. In common cases, it differs but little from a circular arch of the extent of about one third of a whole circle, and rising from the abutments with an obliquity of about 30 degrees from a perpendicular. But though the catenary arch is the best form for supporting its own weight, and also all additional weight which presses in a vertical direction, it is not the best form to resist lateral pressure, or pressure like that of fluids, acting equally in all directions. Thus the arches of bridges and similar structures, when covered with loose stones and earth, are pressed sideways, as well as vertically, in the same manner as if they supported a weight of fluid. In this case, it is necessary that the arch should arise more perpendicularly from the abutment, and that its general figure should be that of the longitudinal segment of an ellipse. In small arches, in common buildings, where the disturbing force is not great, it is of little consequence what is the shape of the curve. The outlines may even be perfectly straight, as in the tier of bricks which we frequently see over a window. This is, strictly speaking, a real arch, provided the surfaces of the bricks tend toward a common centre. It is the weakest kind of arch, and a part of it is necessarily superfluous, since no greater portion can act in supporting a weight above it than can be included between two curved or arched lines.

64. — Gothic Arches.— Besides these arches, various others are in use. The *acute* or *lancet* arch, much used in Gothic architecture, is described usually from two centres outside the arch. It is a strong arch for supporting vertical pressure. The *rampant* arch is one in which the two ends spring from unequal heights. The *horseshoe* or *Moorish* arch is described from one or more centres placed above the base line. In this arch, the lower parts are in danger of being forced inward. The *ogee* arch is concavo-convex, and therefore fit only for ornament.

65.—Arch : Definitions ; Principles.—The upper surface is called the *extrados*, and the inner, the *intrados*. The *spring* is where the intrados meets the abutments. The *span* is the distance between the abutments. The wedge-shaped stones which form an arch are sometimes called *voussoirs*, the uppermost being the keystone. The part of a pier from which an arch springs is called the *impost*, and the curve formed by the under side of the voussoirs, the *archivolt*. It is necessary that the walls, abutments, and piers on which arches are supported should be so firm as to resist the lateral *thrust*, as well as vertical pressure, of the arch. It will at once be seen that the lateral or sideway pressure of an arch is very considerable, when we recollect that every stone, or portion of the arch, is a wedge, a part of whose force acts to separate the abutments. For want of attention to this circumstance, important mistakes have been committed, the strength of buildings materially impaired, and their ruin accelerated. In some cases, the want of lateral firmness in the walls is compensated by a bar of iron stretched across the span of the arch, and connecting the abutments, like the tie-beam of a roof. This is the case in the cathedral of Milan and some other Gothic buildings.

66.—An Arcade : or continuation of arches, needs only that the outer supports of the terminal arches should be strong enough to resist horizontal pressure. In the intermediate arches, the lateral force of each arch is counteracted by the opposing lateral force of the one contiguous to it. In bridges, however, where individual arches are liable to be destroyed by accident, it is desirable that each of the piers should possess sufficient horizontal strength to resist the lateral pressure of the adjoining arches.

67.—The Vault : is the lateral continuation of an arch, serving to cover an area or passage, and bearing the same relation to the arch that the wall does to the column. A simple vault is constructed on the principles of the arch, and distributes its pressure equally along the walls or abutments. A complex or *groined* vault is made by two vaults intersecting each other, in which case the pressure is thrown upon

springing points, and is greatly increased at those points. The groined vault is common in Gothic architecture.

68.—The Dome: sometimes called *cupola*, is a concave covering to a building, or part of it, and may be either a segment of a sphere, of a spheroid, or of any similar figure. When built of stone, it is a very strong kind of structure, even more so than the arch, since the tendency of each part to fall is counteracted, not only by those above and below it, but also by those on each side. It is only necessary that the constituent pieces should have a common form, and that this form should be somewhat like the frustum of a pyramid, so that, when placed in its situation, its four angles may point toward the centre, or axis, of the dome. During the erection of a dome, it is not necessary that it should be supported by a centring, until complete, as is done in the arch. Each circle of stones, when laid, is capable of supporting itself without aid from those above it. It follows that the dome may be left open at top, without a keystone, and yet be perfectly secure in this respect, being the reverse of the arch. The dome of the Pantheon, at Rome, has been always open at top, and yet has stood unimpaired for nearly 2000 years. The upper circle of stones, though apparently the weakest, is nevertheless often made to support the additional weight of a lantern or tower above it. In several of the largest cathedrals, there are two domes, one within the other, which contribute their joint support to the lantern, which rests upon the top. In these buildings, the dome rests upon a circular wall, which is supported, in its turn, by arches upon massive pillars or piers. This construction is called building upon *pendentives*, and gives open space and room for passage beneath the dome. The remarks which have been made in regard to the abutments of the arch apply equally to the walls immediately supporting a dome. They must be of sufficient thickness and solidity to resist the lateral pressure of the dome, which is very great. The walls of the Roman Pantheon are of great depth and solidity. In order that a dome in itself should be perfectly secure, its lower parts must not be too nearly vertical, since,

in this case, they partake of the nature of perpendicular walls, and are acted upon by the spreading force of the parts above them. The dome of St. Paul's Church, in London, and some others of similar construction, are bound with chains or hoops of iron, to prevent them from spreading at bottom. Domes which are made of wood depend, in part, for their strength on their internal carpentry. The Halle du Bled, in Paris, had originally a wooden dome more than 200 feet in diameter, and only one foot in thickness. This has since been replaced by a dome of iron. (See *Art.* 235.)

69.—The Roof: is the most common and cheap method of covering buildings, to protect them from rain and other effects of the weather. It is sometimes flat, but more frequently oblique, in its shape. The flat or platform roof is the least advantageous for shedding rain, and is seldom used in northern countries. The *pent* roof, consisting of two oblique sides meeting at top, is the most common form. These roofs are made steepest in cold climates, where they are liable to be loaded with snow. Where the four sides of the roof are all oblique, it is denominated a *hipped* roof, and where there are two portions to the roof, of different obliquity, it is a *curb*, or *mansard* roof. In modern times, roofs are made almost exclusively of wood, though frequently covered with incombustible materials. The internal structure or carpentry of roofs is a subject of considerable mechanical contrivance. The roof is supported by *rafters*, which abut on the walls on each side, like the extremities of an arch. If no other timbers existed except the rafters, they would exert a strong lateral pressure on the walls, tending to separate and overthrow them. To counteract this lateral force, a *tie-beam*, as it is called, extends across, receiving the ends of the rafters, and protecting the wall from their horizontal thrust. To prevent the tie-beam from *sagging*, or bending downward with its own weight, a *king-post* is erected from this beam, to the upper angle of the rafters, serving to connect the whole, and to suspend the weight of the beam. This is called *trussing*. *Queen-posts*

are sometimes added, parallel to the king-post, in large roofs: also various other connecting timbers. In Gothic buildings, where the vaults do not admit of the use of a tie-beam, the rafters are prevented from spreading, as in an arch, by the strength of the buttresses.

In comparing the lateral pressure of a high roof with that of a low one, the length of the tie-beam being the same, it will be seen that a high roof, from its containing most materials, may produce the greatest pressure, as far as weight is concerned. On the other hand, if the weight of both be equal, then the low roof will exert the greater pressure: and this will increase in proportion to the distance of the point at which perpendiculars, drawn from the end of each rafter, would meet. In roofs, as well as in wooden domes and bridges, the materials are subjected to an internal strain, to resist which the cohesive strength of the material is relied on. On this account, beams should, when possible, be of one piece. Where this cannot be effected, two or more beams are connected together by *splicing*. Spliced beams are never so strong as whole ones, yet they may be made to approach the same strength, by affixing lateral pieces, or by making the ends overlay each other, and connecting them with bolts and straps of iron. The tendency to separate is also resisted, by letting the two pieces into each other by the process called *scarfing*. *Mortices*, intended to *truss* or suspend one piece by another, should be formed upon similar principles.

Roofs in the United States, after being boarded, receive a secondary covering of shingles. When intended to be incombustible, they are covered with slates or earthen tiles, or with sheets of lead, copper, or tinned iron. Slates are preferable to tiles, being lighter, and absorbing less moisture. Metallic sheets are chiefly used for flat roofs, wooden domes, and curved and angular surfaces, which require a flexible material to cover them, or have not a sufficient pitch to shed the rain from slates or shingles. Various artificial compositions are occasionally used to cover roofs, the most common of which are mixtures of tar with lime, and sometimes with sand and gravel.—*Ency. Am.* (See *Art.* 202.)

SECTION II.—CONSTRUCTION.

ART. 70.—Construction Essential.—Construction is that part of the Science of Building which treats of the Laws of Pressure and the strength of materials. To the architect and builder a knowledge of it is absolutely essential. It deserves a larger place in a volume of this kind than is generally allotted to it. Something, indeed, has been said upon the styles and principles, by which the best arrangements may be ascertained; yet, besides this, there is much to be learned. For however precise or workmanlike the several parts may be made, what will it avail, should the system of framing, from deficient material, or an erroneous position of its timbers, fail to sustain even its own weight? Hence the necessity for a knowledge of the laws of pressure and the strength of materials. These being once understood, we can with confidence determine the best position and dimensions for the several pieces which compose a floor or a roof, a partition or a bridge. As systems of framing are more or less exposed to heavy weights and strains, and, in case of failure, cause not only a loss of labor and material, but frequently that of life itself, it is very important that the materials employed be of the proper quantity and quality to serve their destination. And, on the other hand, any superfluous material is not only useless, but a positive injury, as it is an unnecessary load upon the points of support. It is necessary, therefore, to know the *least* quantity of material that will suffice for strength. Not the least common fault in framing is that of using an excess of material. Economy, at least, would seem to require that this evil be abated.

Before proceeding to consider the principles upon which a system of framing should be constructed, let us attend to a few of the elementary laws in *Mechanics*, which will be found to be of great value in determining those principles.



INTERIOR OF THE CATHEDRAL, SIENNA.

THE
PUBLIC LIBRARY
ASTOR, LENOX
TILDEN FOUNDATIONS

71.—Laws of Pressure.—(1.) A heavy body always exerts a pressure equal to its own weight in a vertical direction. Example: Suppose an iron ball weighing 100 lbs. be supported upon the top of a perpendicular post (*Fig. 22-A*); then the pressure exerted upon that post will be equal to the weight of the ball, viz., 100 lbs. (2.) But if two inclined posts (*Fig. 22-B*) be substituted for the perpendicular support, the united pressures upon these posts will be more than equal to the weight, and will be in proportion to their position. The farther apart their feet are spread the greater will be the pressure, and *vice versa*. Hence tremendous strains may be exerted by a comparatively small weight. And it follows, therefore, that a piece of timber intended for a strut or post should be so placed that its axis may coincide, as nearly as possible, with the direction of the pressure. The direction of the pressure of the weight *W* (*Fig. 22-B*) is in the vertical line *b d*; and the weight *W* would fall in that line if the two posts were removed; hence the best position for a support for the weight would be in

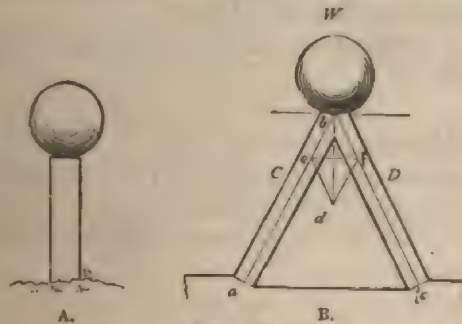


FIG. 22.

that line. But as it rarely occurs in systems of framing that weights can be supported by any single resistance, they requiring generally two or more supports (as in the case of a roof supported by its rafters), it becomes important, therefore, to know the exact amount of pressure any certain weight is capable of exerting upon oblique supports. Now, it has been ascertained that the three lines of a triangle, drawn parallel with the direction of three concurring forces in equilibrium, are in proportion respectively to these

forces. For example, in *Fig. 22-B*, we have a representation of three forces concurring in a point, which forces are in equilibrium and at rest; thus, the weight W is one force, and the resistances exerted by the two pieces of timber are the other two forces. The direction in which the first force acts is vertical—downwards; the direction of the two other forces is in the axis of each piece of timber respectively. These three forces all tend towards the point b .

Draw the axes ab and bc of the two supports; make bd vertical, and from d draw de and df parallel with the axes bc and ba respectively. Then the triangle bde has its lines parallel respectively with the direction of the three forces; thus, bd is in the direction of the weight W , de parallel with the axis of the timber D , and eb is in the direction of the timber C . In accordance with the principle above stated, the lengths of the sides of the triangle bde are in proportion respectively to the three forces aforesaid; thus—

As the length of the line bd

Is to the number of pounds in the weight W ,

So is the length of the line be

To the number of pounds' pressure resisted by the timber C .

Again—

As the length of the line bd

Is to the number of pounds in the weight W ,

So is the length of the line de

To the number of pounds' pressure resisted by the timber D .

And again—

As the length of the line be

Is to the pounds' pressure resisted by C ,

So is the length of the line de

To the pounds' pressure resisted by D .

These proportions are more briefly stated thus—

$$1st. \quad bd : W :: be : P,$$

P being used as a symbol to represent the number of pounds' pressure resisted by the timber C .

$$2d. \quad b d : W :: d e : Q,$$

Q representing the number of pounds' pressure resisted by the timber D .

$$3d. \quad b e : P :: d e : Q.$$

72.—Parallelogram of Forces.—This relation between lines and pressures is applicable in ascertaining the pressures induced by known weights throughout any system of framing. The parallelogram $b e d f$ is called the *Parallelogram of Forces*; the two lines $b e$ and $b f$ being called the *components*, and the line $b d$ the *resultant*. Where it is required to find the *components* from a given resultant (*Fig. 22-B*), the fourth line $d f$ need not be drawn, for the triangle $b d e$ gives the desired result. But when the *resultant* is to be ascertained from given components (*Fig. 28*), it is more convenient to draw the fourth line.

73.—The Resolution of Forces: is the finding of two or more forces which, acting in different directions, shall exactly balance the pressure of any given *single* force. To make a practical application of this, let it be required to ascertain the oblique pressure in *Fig. 22-B*. In this figure the line $b d$ measures half an inch (0.5 inch), and the line $b e$ three tenths of an inch (0.3 inch). Now if the weight W be supposed to be 1200 pounds, then the first stated proportion above,

$$b d : W :: b e : P, \text{ becomes } 0.5 : 1200 :: 0.3 : P.$$

And since the product of the means divided by one of the extremes gives the other extreme, this proportion may be put in the form of an *equation*, thus—

$$\frac{1200 \times 0.3}{0.5} = P.$$

Performing the arithmetical operation here indicated—that is, multiplying together the two quantities above the line, and dividing the product by the quantity under the line—the

quotient will be equal to the quantity represented by P , viz., the pressure resisted by the timber C . Thus—

$$\begin{array}{r} 1200 \\ 0.3 \\ \hline 0.5 \overline{) 360.0} \\ 720 = P. \end{array}$$

The strain upon the timber C is, therefore, equal to 720 pounds; and since, in this case (the two timbers being inclined equally from the vertical), the line ed is equal to the line be , therefore the strain upon the other timber D is also 720 pounds.

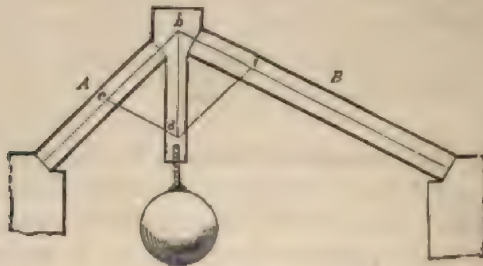


FIG. 23.

74.—Inclination of Supports Unequal.—In *Fig. 23* the pressures in the two supports are unequal. The supports are also unequal in length. The length of the supports, however, does not alter the amount of pressure from the concentrated load supported; but generally long timbers are not so capable of resistance as shorter ones. For, not being so stiff, they bend more readily, and, since the compression is in proportion to the length, they therefore shorten more. To ascertain the pressures in *Fig. 23*, let the weight suspended from bd be equal to two and three quarter tons (2.75 tons). The line bd measures five and a half tenths of an inch (0.55 inch), and the line be half an inch (0.5 inch). Therefore, the proportion

$$bd : W :: be : P \text{ becomes } 0.55 : 2.75 :: 0.5 : P,$$

and
$$\frac{2.75 \times 0.5}{0.55} = P.$$

$$\begin{array}{r} 2.75 \\ 0.5 \\ \hline 0.55) 1.375 (2.5 = P. \\ \underline{1 \ 10} \\ 275 \\ 275 \\ \hline \end{array}$$

The strain upon the timber *A* is, therefore, equal to two and a half tons.

Again, the line *ed* measures four tenths of an inch (0.4 inch); therefore, the proportion

$$bd : W :: ed : Q \text{ becomes } 0.55 : 2.75 :: 0.4 : Q,$$

and
$$\frac{2.75 \times 0.4}{0.55} = Q,$$

$$\begin{array}{r} 2.75 \\ 0.4 \\ \hline 0.55) 1.100 (2 = Q. \\ \underline{1 \ 10} \end{array}$$

The strain upon the timber *B* is, therefore, equal to two tons.

75.—The Strains Exceed the Weights.—Thus the united pressures upon the two inclined supports always exceed the weight. In the last case, $2\frac{1}{2}$ tons exert a pressure of $2\frac{1}{2}$ and 2 tons, equal together to $4\frac{1}{2}$ tons; and in the former case, 1200 pounds exert a pressure of twice 720 pounds, equal to 1440 pounds. The smaller the angle of inclination to the horizontal, the greater will be the pressure upon the supports. So, in the frame of a roof, the strain upon the rafters decreases gradually with the increase of the angle of inclination to the horizon, the length of the rafter remaining the same.

This is true in comparing one system of framing with another; but in a system where the concentrated weight to be supported is not in the middle (see *Fig. 23*), and, in consequence, the supports are not inclined equally, the strain will be *greatest* upon that support which has the greatest inclination to the horizon.

76.—Minimum Thrust of Rafters.—Ordinarily, as in roofs, the load is not concentrated, it being that of the framing itself. Here the *amount* of the load will be in proportion to the length of the rafter, and this will increase with the increase of the angle of inclination, the span remaining the same. So it is seen that in enlarging the angle of inclination to the horizon in order to lessen the oblique thrust, the load is increased in consequence of the elongation of the rafter, thus increasing the oblique thrust. Hence there is an economical angle of inclination. A rafter will have the least oblique thrust when its angle of inclination to the horizon is $35^{\circ} 16'$ nearly. This angle is attained very nearly when the rafter rises $8\frac{1}{2}$ inches per foot, or when the height *BC* (*Fig. 32*) is to the base *AC* as $8\frac{1}{2}$ is to 12, or as 0.7071 is to 1.0.

77.—Practical Method of Determining Strains.—A comparison of pressures in timbers, according to their position, may be readily made by drawing various designs of framing and estimating the several strains in accordance with the parallelogram of forces, always drawing the triangle *bde* so that the three lines shall be parallel with the three forces or pressures respectively. The *length* of the lines forming this triangle is unimportant, but it will be found more convenient if the line drawn parallel with the *known* force is made to contain as many inches as the known force contains pounds, or as many tenths of an inch as pounds, or as many inches as 10 is, or tenths of an inch as tons; or, in general, as many divisions of any convenient scale as there are units of weight or pressure in the known force. If drawn in this manner, then the number of divisions of the same scale found in the other two lines of the triangle will equal the units of pressure or weight of the other two forces respect-

ively, and the pressures sought will be ascertained simply by applying the scale to the lines of the triangle.

For example, in *Fig. 23*, the vertical line bd , of the triangle, measures fifty-five hundredths of an inch (0.55 inch); the line be , fifty hundredths (0.50 inch); and the line ed , forty (0.40 inch). Now, if it be supposed that the vertical pressure, or the weight suspended below bd , is equal to 55 pounds, then the pressure on A will equal 50 pounds, and that on B will equal 40 pounds; for, by the proportion above stated,

$$\begin{aligned} bd : W :: be : P, \\ 55 : 55 :: 50 : 50; \end{aligned}$$

and so of the other pressure.

If a scale cannot be had of equal proportions with the forces, the arithmetical process will be shortened somewhat by making the line of the triangle that represents the *known* weight equal to unity of a decimally divided scale, then the other lines will be measured in tenths or hundredths; and in the numerical statement of the proportions between the lines and forces, the first term being unity, the fourth term will be ascertained simply by multiplying the second and third terms together.

For example, if the three lines are 1, 0.7, and 1.3, and the known weight is 6 tons, then

$$\begin{aligned} bd : W :: be : P \text{ becomes} \\ 1 : 6 :: 0.7 : P = 4.2, \end{aligned}$$

equals four and two tenths tons. Again—

$$\begin{aligned} bd : W :: ed : Q \text{ becomes} \\ 1 : 6 :: 1.3 : Q = 7.8, \end{aligned}$$

equals seven and eight tenths tons.

78.—Horizontal Thrust.—In *Fig. 24*, the weight W presses the struts in the direction of their length; their feet, nn , therefore, tend to move in the direction no , and would so move were they not opposed by a sufficient resistance from the blocks, A and A' . If a piece of each block be cut off at

the horizontal line, an , the feet of the struts would slide away from each other along that line, in the direction na ; but if, instead of these, two pieces were cut off at the vertical line, nb , then the struts would descend vertically. To estimate the horizontal and the vertical pressures exerted by the struts, let no be made equal (upon any scale of equal parts) to the number of tons with which the strut is pressed;

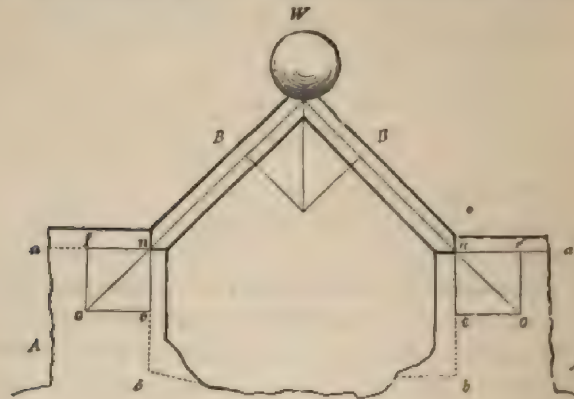


FIG. 24.

construct the parallelogram of forces by drawing oc parallel to an , and of parallel to nb ; then nf (by the same scale) shows the number of tons pressure that is exerted by the strut in the direction na , and nc shows the amount exerted in the direction nb . By constructing designs similar to this, giving various and dissimilar positions to the struts, and then estimating the pressures, it will be found in every case that the horizontal pressure of one strut is exactly equal to that of the other, however much one strut may be inclined more than the other; and also, that the united vertical pressure of the two struts is exactly equal to the weight W . (In this calculation the weight of the timbers has not been taken into consideration, simply to avoid complication to the learner. In practice it is requisite to include the weight of the framing with the load upon the framing.)

Suppose that the two struts, B and B (Fig. 24), were rafters of a roof, and that instead of the blocks, A and A , the walls of a building were the supports: then, to prevent

the walls from being thrown over by the thrust of B and B , it would be desirable to remove the horizontal pressure. This may be done by uniting the feet of the rafters with a

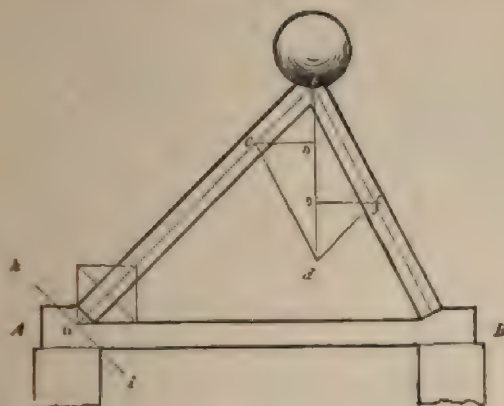


FIG. 25.

rope, iron rod, or piece of timber, as in *Fig. 25*. This figure is similar to the truss of a roof. The horizontal strains on the tie-beam, tending to pull it asunder in the direction of its length, may be measured at the foot of the rafter, as was shown at *Fig. 24*; but it can be more readily and as accurately measured by drawing from f and e horizontal lines to the vertical line, bd , meeting it in o and o ; then fo will be the horizontal thrust at B , and eo at A ; these will be found to equal one another. When the rafters of a roof are thus connected, all tendency to thrust out the walls horizontally is removed, the only pressure on them is in a vertical direction, being equal to the weight of the roof and whatever it has to support. This pressure is beneficial rather than otherwise, as a roof having trusses thus formed, and the trusses well braced to each other, tends to steady the walls.

79.—Position of supports.—*Figs. 26 and 27* exhibit two methods of supporting the equal weights, W and W . Let it be required to measure and compare the strains produced on the pieces, AB and AC . Construct the parallelogram of forces, $ebfd$, according to *Art. 71*. Then bf will show the

strain on AB , and be the strain on AC . By comparing the figures, bd being equal in each, it will be seen that the strains in *Fig. 26* are about three times as great as those in

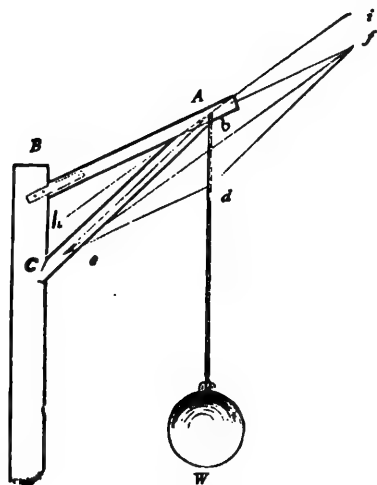


FIG. 26.

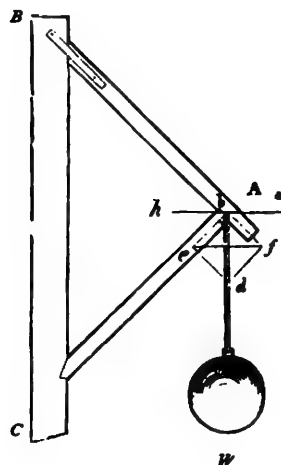


FIG. 27.

Fig. 27; the position of the pieces, AB and AC , in *Fig. 27*, is therefore far preferable.

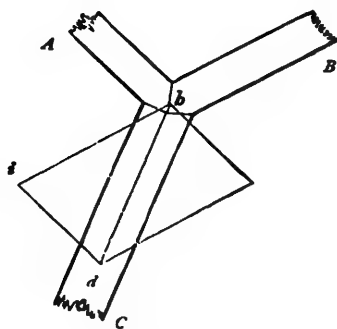


FIG. 28.

80.—The Composition of Forces: consists in ascertaining the direction and amount of *one* force which shall be just capable of balancing *two or more* given forces, acting in different directions. This is only the reverse of the resolu-

tion of forces; and the two are founded on one and the same principle, and may be solved in the same manner. For example, let *A* and *B* (*Fig. 28*) be two pieces of timber, pressed in the direction of their length towards *b*—*A* by a force equal to 6 tons weight, and *B* 9 tons. To find the *direction* and *amount* of pressure they would unitedly exert, draw the lines *b e* and *b f* in a line with the axes of the timbers, and make *b e* equal to the pressure exerted by *B*, viz., 9; also make *b f* equal to the pressure on *A*, viz., 6, and complete the parallelogram of forces *ebfd*; then *bd*, the diagonal of the parallelogram, will be the *direction*, and its length, 9.25, will be the *amount*, of the united pressures of *A* and of *B*. The line *bd* is termed the *resultant* of the two forces *b f* and *b e*. If *A* and *B* are to be supported by one post, *C*, the best position for that post will be in the direction of the diagonal *bd*; and it will require to be sufficiently strong to support the united pressures of *A* and of *B*, which are equal to 9.25 or $9\frac{1}{4}$ tons.

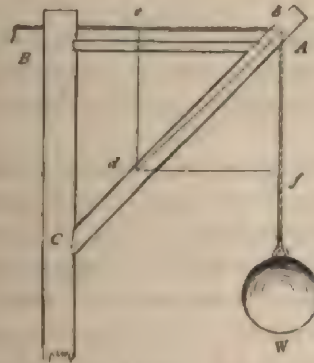


FIG. 29.

81.—Another Example.—Let *Fig. 29* represent a piece of framing commonly called a crane, which is used for hoisting heavy weights by means of the rope, *B b f*, which passes over a pulley at *b*. This, though similar to *Figs. 26* and *27*, is, however, still materially different. In those figures, the strain is in one direction only, viz., from *b* to *d*; but in this there are two strains, from *A* to *B* and from *A* to *W*. The strain in the direction *A B* is evidently equal to that in the

direction AW . To ascertain the best position for the strut AC , make be equal to bf , and complete the parallelogram of forces $ebfd$; then draw the diagonal bd , and it will be the position required. Should the foot, C , of the strut be placed either higher or lower, the strain on AC would be increased. In constructing cranes, it is advisable, in order that the piece BA may be under a gentle pressure, to place the foot of the strut a trifle lower than where the diagonal bd would indicate, but never higher.

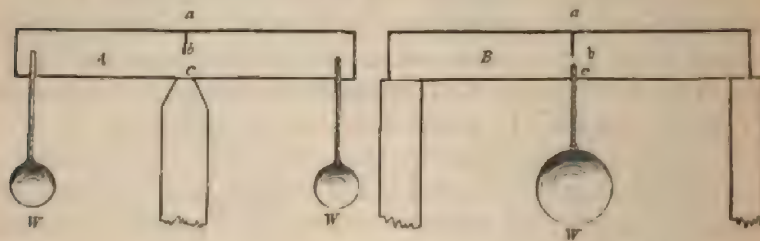


FIG. 30.

82.—Ties and Struts.—Timbers in a state of tension are called *ties*, while such as are in a state of compression are termed *struts*. This subject can be illustrated in the following manner:

Let A and B (Fig. 30) represent beams of timber supporting the weights W , W , and W ; A having but one support, which is in the middle of its length, and B two, one at each end. To show the nature of the strains, let each beam be sawed in the middle from a to b . The effects are obvious: the cut in the beam A will open, whereas that in B will close. If the weights are heavy enough, the beam A will break at b ; while the cut in B will be closed perfectly tight at a , and the beam be very little injured by it. But if, on the other hand, the cuts be made in the bottom edge of the timbers, from c to b , B will be seriously injured, while A will scarcely be affected. By this it appears evident that, in a piece of timber subject to a pressure across the direction of its length, the fibres are exposed to contrary strains. If the timber is supported at both ends, as at B , those from the top edge down to the middle are compressed in the direction

of their length, while those from the middle to the bottom edge are in a state of tension; but if the beam is supported as at *A*, the contrary effect is produced; while the fibres at the middle of either beam are not at all strained. The strains in a framed truss are of the same nature as those in a single beam. The truss for a roof, being supported at each end, has its tie-beam in a state of tension, while its rafters are compressed in the direction of their length. By this, it appears highly important that pieces in a state of tension should be distinguished from such as are compressed, in order that the former may be preserved continuous. A strut may be constructed of two or more pieces; yet, where there are many joints, it will not resist compression so well.

83.—To Distinguish Ties from Struts.—This may be done by the following rule. In *Fig. 22-B*, the timbers *C* and *D* are the sustaining forces, and the weight *W* is the straining force; and if the support be removed, the straining force would move from the point of support *b* towards *d*. Let it be required to ascertain whether the sustaining forces are stretched or pressed by the straining force. *Rule:* Upon the direction of the straining force *b d*, as a diagonal, construct a parallelogram *e b f d* whose sides shall be parallel with the direction of the sustaining forces *C* and *D*; through the point *b* draw a line parallel to the diagonal *e f*; this may then be called the dividing line between ties and struts. Because all those supports which are on that side of the dividing line which the straining force would occupy if unresisted are compressed, while those on the other side of the dividing line are stretched.

In *Fig. 22-B*, the supports are both compressed, being on that side of the dividing line which the straining force would occupy if unresisted. In *Figs. 26* and *27*, in which *AB* and *AC* are the sustaining forces, *AC* is compressed, whereas *AB* is in a state of tension; *AC* being on that side of the line *h i* which the straining force would occupy if unresisted, and *AB* on the opposite side. The place of the latter might be supplied by a chain or rope. In *Fig. 25*, the foot of the rafter at *A* is sustained by two forces, the wall and the tie-

beam, one perpendicular and the other horizontal: the direction of the straining force is indicated by the line ba . The dividing line hi , ascertained by the rule, shows that the wall is pressed and the tie-beam stretched.

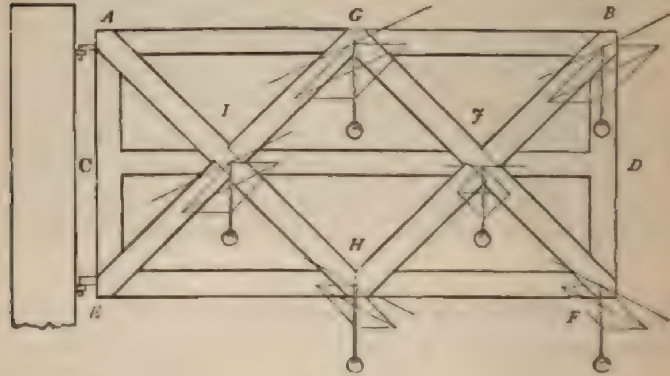


FIG. 31.

84.—Another Example.—Let $EABF$ (Fig. 31) represent a gate, supported by hinges at A and E . In this case, the *straining* force is the weight of the materials, and the direction of course *vertical*. Ascertain the dividing line at the several points, G, B, I, F, H , and F . It will then appear that the force at G is sustained by AG and GE , and the dividing line shows that the former is stretched and the latter compressed. The force at H is supported by AH and HE —the former stretched and the latter compressed. The force at B is opposed by HB and AB , one pressed, the other stretched. The force at F is sustained by GF and FE , GF being stretched and FE pressed. By this it appears that AB is in a state of tension, and EF of compression; also, that AH and GF are stretched, while BH and GE are compressed: which shows the necessity of having AH and GF each in one whole length, while BH and GE may be, as they are shown, each in two pieces. The force at F is sustained by GF and FE , the former stretched and the latter compressed. The piece CD is neither stretched nor pressed, and could be dispensed with if the joinings at F and I could be made

as effectually without it. In case AB should fail, then CD would be in a state of tension.

85.—Centre of Gravity.—The centre of gravity of a uniform prism or cylinder is in its axis, at the middle of its length; that of a triangle is in a line drawn from one angle to the middle of the opposite side, and at one third of the length of the line from that side; that of a right-angled triangle, at a point distant from the perpendicular equal to one third of the base, and distant from the base equal to one third of the perpendicular; that of a pyramid or cone, in the axis and at one quarter of the height from the base.

The centre of gravity of a trapezoid (a four-sided figure having only two of its sides parallel) is in a line joining the centres of the two parallel sides, and at a distance from the longest of the parallel sides equal to the product of the length in the sum of twice the shorter added to the longer of the parallel sides, divided by three times the sum of the two parallel sides. Algebraically thus:

$$d = \frac{l(2a+b)}{3(a+b)},$$

where d equals the distance from the longest of the parallel sides, l the length of the line joining the two parallel sides, and a the shorter and b the longer of the parallel sides.

Example.—A rafter 25 feet long has the larger end 14 inches wide, and the smaller end 10 inches wide: how far from the larger end is the centre of gravity located?

Here $l = 25$, $a = \frac{10}{12}$, and $b = \frac{14}{12}$,

$$\text{hence } d = \frac{l(2a+b)}{3(a+b)} = \frac{25(2 \times \frac{10}{12} + \frac{14}{12})}{3(\frac{10}{12} + \frac{14}{12})} = \frac{25 \times \frac{34}{12}}{3 \times \frac{24}{12}} = \frac{25 \times 34}{3 \times 24} =$$

$$\frac{850}{72} = 11.8 = 11 \text{ feet } 9\frac{5}{8} \text{ inches nearly.}$$

In irregular bodies with plain sides, the centre of gravity may be found by balancing them upon the edge of a prism—upon the edge of a table—in two positions, making a line each time upon the body in a line with the edge of the prism, and the intersection of those lines will indicate the point re-

quired. Or suspend the article by a cord or thread attached to one corner or edge; also from the same point of suspension hang a plumb-line, and mark its position on the face of the article; again, suspend the article from another corner or side (nearly at right angles to its former position), and mark the position of the plumb-line upon its face; then the intersection of the two lines will be the centre of gravity.

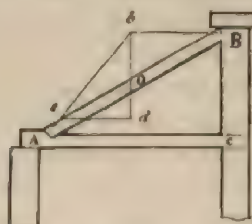


FIG. 32.

86.—Effect of the Weight of Inclined Beams.—An inclined post or strut supporting some heavy pressure applied at its upper end, as at *Fig. 25*, exerts a pressure at its foot in the direction of its length, or nearly so. But when such a beam is loaded uniformly over its whole length, as the rafter of a roof, the pressure at its foot varies considerably from the direction of its length. For example, let *AB* (*Fig. 32*) be a beam leaning against the wall *Bc*, and supported at its foot by the abutment *A*, in the beam *Ac*, and let *o* be the centre of gravity of the beam. Through *o* draw the vertical line *bd*, and from *B* draw the horizontal line *Bb*, cutting *bd* in *b*; join *b* and *A*, and *bA* will be the *direction* of the thrust. To prevent the beam from losing its footing, the joint at *A* should be made at right angles to *bA*. The *amount* of pressure will be found thus: Let *bd* (by any scale of equal parts) equal the number of tons upon the beam *AB*; draw *dc* parallel to *Bb*; then *bc* (by the same scale) equals the pressure in the direction *bA*; and *cd* the pressure against the wall at *B*—and also the horizontal thrust at *A*, as these are always equal in a construction of this kind.

The horizontal thrust of an inclined beam (*Fig. 32*)—the effect of its own weight—may be calculated thus:

Rule.—Multiply the weight of the beam in pounds by

its base, AC , in feet, and by the distance in feet of its centre of gravity, e (see *Art.* 85), from the lower end, at A , and divide this product by the product of the length, AB , into the height, BC , and the quotient will be the horizontal thrust in pounds. This may be stated thus: $H = \frac{d b w}{h l}$,

where d equals the distance of the centre of gravity, e , from the lower end; b equals the base, AC ; w equals the weight of the beam; h equals the height, BC ; l equals the length of the beam; and H equals the horizontal thrust.

Example.—A beam 20 feet long weighs 300 pounds; its centre of gravity is at 9 feet from its lower end; it is so inclined that its base is 16 feet and its height 12 feet: what is the horizontal thrust?

Here $\frac{d b w}{h l}$ becomes $\frac{9 \times 16 \times 300}{12 \times 20} = \frac{9 \times 4 \times 25}{5} = 9 \times 4 \times 5$
 $= 180 = H =$ the horizontal thrust.

This rule is for cases where the centre of gravity does not occur at the middle of the length of the beam, although it is applicable when it *does* occur at the middle; yet a shorter rule will suffice in this case, and it is thus:

Rule.—Multiply the weight of the rafter in pounds by the base, AC (*Fig.* 32), in feet, and divide the product by twice the height, BC , in feet, and the quotient will be the horizontal thrust, when the centre of gravity occurs at the middle of the beam.

If the inclined beam is loaded with an equally distributed load, add this load to the weight of the beam, and use this *total* weight in the rule instead of the weight of the beam. And generally, if the centre of gravity of the combined weights of the beam and load does not occur at the centre of the length of the beam, then the former rule is to be used.

In *Fig.* 33, two equal beams are supported at their feet by the abutments in the tie-beam. This case is similar to the last; for it is obvious that each beam is in precisely the position of the beam in *Fig.* 32. The horizontal pressures at B , being equal and opposite, balance one another; and their horizontal thrusts at the tie-beam are also equal. (See *Art.*

78—*Fig. 25.*) When the height of a roof (*Fig. 33*) is one fourth of the span, or of a shed (*Fig. 32*) is one half the span, the horizontal thrust of a rafter, whose centre of grav-

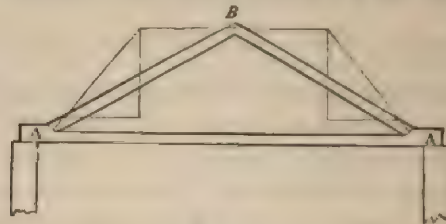


FIG. 33.

ity is at the middle of its length, is exactly equal to the weight distributed uniformly over its surface.

In shed or *lean-to* roofs, as *Fig. 32*, the horizontal pressure will be entirely removed if the bearings of the rafters, as *A* and *B* (*Fig. 34*), are made horizontal—provided, however,

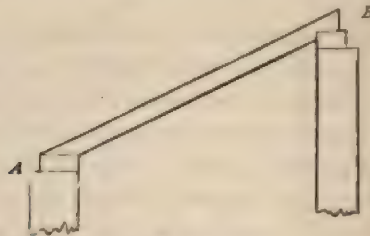


FIG. 34.

that the rafters and other framing do not bend between the points of support. If a beam or rafter have a natural curve, the convex or rounding edge should be laid uppermost.

87.—Effect of Load on Beam.—The strain in a uniformly loaded beam, supported at each end, is greatest at the middle of its length. Hence mortices, large knots, and other defects should be kept as far as possible from that point; and in resting a load upon a beam, as a partition upon a floor-beam, the weight should be so adjusted, if possible, that it will bear at or near the ends.

Twice the weight that will break a beam, acting at the centre of its length, is required to break it when equally

distributed over its length; and precisely the same deflection or *sag* will be produced on a beam by a load equally distributed that five eighths of the load will produce if acting at the centre of its length.

88.—Effect on Bearings.—When a uniformly loaded beam is supported at each end on level bearings (the beam itself being either horizontal or inclined), the amount of pressure caused by the load on each point of support is equal to one half the load; and this is also the case when the load is concentrated at the middle of the beam, or has its centre of gravity at the middle of the beam; but when the load is unequally distributed, or concentrated so that its centre of gravity occurs at some other point than the middle of the beam, then the amount of pressure caused by the load on one of the points of support is unequal to that on the other. The precise amount on each may be ascertained by the following rule.

Rule.—Multiply the weight W (Fig. 35) by its distance, CB , from its nearest point of support, B , and divide the product by the length, AB , of the beam, and the quotient will

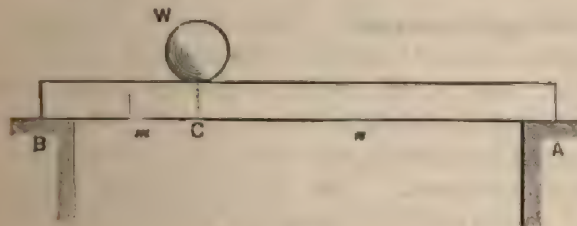


FIG 35.

be the amount of pressure on the *remote* point of support, A . Again, deduct this amount from the weight W , and the remainder will be the amount of pressure on the *near* point of support, B ; or, multiply the weight W by its distance, AC , from the remote point of support, A , and divide the product by the length, AB , and the quotient will be the amount of pressure on the *near* point of support, B .

When l equals the length between the bearings A and B , $n = AC$, $m = CB$, and W = the load: then

$$\frac{Wm}{l} = A = \text{the amount of pressure at } A, \text{ and}$$

$$\frac{Wn}{l} = B = \text{the amount of pressure at } B.$$

Example.—A beam 20 feet long between the bearings has a load of 100 pounds concentrated at 3 feet from one of the bearings: what is the portion of this weight sustained by each bearing?

Here $W = 100$; $n, 17$; $m, 3$; and $l, 20$.

$$\text{Hence } A = \frac{Wm}{l} = \frac{100 \times 3}{20} = 15.$$

$$\text{And } B = \frac{Wn}{l} = \frac{100 \times 17}{20} = 85.$$

Load on $A = 15$ pounds.

Load on $B = 85$ pounds.

Total weight = 100 pounds.

RESISTANCE OF MATERIALS.

89.—Weight—Strength.—Preliminary to designing a roof-truss or other piece of framing, a knowledge of two subjects is essential: one is, the effect of gravity acting upon the various parts of the intended structure; the other, the power of resistance possessed by the materials of which the framing is to be constructed. The former subject having been treated of in the preceding pages, it remains now to call attention to the latter.

90.—Quality of Materials.—Materials used in construction are constituted in their structure either of fibres (threads) or of grains, and are termed, the former fibrous, the latter granular. All woods and wrought metals are fibrous; while cast iron, stone, glass, etc., are granular. The strength of a granular material lies in the power of attraction acting among the grains of matter of which the material is composed, by which it resists any attempt to separate its grains or particles of matter. A fibre of wood or of

wrought metal has a strength by which it resists being compressed or shortened, and finally crushed; also a strength by which it resists being extended or made longer, and finally sundered. There is another kind of strength in a fibrous material: it is the adhesion of one fibre to another along their sides, or the lateral adhesion of the fibres.

91.—Manner of Resisting.—In the strain applied to a post supporting a weight imposed upon it (*Fig. 36*), we have an instance of an essay to shorten the fibres of which the timber is composed. The strength of the timber in this case is termed the *resistance to compression*. In the strain on a piece of timber like a king-post or suspending piece (*A, Fig. 37*), we have an instance of an essay to extend or lengthen the fibres of the material. The strength here exhibited is termed the *resistance to tension*. When a piece of timber is strained like a floor-beam or any horizontal piece



FIG. 36.

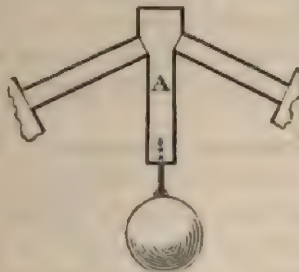


FIG. 37.

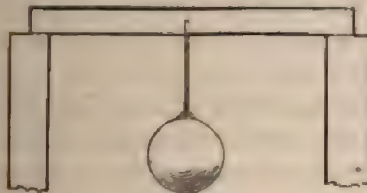


FIG. 38.

carrying a load (*Fig. 38*), we have an instance in which the two strains of compression and tension are both brought into action: the fibres of the upper portion of the beam being compressed, and those of the under part being stretched.

This kind of strength of timber is termed *resistance to cross-strains*. In each of these three kinds of strain to which timber is subjected, the power of resistance is in a measure due to the *lateral* adhesion of the fibres, not so much perhaps in the simple tensile strain, yet to a considerable degree in the compressive and cross strains. But the power of timber, by which it resists a pressure acting compressively in the direction of the length of the fibres, tending to separate the timber by splitting off a part, as in the case of the end of a tie-beam, against which the foot of the rafter presses, is wholly due to the lateral adhesion of the fibres.

92.—Strength and Stiffness.—The *strength* of materials is their power to resist *fracture*, while the *stiffness* of materials is their capability to resist *deflection* or sagging. A knowledge of their *strength* is useful, in order to determine their limits of size to sustain given weights safely; but a knowledge of their *stiffness* is more important, as in almost all constructions it is desirable not only that the load be safely sustained, but that no appearance of weakness be manifested by any sensible deflection or sagging.

93.—Experiments: Constants.—In the investigation of the laws applicable to the resistance of materials, it is found that the dimensions—length, breadth, and thickness—bear certain relations to the weight or pressure to which the piece is subjected. These relations are general; they exist quite independently of the peculiarities of any specific piece of material. These proportions between the dimensions and the load are found to exist alike in wood, metal, stone, and glass, or other material. One law applies alike to all materials; but the capability of materials to resist differs in accordance with the compactness and cohesion of particles, and the tenacity and adhesion of fibres, those qualities upon which depends the superiority of one kind of material over another. The capability of each particular kind of material is ascertained by experiments, made upon several specimens, and an average of the results thus obtained is taken as an index of the capability of that material, and is introduced in the rules as a *constant* number, each specific kind of ma-

terial having its own special *constant*, obtained by experimenting on specimens of that peculiar material. The results of experiments made to test the resistance of various materials useful in construction—their capability to resist the three strains before named—will now be introduced.

94.—Resistance to Compression.—The following table exhibits the results of experiments made to test the resistance to compression of such woods as are in common use in this country for the purposes of construction.

TABLE I.—RESISTANCE TO COMPRESSION.

MATERIAL.	Specific Gravity.	C. To crush fibres longitudinally.	H. To separate fibres by sliding.	T. To crush fibres trans- versely in inch deep.	P. Value of P in Rules Sensible Impres- sion.
		Pounds per inch.	Pounds per inch.	Pounds per inch.	
Georgia Pine	0.613	9500	840	2250	900
Locust	0.762	11700	1160	2800	1120
White Oak	0.774	8000	1250	2650	1060
Spruce	0.369	7850	540	650	260
White Pine.....	0.388	6650	480	800	320
Hemlock	0.423	5700	370	800	320
White Wood.....	0.397	3400	....	800	320
Chestnut	0.491	6700	....	1250	500
Ash	0.517	5850	....	3100	1240
Maple	0.574	8450	....	2700	1080
Hickory	0.877	13750	....	4100	1640
Cherry	0.494	9050	....	2500	1000
Black Walnut	0.421	7800	....	2100	840
Mahogany (St. Domingo).....	0.837	11600	....	5700	2280
" (Bay Wood)	0.439	4900	....	1700	680
Live Oak	0.916	11100	....	6800	2720
Lignum Vitæ	1.282	12100	....	7700	3080

The resistance of timber of the same name varies much; depending as it obviously must on the soil in which it grew on its age before and after cutting, on the time of year when cut, and on the manner in which it has been kept since it was cut. And of wood from the same tree much depends upon its location, whether at the butt or towards the limbs, and whether at the heart or of the sap, or at a point midway from the centre to the circumference of the tree. The

pieces submitted to experiment were of ordinary good quality, such as would be deemed proper to be used in framing. The prisms crushed were generally small, about 2 inches long, and from 1 inch to $1\frac{1}{2}$ inches square; some were wider one way than the other, but all containing in area of cross section from 1 to 2 inches. The weight given in the table is the average weight per superficial inch.

Of the first six woods named, there were nine specimens of each tested; of the others, generally three specimens.

The results for the first six woods named are taken from the author's work on *Transverse Strains*, published by John Wiley & Sons, New York. The results for these six woods, as well as those for all the others named in the table, were obtained by experiments carefully made by the author. The first six woods named were tested in 1874 and 1876, and upon a testing machine, in which the power is transmitted to the pieces tested, by levers acting upon knife-edges. For a description of this machine, see *Transverse Strains*, Art. 704. The woods named in the table, other than the first six, were tested some twenty years since, and upon a hydraulic press, which, owing to friction, gave results too low.

The results, as thus ascertained, were given to the public in the 7th edition of this work, in 1857. In the present edition, the figures in Table I., for these woods, are those which have resulted by adding to the results given by the hydraulic press a certain quantity thought to be requisite to compensate for the loss by friction. Thus corrected, the figures in the table may be taken as sufficiently near approximations for use in the rules,—although not so trustworthy as the results given for the first six woods named, as these were obtained upon a superior testing machine, as above stated.

In the preceding table, the second column contains the specific gravity of the several kinds of wood, showing their comparative density. The weight in pounds of a cubic foot of any kind of wood or other material is equal to its specific gravity multiplied by 62.5, this number being the weight in pounds of a cubic foot of water. The third column

contains the weight in pounds required to crush a prism having a base of one inch square; the pressure applied to the fibres longitudinally. In practice, it is usual never to load material exposed to compression with more than one fourth of the crushing weight, and generally with from one sixth to one tenth only. The fourth column contains the weight in pounds which, applied in line with the length of the fibres, is required to force off a part of the piece, causing the fibres to separate by sliding, the surface separated being one inch square. The fifth column contains the weight in pounds required to crush the piece when the pressure is applied to the fibres transversely, the piece being one inch thick, and the surface crushed being one inch square, and depressed one twentieth of an inch deep. The sixth column contains the value of P in the rules; P being the weight in pounds, applied to the fibres transversely, which is required to make a sensible impression one inch square on the side of the piece, this being the greatest weight that would be proper for a post to be loaded with per inch surface of bearing, resting on the side of the kind of wood set opposite in the table. A greater weight would, in proportion to the excess, crush the side of the wood under the post, and proportionably derange the framing, if not cause a total failure. It will be observed that the measure of this resistance is useful in limiting the load on a post according to the kind of material contained, not in the *post*, but in the *timber upon which* the post presses.

95.—Resistance to Tension.—The resistance of materials to the force of stretching, as exemplified in the case of a rope from which a weight is suspended, is termed the *resistance to tension*. In fibrous materials, this force will be different in the same specimen, in accordance with the *direction* in which the force acts, whether in the direction of the length of the fibres or at right angles to the direction of their length. It has been found that, in hard woods, the resistance in the former direction is about eight to ten times what it is in the latter; and in soft woods, straight grained, such as white pine, the resistance is from sixteen to twenty times. A knowledge of the resistance in the direction of the fibres is the most useful in practice.

In the following table are recorded the results of experiments made to test this resistance in some of the woods in common use, and also in iron, cast and wrought. Each specimen of the woods was turned cylindrical, and about 2 inches diameter, and then the middle part reduced to about $\frac{3}{8}$ of an inch diameter, at the middle of the reduced part, and thence gradually increased toward each end, where it was considerably larger at its junction with the enlarged end. The results, in the case of the iron and of the first six woods named, are taken from the author's work, *Transverse Strains*, Table XX. Experiments were made upon the other three woods named by a hydraulic press, some twenty years since, and the results were first published in the 7th edition of this work, in 1857. These results, owing to friction, were too low. Adding to them what is supposed to be the loss by friction of the machine, the results thus corrected are what are given for these three woods in the following table, and may be taken as fair approximations, but are not so trustworthy as the figures given for the other six woods and for the metals.

TABLE II.—RESISTANCE TO TENSION.

MATERIAL.	Specific Gravity.	T. Pounds required to rupture one inch square.
Georgia Pine	0.65	16000
Locust	0.794	24800
White Oak	0.774	19500
Spruce	0.432	19500
White Pine.....	0.458	12000
Hemlock	0.402	8700
Hickory	0.751	26000
Maple.....	0.694	20000
Ash.....	0.608	15000
Cast Iron, American }	from 6.944	27000
" English }	to 7.584	17000
Wrought Iron, American }	from 7.600	60000
" English }	to 7.792	50000

The figures in the table denote the *ultimate* capability of a bar one inch square, or the weight in pounds required to

produce rupture. Just what portion of this should be taken as the safe capability will depend upon the nature of the strain to which the material is to be exposed. In practice it is found that, through defects in workmanship, the attachments *may* be so made as to cause the strain to act along *one side* of the piece, instead of through its axis; and that in this case fracture will be produced with one third of the strain that can be sustained through the axis. Due to this and other contingencies, it is usual to subject materials exposed to tensile strain with only from one sixth to one tenth of the breaking weight.

96.—Resistance to Transverse Strains.—In the following table are recorded the results of experiments made to test the capability of the various materials named to resist the effects of transverse strain. The figures are taken from the author's work, *Transverse Strains*, before referred to.

TABLE III.—TRANSVERSE STRAINS.

MATERIAL.	B. Resistance to Rupture.	F. Resistance to Flexure.	e. Extension of Fibres.	a. Margin for Safety.
Georgia Pine.....	850	5900	·00109	1·84
Locust.....	1200	5050	·0015	2·20
White Oak.....	650	3100	·00086	3·39
Spruce.....	550	3500	·00098	2·23
White Pine.....	500	2900	·0014	1·71
Hemlock.....	450	2800	·00095	2·35
White Wood.....	600	3450	·00096	2·52
Chestnut.....	480	2550	·00103	2·54
Ash.....	900	4000	·00111	2·82
Maple.....	1100	5150	·0014	2·12
Hickory.....	1050	3850	·0013	2·91
Cherry.....	650	2850	·001563	2·03
Black Walnut.....	750	3900	·00104	2·57
Mahogany (St. Domingo).....	650	3600	·00116	2·16
" (Bay Wood).....	850	4750	·00109	2·28
Cast Iron, American.....	2500	50000		
" English.....	2100	40000		
Wrought Iron, American.....	2600	62000		
" English.....	1900	60000		
Steel, in Bars.....	6000	70000		
Blue Stone Flagging.....	200			
Sand Stone.....	59			
Brick, common.....	33			
" pressed.....	37			
Marble, East Chester.....	147			

The figures in the second column, headed B , denote the weight in pounds required to break a *unit* of the material named when suspended from the middle, the piece being supported at each end. The *unit* of material is a bar one inch square and one foot long between the bearings. The third column, headed F , contains the values of the several materials named as to their resistance to flexure, as explained in Arts. 302-305, *Transverse Strains*. These values of F , as *constants*, are used in the rules. The fourth column, headed e , contains the values of the several materials named, denoting the elasticity of the fibres, as explained in Art. 312, *Transverse Strains*. These values of e , as *constants*, are used in the rules.

The fifth column, headed a , contains for the several materials named the ratio of the resistance to flexure as compared with that to rupture, and which, as *constants* used in the rules, indicate the margin of safety to be given for each kind of material. The figures given in each case show the smallest possible value that may be safely given to a , the factor of safety. In practice it is generally taken higher than the amount given in the table. For example, in the table the value of B , the constant for rupture by transverse strain for spruce, is 550.

Now, if the dimensions of a spruce beam to carry a given weight be computed by the rules, using the constant B , at 550, the beam will be of such a size that the given weight will just break it.

But if, in the computation, instead of taking the full value of B , only a part of it be taken, then the beam will not break immediately; and if the part taken be so small that its effect upon the fibres shall not be sufficient to strain them beyond their limit of elasticity, the beam will be capable of sustaining the weight for an indefinite period; in this case the beam will be loaded by what is termed the *safe weight*. Or, since the value of a for spruce is 2.23 in the table, if, instead of taking B at 550, its full value, only the quotient arising from a division of B by a be taken—or 550 divided by 2.23, which equals 246.6—then the beam will be of sufficient size to carry the load safely. Therefore, while the con-

stant B is to be used for a breaking weight, for a safe load the quotient of $\frac{B}{a}$ is to be used. But, again, if a be taken at its value as given in the table, the computed beam will be loaded up to its limit of safety. So loaded that, if the load be increased only in a small degree, the limit of safety will be passed, and the beam liable, in time, to fail by rupture.

Therefore, as the values of a , in the table, are the smallest possible, it is prudent in practice always to take a larger than the table value. For example, the table value of a for spruce is 2.23, but in practice let it be taken at 3 or 4.

97. — Resistance to Compression.—The resistance of materials to the force of compression may be considered in several ways. Posts having their heights less than ten times their least sides will crush before bending; these belong to one class: another class is that which comprises all posts the height of which is equal to ten times their least sides, or more than ten times; these will bend before crushing. Then there remains to be considered the manner in which the pressure is applied: whether in line with the fibres, or transversely to them; and, again, whether the pressure tends to crush the fibres, or simply to force off a part of the piece by splitting. The various pressures may be comprised in the four classes following, namely:

1st.—When the pressure is applied to the fibres transversely.

2d.—When the pressure is applied to the fibres longitudinally, and so as to split off the part pressed against, causing the fibres to separate by sliding.

3d.—When the pressure is applied to the fibres longitudinally, and on short pieces.

4th.—When the pressure is applied to the fibres longitudinally, and on long pieces.

These four classes will now be considered in their regular order.

98.—Compression Transversely to the Fibres.—In this first class of compression, experiment has shown that the resistance is in proportion to the number of fibres pressed, that is, in proportion to the area. For example, if 5000 pounds is required to crush a prism with a base 1 inch square, it will require 20,000 pounds to crush a prism having a base of 2 by 2 inches, equal to 4 inches area; because 4 times 5000 equals 20000.

Therefore, if any given surface pressed be multiplied by the pressure per inch which the kind of material pressed may be safely trusted with, the product will be the total pressure which may with safety be put upon the given surface. Now, the capability for this kind of resistance is given in column *P*, in Table I., for each kind of material named in the table. Therefore, to find the limit of weight, proceed as follows:

99.—The Limit of Weight.—To ascertain what weight a post may be loaded with, so as not to crush the surface against which it presses, we have—

Rule I.—Multiply the area of the post in inches by the value of *P*, Table I., and the product will be the weight required in pounds; or—

$$W = A P. \quad (1.)$$

Example.—A post, 8 by 10 inches, stands upon a white-pine girder; the area equals $8 \times 10 = 80$ inches. This being multiplied by 320, the value of *P*, Table I., set opposite white pine, the product, 25600, is the required weight in pounds.

100.—Area of Post.—To ascertain what area a post must have in order to prevent the post, loaded with a given weight, from crushing the surface against which it presses, we have—

Rule II.—Divide the given weight in pounds by the value of *P*, Table I., and the quotient will be the area required in inches; or—

$$A = \frac{W}{P}. \quad (2.)$$

Example.—A post standing on a Georgia-pine girder is loaded with 100,000 pounds: what must be its area? The weight, 100000, divided by 900, the value of P , Table I., set opposite Georgia pine, the quotient, 111.11, is the required area in inches. The post may be 10 by $11\frac{1}{4}$, or 10 by 11 inches; or if square each side will be 10.54 inches, or $11\frac{8}{10}$ inches diameter if round.

101.—Rupture by Sliding.—In this the second class of rupture by compression, it has been ascertained by experiment that the resistance is in proportion to the area of the surface separated without regard to the form of the surface. Now, in Table I., column H , we have the *ultimate* resistance to this strain of the several materials named. But to obtain the *safe* load per inch, the ultimate resistance of the table is to be divided by a *factor of safety*, of such value as circumstances may seem to require. Generally this factor may be taken at 3. Then to obtain the safe load for any given case, we have but to multiply the given surface by the ultimate resistance, and divide by the factor of safety; therefore, proceed as follows:

102.—The Limit of Weight.—To ascertain what weight may be sustained safely by the resistance of a given area of surface, when the weight tends to split off the part pressed against by causing, in case of fracture, one surface to slide on the other, we have—

Rule III.—Multiply the area of the surface by the value of H , in Table I. divide by the factor of safety, and the quotient will be the weight required in pounds; or—

$$W = \frac{A H}{a} \quad (3.)$$

Example.—The foot of a rafter is framed into the end of its tie-beam, so that the uncut substance of the tie-beam is 15 inches long from the end of the tie-beam to the joint of the rafter; the tie-beam is of white pine, and is 6 inches thick: what amount of horizontal thrust will this end of the tie-beam sustain, without danger of having the end of

the tie-beam split off? Here the area of surface that sustains the pressure is 6 by 15 inches, equal to 90 inches. This multiplied by 480, the value of H , set opposite to white pine, Table I., and divided by 3, as a factor of safety, gives a quotient of 14400, and this is the required weight in pounds.

103.—Area of Surface.—To ascertain the area of surface that is required to sustain a given weight safely, when the weight tends to split off the part pressed against, by causing, in case of fracture, one surface to slide on the other, we have—

Rule IV.—Divide the given weight in pounds by the value of H , Table I.; multiply the quotient by the factor of safety, and the product will be the required area in inches: or—

$$A = \frac{W' a}{H} \quad (4.)$$

Example.—The load on a rafter causes a horizontal thrust at its foot of 40,000 pounds, tending to split off the end of the tie-beam: what must be the length of the tie-beam beyond the line where the foot of the rafter is framed into it, the tie-beam being of Georgia pine, and 9 inches thick? The weight, or horizontal thrust, 40000, divided by 840, the value of H , Table I., set opposite Georgia pine, gives a quotient of 47.619, and this multiplied by 3, as a factor of safety, gives a product of 142.857. This, the area of surface in inches, divided by 9, the breadth of the surface strained (equal to the thickness of the tie-beam), the quotient, 15.87, is the length in inches from the end of the tie-beam to the rafter joint, say 16 inches.

104.—Tenons and Splices.—A knowledge of this kind of resistance of materials is useful, also, in ascertaining the length of framed tenons, so as to prevent the pin, or key, with which they are fastened from tearing out; and, also, in cases where tie-beams, or other timber under a tensile strain,

are spliced, this rule gives the length of the joggle at each end of the splice.

105.—Stout Posts.—These comprise the third class of objects subject to compression (*Art.* 97), and include all posts which are less than ten diameters high. The resistance to compression, in this class, is ascertained to be directly in proportion to the area of cross-section of the post.

Now, in Table I., column *C*, the *ultimate* resistance to crushing is given for the several kinds of materials named; from which the safe resistance per inch may be obtained by dividing it by a proper factor of safety. Having the safe resistance per inch, the resistance of any given post may be determined by multiplying it by the area of the cross-section of the post. Therefore, proceed as follows:

106.—The Limit of Weight.—To find the weight that can be safely sustained by a post, when the height of the post is less than ten times the diameter if round, or ten times the thickness if rectangular, and the direction of the pressure coinciding with the axis, we have—

Rule V.—Multiply the area of the cross-section of the post in inches by the value of *C*, in Table I.; divide the product by the factor of safety, and the quotient will be the required weight in pounds; or—

$$W = \frac{A C}{a} \quad (5.)$$

Example.—A Georgia-pine post is 6 feet high, and in cross-section 8×12 inches: what weight will it safely sustain? The height of this post, $12 \times 6 = 72$ inches, which is less than 10×8 (the size of the narrowest side) = 80 inches; it therefore belongs to the class coming under this rule. The area = $8 \times 12 = 96$ inches; this multiplied by 9500, the value of *C*, in the table, set opposite Georgia pine, and divided by 6, as a factor of safety, the quotient, 152000, is the weight in pounds required. It will be observed that the weight would be the same for a Georgia-pine post of any height less than

10 times 8 inches = 80 inches = 6 feet 8 inches, provided its breadth and thickness remain the same, 12 and 8 inches.

107.—Area of Post.—To find the area of the cross-section of a post to sustain a given weight safely, the height of the post being less than ten times the diameter if round, or ten times the least side if rectangular, the pressure coinciding with the axis, we have—

Rule VI.—Divide the given weight in pounds by the value of C , in Table I.; multiply the quotient by the factor of safety, and the product will be the required area in inches; or—

$$A = \frac{W a}{C}. \quad (6.)$$

Example.—A weight of 40,000 pounds is to be sustained by a white-pine post 4 feet high: what must be its area of section to sustain the weight safely? Here, 40000 divided by 6650, the value of C , in Table I., set opposite white pine, and the quotient multiplied by 6, as a factor of safety, the product is 36; this, therefore, is the required area, and such a post may be 6 × 6 inches. To find the least side, so that it shall not be less than one tenth of the height, divide the height, reduced to inches, by 10, and make the least side to exceed this quotient. The area divided by the least side so determined will give the wide side. If, however, by this process, the first side found should prove to be the greatest, then the size of the post is to be found by Rule IX., X., or XI.

108.—Area of Round Posts.—In case the post is to be round, its diameter may be found by reference to the Table of Circles in the Appendix, in the column of diameters, opposite to the area of the post to be found in the column of areas, or opposite to the next nearest area. For example, suppose the required area, as just found by the example under Rule VI., is 36: by reference to the column of areas, 35.78 is the nearest to 36, and the diameter set opposite is

6.75, which is a trifle too small. The post may therefore be, say, $6\frac{1}{8}$ inches diameter.

109.—Slender Posts.—When the height of a post is less than ten times its diameter, the resistance of the post to crushing is approximately in proportion to its area of cross-section. But when the height is equal to or more than ten diameters, the resistance per square inch is diminished. The resistance diminishes as the height is increased, the diameter remaining the same (*Transverse Strains*, Art. 643). The strength of a slender post consists in a combination of the resistances of the material to bending and to crushing, and is represented in the following rule:

110.—The Limit of Weight.—To ascertain the weight that can be sustained safely by a post the height of which is at least ten times its least side if rectangular, or ten times its diameter if round, the direction of the pressure coinciding with the axis, we have—

Rule VII.—Divide the height of the post in inches by the diameter, or least side, in inches; multiply the quotient by itself, or take its square; multiply the square by the value of e , in Table III., set opposite the kind of material of which the post is made; to the product add the half of itself; to the sum add unity (or one); multiply this sum by the factor of safety, and reserve the product for use, as below. Now multiply the area of cross-section of the post in inches by the value of C , in Table I., set opposite the material of the post, and divide the product by the above reserved product; the quotient will be the required weight in pounds; or—

$$W = \frac{AC}{a(1 + \frac{1}{2}er^2)}. \quad (7.)$$

Example: A Round Post.—What weight may be safely placed upon a post of Georgia pine 10 inches diameter and 10 feet high, the pressure coinciding with the axis of the post? The height of the post, ($10 \times 12 =$) 120 inches, divided by 10, its diameter, gives a quotient of 12; this multiplied

by itself gives 144, its square; and this by $\cdot 00109$, the value of e for Georgia pine, in Table III., gives $\cdot 15696$; to which adding its half, the sum is $0\cdot 23544$; to which adding unity, the sum is $1\cdot 23544$; and this multiplied by 7, as a factor of safety, the product is $8\cdot 648$, the reserved divisor. Now the area of the post is (see Table of Areas of Circles, in the Appendix, opposite its diameter, 10) $78\cdot 54$; this multiplied by 9500, the value of C for Georgia pine, in Table I., gives a product of 746130; which divided by $8\cdot 648$, the above reserved divisor, gives a quotient of 86278, the required weight in pounds.

Another Example: A Rectangular Post.—What weight may be safely placed upon a white-pine post 10×12 inches, and 15 feet high, the pressure coinciding with the axis of the post? Proceeding according to the rule, we find the height of the post to be 180 inches, which divided by 10, the least side of the post, gives 18; this multiplied by itself gives 324, its square; which multiplied by $\cdot 0014$, the value of e for white pine, in Table III., gives $\cdot 4536$; to which adding its half, the sum is $\cdot 6804$; to which adding unity, the sum is $1\cdot 6804$; and this multiplied by 8, as a factor of safety, the product is $13\cdot 4432$, the reserved divisor. Now the area of the post, $(10 \times 12 =)$ 120 inches, multiplied by 6650, the value of C for white pine, in Table I., gives a product of 798,000, and this divided by $13\cdot 4432$, the above reserved divisor, the quotient, 59360, is the required weight in pounds.

III.—Diameter of the Post: when Round.—To ascertain the size of a round post to sustain safely a given weight, when the height of the post is at least ten times the diameter; the direction of the pressure coinciding with the axis of the post; we have—

Rule VIII.—Multiply the given weight by the factor of safety, and divide the product by $1\cdot 5708$ times the value of C for the material of the post, found in Table I.; reserve the quotient, calling its value G . Now multiply 432 times the value of e for the material of the post, found in Table III., by the square of the height in feet, and by the above quotient G ; to the product add the square of G ; extract the

square root of the sum, and to it add the value of G ; then the square root of this sum will be the required diameter; or—

$$G = \frac{W a}{1.5708 C} \quad (8.)$$

$$d = \sqrt{\sqrt{432 G e L^2 + G^2} + G} \quad (9.)$$

Example.—What should be the diameter of a locust post 10 feet high to sustain safely 40,000 pounds, the pressure coinciding with the axis? Proceeding by the rule, the given weight multiplied by 6, taken as a factor of safety, equals 240,000. Dividing this by 1.5708 times 11700, the value of C for locust, in Table I., the quotient, 13.06, is the value of G , the square of which is 170.53. Now, the value of e for locust, in Table III., is .0015. This multiplied by 432, by 100, the square of the height, and by the above value of G , gives a product of 846.2; which added to 170.53, the above square of G , gives the sum of 1016.73. To 31.89, the square root of this, add the above value of G ; then 6.7, the square root of this sum, is the required diameter of the post. The post therefore requires to be 6.7, say 6½ inches diameter.

112.—Side of the Post : when Square.—To ascertain the side of a square post to sustain safely a given weight, when the height of the post is at least ten times the side; the pressure coinciding with the axis; we have—

Rule IX.—Multiply the given weight by the factor of safety, and divide the product by twice the value of C for the material of the post, found in Table I.; reserve the quotient, calling its value G . Now multiply 432 times the value of e for the material of the post, found in Table III., by the square of the height in feet, and by the above quotient G ; to the product add the square of G ; extract the square root of the sum, and to it add the value of G ; then the square root of this sum will be the required side of the post; or—

$$G = \frac{W a}{2 C} \quad (10.)$$

$$S = \sqrt[4]{\sqrt{432 G e l^3 + G^2} + G}. \quad (11.)$$

Example.—What should be the side of a Georgia-pine square post 15 feet high to sustain safely 50,000 pounds, the pressure coinciding with the axis of the post? Proceeding by the rule, 50,000 pounds multiplied by 6, as a factor of safety, gives 300,000; this divided by 2×9500 (the value of C) = 19,000, the quotient, 15.789, is the value of G . The value of e for Georgia pine is .00109; the square of the height is 225; then, 432 times .00109 by 225 and by 15.789 (the above value of G) gives a product of 1672.86; the square of G equals 249.31; this added to 1672.86 gives a sum of 1922.17, the square root of which is 43.843; which added to 15.789, the value of G , gives 59.632, the square root of which is 7.722, the required side of the post. The post, therefore, requires to be, say, $7\frac{3}{4}$ inches square.

113.—Thickness of a Rectangular Post.—This may be definitely ascertained when the proportion which the thickness shall bear to the breadth shall have been previously determined. For example, when the proportion is as 6 to 8, then $1\frac{1}{3}$ times 6 equals 8, and the proportion is as 1 to $1\frac{1}{3}$; again, when the proportion is as 8 to 10, then $1\frac{1}{4}$ times 8 equals 10, and in this case the proportion is as 1 to $1\frac{1}{4}$. Let the latter figure of the ratio 1 to $1\frac{1}{3}$, 1 to $1\frac{1}{4}$, etc., be called n , or so that the proportion shall be as 1 to n , then—

To ascertain the thickness of a post to sustain safely a given weight, when the height is at least ten times the thickness; the action of the weight coinciding with the axis; we have—

Rule X.—Multiply the given weight by the factor of safety, and divide the product by twice the value of C for the material of the post, found in Table I., multiplied by n , as above explained; reserve the quotient, calling it G . Now multiply 432 times the value of e for the material of the post, found in Table III., by the square of the height in feet, and by the above quotient G ; to the product add the square of G ; extract the square root of the sum, and to it add the value

If G ; then the square root of this sum will be the required thickness of the post; or—

$$G = \frac{W a}{2 C n}. \quad (12.)$$

$$t = \sqrt{432 G \epsilon l^2 + G^2} + G. \quad (13.)$$

Example.—What should be the thickness of a white-pine rectangular post 20 feet high to sustain safely 30,000 pounds, the pressure coinciding with the axis, and the proportion between the thickness and breadth to be as 10 to 12, or as 1 to 1.2? Proceeding according to the rule, we have the product of 30000, the given weight, by 6, as a factor of safety, equals 180000; this divided by twice $C \times n$, or $2 \times 6650 \times 1.2$, = 15960 gives a quotient of 11.278, the value of G . Then, we have $\epsilon = .0014$, the square of the height equals 400; therefore, $432 \times .0014 \times 400 \times 11.278 = 2728.43$. To this adding 127.2, the square of G , we have 2855.63, the square root of which is 53.438; and this added to G gives 64.716, the square root of which is 8.045, the required thickness of the post. Now, since the thickness is in proportion to the breadth as 1 to 1.2, therefore $8.045 \times 1.2 = 9.654$, the required width. The post, therefore, may be made $8 \times 9\frac{1}{2}$ inches.

114.—Breadth of a Rectangular Post.—When the thickness of a post is fixed, and the breadth required; then, to ascertain the breadth of a rectangular post to sustain safely a given weight, the direction of the pressure of which coincides with the axis of the post, we have—

Rule XI.—Divide the height in inches by the given thickness, and multiply the quotient by itself, or take its square; multiply this square by the value of ϵ for the material of the post, found in Table III.; to the product add its half, and to the sum add unity; multiply this sum by the given weight, and by the factor of safety; divide the product by the product of the given thickness multiplied by the value of C for

the material of the post, found in Table I., and the quotient will be the required breadth; or—

$$b = \frac{W a (1 + \frac{3}{2} e r^2)}{C t}. \quad (14.)$$

Example.—What should be the breadth of a spruce post 18 feet high and 6 inches thick to sustain safely 25,000 pounds, the pressure coinciding with the axis of the post? According to the rule, 216 ($= 12 \times 18$), the height in inches, divided by 6, the given thickness, gives a quotient of 36, the square of which is 1296; the value of e for spruce is .00098; this multiplied by 1296, the above square, equals 1.27; which increased by .635, its half, amounts to 1.905; this increased by unity, the sum is 2.905; which multiplied by the given weight, and by the factor of safety, gives a product of 435749; and this divided by 6 (the given thickness) times 7850 (the value of C for spruce) $= 47100$, gives a quotient of 9.2516, the required breadth of the post. The post, therefore, requires to be $6 \times 9\frac{1}{4}$ inches.

Observe that when the breadth obtained by the rule is less than the given thickness, the result shows that the conditions of the case are incompatible with the rule, and that a new computation must be made; taking now for the breadth what was before understood to be the thickness, and proceeding in this case, by Rule X., to find the thickness.

115.—Resistance to Tension.—In *Art.* 95 are recorded the results of experiments made to test the resistance of various materials to tensile strain, showing in each case the capability to such resistance per square inch of sectional area. The action of materials in resisting a tensile strain is quite simple; their resistance is found to be directly as their sectional area. Hence—

116.—The Limit of Weight.—To ascertain the weight or pressure that may be safely applied to a beam or rod as a tensile strain, we have—

Rule XII.—Multiply the area of the cross-section of the beam or rod in inches by the value of T , Table II.; divide

the product by the factor of safety, and the quotient will be the required weight in pounds; or—

$$W = \frac{A T}{a}. \quad (15.)$$

The cross-section here intended is that taken at the smallest part of the beam or rod. A beam, in framing, is usually cut with mortices; the area will probably be smallest at the severest cutting; the area used in the rule must be that of the uncut fibres only.

Example.—The tie-beam of a roof-truss is of white pine, 6 × 10 inches; the cutting for the foot of the rafter reduces the uncut area to 40 inches: what amount of horizontal thrust from the foot of the rafter will this tie-beam safely sustain? Here 40 times 12000, the value of T , equals 480000; this divided by 6, as a factor of safety, gives 80000, the required weight in pounds.

117.—Sectional Area.—To ascertain the sectional area of a beam or rod that will sustain a given weight safely, when applied as a tensile strain, we have—

Rule XIII.—Multiply the given weight in pounds by the factor of safety; divide the product by the value of T , Table II., and the quotient will be the area required in inches; or—

$$A = \frac{W a}{T}. \quad (16.)$$

This is the area of uncut fibres. If the piece is to be cut for mortices, or for any other purpose, then for this an adequate addition is to be made to the result found by the rule.

Example.—A rafter produces a thrust horizontally of 80,000 pounds; the tie-beam is to be of oak: what must be the area of the cross-section of the tie-beam in order to sustain the rafter safely? The given weight, 80000, multiplied by 10, as a factor of safety, gives 800000; this divided by 19500, the value of T , Table II., the quotient, 41, is the area of uncut fibres. This should have usually one half of its amount

added to it as an allowance for cutting; therefore, $41 + 21 = 62$. The tie-beam may be $6 \times 10\frac{1}{2}$ inches.

Another Example.—A tie-rod of American refined wrought iron is required to sustain safely 36,000 pounds: what should be its area of cross-section? Taking 7 as the factor of safety, $7 \times 36000 = 252000$; and this divided by 60000, the value of T , Table II., gives a quotient of 4.2 inches, the required area of the rod.

118.—Weight of the Suspending Piece Included.—Pieces subjected to a tensile strain are frequently suspended vertically. In this case, at the upper end, the strain is due not only to the weight attached at the lower end, but also to the weight of the rod itself. Usually, in timber, this is small in comparison with the load, and may be neglected; although in very long timbers, and where accuracy is decidedly essential, as, also, when the rod is of iron, it may form a part of the rule. Taking the effect of the weight of the beam into account, the relation existing between the weights and the beam requires that the rule for the weight should be as follows:

Rule XIV.—Divide the value of T for the material of the beam or rod, Table II., by the factor of safety; from the quotient subtract 0.434 times the specific gravity of the material in the beam or rod multiplied by the length of the beam or rod in feet; multiply the remainder by the area of cross-section in inches, and the product will be the required weight in pounds; or—

$$W = A \left(\frac{T}{a} - 0.434 / s \right). \quad (17.)$$

N. B.—This rule is based upon the condition that the suspending piece be not cut by mortices or in any other way.

Example.—What weight may be safely sustained by a white-pine rod 4×6 inches, 40 feet long, suspended vertically? For white pine the value of T is 12000; this divided by 8, as a factor of safety, gives 1500; from which subtracting 0.434 times 0.458 (the specific gravity of white pine, Table II.) multiplied by 40, the length in feet, the remainder

is 1492.049; which multiplied by 24 ($= 4 \times 6$, the area of cross-section) equals 35,761 pounds, the required weight to be carried. The weight which the rule would give, neglecting the weight of the rod, would have been 36000; ordinarily, so slight a difference would be quite unimportant.

119.—Area of Suspending Piece.—To ascertain the area of a suspended rod to sustain safely a given weight, when the weight of the suspending piece is regarded, we have—

Rule XV.—Multiply 0.434 times the specific gravity of the suspending piece by the length in feet; deduct the product from the quotient arising from a division of the value of T , Table II., by the factor of safety, and with the remainder divide the given weight in pounds; the quotient will be the required area in inches; or—

$$A = \frac{W}{\frac{T}{a} - 0.434 l s} \quad (18.)$$

N.B.—This rule is based upon the condition that the rod be not injured in anywise by cutting.

Example.—What should be the area of a bar of English cast iron 20 feet long to sustain safely, suspended from its lower end, a weight of 5000 pounds? Taking the factor of safety at 7.0, and the specific gravity also at 7, and the value of T , Table II., at 17000, we have the product of $0.434 \times 7.0 \times 20 = 60.76$; then 17000 divided by 7 gives a quotient of 2428.57; from which deducting the above 60.76, there remains 2367.81; dividing 5000, the given weight, by this remainder, we have the quotient, 2.11, which is the required area in inches.

120.—Transverse Strains: Rupture.—A load placed upon a beam, laid horizontally or inclined, will bend it, and, if the weight be proportionally large, will break it. The power in the material that resists this bending or breaking is termed the *resistance to cross-strains*, or transverse strains.

While in posts or struts the material is compressed or shortened, and in ties and suspending pieces it is extended or lengthened, in beams subjected to cross-strains the material is both compressed and extended. (See *Art.* 91.) When the beam is bent the fibres on the concave side are compressed, while those on the convex side are extended. The line where these two portions of the beam meet—that is, the portion compressed and the portion extended—the horizontal line of juncture, is termed the *neutral* line or plane. It is so called because at this line the fibres are neither compressed nor extended, and hence are under no strain whatever. The location of this line or plane is not far from the middle of the depth of the beam, when the strain is not sufficient to injure the elasticity of the material; but it removes towards the concave or convex side of the beam as the strain is increased, until, at the period of rupture, its distance from the top of the beam is in proportion to its distance from the bottom of the beam as the tensile strength of the material is to its compressive strength.

121.—Location of Mortices.—In order that the diminution of the strength of a beam by framing be as small as possible, all mortices should be located at or near the middle of the depth. There is a prevalent idea with some, who are aware that the upper fibres of a beam are compressed when subject to cross-strains, that it is not injurious to cut these top fibres, provided that the cutting be for the insertion of another piece of timber—as in the case of *gaining* the ends of beams into the side of a girder. They suppose that the piece filled in will as effectually resist the compression as the part removed would have done, had it not been taken out. Now, besides the effect of shrinkage, which of itself is quite sufficient to prevent the proper resistance to the strain, there is the mechanical difficulty of fitting the joints perfectly throughout; and, also, a great loss in the power of resistance, as the material is so much less capable of resistance when pressed at right angles to the direction of the fibres than when directly with them, as the results of the experiments in the tables show.

122.—Transverse Strains: Relation of Weight to Dimensions.—The strength of various materials, in their resistance to cross-strains, is given in Table III., *Art.* 96. The second column of the table contains the results of experiments made to test their resistance to rupture. In the case of each material, the figures given and represented by *B* indicate the pounds at the middle required to break a *unit* of the material, or a piece 1 inch square and 1 foot long between the bearings upon which the piece rests. To be able to use these indices of strength, in the computation of the strength of large beams, it is requisite, first, to establish the relation between the unit of material and the larger beam. Now, it may be easily comprehended that the strength of beams will be in proportion to their breadth; that is, when the length and depth remain the same, the strength will be directly as the breadth; for it is evident that a beam 4 inches broad will bear twice as much as one which is only 2 inch broad, or that one which is 6 inches broad will bear three times as much as one which is 2 inches broad. This establishes the relation of the weight to the breadth. With the depth, however, the relation is different; the strength is greater than simply in proportion to the depth. If the boards cut from a squared piece of timber be piled up in the order in which they came from the timber, and be loaded with a heavy weight at the middle, the boards will deflect or sag much more than they would have done in the timber before sawing. The greater strength of the material when in a solid piece of timber is due to the cohesion of the fibres at the line of separation, by which the several boards, before sawing, are prevented from sliding upon each other, and thus the resistance to compression and tension is made to contribute to the strength. This resistance is found to be in proportion to the depth. Thus the strength due to the depth is, first, that which arises from the quantity of the material (the greater the depth, the more the material), which is in proportion to the depth; then, that which ensues from the cohesion of the fibres in such a manner as to prevent sliding; this is also as the depth. Combining the two, we have, as the total result, the resistance in proportion

to the square of the depth. The relation between the weight and the length is such that the longer the beam is, the less it will resist; a beam which is 20 feet long will sustain only half as much as one which is 10 feet long; the breadth and depth each being the same in the two beams. From this it results that the resistance is *inversely* in proportion to the length. To obtain, therefore, the relation between the strength of the unit of material and that of a larger beam, we have these facts, namely: the strength of the unit is the value of B , as recorded in Table III.; and the strength of the larger beam, represented by W , the weight required to break it, is the product of the breadth into the square of the depth, divided by the length; or, while for the unit we have the ratio—

$$B : 1,$$

we have for the larger beam the ratio—

$$W : \frac{b d^2}{l}.$$

Therefore, putting these ratios in an expressed proportion, we have—

$$B : 1 :: W : \frac{b d^2}{l}.$$

From which (the product of the means equalling the product of the extremes; see *Art.* 373) we have—

$$W = \frac{B b d^2}{l}. \quad (19.)$$

In which W represents the pounds required to break a beam, when acting at the middle between the two supports upon which the beam is laid; of which beam b represents the breadth and d the depth, both in inches, and l the length in feet between the supports; and B is from Table III., and represents the pounds required to break a unit of material like that contained in the larger beam.

123.—Safe Weight: Load at Middle.—The relation established, in the last article, between the weight and the dimensions is that which exists at the moment of rupture. The rule (19.) derived therefrom is not, therefore, directly practicable for computing the dimensions of beams for buildings. From it, however, one may readily be deduced which shall be practicable. In the fifth column of Table III. are given the least values of a , the factor of safety, explained in *Art.* 96. Now, if in place of B , the symbol for the breaking weight, the *quotient* of B divided by a be substituted, then the rule at once becomes practicable; the results now being in consonance with the requirements for materials used in buildings. Thus, with this modification, we have—

$$W = \frac{B b d^3}{a l}. \quad (20.)$$

Therefore, to ascertain the weight which a beam may be safely loaded with at the centre, we have—

Rule XVI.—Multiply the value of B , Table III., for the kind of material in the beam by the breadth and by the square of the depth of the beam in inches; divide the product by the product of the factor of safety into the length of the beam between bearings in feet, and the quotient will be the weight in pounds that the beam will safely sustain at the middle of its length.

Example.—What weight in pounds can be suspended safely from the middle of a Georgia-pine beam 4×10 inches, and 20 feet long between the bearings? For Georgia pine the value of B , in Table III., is 850, and the least value of a is 1.84. For reasons given in *Art.* 96, let a be taken as high as 4; then, in this case, the value of b is 4, and that of d is 10, while that of l is 20. Therefore, proceeding by the rule, $850 \times 4 \times 10^3 = 340000$; this divided by $4 \times 20 (= 80)$ gives a quotient of 4250 pounds, the required weight.

Observe that, had the value of a been taken at 3, instead of 4, the result by the rule would have been a load of 5667 pounds, instead of 4250, and the larger amount would be none too much for a safe load upon such a beam; although,

with it, the deflection would be one third greater than with the lesser load. The value of a should always be assigned higher than the figures of the table, which show it at its *least* value; but just how much higher must depend upon the firmness required and the conditions of each particular case.

124.—Breadth of Beam with Safe Load.—By a simple transposition of the factors in equation (20.), we obtain—

$$b = \frac{W a l}{B d^2}, \quad (21.)$$

a rule for the breadth of the beam.

Therefore, to ascertain what should be the breadth of a beam of given depth and length to safely sustain at the middle a given weight, we have—

Rule XVII.—Multiply the given weight in pounds by the factor of safety, and by the length in feet, and divide the product by the square of the depth multiplied by the value of B for the material in the beam, in Table III.; the quotient will be the required breadth.

Example.—What should be the breadth of a white-pine beam 8 inches deep and 10 feet long between bearings to sustain safely 2400 pounds at the middle? For white pine the value of B , in Table III., is 500. Taking the value of a at 4, and proceeding by the rule, we have $2400 \times 4 \times 10 = 96000$; this divided by $(8^2 \times 500 =) 32000$ gives a quotient of 3, the required breadth of the beam.

125.—Depth of Beam with Safe Load.—A transposition of the factors in equation (21.), and marking it for extraction of the square root, gives—

$$d = \sqrt{\frac{W a l}{B b}}, \quad (22.)$$

a rule for the depth of a beam. Therefore, to ascertain what should be the depth of a beam of given breadth and length to safely sustain a given weight at the middle, we have—

Rule XVIII.—Multiply the given weight by the factor of safety, and by the length in feet; divide the product by the product of the breadth into the value of B for the kind of wood, Table III.; then the square root of the quotient will be the required depth.

Example.—What should be the depth of a spruce beam 5 inches broad and 10 feet long between bearings to sustain safely, at middle, 4500 pounds? The value of B from the table is 550; taking a at 4, and proceeding by the rule, we have $4500 \times 4 \times 15 = 270000$; this divided by $(550 \times 5 =) 2750$ gives a quotient of 98.18, the square root of which is 9.909, the required depth of the beam. The beam should be 5×10 inches.

126.—Safe Load at any Point.—When the load is at the middle of a beam it exerts the greatest possible strain; at any other point the strain would be less. The strain decreases gradually as it approaches one of the bearings, and when arrived at the bearing its effect upon the beam as a cross-strain is zero. The effect of a weight upon a beam is in proportion to its distance from one of the bearings, multiplied by the portion of the load borne by that bearing.

The load upon a beam is divided upon the two bearings, as shown at *Art.* 88. The weight which is required to rupture a beam is in proportion to the breadth and square of the depth, $b d^2$, as before shown, and also in proportion to the length divided by 4 times the rectangle of the two parts into which the load divides the length, or $\frac{l}{4 m n}$ (see *Fig.* 35).

This, when the load is at the middle, may be put as $\frac{l}{4 \times \frac{1}{2} l \times \frac{1}{2} l} = \frac{1}{l}$, a result coinciding with the relation before given in *Art.* 122, viz.: "The resistance is inversely in proportion to the length." The total resistance, therefore, putting the two statements together, is in proportion to $\frac{b d^2 l}{4 m n}$.

There are, therefore, these two ratios, viz., $W : \frac{b d^2 l}{4 m n}$ and $B : 1$, from which we have the proportion—

$$B : 1 :: W : \frac{b d^2 l}{4 m n},$$

from which we have—

$$W = \frac{B b d^2 l}{4 m n}. \quad (23.)$$

This is the relation at the point of rupture, and when $\frac{B}{a}$ is used instead of B , the expression gives the safe weight. Therefore—

$$W = \frac{B b d^2 l}{4 a m n} \quad (24.)$$

is an expression for the safe weight. Now, to ascertain the weight which may be safely borne by a beam at any point in its length, we have—

Rule XIX.—Multiply the breadth by the square of the depth, by the length in feet, and by the value of B for the material of the beam, in Table III.; divide the product by the product of four times the factor of safety into the rectangle of the two parts into which the centre of gravity of the weight divides the beam, and the quotient will be the required weight in pounds.

Example.—What weight may be safely sustained at 3 feet from one end of a Georgia-pine beam which is 4 × 10 inches, and 20 feet long? The value of B for Georgia pine, in Table III., is 850; therefore, by the rule, $4 \times 10^2 \times 20 \times 850 = 6800000$. Taking the factor of safety at 4, we have $4 \times 4 \times 3 \times 17 = 816$. Using this as a divisor with which to divide the former product, we have as a quotient 8333 pounds, the required weight.

127.—Breadth or Depth: Load at any Point.—By a proper transposition of the factors of (24.) we obtain—

$$b d^2 = \frac{4 W a m n}{B l}, \quad (25.)$$

an expression showing the product of the breadth into the square of the depth; hence, to ascertain the breadth or

depth of a beam to sustain safely a given weight located at any point on the beam, we have—

Rule XX.—Multiply four times the given weight by the factor of safety, and by the rectangle of the two parts into which the load divides the length; divide the product by the product of the length into the value of B for the material of the beam, found in Table III., and the quotient will be equal to the product of the breadth into the square of the depth. Now, to obtain the breadth, divide this product by the square of the depth, and the quotient will be the required breadth. But if, instead of the breadth, the depth be desired, divide the said product by the breadth; then the square root of the quotient will be the required depth.

Example.—What should be the breadth (the depth being 8) of a white-pine beam 12 feet long to safely sustain 3500 pounds at 3 feet from one end? Also, what should be its depth when the breadth is 3 inches? By the rule, taking the factor of safety at 4, $4 \times 3500 \times 4 \times 3 \times 9 = 1512000$. The value of B for white pine, in Table III., is 500; therefore, $500 \times 12 = 6000$; with this as divisor, dividing 1512000, the quotient is 252. Now, to obtain the breadth when the depth is 8, 252 divided by $(8 \times 8 =) 64$ gives a quotient of 3.9375, the required breadth; or the beam may be, say, 4 \times 8. Again, when the breadth is 3 inches, we have for the quotient of 252 divided by 3 = 84, and the square root of 84 is 9.165, or 9 $\frac{1}{4}$ inches. For this case, therefore, the beam should be, say, 3 \times 9 $\frac{1}{4}$ inches.

120.—Weight Uniformly Distributed.—When the load is spread out uniformly over the length of a beam, the beam will require just twice the weight to break it that would be required if the weight were concentrated at the centre. Therefore, we have $W = \frac{U}{2}$, where U represents the distributed load. Substituting this value of W in equation (20.), we have—

$$\frac{U}{2} = \frac{B b d^2}{a l},$$

or—

$$U = \frac{2 B b d^2}{a l}, \quad (26.)$$

Therefore, to ascertain the weight which may be safely sustained, when uniformly distributed over the length of a beam, we have—

Rule XXI.—Multiply twice the breadth by the square of the depth, and by the value of B for the material of the beam, in Table III., and divide the product by the product of the length in feet by the factor of safety, and the quotient will be the required weight in pounds.

Example.—What weight uniformly distributed may be safely sustained upon a hemlock beam 4×9 inches, and 20 feet long? The value of B for hemlock, in Table III., is 450; therefore, by the rule, $2 \times 4 \times 9^2 \times 450 = 291600$. Taking the factor of safety at 4, we have $4 \times 20 = 80$, the product by which the former product is to be divided. This division produces a quotient of 3645, the required weight.

129.—Breadth or Depth : Load Uniformly Distributed.—

By a proper transposition of factors in (26.), we obtain—

$$b d^2 = \frac{U a l}{2 B}, \quad (27.)$$

an expression giving the value of the breadth into the square of the depth. From this, therefore, to ascertain the breadth or the depth of a beam to sustain safely a given weight uniformly distributed over the length of a beam, we have—

Rule XXII.—Multiply the given weight by the factor of safety, and by the length; divide the product by the product of twice the value of B for the material of the beam, in Table III., and the quotient will be equal to the breadth into the square of the depth. Now, to find the breadth, divide the said quotient by the square of the depth; but if, instead of the breadth, the depth be required, then divide said quotient by the breadth, and the square root of this quotient will be the required depth.

Example.—What should be the size of a white-pine beam 20 feet long to sustain safely 10,000 pounds uniformly distributed over its length? The value of B for white pine, in Table III., is 500. Let the factor of safety be taken at 4. Then, by the rule, $10000 \times 4 \times 20 = 800000$; this divided by $(2 \times 500 =)$

1000 gives a quotient of 800. Now, if the depth be fixed at 12, then the said quotient, 800, divided by $(12 \times 12 =)$ 144 gives $5\frac{5}{9}$, the required breadth of beam; and the beam may be, say, $5\frac{5}{9} \times 12$. Again, if the breadth is fixed, say, at 6, and the depth is required, then the said quotient, 800, divided by 6 gives $133\frac{1}{3}$, the square root of which, $11\cdot55$, is the required depth. The beam in this case should therefore be, say, $6 \times 11\frac{1}{2}$ inches.

130.—Load per Foot Superficial.—When several beams are laid in a tier, placed at equal distances apart, as in a tier of floor-beams, it is desirable to know what should be their size in order to sustain a load equally distributed over the floor.

If the distance apart at which they are placed, measured from the centres of the beams, be multiplied by the length of the beams between bearings, the product will equal the area of the floor sustained by one beam; and if this area be multiplied by the weight upon a superficial foot of the floor, the product will equal the total load uniformly distributed over the length of the beam; or, if c be put to represent the distance apart between the centres of the beams in feet, and l represent the length in feet of the beam between bearings, and f equal the pounds per superficial foot on the floor, then the product of these, or cfl , will represent the uniformly distributed load on a beam; but this load was before represented by U (*Art.* 128); therefore, we have $cfl = U$, and they may be substituted for it in (26.) and (27.). Thus we have—

$$bd^2 = \frac{cflal}{2B},$$

or—

$$bd^2 = \frac{acfl^2}{2B}. \quad (28.)$$

Therefore, to ascertain the size of floor-beams to sustain safely a given load per superficial foot, we have—

Rule XXIII.—Multiply the given weight per superficial foot by the factor of safety, by the distance between the

centres of the beams in feet, and by the square of the length in feet; divide the product by twice the value of B for the material of the beams, in Table III., and the quotient will be equal to the breadth into the square of the depth. Now, to obtain the breadth, divide said quotient by the square of the depth, and this quotient will be the required breadth. But if, instead of the breadth, the depth be required, divide the aforesaid quotient by the breadth; then the square root of this quotient will be the required depth.

Example.—What should be the size of white-pine floor-beams 20 feet long, placed 16 inches from centres, to sustain safely 90 pounds per superficial foot, including the weight of the materials of construction—the beams, flooring, plastering, etc.? The value of B for white pine is 500; the factor of safety may be put at 5. Then, by the rule, we have $90 \times 5 \times 1\frac{1}{2} \times 20^2 = 240000$. This divided by $(2 \times 500 =) 1000$ gives 240. Now, for the breadth, if the depth be fixed at 9 inches, then 240 divided by $(9^2 =) 81$ gives a quotient of 2.963. The beams therefore should be, say, 3×9 . But if the breadth be fixed, say, at 2.5 inches, then 240 divided by 2.5 gives a quotient of 96, the square root of which is 9.8 nearly. The beams in this case would require therefore to be, say, $2\frac{1}{2} \times 10$ inches.

N. B.—It is well to observe that the question decided by Rule XXII. is simply that of *strength* only. Floor-beams computed by it will be quite *safe* against rupture, but they will in most cases deflect much more than would be consistent with their good appearance. Floor-beams should be computed by the rules which include the effect of deflection. (See *Art.* 152.)

131.—Levers: Load at One End.—The beams so far considered as being exposed to transverse strains have been supposed to be supported at each end. When a piece is held firmly at one end only, and loaded at the other, it is termed a lever; and the load which a piece so held and loaded will sustain is equal to one fourth that which the same piece would sustain if it were supported at each end and loaded at the middle. Or, the strain in a beam sup-

ported at each end caused by a given weight located at the middle is equal to that in a lever of the same breadth and depth, when the length of the latter is equal to one half that of the beam, and the load at its end is equal to one half of that at the middle of the beam. Or, when P represents the load at the end of the lever, and n its length, then $W = 2P$, and $l = 2n$. Substituting these values of W and l in equation (20.), we have—

$$2P = \frac{B b d^3}{2 a n},$$

from which—

$$P = \frac{B b d^3}{4 a n}, \quad (29.)$$

Hence, to ascertain the weight which may be safely sustained at the end of a lever, we have—

Rule XXIV.—Multiply the breadth of the lever by the square of its depth, and by the value of B for the material of the lever, in Table III.; divide the product by the product of four times the length in feet into the factor of safety, and the quotient will be the required weight in pounds.

Example.—What weight can be safely sustained at the end of a maple lever of which the breadth is 2 inches, the depth is 4 inches, and the length is 6 feet? The value of B for maple, in Table III., is 1100; therefore, by the rule, $2 \times 4^2 \times 1100 = 35200$. And, taking the factor of safety at 5, $4 \times 5 \times 6 = 120$, and 35200 divided by 120 gives a quotient of 293.33, or 293½ pounds.

N. B.—When a lever is loaded with a weight uniformly distributed over its length, it will sustain just twice the load which can be sustained at the end.

132.—Levers: Breadth or Depth.—By a proper transposition of the factors in (29.), we obtain—

$$b d^3 = \frac{4 P a n}{B}, \quad (30.)$$

Hence, to ascertain the breadth or depth of a lever to sustain safely a given weight, we have—

Rule XXV.—Multiply four times the given weight by the length of the lever, and by the factor of safety; divide the product by the value of B for the material of the lever, in Table III., and the quotient will be equal to the breadth multiplied by the square of the depth. Now, if the breadth be required, divide said quotient by the square of the depth, and this quotient will be the required breadth; but if, instead of the breadth, the depth be required, divide the said quotient by the breadth; then the square root of this quotient will be the required depth.

Example.—What should be the size of a cherry lever 5 feet long to sustain safely 250 pounds at its end? Proceeding by the rule, taking the factor of safety at 5, we have $4 \times 250 \times 5 \times 5 = 25000$. The value of B for cherry, in Table III., is 650; and 25000 divided by 650 gives a quotient of 38.46. Now, if the depth be fixed at 4, then 38.46 divided by $(4 \times 4 =) 16$ gives a quotient of 2.4, the required breadth. But if the breadth be fixed at 2, then 38.46 divided by 2 gives a quotient of 19.23, the square root of which is 4.38, the required depth. Therefore, the lever may be 2.4×4 , or $2 \times 4\frac{3}{8}$ inches.

133.—Deflection : Relation to Weight.—When a load is placed upon a beam supported at each end, the beam bends more or less; the distance that the beam descends under the operation of the load, measured at the middle of its length, is termed its *deflection*. In an investigation of the laws of deflection it has been demonstrated, and experiments have confirmed it, that while the elasticity of the material remains uninjured by the pressure, or is injured in but a small degree, the amount of deflection is directly in proportion to the weight producing it; for example, if 1000 pounds laid upon a beam is found to cause it to deflect or descend at the middle a quarter of an inch, then 2000 pounds will cause it to deflect half an inch, 3000 pounds will deflect it three fourths of an inch, and so on.

134.—Deflection : Relation to Dimensions.—In Table III. are recorded the results of experiments made to test the

resistance of the materials named to deflection. The figures in the third column designated by the letter F (for flexure) show the number of pounds required to deflect a unit of material one inch. This is an extreme state of the case, for in most kinds of material this amount of depression would exceed the limits of elasticity; and hence the rule would here fail to give the correct relation as between the dimensions and pressure. For the law of deflection as above stated (the deflections being in proportion to the weights) is true only while the depressions are small in comparison with the length. Nothing useful is, therefore, derived from this position of the question, except to give an idea of the nature of the quantity represented by the constant F ; it being in reality an index of the stiffness of the kind of material used in comparing one material with another. Whatever be the dimensions of the beam, F will always be the same quantity for the same material; but among various materials F will vary according to the flexibility or stiffness of each particular material. For example, F will be much greater for iron than for wood; and again, among the various kinds of wood, it will be larger for the stiff woods than for those that are flexible. The value of F , therefore, is the weight which would deflect the unit of material one inch, upon the supposition that the deflections, from zero to the depth of one inch, continue regularly in proportion to the increments of weight producing the deflections, or, for each deflection—

$$F : 1 :: W : \delta,$$

from which we have—

$$W = F\delta; \text{ or, } F = \frac{W}{\delta},$$

in which δ represents the deflection in inches corresponding to W , the weight producing it. This is for the unit of material. For beams of larger dimensions, investigations have shown (*Transverse Strains*, Chapters XIII. and XIV.) that the power of a beam to resist deflection by a weight at middle is in proportion to its breadth and the cube of its depth, and it is inversely in proportion to the cube of the length;

or, when the resistance of the unit of material is measured, as above, by $\frac{W}{\delta}$, we have the relation between it and a larger beam of—

$$\frac{W}{\delta} : \frac{b d^3}{l^3}.$$

Putting this ratio in a proportion with that of the unit of material, we have—

$$F : 1 :: \frac{W}{\delta} : \frac{b d^3}{l^3},$$

which gives—

$$\frac{W}{\delta} = \frac{F b d^3}{l^3},$$

from which we have—

$$W = \frac{F b d^3 \delta}{l^3}. \quad (31.)$$

135.—Deflection : Weight when at Middle.—In equation (31.) we have a rule by which to ascertain what weight is required to deflect a given beam to a given depth of deflection; this, in words at length, is—

Rule XXVI.—Multiply the breadth of the beam by the cube of its depth, and by the given deflection, all in inches, and by the value of F for the material of the beam, in Table III.; divide the product by the cube of the length in feet, and the quotient will be the required weight in pounds.

Example.—What weight is required at the middle of a 4×12 inch Georgia-pine beam 20 feet long to deflect it three quarters of an inch? The value of F for Georgia pine, in Table III., is 5900; therefore, by the rule, we have $4 \times 12^3 \times 0.75 \times 5900 = 30585600$, which divided by $(20 \times 20 \times 20 =) 8000$ gives a quotient of 3823.2, the required weight in pounds.

136.—Deflection : Breadth or Depth, Weight at Middle.—By a transposition of equation (31.), we obtain—

$$b d^3 = \frac{W l^3}{F \delta}, \quad (32.)$$

rule by which may be found the breadth or depth of a beam, with a given load at middle and with a given deflection; this, in words at length, is—

Rule XXVII.—Multiply the given load by the cube of length in feet, and divide the product by the product of deflection into the value of F for the material of the beam, in Table III.; then the quotient will be equal to the breadth of the beam multiplied by the cube of its depth, both in inches.

Now, to obtain the breadth, divide the said quotient by the cube of the depth, and this quotient will be the required breadth. But if, instead of the breadth, the depth be required, then divide the said quotient by the breadth, and the cube root of this quotient will be the required depth. If neither breadth nor depth be previously fixed, but it is required that they bear a certain proportion to each other; such that $d : b :: 1 : r$, r being a decimal, then $b = rd$, and $b d^3 = r d^4$; then, to find the depth, divide the aforesaid quotient by the decimal r , and the fourth root (or the square root of the square root) will be the required depth, and this multiplied by the decimal r will give the breadth.

Example.—What should be the size of a spruce beam 20 feet long between bearings, sustaining 2000 pounds at the middle, with a deflection of one inch? By the rule, the weight into the cube of the length is $2000 \times 8000 = 16000000$. The value of F for spruce, in Table III., is 3500; this by the deflection = 1 gives 3500, which used as a divisor in dividing the above 16000000 gives a quotient of 4571.43. Now, if the breadth be required, the depth being fixed, say, at 10, 4571.43 divided by $(10 \times 10 \times 10 =) 1000$ gives 4.57, the required breadth. The beam should be, say, $4\frac{1}{2}$ by 10 inches. If the depth be required, the breadth being fixed, say, at 4, 4571.43 divided by 4 gives 1142.86, the cube root of which is 10.46; so in this case, therefore, the beam is required to be $4 \times 10\frac{1}{2}$ inches. Again, if the breadth is to bear a certain proportion to the depth, or that the ratio between them is to be, say, 0.6 to 1, then let $r = 0.6$, and then $1.43 = 0.6 d^4$, and dividing by 0.6, we have 7619.05. This equals d^4 ; therefore the square root of 7619

is 87.29, and the square root of this is 9.343, the required depth in inches. Now 9.343×0.6 equals the breadth, or $9.343 \times 0.6 = 5.6$; therefore the beam is required to be 5.6×9.34 inches, or, say, $5\frac{5}{8} \times 9\frac{3}{8}$ inches.

137.—Deflection : when Weight is at Middle.—By a transposition of the factors in (32.), we obtain—

$$\delta = \frac{Wl^3}{Fbd^3}, \quad (33.)$$

a rule by which the deflection of any given beam may be ascertained, and which, in words at length, is—

Rule XXVIII.—Multiply the given weight by the cube of the length in feet; divide the product by the product of the breadth into the cube of the depth in inches, multiplied by the value of F for the material of the beam, in Table III., and the quotient will be the required deflection in inches.

Example.—To what depth will 1000 pounds deflect a 3×10 inch white-pine beam 20 feet long, the weight being at the middle of the beam? By the rule, we have $1000 \times 20^3 = 8000000$; then, since the value of F for white pine, in Table III., is 2900, we have $3 \times 10^3 \times 2900 = 8700000$; using this product as a divisor and by it dividing the former product, we obtain a quotient of 0.9195, the required deflection in inches.

138.—Deflection : Load Uniformly Distributed.—In two beams of equal capacity, suppose the one loaded at the middle, and the other with its load uniformly distributed over its length, and so loaded that the deflection in one beam shall equal that in the other; then the weight at the middle of the former beam will be equal to five eighths of that on the latter. This proportion between the two has been demonstrated by writers on the strength of materials. (See p. 484, *Mechanics of Eng. and Arch.*, by Prof. Mosely, Am. ed. by Prof. Mahan, 1856.) Hence, when U is put to represent the uniformly distributed load, we have—

$$W = \frac{5}{8} U;$$

or, when an equally distributed load deflects a beam to a certain depth, five eighths of that load, if concentrated at the middle, would cause an equal deflection. This value of W may therefore be substituted for it in equation (31.), and give—

$$\frac{5}{8} U = \frac{F b d^3 \delta}{l^3},$$

from which we obtain—

$$U = \frac{1.6 F b d^3 \delta}{l^3}, \quad (34.)$$

a rule for a uniformly distributed load.

139.—Deflection: Weight when Uniformly Distributed.

—In equation (34.) we have a rule by which we may ascertain what weight is required to deflect to a given depth any given beam. This, in words at length, is—

Rule XXIX.—Multiply 1.6 times the deflection by the breadth of the beam, and by the cube of its depth, all in inches, and by the value of F for the material of the beam, in Table III.; divide the product by the cube of the length in feet, and the quotient will be the required weight in pounds.

Example.—What weight, uniformly distributed over the length of a spruce beam, will be required to deflect it to the depth of 0.5 of an inch, the beam being 3 × 10 inches and 10 feet long? The value of F for spruce, in Table III., is 3500. Therefore, by the rule, we have $1.6 \times 0.5 \times 3 \times 10^3 \times 3500 = 8400000$, and this divided by $(10 \times 10 \times 10 =) 1000$ gives 8400, the required weight in pounds.

140.—Deflection: Breadth or Depth, Load Uniformly Distributed.—By transposition of the factors in equation (34.), we obtain—

$$b d^3 = \frac{U l^3}{1.6 F \delta}, \quad (35.)$$

a rule for the dimensions, which, in words at length, is—

Rule XXX.—Multiply the given weight by the cube of the length of the beam; divide the product by 1.6 times the given deflection in inches, multiplied by the value of F for the material of the beam, in Table III., and the quotient will equal the breadth into the cube of the depth. Now, to obtain the breadth, divide this quotient by the cube of the depth, and the resulting quotient will be the required breadth in inches. But if, instead of the breadth, the depth be required, then divide the aforesaid quotient by the breadth, and the cube root of the resulting quotient will be the required depth in inches. Again, if neither breadth nor depth be previously determined, but to be in proportion to each other at a given ratio, as r to 1, r being a decimal fixed at pleasure, then divide the aforesaid quotient by the value of r , and take the square root of the quotient; then the square root of this square root will be the required depth in inches. The breadth will equal the depth multiplied by the value of the decimal r .

Example.—What should be the size of a locust beam 10 feet long which is to be loaded with 6000 pounds equally distributed over the length, and with which the beam is to be deflected $\frac{3}{4}$ of an inch? The value of F for locust, in Table III., is 5050. By the rule, we have $6000 \times (10 \times 10 \times 10) = 1000 = 6000000$, which is to be divided by $(1.6 \times 0.75 \times 5050) = 6060$, giving a quotient of 990.1. Now, if the depth be, say, 6 inches, then 990.1 divided by $(6 \times 6 \times 6) = 216$ gives a quotient of 4.584, the required breadth in inches, say $4\frac{1}{2}$. But if the breadth be assumed at 4 inches, then 990.1 divided by 4 gives a quotient of 247.525, the cube root of which is 6.279, the required depth in inches, or, say, $6\frac{1}{4}$. And, again, if the ratio between the breadth and depth be as 0.7 to 1, then 990.1 divided by 0.7 gives a quotient of 1414.43, the square root of which is 37.609, of which the square root is 6.1326, the required depth in inches, or, say, $6\frac{1}{8}$; and then $6.1326 \times 0.7 = 4.293$, the required breadth in inches; or, the beam should be $4\frac{3}{16} \times 6\frac{1}{8}$ inches.

141.—Deflection : when Weight is Uniformly Distributed.

—By a transposition of the factors of equation (35.), we obtain—

$$\delta = \frac{U l^3}{1.6 F b d^3} \quad (36.)$$

a result nearly the same as that in equation (33.), which is a rule for deflection by a weight at middle, and which by slight modifications may be used for deflection by an equally distributed load. Thus by—

Rule XXXI.—Proceed as directed in Rule XXVIII. (*Art.* 137), using the equally distributed weight instead of a concentrated weight, and then divide the result there obtained for deflection by 1.6; then the quotient will be the required deflection in inches.

Example.—Taking the example given under *Rule XXVIII.*, in *Art.* 137, and assuming that the 1000 pounds load with which the beam is loaded be equally distributed, then 0.9195, the result for deflection as there found, divided by 1.6, as by the above rule, gives 0.5747, the required deflection. This result is just five eighths of 0.9195, the deflection by the load at middle.

N.B.—The deflection by a uniformly distributed load is just five eighths of that produced by the same load when concentrated at the middle of the beam; therefore, five eighths of the deflection obtained by Rule XXVIII. will be the deflection of the same beam when the same weight is uniformly distributed.

142.—Deflection of Levers.—The deflection of a lever is the same as that of a beam of the same breadth and depth, but of twice the length, and loaded at the middle with a load equal to twice that which is at the end of the lever. Therefore, if P represents the weight at the end of a lever, and n the length of the lever in feet, then $2P = W$ and $2n = l$, and if these values of W and l be substituted for those in equation (33.), we obtain—

$$\delta = \frac{2P \times 2n^3}{F b d^3},$$

which reduces to—

$$\delta = \frac{16 P n^3}{F b d^3} \quad (37.)$$

a result 16 times that in equation (33.), which is the deflection in a beam. Therefore, when a beam and a lever equal in sectional area and in length be loaded by equal weights, the one at the middle, the other at one end, the deflection of the lever will be 16 times that of the beam. This proportion is based upon the condition that neither the beam nor the lever shall be deflected beyond the limits of elasticity.

143.—Deflection of a Lever: Load at End.—Equation (37.), in words at length, is—

Rule XXXII.—Multiply 16 times the given weight by the cube of the length in feet; divide the product by the product of the breadth into the cube of the depth multiplied by the value of F for the material of the lever, in Table III., and the quotient will be the required deflection.

Example.—What would be the deflection of a bar of American wrought iron one inch broad, two inches deep, loaded with 150 pounds at a point 5 feet distant from the wall in which the bar is imbedded? The value of F for American wrought iron, in Table III., is 62000. Therefore, by the rule, $16 \times 150 \times 5^3 = 300000$. This divided by $(1 \times 2^3 \times 62000 =)$ 496000 gives 0.6048, the required deflection—nearly $\frac{5}{8}$ of an inch.

144.—Deflection of a Lever: Weight when at End.—By a transposition of the factors in equation (37.), we obtain—

$$P = \frac{F b d^3 \delta}{16 n^4}. \quad (38.)$$

This result is equal to one sixteenth of that shown in equation (31.), a rule for the weight at the middle. Therefore, for—

Rule XXXIII.—Proceed as directed in Rule XXVII.; divide the quotient there obtained by 16, and the resulting quotient will be the required weight in pounds.

Example.—What weight is required at the end of a 4×12 inch Georgia-pine lever 20 feet long to deflect it three quarters of an inch? Proceeding by Rule XXVII., we obtain a quotient of 3823.2; this divided by 16 gives 238.95, say 239, the required weight in pounds.

145.—Deflection of a Lever: Breadth or Depth, Load at End.—A transposition of the factors of equation (38.) gives—

$$b d^3 = \frac{16 P n^3}{F \delta}, \quad (39.)$$

a rule by which to obtain the sectional area of the lever. By comparison with equation (32.) it is seen that the result in (39.) is 16 times that found by (32.). Therefore, the dimensions for a lever loaded at the end may be found by—

Rule XXXIV.—Multiply by 16 the first quotient found by Rule XXVII., and then proceed as farther directed in Rule XXVII., using the product of 16 times the quotient, instead of the said quotient.

Example.—What should be the size of a spruce lever 20 feet long, between weight and wall, to sustain 2000 pounds at the end with a deflection of 1 inch? Proceeding by Rule XXVII., we obtain a first quotient of 4571.43. By Rule XXXIV., $4571.43 \times 16 = 73144.88$. Now, if the depth be fixed, say, at 20, then 73144.88 divided by $(20 \times 20 \times 20 =)$ 8000 gives 9.143, the required breadth. But to obtain the depth, fixing the breadth, say, at 9, we have for 73144.88 divided by 9 = 8127.21, the cube root of which is 20.1055, the required depth. Again, if the breadth and depth are to be in proportion, say, as 0.7 to 1.0, then 73144.88 divided by 0.7 gives 104492.7, the square root of which is 323.254, of which the square root is 17.98, the required depth in inches; and $17.98 \times 0.7 = 12.586$, the required breadth in inches. The lever, therefore, should be, say, $12\frac{5}{8} \times 18$ inches.

146.—Deflection of Levers: Weight Uniformly Distributed.—A comparison of the effects of loads upon levers shows (*Transverse Strains*, Art. 347) that the deflection by a uniformly distributed load is equal to that which would be produced by three eighths of that load if suspended from the end of the lever. Or, $P = \frac{3}{8} U$. Substituting this value of P , in equation (37.), gives—

$$\delta = \frac{16 \times \frac{3}{8} U n^3}{F b d^3},$$

which reduces to—

$$\delta = \frac{6 U n^3}{F b d^3}, \quad (40.)$$

a rule for the deflection of levers loaded with an equally distributed load.

147.—Deflection of Levers with Uniformly Distributed Load.—The deflection shown in equation (40.) is just six times that shown in equation (33.). The result by (33.) multiplied by 6 will equal the result by (40.); therefore, we have—

Rule XXXV.—Proceed as directed in Rule XXVIII.; the result thereby obtained multiplied by 6 will give the required deflection.

Example.—To what depth will 500 pounds deflect a 3 × 10 inch white-pine lever 10 feet long, the weight uniformly distributed over the lever? Here, by Rule XXVIII., we obtain the result 0.05747; this multiplied by 6 gives 0.3448, the required deflection.

148.—Deflection of Levers: Weight when Uniformly Distributed.—By a transposition of factors in (40.), we obtain—

$$U = \frac{F b d^3 \delta}{6 n^3}. \quad (41.)$$

This is equal to one sixth that of equation (31.); therefore, we have—

Rule XXXVI.—Proceed as directed in Rule XXVI.; the quotient thereby obtained divide by 6, and the quotient thus obtained will be the required weight.

Example.—What weight will be required to deflect a 4 × 5 inch spruce lever 1 inch, the weight uniformly distributed over its length? Proceeding as directed in Rule XXVI., the result thereby obtained is 1750; this divided by 6 gives 291⅔, the required weight in pounds.

149.—Deflection of Levers: Breadth or Depth, Load Uniformly Distributed.—A transposition of factors in equation (41.) gives—

$$b d^3 = \frac{6 U n^3}{F \delta}. \quad (42.)$$

This result is just six times that of equation (32.); we, therefore, have—

Rule XXXVII.—Proceed as directed in Rule XXVII.; multiply the first quotient thereby obtained by 6; then in the subsequent directions use this multiplied quotient instead of the said first quotient, to obtain the required breadth and depth.

Example.—What should be the size of a spruce lever 10 feet long, sustaining 2666 $\frac{2}{3}$ pounds, uniformly distributed over its length, with a deflection of 1 inch? Proceeding by Rule XXVII., the first quotient obtained is 761.905; this multiplied by 6 gives 4571.43, the multiplied quotient which is to be used in place of the said first quotient. Now, to obtain the breadth, the depth being fixed, say, at 10; 4571.43 divided by (cube of 10 =) 1000, the quotient, 4.57, is the required breadth. But if the breadth be fixed, say, at 4, then, to obtain the depth, 4571.43 divided by 4 gives 1142.86, the cube root of which is 10.46, the required depth. Again, if the breadth and depth are to be in proportion, say, as 0.6 to 1.0, then 4571.43 divided by 0.6 gives 7619.05, the square root of which is 87.27, of which the square root is 9.343, the required depth in inches; and 9.343×0.6 equals 5.6, the required breadth in inches; or, the lever may be, say, $5\frac{3}{4} \times 9\frac{1}{2}$ inches.

CONSTRUCTION IN GENERAL.

150.—Construction: Object Clearly Defined.—In the various parts of timber construction, known as floors, partitions, roofs, bridges, etc., each has a specific object, and in all designs for such constructions this object should be kept clearly in view, the various parts being so disposed as to serve the design with the least quantity of material. The simplest form is the best, not only because it is the most economical, but for many other reasons. The great number of joints, in a complex design, render the construction liable to derangement by multiplied compressions, shrinkage, and, in consequence, highly increased oblique strains; by which its stability and durability are greatly lessened.

FLOORS.

151.—Floors Described.—Floors are most generally constructed *single*; that is, simply a series of parallel beams, each

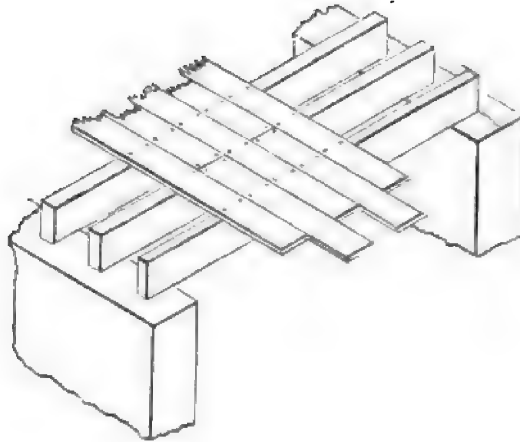


FIG. 39.

spanning the width of the building, as seen at *Fig. 39*. Oc

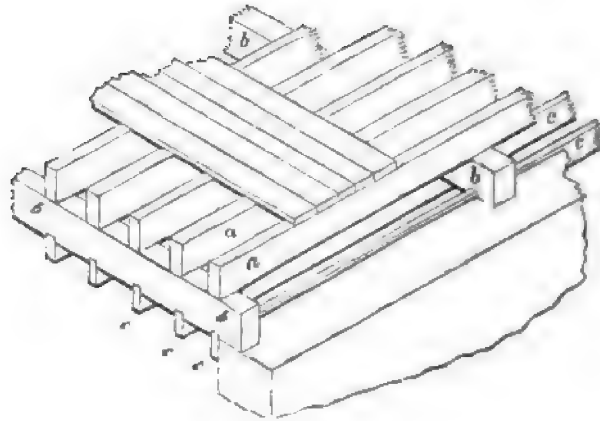


FIG. 40.

casionally floors are constructed *double*, as at *Fig. 40*; and sometimes *framed*, as at *Fig. 41*; but these methods are

seldom practised, inasmuch as either of these requires more timber than the single floor. Where lathing and plastering is attached to the floor-beams to form a ceiling below, the springing of the beams, by customary use, is liable to crack the plastering. To obviate this in good dwellings, the double and framed floors have been resorted to, but more in former times than now, as the *cross-furring* (a series of narrow strips of board or plank nailed transversely to the underside of

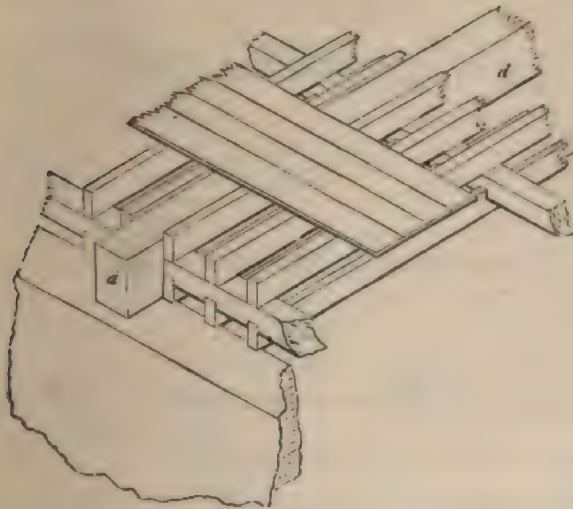


FIG. 47.

the beams to receive the lathing for the plastering) serves a like purpose very nearly as well.

152.—Floor-Beams.—The size of floor-beams can be ascertained by the preceding rules for the *stiffness* of materials. These rules give the required dimensions for the various kinds of material in common use. The rules may be somewhat abridged for ordinary use, if some of the quantities represented in the formula be made constant within certain limits. For example, if the load per foot superficial upon the floor be fixed, and the deflection, then these, together with the constant represented by F , may be reduced to one

constant. For dwellings, the load per foot may be taken at 70 pounds, the weight proper to be allowed for a crowd of people on their feet. (*Transverse Strains*, Art. 114.) To this add 20 for the weight of the material of which the floor is composed, and the sum, 90, is the value of f , or the weight per foot superficial for dwellings. Then $c f l = U$ (Art. 130). The rate of deflection allowable for this load may be fixed at 0.03 inch per foot of the length, or $\delta = 0.03 l$. Substituting these values in equation (35.), we obtain—

$$b d^3 = \frac{c f l^3}{1.6 F \times 0.03 l} = \frac{90 c l^3}{1.6 \times 0.03 F} = \frac{1875 c l^3}{F},$$

or—

$$b d^3 = \frac{1875}{F} c l^3. \quad (43.)$$

Putting j to represent $\frac{1875}{F}$, we have—

$$b d^3 = j c l^3. \quad (44.)$$

Now, by reducing $\frac{1875}{F}$, for the six woods in common use, the value of j for each is found as follows:

Georgia Pine	$j = 0.32$
Locust	$j = 0.37$
White Oak	$j = 0.6$
Spruce	$j = 0.54$
White Pine	$j = 0.65$
Hemlock	$j = 0.67$

Equation (44.) is a rule for the floor-beams of dwellings; it may be used also to obtain the dimensions of beams for stores for all ordinary business for it will require from 3 to 5 times the weight used in this rule, or from 200 to 400 (average 300) pounds to increase the deflection to the limit of elasticity in beams of the usual depths and lengths. For light stores, therefore, loaded, say, to 150 pounds per foot, the beams would be safe, but the deflection would be in-

creased to 0.06 per foot. When so great a deflection as this would not be objectionable to the eye, then this rule (44.) will serve for the beams of light stores. But for first-class stores, taking the rate of deflection at .04 per foot, and fixing the weight per superficial foot at 275 pounds, including the weight of the material of which the floor is constructed, and letting k represent the constant, then—

$$b d^2 = k c l^2, \quad (45.)$$

and for—

Georgia Pine.....	$k = 0.73$
Locust	$k = 0.85$
White Oak	$k = 1.38$
Spruce.....	$k = 1.48$
White Pine	$k = 1.23$
Hemlock.....	$k = 1.53$

153.—Floor-Beams for Dwellings.—To find the dimensions of floor-beams for *dwellings*, when the rate of deflection is 0.03 inch per foot, or for *ordinary stores* when the load is about 150 pounds per foot, and the deflection caused by this weight is within the limits of the elasticity of the material, we have the following rule:

Rule XXXVIII.—Multiply the cube of the length by the distance apart between the beams (from centres), both in feet, and multiply the product by the value of j (*Art.* 152) for the material of the beam, and the product will equal the product of the breadth into the cube of the depth. Now, to find the breadth, divide this product by the cube of the depth in inches, and the quotient will be the breadth in inches. But if the depth is sought, divide the said product by the breadth in inches, and the cube root of the quotient will be the depth in inches; or if the breadth and depth are to be in proportion as r is to unity, r representing any required decimal, then divide the aforesaid product by the value of r , and extract the square root of the quotient, and the square root of this square root will be the depth required in inches, and the depth multiplied by the value of r will be the breadth in inches.

Example.—In a dwelling or ordinary store, what must be the breadth of the beams, when placed 15 inches from centres, to support a floor covering a span of 16 feet, the depth being 11 inches, the beams of white oak? By the rule, 4096, the cube of the length, by $1\frac{1}{2}$, the distance from centres, and by 0.6, the value of j for white oak, equals 3072. This divided by 1331, the cube of the depth, equals 2.31 inches, or $2\frac{5}{16}$ inches, the required breadth. But if, instead of the breadth, the depth be required, the breadth being fixed at 3 inches, then the product, 3072, as above, divided by 3, the breadth, equals 1024; the cube root of this is 10.08, or, say, 10 inches nearly. But if the breadth and depth are to be in proportion, say, as 0.3 to 1.0, then the aforesaid product, 3072, divided by 0.3, the value of r , equals 10240, the square root of which is 101.2, and the square root of this is 10.06, the required depth. This multiplied by 0.3, the value of r , equals 3.02, the required breadth; the beam is therefore to be, say, 3×10 inches.

154.—Floor-Beams for First-Class Stores.—To find the breadth and depth of the beams for a floor of a first-class store sufficient to sustain 250 pounds per foot superficial (exclusive of the weight of the material in the floor), with a deflection of 0.04 inch per foot of the length, we have—

Rule XXXIX.—The same as XXXVIII., with the exception that the value of k (*Art.* 152) is to be used instead of the value of j .

Example.—The beams of the floor of a first-class store are to be of Georgia pine, with a clear bearing between the walls of 18 feet, and placed 14 inches from centres: what must be the breadth when the depth is 11 inches? By the rule, 5832, the cube of the length, and $1\frac{1}{2}$, the distance from centres, and 0.73, the value of k for Georgia pine, all multiplied together equal 4966.92; and this product divided by 1331, the cube of the depth, equals 3.732, the required breadth, or $3\frac{3}{4}$ inches.

But if, instead of the breadth, the depth be required: what must be the depth when the breadth is 3 inches?

The said product, 4966.92, divided by 3, the breadth, equals 1655.64, and the cube root of this, 11.83, or, say, 12 inches, is the depth required.

But if the breadth and depth are to be in a given proportion, say 0.35 to 1.0, the 4966.92 aforesaid divided by 0.35, the value of r , equals 14191, the square root of which is 119.13, and the square root of this square root is 10.91, or, say, 11 inches, the required depth. And 10.91 multiplied by 0.35, the value of r , equals 3.82, the required breadth, say $3\frac{1}{2}$ inches.

155.—Floor-Beams: Distance from Centres.—It is sometimes desirable, when the breadth and depth of the beams are fixed, or when the beams have been sawed and are now ready for use, to know the distance from centres at which such beams should be placed in order that the floor be sufficiently stiff. By a transposition of the factors in equation (44.), we obtain—

$$c = \frac{b d^3}{j l^3}. \quad (46.)$$

In like manner, equation (45.) produces—

$$c = \frac{b d^3}{k l^3}. \quad (47.)$$

These, in words at length, are as follows:

Rule XL.—Multiply the cube of the depth by the breadth, both in inches, and divide the product by the cube of the length in feet multiplied by the value of j , for dwellings and for ordinary stores, or by k , for first-class stores, and the quotient will be the distance apart from centres in feet.

Example.—A span of 17 feet, in a dwelling, is to be covered by white-pine beams 3×12 inches: at what distance apart from centres should they be placed? By the rule, 1728, the cube of the depth, multiplied by 3, the breadth, equals 5184. The cube of 17 is 4913; this by 0.65, the value of j for white pine, equals 3193.45. The aforesaid 5184 divided by this 3193.45 equals 1.6233 feet, or, say, 20 inches.

156.—Framed Openings for Chimneys and Stairs.—

Where chimneys, flues, stairs, etc., occur to interrupt the bearing, the beams are framed into a piece, *b* (*Fig. 42*), called a *header*. The beams, *a a*, into which the header is framed are called *trimmers* or *carriage-beams*. These framed beams require to be made thicker than the common beams. The header must be strong enough to sustain one half of the weight that is sustained upon the *tail-beams*, *c c* (the wall at the opposite end or another header there sustaining the other half), and the trimmers must each sustain one half of the weight sustained by the header in *addition* to the weight it supports as a common beam. It is usual in practice to make

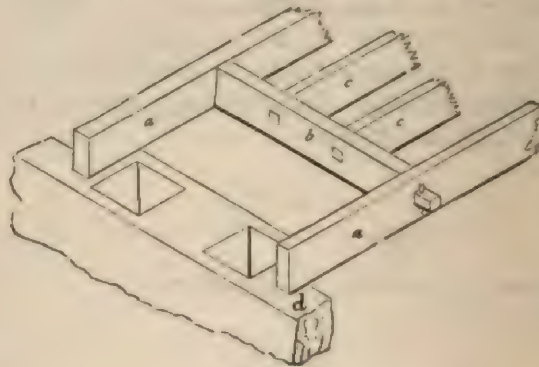


Fig. 42.

these framed beams one inch thicker than the common beams for dwellings, and two inches thicker for heavy stores. This practice in ordinary cases answers very well, but in extreme cases these dimensions are not proper. Rules applicable generally must be deduced from the conditions of the case—the load to be sustained and the strength of the material.

157.—Breadth of Headers.—The load sustained by a header is equally distributed, and is equal to the superficial area of the floor supported by the header multiplied by the load on every superficial foot of the floor. This is equal to the length of the header multiplied by half the length of the tail-beams, and by the load per superficial foot. Putting *g*

for the length of the header, n for the length of the tail-beams, and f for the load per superficial foot; U , the uniformly distributed load carried by the header, will equal $\frac{1}{2} f n g$. By substituting for U , in equation (35.), this value of it, we obtain—

$$b d^3 = \frac{\frac{1}{2} f n g l^3}{1.6 F \delta}.$$

The symbols g and l here both represent the same thing, the length of the header; combining these, and for δ putting its value gr , we obtain—

$$b d^3 = \frac{f n g^3}{3.2 F r}.$$

To allow for the weakening of the header by the mortices for the tail-beams (which should be cut as near the middle of the depth of the header as practicable), the depth should be taken at, say, one inch less than the actual depth. With this modification, we obtain—

$$b = \frac{f n g^3}{3.2 F r (d-1)^3}. \quad (48.)$$

If f be taken at 90, and r at 0.03, we have, by reducing—

$$b = \frac{937.5 n g^3}{F (d-1)^3}, \quad (49.)$$

which is a rule for the breadth of headers for dwellings and for ordinary stores. This, in words, is as follows:

Rule XLI.—Multiply 937.5 times the length of the tail-beams by the cube of the length of the header, both in feet. The product divided by the cube of one less than the depth multiplied by the value of F , Table III., will equal the breadth of the header in inches for *dwellings* or *ordinary stores*.

Example.—A header of white pine, for a dwelling, is 10 feet long, and sustains tail-beams 20 feet long; its depth is 12 inches: what must be its breadth? By the rule, $937.5 \times 20 \times 10^3 = 18750000$. This divided by $(12-1)^3 \times 2900 =$

3859900, equals 4.858, say 5 inches, the required breadth. For *first-class stores*, f should be taken at 275, and r at 0.04. With these values the constants in equation (48.) reduce to 2148.4375, or, say, 2150. This gives—

$$b = \frac{2150 \, n \, g^3}{F(d-1)^5}, \quad (50.)$$

a rule for the breadth of a header for first-class stores. It is the same as that for dwellings, except that the constant 2150 is to be used in place of 937.5. Taking the same example, and using the constant 2150 instead of 937.5, we obtain 11.14 as the required breadth of the header for a first-class store. Modifying the question by using Georgia pine instead of white pine, we obtain 5.476 as the required thickness, say $5\frac{1}{2}$ inches.

158.—Breadth of Carriage-Beams.—A carriage-beam or trimmer, in *addition* to its load as a common beam, carries one half of the load on the header, which, as has been seen in the last article, is equal to one half of the superficial area of the floor supported by the tail-beams multiplied by the weight per superficial foot of the load upon the floor: therefore, when the length of the header in feet is represented by g , and the length of the tail-beams by n , w equals

$$\frac{g}{2} \times \frac{n}{2} \times f, \text{ equals } \frac{1}{4} f g n.*$$

For a load not at middle, we have (25.)—

$$b d^3 = \frac{4 W a m n}{B l}.$$

* The load from the header, instead of being $\frac{1}{4} f g n$, is, more accurately, $\frac{1}{4} f n (g - c)$: because the surface of floor carried by the header is only that which occurs between the surfaces carried by the carriage-beams, each of which carries so much of the floor as extends half way to the first tail-beam from it, or the distance $\frac{c}{2}$; therefore, the width of the surface carried equals the length of the header less $\left(2 \times \frac{c}{2} =\right) c$, or $g - c$. When, however, it is considered that the carriage-beam is liable to receive some weight from a stairs or other article in the well-hole, the small additional load above referred to is not only not objectionable, but is really quite necessary to be included in the calculation.

This is a rule based upon resistance to rupture. By substituting for a , the factor of safety, $\frac{B l}{F d r}$, its value in terms of resistance to flexure (*Transverse Strains*, (154.)), we have—

$$b d^2 = \frac{4 W B l m n}{B l F d r} = \frac{4 W m n}{F d r};$$

or—

$$b d^2 = \frac{4 W m n}{F r}.$$

In this expression, W is a concentrated weight at the distances m and n from the two ends of the beam. Taking the load upon a carriage-beam due to the load from the header, as above found, and substituting it for W , we obtain—

$$b d^2 = \frac{4 \times \frac{1}{4} f g n m n}{F r} = \frac{f g m n^2}{F r}.$$

This is the expression required for the concentrated load. To this is to be added the uniformly distributed load upon the carriage-beam; this is given in equation (35.). Substituting for U of this equation its value, $f c l$, gives—

$$b d^2 = \frac{f c l^3}{1.6 F \delta} = \frac{\frac{5}{8} f c l^3}{F r}.$$

Combining these two equations, we have for the total load—

$$b d^2 = \frac{f(g m n^2 + \frac{5}{8} c l^2)}{F r}. \quad (51.)$$

If, in this equation, f be taken at 90, and r at 0.03, these reduce to 3000; therefore, with this value of $\frac{f}{r}$, we have—

$$b = \frac{3000 (g m n^2 + \frac{5}{8} c l^2)}{F d^2}. \quad (52.)$$

This rule for the breadth of carriage-beams with one header, for *dwelling*s and for *ordinary stores*, is put in words as follows:

Rule XLII.—Multiply the length of the framed opening by its breadth, and by the square of the length of the tail-beams; to this product add $\frac{5}{8}$ of the cube of the length into the distance of the common beams from centres—all in feet; divide 3000 times the sum by the cube of the depth in inches multiplied by the value of F for the material of the beam, in Table III., and the quotient will be the breadth in inches.

Example.—In a tier of 3×10 inch beams, placed 14 inches from centres, what should be the breadth of a Georgia-pine carriage-beam 20 feet long, carrying a header 12 feet long, having tail-beams 15 feet long? Here the framed opening is 5×12 feet. Therefore, according to the rule, $12 \times 5 \times 15^2 = 13500$; to which add $(\frac{5}{8} \times 20^3 \times \frac{1}{2}) = 5833\frac{1}{2}$; the sum is 19333½, and this by 3000 = 5800000. The value of F for Georgia pine, in Table III., is 5900; the cube of the depth is 1000; the product of these two is 5900000; therefore, dividing the above 5800000 by 5900000 gives a quotient of 9.83, the required breadth in inches. If, in equation (51.), f be taken at 275, and r at 0.04, then $\frac{f}{r}$ becomes 6875, and the equation becomes—

$$b = \frac{6875 (g m n^2 + \frac{5}{8} c l^3)}{F d^3}, \quad (53.)$$

a rule for the breadth of carriage-beams for *first-class stores*; the same as that for dwellings, except that the constant is 6875 instead of 3000.

159.—Breadth of Carriage-Beams Carrying Two Sets of Tail-Beams.—A rule for this is the same as that for a carriage-beam carrying one set of tail-beams, if to it there be added the effect of the second set of tail-beams. Equation (51.) with the addition named becomes—

$$b = \frac{f [g n (m n + s^2) + \frac{5}{8} c l^3]}{F d^3 r}, \quad (54.)$$

in which n is the length of one set of tail-beams, and s the length of the other set; and $m + n = l$.

If f be taken at 90, and r at 0.03, these two reduce to 3000, and we have—

$$b = \frac{3000 \left[g n (m n + s^2) + \frac{5}{8} c l^3 \right]}{F d^3}, \quad (55.)$$

a rule for the breadth of a carriage-beam carrying two sets of headers, for dwellings and for ordinary stores. It may be stated in words as follows:

Rule XLIII.—Multiply the length of the longer set of tail-beams by the difference between this length and the length of the carriage-beam, and to the product add the square of the length of the shorter set of tail-beams; multiply the sum by the length of the longer set of tail-beams, and by the length of the header; to this product add $\frac{5}{8}$ of the product of the cube of the length of the carriage-beam into the distance apart from centres of the common beams; multiply this sum by 3000; divide this product by the product of the cube of the depth in inches into the value of F for the material of the carriage-beam, in Table III., and the quotient will be the required breadth.

Example.—In a tier of 3×12 inch beams, placed 14 inches from centres, what should be the breadth of a spruce carriage-beam 20 feet long in the clear of the bearings, carrying two sets of tail-beams, one of them 9 feet long, the other 5 feet; the headers being 15 feet long? The difference between the longer set of tail-beams and the carriage-beam is $(20 - 9 =) 11$ feet. Therefore, by the rule, $9 \times 11 + 5^2 = 124$; then $(124 \times 9 \times 15 =) 16740 + (\frac{5}{8} \times 20^3 \times \frac{1}{8} =) 5833\frac{1}{8} = 22573\frac{1}{8}$; then $22573\frac{1}{8} \times 3000 = 67720000$. Now the value of F for spruce, Table III., is 3500; this by 12^3 , the cube of the depth, equals 6048000; by this dividing the aforesaid 67720000, we obtain a quotient of 11.197, the required breadth of the carriage-beam. If, in equation (54.), f be taken at 275, and r at 0.04, these reduce to 6875, and we obtain—

$$b = \frac{6875 \left[g n (m n + s^2) + \frac{5}{8} c l^3 \right]}{F d^3}, \quad (56.)$$

a rule for the breadth of carriage-beams carrying two sets

of tail-beams, in the floors of *first-class stores*. This is like the rule for dwellings, except that the constant is 6875 instead of 3000.

160.—Breadth of Carriage-Beam with Well-Hole at Middle.—When the framed opening between the two sets of tail-beams occurs at the middle, or when the lengths of the two sets of tail-beams are equal, then equation (54.) reduces to

$$b = \frac{f l (g n^2 + \frac{5}{8} c l^2)}{F d^3 r}; \quad (57.)$$

and if f be taken at 90, and r at 0.03, these reduce to 3000, and we have—

$$b = \frac{3000 l (g n^2 + \frac{5}{8} c l^2)}{F d^3}, \quad (58.)$$

a rule for the breadth of a carriage-beam carrying two sets of tail-beams of equal length, in the floor of a *dwelling* or of an *ordinary store*; and which in words is as follows:

Rule XLIV.—Multiply the length of the header by the square of the length of the tail-beams, and to the product add $\frac{5}{8}$ of the product of the square of the length of the carriage-beam by the distance apart from centres of the common beams; multiply the sum by 3000 times the length of the carriage-beam; divide the product by the product of the cube of the depth into the value of F for the material of the carriage-beam, in Table III., and the quotient will be the required breadth.

Example.—In a tier of 3×12 inch beams, placed 12 inches from centres, what must be the thickness of a hemlock carriage-beam 20 feet long, carrying two sets of tail-beams, each 8 feet long, with headers 10 feet long? By the rule, $10 \times 8^2 + \frac{5}{8} \times 1 \times 20^2 = 890$; $890 \times 3000 \times 20 = 53400000$. Now, the value of F , in Table III., for hemlock is 2800; this by the cube of the depth, 1728, equals 4838400; by this dividing the former product, 53400000, and the quotient, 11.0367, is the required breadth of the carriage-beam.

If, in equation (57.), f be taken at 275, and r at 0.04, these will reduce to 6875, and we shall have—

$$b = \frac{6875 \, l \left(g \, n^2 + \frac{1}{4} c \, l^2 \right)}{F \, d^3}, \quad (59.)$$

a result the same as in equation (58.), except that the constant is 6875 instead of 3000. Equation (59.) is a rule for the breadth of carriage-beams carrying two sets of tail-beams of equal length, in the floor of a first-class store. In words at length, it is the same as Rule XLIV., except that the constant 6875 is to be used in place of 3000.

161.—Cross-Bridging, or Herring-Bone Bridging.—The diagonal struts set between floor-beams, as in *Fig. 43*, are known as cross-bridging, or herring-bone bridging. By connecting the beams thus at intervals, say, of from 5 to 8 feet, the stiffness of the floor is greatly increased. The absolute strength of a tier of beams to resist a weight uniformly distributed over the whole tier is augmented but little by cross-bridging; but the power of any one beam in the tier to resist a concentrated load upon it, as a heavy article of furniture or an iron safe, is greatly increased by the cross-bridging; for this device, by connecting the loaded beam with the adjacent beams on each side, causes these beams to assist in carrying the load. To secure the full benefit of the diagonal struts, it is very important that the beams be well secured from separating laterally, by having strips, such as *cross-furring*, firmly nailed to the under edges of the beams. The tie thus made, together with that of the floor-plank on the top edges, will prevent the thrust of the struts from separating the beams.

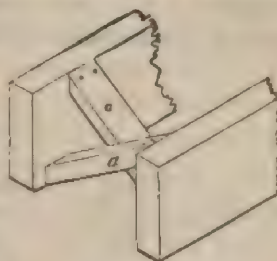


FIG. 43.

162.—Bridging: Value to Resist Concentrated Loads.—A rule for determining the additional load which any one beam connected by bridging will be capable of sustaining, by the assistance derived from the other beams, through the

bridging, may be found in Chapter XVIII., *Transverse Strains*. This rule may be stated thus:

$$R = \frac{5}{4} \frac{c^3 f l}{d^3} (1 + 2^2 + 3^2 + 4^2 + \text{etc.}); \quad (60.)$$

in which R is the increased resistance, equal to the additional load which may be put upon the loaded beam; c is the distance from centres in feet at which the beams in the tier are placed; f is the load in pounds per superficial foot upon the floor; l is the length of the beams in feet; and d is the depth of the beams in inches. The squares within the bracket are to be extended to as many places as there are beams on each side which contribute assistance through the bridging. The rule given in the work referred to, for ascertaining the number of spaces between the beams, is—

$$n = \frac{d}{c^2}; \quad (61.)$$

or, the depth of the beam in inches divided by the square of the distance from centres, in feet, at which the beams are placed will give the number of spaces between the beams which contribute on each side in sustaining the concentrated load. The nearest whole number, minus unity, will equal the required number of beams.

The value of c for beams in floors of dwellings is given in equation (46.), and for those in first-class stores in equation (47.). By a modification of equation (34.), putting $c f l$ for U , we have—

$$c f l = \frac{1.6 F b d^3 \delta}{l^3},$$

$$\text{and—} \quad c = \frac{1.6 F b d^3 \delta}{f l^3}, \quad (62.)$$

$$\text{or—} \quad c = \frac{1.6 F b d^3 r}{f l^3}. \quad (63.)$$

These equations give general rules for the value of c .

Now, the rule, in words at length, for the resistance offered by the adjoining beams to a weight concentrated upon one of the beams sustained by cross-bridging to the others, is—

Rule XLV.—Divide the depth of the beam in inches by the square of the distance apart from centres in feet at which the floor-beams are placed; from the quotient deduct unity, and call the whole number nearest to the remainder the First Result. Take the sum of the squares of the consecutive numbers from unity to as many places as shall equal the above first result; multiply this sum by 5 times the length in feet, by the load per foot superficial upon the floor, and by the fifth power of the distance apart from centres in feet at which the beams are placed; divide the product by 4 times the square of the depth in inches, and the quotient will be the weight in pounds required.

Example.—In a tier of 3×12 inch floor-beams 20 feet long, placed in a dwelling 16 inches from centres and well bridged, what load may be uniformly distributed upon one of the beams, additional to the load which that beam is capable of sustaining safely when unassisted by bridging? Here, according to the rule, 12 divided by $(1\frac{1}{2} + 1\frac{1}{2} =) 1\frac{1}{2}$ equals $6\frac{2}{3}$; $6\frac{2}{3} - 1 = 5\frac{2}{3}$, the nearest whole number to which is 6, the first result. The sum of the square of the first 6 numbers equals $(1 + 2^2 + 3^2 + 4^2 + 5^2 + 6^2 =) 1 + 4 + 9 + 16 + 25 + 36 = 91$. Therefore, $91 \times 5 \times 20 \times 90 \times (\frac{1}{2})^5 = 3451266$.* The square of the depth $(12 \times 12 =) 144 \times 4 = 576$; by this dividing the above 3451266, we have the quotient 5991.78, say 5992 pounds, the required weight. This is the *additional* load which may be placed upon the beam. At 90 pounds per superficial foot, the common load on each beam, we have

* The value of $\frac{1}{2}$, 16 inches, equals $\frac{4}{3}$ feet. The fifth power of this, or $(\frac{4}{3})^5$, is obtained by involving both numerator and denominator to the fifth power, and dividing the fifth power of the former by the fifth power of the latter; for $(\frac{4}{3})^5 = \frac{4^5}{3^5}$. For the numerator we have $4 \times 4 \times 4 \times 4 \times 4 = 1024$, and for the denominator $3 \times 3 \times 3 \times 3 \times 3 = 243$. The former divided by the latter gives as a quotient 4.214, the value of $(\frac{4}{3})^5$. The process of involving a number to a high power, or the reverse operation of extracting high roots, may be performed by logarithms with great facility. (See *Art.* 427.)

$90 \times 20 \times \frac{1}{2} = 2400$ as the common load. To this add 5992, the load sustained through the bridging by the other beams, and the sum, 8392 pounds, will be the total load which may be safely sustained, uniformly distributed, upon one beam—nearly $3\frac{1}{2}$ times the common load.

163.—Girders.—When the distance between the walls of a building is greater than that which would be the limit for the length of ordinary single beams, it becomes requisite to introduce one or more additional supports. Where supports are needed for a floor and partitions are not desirable, it is usual to use a large piece of timber called a girder, sustained by posts set at intervals of from 8 to 15 feet; or, where posts are objectionable, a framed construction called a framed girder (*Art.* 196); or an iron box called a tubular iron girder (*Art.* 182). When a simple timber girder is used it is advisable, if it be large, to divide it vertically from end to end and reverse the two pieces, exposing the heart of the timber to the air in order that it may dry quickly, and also to detect decay at the heart. When the halves are bolted together, thin slips of wood should be inserted between them at the several points at which they are bolted, in order to leave sufficient space for the air to circulate freely in the space thus formed between them. This tends to prevent decay, which will be found first at such parts as are not exactly tight, nor yet far enough apart to permit the escape of moisture. When girders are required for a long bearing, it is usual to truss them; that is, to insert between the halves two pieces of oak which are inclined towards each other, and which meet at the centre of the length of the girder like the rafters of a roof-truss, though nearly if not quite concealed within the girder. This and many similar methods, though extensively practised, are generally worse than useless; since it has been ascertained that, in nearly all such cases, the operation has positively *weakened* the girder.

A girder may be strengthened by mechanical contrivance, when its depth is required to be greater than any one piece of timber will allow. *Fig. 44* shows a very simple yet invaluable method of doing this. The two pieces of which the gir-

der is composed are bolted or pinned together, having keys inserted between to prevent the pieces from sliding. The keys should be of hard wood, well seasoned. The two pieces should be about equal in depth, in order that the joint between them may be in the neutral line. (See *Arts.* 120, 121.) The thickness of the keys should be about half their breadth, and the amount of their united thickness should be equal to a trifle over the depth and one third of the depth of the girder. Instead of bolts or pins, iron hoops are sometimes used; and when they can be procured, they are far preferable. In this case, the girder is diminished at the ends, and the hoops driven from each end towards the middle. A girder may be spliced if timber of a sufficient length cannot be obtained; though not at or near the mid-

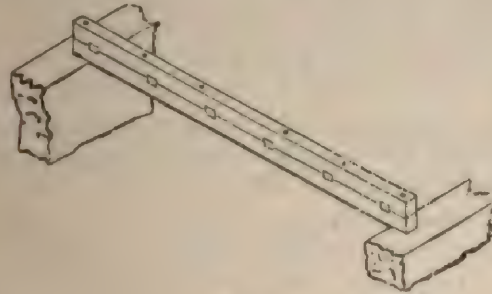


FIG. 44.

dle, if it can be avoided. (See *Art.* 87.) Girders should rest from 9 to 12 inches on each wall, and a space should be left for the air to circulate around the ends, that the dampness may evaporate.

164.—Girders: Dimensions.—The size of a girder, for any special case, may be determined by equations (21.), (22.), (25.), (27.), and (28.), to resist rupture; and to resist deflection, by equations (32.) and (35.). For girders in dwellings, equation (44.) may be used. In this case, the value of c is to be taken equal to the width of floor supported by the girder, which is equal to the sum of the distances half way to the wall or next bearing on each side. When there is but one

girder between the two walls, the value of c is equal to half the distance between the walls. The rule for girders for dwellings, in words, is—

Rule XLVI.—Multiply the cube of the length of the girder by the sum of the distances from the girder half way to the next bearing on each side, and by the value of j for the material of the girder, in *Art. 152*; the product will equal the product of the breadth of the girder into the cube of the depth. To obtain the breadth, divide this product by the cube of the depth; the quotient will be the breadth. To obtain the depth, divide the said product by the breadth, the cube root of the quotient will be the depth. If the breadth and depth are to be in a given proportion, say as $r : 1.0$, then divide the aforesaid quotient by the value of r ; take the square root of the quotient; then the square root of this square root will be the depth, and the depth multiplied by the value of r will be the breadth.

Example.—In the floor of a dwelling, what should be the size of a Georgia-pine girder 14 feet long between posts, placed at 10 feet from one wall and 20 feet from the other? The value of c here is $10^0 + 20^0 = 30^0 = 15$. The value of j for Georgia pine (*Art. 152*) is 0.32. By the rule, $14^3 \times 15 \times 0.32 = 13171.2$. Now, to find the breadth when the depth is 12 inches; 13171.2 divided by the cube of 12, or by 1728, gives a quotient of 7.622, or $7\frac{5}{8}$, the required breadth. Again, to find the depth, when the breadth is 8 inches: 13171.2 divided by 8 gives 1646.4, the cube root of which is 11.808, or, say, $11\frac{3}{4}$ inches, the required depth. But if neither breadth nor depth have been previously determined, except as to their proportion, say as 0.7 to 1.0, then 13171.2 divided by 0.7 gives 18816, of which the square root is 137.171, and of this the square root is 11.712, or, say, $11\frac{3}{4}$ inches, the required depth. For the breadth, we have 11.712 by 0.7 equals 8.198, or, say, $8\frac{1}{4}$, the required breadth. Thus the girder is required to be $7\frac{5}{8} \times 12$, $8 \times 11\frac{3}{4}$, or $8\frac{1}{4} \times 11\frac{3}{4}$ inches. This example is one in a dwelling or ordinary store; for *first-class stores* the rule for girders is the same as the last, except that the value of k is to be taken instead of j , in *Art. 152*.

165.—Solid Timber Floors.—Floors constructed with rolled-iron beams and brick arches are proof against fire only to a limited degree; for experience has shown that the heat, in an extensive conflagration, is sufficiently intense to deprive the iron of its rigidity, and consequently of its strength. Singular as it may seem, it is nevertheless true that wood, under certain circumstances, has a greater fire-resisting quality than iron. Floors of timber constructed, as is usual, with the beams set apart, have but little power to resist fire, but if the spaces between the beams be filled up solid with other beams, which thus close the openings against the passage of the flames, and the under surface be coated with plastering mortar containing a large portion of plaster of Paris, and finished smooth, then this wooden floor will resist the action of fire longer than a floor of iron beams and brick arches. The wooden beams should be secured to each other by dowels or spikes.

166.—Solid Timber Floors for Dwellings and Assembly-Rooms.—From *Transverse Strains*, Art. 702, we have—

$$d^3 = \frac{(82 + y d) l^3}{0.576 F},$$

which may be modified so as to take this form:

$$d = \sqrt[3]{\frac{(82 + y h l) l^3}{0.576 F}}, \quad (64.)$$

which is a rule for the depth or thickness^o of solid timber floors for dwellings, assembly-rooms, or office buildings, and in which y and h are constants depending upon the material; thus, for—

Georgia Pine.....	$y = 4$, and $h = 0.314$
Spruce	$y = 2\frac{1}{2}$, " $h = 0.365$
White Pine.....	$y = 2\frac{1}{2}$, " $h = 0.389$
Hemlock.....	$y = 2$, " $h = 0.39$

The rule may be stated in words thus:

Rule XLVII.—Multiply the length by the value of y ,

and by the value of h , as above given; to the product add 82; multiply the sum by the cube of the length; divide this product by 0.576 times the value of F , in Table III.; then the cube root of the quotient will be the required depth in inches.

Example.—What depth is required for a solid Georgia-pine floor to cover a span of 20 feet? For Georgia pine $F=5900$; y , as above given, equals 4, and h equals 0.314; therefore, by the rule—

$$d = \sqrt[3]{\frac{(82 + 4 \times 0.314 \times 20) l^3}{0.576 \times 5900}} = \sqrt[3]{\frac{856960}{3398.4}} = 6.318;$$

or, the depth required is, say, 6.32 or $6\frac{5}{16}$ inches.

167.—Solid Timber Floors for First-Class Stores.—The equation given for first-class stores, in *Transverse Strains*, Art. 702, is—

$$d^3 = \frac{(263 + y d) l^3}{.768 F}$$

which may be changed to this form:

$$d = \sqrt[3]{\frac{(263 + y k l) l^3}{0.768 F}}, \quad (65.)$$

in which y is as before, and k for—

Georgia Pine equals.....	0.4
Spruce equals.....	0.472
White Pine equals.....	0.502
Hemlock equals.....	0.506

This rule may be put in words the same as Rule XLVII., except as to the constants, which require that 263 be used in place of 82, that k be used in place of h , and that 0.768 be used in place of 0.576. Table XXI. of *Transverse Strains* contains the results of computation showing the depths of solid timber floors for dwellings and assembly-rooms and for first-class stores, in floors of spans varying from 8 to 30 feet, and for the four kinds of timber before named.

168. — **Rolled - Iron Beams.**—The dimensions of iron beams, whether wrought or cast, are to be ascertained by the rules already given, when the beams are of rectangular form in their cross-section; these rules are applicable alike to wood and iron (*Art.* 93), and may be used for any material, provided the constant appropriate to the given material be used. But when the form of cross-section is such as that which is usual for rolled-iron beams (*Fig.* 45), the rules need modifying. Without attempting to explain these modifications (referring for this to *Transverse Strains*, *Art.* 457 and following article), it may be remarked that the elements of resistance to flexure in a beam constitute what is termed the *Moment of Inertia*. This, in a beam of rectangular cross-section, is equal to $\frac{1}{12}$ of the breadth into the cube of the depth; or—



FIG. 45.

$$I = \frac{1}{12} b d^3. \quad (66.)$$

This would be appropriate to rolled-iron beams if the hollow on each side were filled with metal, so as to complete the form of cross-section into a rectangle. The proper expression for them may be obtained by taking first the moment for the beam as if it were a solid rectangle, and from this deducting the moment for the part which on each side is wanting, or for the rectangles of the hollows. In accordance with this view of the case, we have—

$$I = \frac{1}{12} (b d^3 - b_1 d_1^3); \quad (67.)$$

in which b is the breadth of the beam or width of the flanges; b_1 is the breadth of the two hollows, or is equal to b less the thickness of the *web* or *stem*; d is the depth including top and bottom flanges; and d_1 is the depth in the clear between the top and bottom flanges.

Now, if equation (32.) be divided by 12, we shall have—

$$\frac{1}{12} b d^3 = \frac{W l^3}{12 E \delta};$$

and since $\frac{1}{12} b d^3$ represents the moment of inertia, we have—

$$I = \frac{W l^3}{12 F \delta} \quad (68.)$$

This gives the value of I for a beam of any form in cross-section loaded at the middle. By this equation the values of I have been computed for rolled-iron beams of many sizes, and the results recorded in Table XVII., *Transverse Strains*. A few of these are included in Table IV., as follows:

TABLE IV.—ROLLED-IRON BEAMS.

NAME.	Depth.	Weight per yard.	$I =$	NAME.	Depth.	Weight per yard.	$I =$
Trenton....	4	30	7.84	Buffalo.....	9	90	109.117
Paterson....	5	30	12.082	Phoenix.....	9	150	100.03
Phoenix....	5	36	14.317	Buffalo.....	10½	90	151.43½
Trenton....	6	40	23.761	Buffalo.....	10½	105	175.64½
Phoenix....	7	55	42.43	Trenton.....	10½	135	241.47½
Trenton....	7	60	46.012	Buffalo.....	12½	125	286.019
Buffalo.....	8	65	64.526	Paterson....	12½	125	292.05
Paterson....	8	80	84.735	Paterson....	12½	170	395.03½
Phoenix....	9	70	92.207	Buffalo.....	12½	180	415.945
Phoenix....	9	84	107.793	Trenton.....	15½	150	528.223

169. — Rolled-Iron Beams: Dimensions; Weight at Middle.—If, in equation (68.), there be substituted for F its value for wrought iron, as in Table III., we shall have—

$$I = \frac{W l^3}{12 \times 62000 \delta};$$

OR—

$$I = \frac{W l^3}{744000 \delta} \quad (69.)$$

This is a rule by which to ascertain the size of a rolled-iron beam to sustain a given weight at middle with a given deflection, and, in words at length, is as follows:

Rule XLVIII.—Multiply the weight in pounds by the cube of the length in feet; divide the product by 744000 times the deflection in inches, and the quotient will be the

moment of inertia of the required beam, and may be found, or the next nearest number, in Table IV. in column headed *I*. Opposite to the number thus found, to the left, will be found the name, depth, and weight per yard of the required beam.

Example.—Which of the beams of Table IV. would be proper to carry 10,000 pounds at the middle with a deflection of one inch, the length between bearings being 20 feet? Here we have, substituting for the symbols their values—

$$I = \frac{W l^3}{744000 \delta} = \frac{10000 \times 20^3}{744000 \times 1} = \frac{8000000}{744000} = 107.527;$$

or, the moment of inertia of the required beam is 107.527, the nearest to which, in the table, is 107.793, pertaining to the Phoenix 9-inch, 84-pound beam. This, then, is the required beam.

170.—Rolled-Iron Beams: Deflection when Weight is

at Middle.—By a transposition of symbols in equation (69.), we have—

$$\delta = \frac{W l^3}{744000 I} \quad (70.)$$

or a rule for the deflection of rolled-iron beams when the weight is at the middle. This, in words, is—

Rule XLIX.—Multiply the weight in pounds by the cube of the length in feet; divide the product by 744000 times the value of *I* for the given beam, and the quotient will be the required deflection in inches.

Example.—What will be the deflection of a Phoenix 9-inch, 70 pound beam 20 feet long, loaded at the middle with 7500 pounds? The value of *I* for this beam, in Table IV., is 92.207; therefore, substituting for the symbols their values, and proceeding by the rule, we have—

$$\delta = \frac{W l^3}{744000 I} = \frac{7500 \times 20^3}{744000 \times 92.207} = 0.87461;$$

or, the deflection will be, say, $\frac{7}{8}$ of an inch.

171.—Rolled-Iron Beams: Weight when at Middle.—A transposition of factors in equation (70.) gives—

$$W = \frac{744000 I \delta}{l^3}. \quad (71.)$$

This is a rule for the weight at middle, and, in words, is—

Rule L.—Multiply 744000 times the value of I by the deflection in inches; divide the product by the cube of the length, and the quotient will be the required weight in pounds.

Example.—What weight at the middle of a Buffalo 9-inch, 90-pound beam will deflect it one inch, the length between bearings being 20 feet? The value of I for this beam, in Table IV., is 109.117; therefore—

$$W = \frac{744000 I \delta}{l^3} = \frac{744000 \times 109.117 \times 1}{20^3} = 10147.88;$$

or, the required weight is, say, 10,148 pounds.

172.—Rolled-Iron Beams: Weight at any Point.—The equation for a load at any point is (*Transverse Strains*, Art. 485)—

$$W = \frac{186000 I \delta}{l m n}; \quad (72.)$$

in which m and n represent the two parts in feet into which the point where the load rests divides the length. This, in words, is as follows:

Rule LI.—Multiply 186000 times the value of I by the deflection in inches; divide the product by the product of the length into the rectangle formed by the two parts into which the point where the load rests divides the length; the quotient will be the required weight in pounds.

Example.—What weight is required, located at 10 feet from one end, to deflect $1\frac{1}{4}$ inches a Paterson 12½-inch, 125-pound beam 25 feet long between bearings? The value of I for this beam, in Table IV., is 292.05; $m = 10$, and $n = l - m = 25 - 10 = 15$; therefore—

$$W = \frac{186000 I \delta}{l m n} = \frac{186000 \times 292.05 \times 1.5}{25 \times 10 \times 15} = 21728.52;$$

or, the required weight is, say, 21,730 pounds.

173.—Rolled-Iron Beams: Dimensions; Weight at any Point.—By transposition of factors in equation (72.), we obtain—

$$I = \frac{W l m n}{186000 \delta}. \quad (73.)$$

This may be expressed in words as follows:

Rule LII.—Multiply the weight by the length, and by the rectangle of the two parts into which the point where the weight rests divides the length; divide the product by 186000 times the deflection, and the quotient will be the value of I , which (or its next nearest number) may be found in Table IV., opposite to which will be found the required beam.

Example.—What beam 10 feet long will be required to carry 5000 pounds at 3 feet from one end with a deflection of 0.4 inch? Here we have m equal 3, and n equal 7; therefore—

$$I = \frac{W l m n}{186000 \delta} = \frac{5000 \times 10 \times 3 \times 7}{186000 \times 0.4} = 14.113.$$

The value of I is 14.113, the nearest number to which in the table, is 14.317, the moment of inertia of the Phoenix 5-inch, 36-pound beam; this, therefore, is the beam required.

174.—Rolled-Iron Beams: Dimensions; Weight Uniformly Distributed.—Since $\frac{1}{2} U = W$ (Art. 138), equation (69.) may be modified by the substitution of this value of W , when we obtain—

$$I = \frac{\frac{1}{2} U l^3}{744000 \delta},$$

which reduces to—

$$I = \frac{U l^3}{1190400 \delta}, \quad (74.)$$

a rule for the dimensions of a beam for a uniformly distributed load, which, in words, is as follows :

Rule LIII.—Multiply the uniformly distributed load by the cube of the length ; divide the product by 1190400 times the deflection, and the quotient will be the value of I , corresponding to which, or to its next nearest number will be found in Table IV. the required beam.

Example.—What beam 10 feet long is required to sustain an equally distributed load of 14,000 pounds with a deflection of half an inch ? For this we have—

$$I = \frac{14000 \times 10^3}{1190400 \times 0.5} = 23.52.$$

This is the moment of inertia of the required beam ; nearly the same as 23.761, in Table IV., the value of I for a Trenton 6-inch, 40-pound beam, which will serve as the required beam.

175.—Rolled-Iron Beams : Deflection ; Weight Uniformly Distributed.—A transposition of the factors in equation (74) gives—

$$\delta = \frac{U l^3}{1190400 I}, \quad (75.)$$

a rule for the deflection of a uniformly loaded beam, and which may be put in these words, namely :

Rule LIV.—Multiply the uniformly distributed load by the cube of the length ; divide the product by 1190400 times the value of I , Table IV., and the quotient will be the required deflection.

Example.—To what depth will 14,000 pounds, uniformly distributed, deflect a Buffalo 10½-inch, 90-pound beam 20 feet long ? The value of I for this beam, as per the table, is 151.436 ; therefore—

$$\delta = \frac{14000 \times 20^3}{1190400 \times 151.436} = 0.6213 ;$$

or, the required deflection is, say, $\frac{5}{8}$ of an inch.

176.—Rolled-Iron Beams: Weight when Uniformly Distributed.—Equation (75.), by a transposition of factors, gives—

$$U = \frac{1190400}{l^3} I \delta, \quad (76.)$$

a rule for the weight uniformly distributed, and which may be worded thus:

Rule LV.—Multiply 1190400 times the value of I , Table IV., by the deflection; divide the product by the cube of the length, and the quotient will be the required weight.

Example.—What weight uniformly distributed upon a Buffalo $10\frac{1}{2}$ -inch, 105-pound beam 25 feet long between bearings will deflect it $\frac{3}{4}$ of an inch?

The value of I for this beam, as per Table IV., is 175.645; therefore—

$$U = \frac{1190400 \times 175.645 \times \frac{3}{4}}{25^3} = 10036.21;$$

or, the required weight is, say, 10,036 pounds.

177.—Rolled-Iron Beams: Floors of Dwellings or Assembly-Rooms.—From *Transverse Strains*, Art. 500, we have—

$$c = \frac{255}{l^3} I - \frac{y}{420}, \quad (77.)$$

a rule for the distance from centres of rolled-iron beams in floors of dwellings, assembly-rooms, or offices, where the spaces between the beams are filled in with brick arches and concrete. In the equation, c is the distance apart from centres in feet, and y is the weight per yard of the beam. This, in words, is thus expressed:

Rule LVI.—Divide 255 times the value of I by the cube of the length; from the quotient deduct one 420th part of the weight of the beam per yard, and the remainder will be the required distance apart from centres.

Example.—What should be the distance apart from cen-

tres of Buffalo 12½-inch, 125-pound beams 25 feet long between bearings, in the floor of an assembly-room? For these beams, in Table IV., I equals 286.019, and $y = 125$; therefore—

$$c = \frac{255 \times 286.019}{25^3} - \frac{125}{420};$$

$$c = \frac{72934.8}{15625} - \frac{125}{420} = 4.668 - .298 = 4.37;$$

or, the required distance from centres is, say, 4 feet 4½ inches.

178.—Rolled-Iron Beams: Floors of First-Class Stores.
—From *Transverse Strains*, Art. 504, we have—

$$c = \frac{148.8 I}{l^3} - \frac{y}{960}, \quad (78.)$$

a rule for the distance from centres of rolled-iron beams in the floor of a first-class store; the spaces between the beams being filled with brick arches and concrete. This rule may be put in words as follows:

Rule LVII.—Divide 148.8 times the value of I by the cube of the length; from the quotient deduct one 960th part of the weight of the beam per yard, and the remainder will be the distance apart of the beams from centres in feet.

Example.—What should be the distance apart from centres of Buffalo 12½-inch, 180-pound beams 20 feet long between bearings, in the floor of a first-class store? For these beams the value of I , Table IV., is 418.945, and the value of y is 180; therefore—

$$c = \frac{148.8 \times 418.945}{20^3} - \frac{180}{960} = 7.60;$$

or, the required distance from centres is, say, 7 feet 7½ inches.

179.—Floor-Arches: General Considerations.—In filling the spaces between the iron beams of a floor, the arches should be constructed with hard whole brick of good shape, laid upon the supporting centre in contact with each other, and the joints thoroughly filled with cement grout, and keyed with slate. Made in this manner, the arches need not be over four inches thick at the crown for spans extending to 7 or 8 feet, and 8 inches thick at the springing, where they should be started upon a proper skew-back. The rise of the arch should not be less than $1\frac{1}{2}$ inches for each foot of the span.

180.—Floor-Arches; Tie-Rods: Dwellings.—From *Transverse Strains*, Art. 507, we have—

$$d = \sqrt{0.0198 \, c \, s}, \quad (79.)$$

which is a rule for the diameter in inches of a tie-rod for an arch in the floor of a bank, office building, or assembly-room; in which d is the diameter in inches of the rod, s is the span of the arch, and c is the distance apart between the rods (s and c both in feet). This rule requires that the arch rise $1\frac{1}{2}$ inches per foot of the span, and that the brick-work and the superimposed load each weigh 70 pounds, or together 140 pounds. This rule, in words, is as follows:

Rule LVIII.—Multiply the span of the arch by the distance apart at which the rods are placed, and by the decimal 0.0198; the square root of the product will be the diameter of the required rod.

Example.—What should be the diameter of the wrought-iron ties of brick arches of 5 feet span, in a bank or hall of assembly, where the ties are 8 feet apart? For this we have—

$$d = \sqrt{0.0198 \times 8 \times 5} = \sqrt{0.792} = 0.89;$$

or, the diameter of the required rods should be, say, $\frac{7}{8}$ of an inch.

181.—Floor-Arches; Tie-Rods: First-Class Stores.—From the same source as in last article, we have—

$$d = \sqrt{0.04527 \, c \, s}, \quad (80.)$$

which is a rule for the size of tie-rods for the brick arches of the floors of first-class stores, where the arches have a rise of $1\frac{1}{4}$ inches for each foot of the span, and where the weight of the brick arch and concrete is not over 70 pounds per superficial foot of the floor, and the loading does not exceed 250 pounds per superficial foot. As the rule is the same as the one in the preceding article, except the decimal, a recital of the rule, in words, is not here needed. To obtain the required diameter, proceed as directed in Rule LVIII., using the decimal 0.04527 instead of the one there given.

TUBULAR IRON GIRDERS.

182.—Tubular Iron Girders: Description.—The use of wooden beams for floors is limited to spans of about 25 feet. When greater spans than this are to be covered, some expedient must be resorted to by which

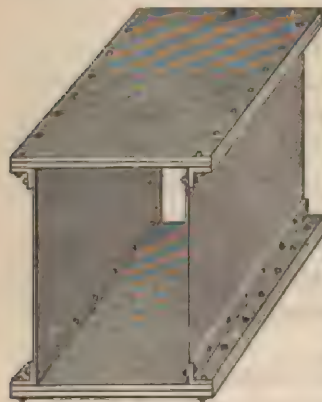


FIG. 46.

intermediate bearings for the floor-beams may be provided. Wooden girders may be used, but these need to be supported by posts at intervals of from 10 to 15 feet, unless the girders are trussed, or made up of top and bottom chords, struts, and ties. And even this is objectionable, owing to the height such a piece of framing requires, and which encumbers the otherwise free space of the hall. A substitute for the framed girder has been found in the tubular iron girder, as in *Fig. 46*, made of rolled plate iron and angle irons, riveted. They require to be stiffened by an occasional upright *T* iron along each side, and a cross-head at least at each bearing.

183.—Tubular Iron Girders: Area of Flanges; Load at Middle.—In wrought-iron tubular girders it is usual to make the top and bottom flanges of equal thickness. From *Transverse Strains*, Art. 551, we have—

$$a' = \frac{W l}{4 d k} \quad (81.)$$

a rule for the area of the bottom flange; in which a' equals the area of the flange in inches, W the weight in pounds at the middle, l the length and d the depth of the girder, both in feet, and k the safe load in pounds per inch with which the metal may be loaded, and which is usually taken at 9000. The rule may be stated thus:

Rule LIX.—Multiply the weight by the length; divide the product by 4 times the depth into the value of k , and the quotient will be the required area of the bottom flange.

Example.—In a girder 40 feet long and 3 feet high, to carry 75,000 pounds at the middle, what area of metal is required in the bottom flange, putting k at 9000? For this we have, by the rule—

$$a' = \frac{W l}{4 d k} = \frac{75000 \times 40}{4 \times 3 \times 9000} = 27.77;$$

or, the area required is $27\frac{7}{8}$ inches. This is the amount of uncut metal. An allowance is required for that which will be cut by rivet-holes. This is usually an addition of one sixth.

184.—Tubular Iron Girders: Area of Flanges; Load at any Point.—The equation suitable for this (*Transverse Strains*, Art. 553) is—

$$a' = W \frac{m n}{d k l}; \quad (82.)$$

in which m and n are the distances respectively from the location of the load to the two ends of the girder. The other symbols are the same as in the last article. This rule may be thus stated:

Rule LX.—Multiply the weight by the values of m and of n ; divide the product by the product of the depth into the length and into the value of k , and the quotient will be the required area of the bottom flange.

Example.—In a girder 50 feet long between bearings and

$3\frac{1}{2}$ feet high, what area of metal is required in the bottom flange to sustain 50,000 pounds at 20 feet from one end, when k equals 9000? By the rule, we have—

$$a' = W \frac{m n}{d k l} = \frac{50000 \times 20 \times 30}{3\frac{1}{2} \times 9000 \times 50} = 19.05;$$

or, each flange requires 19 inches of solid metal uncut for rivets.

185.—Tubular Iron Girders: Area of Flanges; Load Uniformly Distributed.—The equation appropriate here is (*Transverse Strains*, Art. 555)—

$$a' = U \frac{m n}{2 d k l}. \quad (83.)$$

This is a rule by which to obtain the area of cross-section of the bottom flange at any point in the length of the girder, the load uniformly distributed; m and n being the respective distances from the point measured to the two ends of the girder, and U representing the uniformly distributed load in pounds. This, in words, is described as follows:

Rule LXI.—Divide the weight by the product of twice the depth into the length and into the value of k ; then the quotient multiplied by the values of m and of n will be the required area of the bottom flange at the point measured, the distance of which from the ends equals m and n .

Example.—In a girder 50 feet long and $3\frac{1}{2}$ feet high, to carry a uniformly distributed load of 120,000 pounds, what area of cross-section is required in the bottom flange, at the middle and at intervals of 5 feet thence, to each support; k being taken at 9000? Here we have, first—

$$a' = U \frac{m n}{2 d k l} = \frac{120000 m n}{2 \times 3\frac{1}{2} \times 9000 \times 50} = 0.038095 m n.$$

Now, when $m = n = 25$, we have the middle point; then—

$$a' = 0.038095 m n = 0.038095 \times 25 \times 25 = 23.81;$$

or, the area of the bottom flange at mid-length is 23.81 inches.

When $m = 20$, then $n = 30$, and—

$$a' = 0.038095 \times 20 \times 30 = 22.86;$$

or, the required area, at 5 feet either way from the middle, is $22\frac{7}{8}$ inches.

When $m = 15$, then $n = 35$, and—

$$a' = 0.038095 \times 15 \times 35 = 20.0;$$

or, at 10 feet either way from the middle, the required area is 20 inches.

When $m = 10$, then $n = 40$, and—

$$a' = 0.038095 \times 10 \times 40 = 15.24;$$

or, at 15 feet either way from the middle, the required area is $15\frac{1}{4}$ inches.

When $m = 5$, then $n = 45$, and—

$$a' = 0.038095 \times 5 \times 45 = 8.57;$$

or, at 20 feet each side of the middle, the required area is $8\frac{5}{8}$ inches.

The area of cross-section found in every case is that of the uncut fibres; to this is to be added as much as will be cut by the rivets. This is usually about one sixth of the area given by the rule. The top flange is to be made equal in area to the bottom flange. The flanges are unvarying in width from end to end, the variation of area being obtained by varying the thickness of the flanges, and this being attained by building the flange in lamina, or plates; but these should not be less than a quarter of an inch thick. There should be added to the length of the girder, in the clear, about one tenth of its length for supports on the walls: thus, a girder 30 feet long requires 3 feet added for supports, or 18 inches on each wall.

186.—Tubular Iron Girders: Shearing Strain.—The top and bottom flanges are provided of sufficient size to resist

the transverse strain; the two upright plates, technically termed the *web*, need, therefore, to be thick enough to resist only the shearing strain. This, upon a beam uniformly loaded, is at the middle theoretically nothing, but from thence it increases regularly towards each support, where it equals half the whole weight. For example, the girder of *Art.* 185, 50 feet long between supports, carries 120,000 pounds uniformly distributed over its length. In this case the shearing strain at the wall at each end is the half of 120,000 pounds, or 60,000 pounds; at 5 feet from the wall it is $\frac{5}{25}$ or $\frac{1}{5}$ less, or 48,000 pounds; at 10 feet from the wall it is $\frac{2}{5}$ less, or 36,000 pounds; at 15 feet it is 24,000; at 20 feet it is 12,000; and at 25 feet or the middle, it is nothing.

187.—Tubular Iron Girders: Thickness of Web.—The equation appropriate for this is—

$$t = \frac{G}{d k'}; \quad (84.)$$

in which t is the thickness of the web (equal to the sum of the thicknesses of the two side plates), d is the height of the plate (t and d both in inches), G is the shearing strain, and k' is the effective resistance of wrought iron to shearing per inch of cross-section. This may be put in words as follows:

Rule LXII.—Divide the shearing strain by the product of the depth in inches into the value of k' , and the quotient will be the thickness of the web, or of the two side plates taken together.

Example.—What is the required thickness of web in a girder 50 feet between bearings, side plates 38 inches high between top and bottom flanges, and to carry 120,000 pounds, uniformly distributed? Here, putting the shearing resistance of the plates at 7000 pounds per inch, we have—

$$t = \frac{G}{d k'} = \frac{G}{38 \times 7000} = \frac{G}{266000}.$$

The shearing strain at the supports, as in last article, is 60000; therefore, we have for this point—

$$t = \frac{60000}{266000} = 0.225.$$

When $G = 48000$, then—

$$t = \frac{48000}{266000} = 0.18;$$

and when $G = 36000$, then—

$$t = \frac{36000}{266000} = 0.135.$$

Those nearer the middle of the girder are still less than these; and these are all below the practicable thickness, which is half an inch for the two plates. The plates ought not in practice ever to be made less than a quarter of an inch thick.

188.—Tubular Iron Girders, for Floors of Dwellings, Assembly-Rooms, and Office Buildings.—When the floors of these buildings are constructed with rolled-iron beams and brick arches, then the following (Art. 568, *Transverse Strains*) is the appropriate equation for the area of cross-section of the bottom flange of the girder:

$$a' = \left(140 + \frac{y}{3c} \right) \frac{700}{700-l} \times \frac{c' m n}{2 d k}; \quad (85.)$$

in which a' is in inches, and c, c', d, l, m , and n are in feet. Also, a' is the area required; y is the weight per yard of the rolled-iron beam of the floor; c , their distances from centres; c' , the distance from centres at which the tubular girders are placed, or the breadth of floor carried by one girder; d , the depth of the girder; k , the effective resistance of the metal per inch in the flanges of the girder; and m and n are the distances respectively from the two ends of the girder to the point at which the area of cross-section of the bottom flange is required. The rule may be thus described:

Rule LXIII.—Divide the weight per yard of the rolled-iron beams by 3 times their distance from centres; to the quotient add 140 and reserve the sum; deduct the length in feet from 700, and with the remainder as a divisor divide 700; multiply the quotient by the above reserved sum, and

by the value of c' ; divide the product by the product of twice the depth into the value of k , and the quotient multiplied by the values of m and of n will be the required area of cross-section of the bottom flange at the point in the length distant from the two ends equal to m and n respectively.

Example.—In a floor of 9-inch, 70-pound beams, 4 feet from centres, what ought to be the area of the bottom flange of a tubular girder 40 feet long between bearings, 2 feet 8 inches deep, and placed 17 feet from the walls or from other girders; the area of the flange to be ascertained at every 5 feet of the length; the value of k to be put at 9000? Here $p = 70$, $c = 4$, $c' = 17$, $l = 40$, and $d = 2\frac{8}{3}$. Therefore, by the rule—

$$a' = \left(140 + \frac{70}{3 \times 4} \right) \frac{700}{700 - 40} \times \frac{17}{2 \times 2\frac{8}{3} \times 9000} \times m n;$$

$$a' = 145 \cdot 8\frac{1}{3} \times 1 \cdot 0606 \times 0 \cdot 0003541\frac{2}{3} \times m n;$$

$$a' = 0 \cdot 05478 \, m n.$$

The values of m and n are—

At the middle.....	$m = 20$;	$n = 20$
5 feet from middle.....	$m = 15$;	$n = 25$
10 " " ".....	$m = 10$;	$n = 30$
15 " " ".....	$m = 5$;	$n = 35$

These give—

$$\text{At the middle.....} a' = 0 \cdot 05478 \times 20 \times 20 = 21 \cdot 91$$

$$\text{" 5 feet from middle....} a' = 0 \cdot 05478 \times 15 \times 25 = 20 \cdot 54$$

$$\text{" 10 " " ".....} a' = 0 \cdot 05478 \times 10 \times 30 = 16 \cdot 43$$

$$\text{" 15 " " ".....} a' = 0 \cdot 05478 \times 5 \times 35 = 9 \cdot 59$$

These are the areas of uncut fibres at the points named, in the lower flange; the upper flange requires the same sizes.

189.—Tubular Iron Girders, for Floors of First-Class Stores.—The equation proper for this is (*Transverse Strains*, Art. 570)—

$$a' = \left(320 + \frac{y}{3c} \right) \frac{700}{700 - l} \times \frac{c' m n}{2 d k}, \quad (86.)$$

a rule the same in form as that of the previous article; hence it needs no particular exemplification.

Rule LXIII. of last article may be used for this case, simply by using the constant 320 in place of that of 140.

CAST-IRON GIRDERS.

190.—Cast-Iron Girders: Inferior.—Rolled-iron beams have been so extensively introduced within a few years as to have superseded almost entirely the formerly much used cast-iron beam or girder. The tensile strength of cast iron is far inferior to that of wrought iron. This inferiority and the contingencies to which the metal is subject in casting render it very untrustworthy; it should not be used where rolled-iron beams can be procured. A very substantial girder to carry a brick wall is made by placing two or more rolled-iron beams side by side, and securing them together by bolts at mid-height of the web; placing thimbles or separators at each bolt. As there may be cases, however, in which cast-iron girders will be used, a few rules for them will here be given.

191.—Cast-Iron Girder: Load at Middle.—The form of cross-section given to this girder usually is as shown in *Fig. 47.*



FIG. 47.

In the cross-section, the bottom flange is made to contain in area four times as much as the top flange. The strength will be in proportion to the area of the bottom flange, and to the height or depth of the girder at middle. Hence, to obtain the greater strength from a given amount of material, it is requisite to make the upright part, or the web, rather thin; yet, in order to prevent injurious strains in the casting while it is cooling, the parts should be nearly equal in thickness. The thickness of the three parts—web,

top flange, and bottom flange—may be made in proportion as 5, 6, and 8.

For a weight at middle, the form of the web should be that of a triangle; the top flange forming two straight lines declining from the centre each way to the bottom flange at the ends, like the rafters of a roof to its tie-beam. From *Transverse Strains*, Art. 583, we have—

$$a' = \frac{W a l}{4850 d}, \quad (87.)$$

which is a rule for the area in inches of the bottom flange, for a load at middle; the area of the top flange is to be equal to one fourth of that of the bottom flange. To secure this, make the width of the top flange equal to one third of the width of the bottom flange; the thickness of the former, as before directed, being made equal to $\frac{3}{4}$ or $\frac{2}{3}$ of the latter. The weight W is in pounds; the length l is in feet; and the depth d is in inches. The factor of safety a should be taken at not less than 3; better at 4 or 5.

The equation in words may be as follows:

Rule LXIV.—Multiply the weight by the length, and by the factor of safety; divide the product by 4850 times the depth at middle, and the quotient will be the area in inches of the bottom flange; divide this area by the width of the bottom flange, and the quotient will be its thickness. Of the top flange make its width equal one third that of the bottom flange, and its thickness equal to three quarters that of the latter. Make the thickness of the web equal to $\frac{3}{4}$ that of the bottom flange.

Example.—What should be the dimensions of the cross-section of a cast-iron girder 20 feet long between bearings, and 24 inches high at middle, where 30,000 pounds is to be carried; the factor of safety being put at 5?

Here we have $W = 30000$; $a = 5$; $l = 20$; and $d = 24$; therefore, by the rule—

$$a' = \frac{30000 \times 5 \times 20}{4850 \times 24} = 25.773.$$

This is the area of the bottom flange. If the width of this flange be 12 inches, then 25.773 divided by 12 gives 2.15, or $2\frac{1}{4}$ full, as the thickness. One third of 12 equals 4, equals the width of the top flange; and $\frac{2}{3}$ of 2.15 equals 1.61, or $1\frac{5}{8}$ —its thickness. The thickness of the web equals $\frac{5}{8} \times 2.15 = 1.34$ or $1\frac{1}{8}$ inches.

192.—Cast-Iron Girder: Load Uniformly Distributed.

The equation suitable to this is—

$$d' = \frac{U a l}{9700 d'} \quad (88.)$$

a rule of like form with that of the last article; therefore, Rule LXIV. may be used for this case, simply by substituting 9700 for 4850.

193.—Cast-Iron Bowstring Girder.—An arched girder, such as that in *Fig. 48*, is technically termed a "bowstring girder." The curved part is a cast-iron beam of T form in section, and the horizontal line is a wrought-iron tie-rod attached to the ends of the arch. This girder has but little to commend it, and is by no means worthy the confidence placed in it by

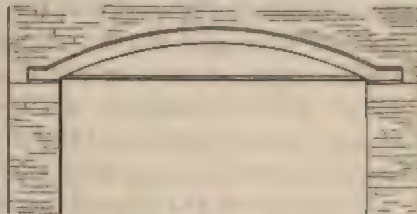


FIG. 48.

builders, with many of whom it is quite popular. The brick arch usually turned over it is adequate to sustain the entire compressive force induced from the load (the brick wall built above it), and it thereby supersedes the necessity for the iron arch, which is a useless expense. The tie-rod is the only useful part of the bowstring girder, but it is usually made too small, and not infrequently is seriously injured by the needless strain to which it is subjected when it is "shrunk in" to the sockets in the ends of the arch. The bowstring girder, therefore, should never be used.

194.—Substitute for the Bowstring Girder.—As the cast-iron arch of a bowstring girder serves only to resist com-

pression, its place can as well be filled by an arch of brick, footed on a pair of cast-iron skew-backs; and these held in position by a pair of wrought-iron tie-rods, as shown in Fig. 49. This system of construction is preferable to the

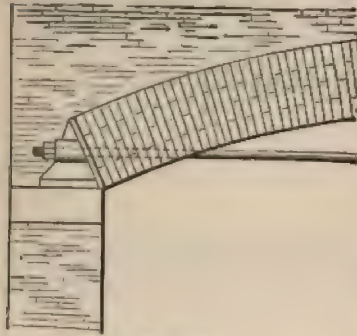


FIG. 49.

bowstring girder, in that the tie-rods are not liable to injury by "shrinking in," and the cost is less. From *Transverse Strains*, Art. 596, we have—

$$D = \sqrt{\frac{U l}{9425 d}} \quad (89.)$$

an equation in which D is the diameter in inches of each of the two tie-rods of the brick arch; U is the load in pounds

uniformly distributed over the arch; l is the span of the arch in feet; and d , in inches, is its versed sine, or its height measured from the centre of the tie-rod to the centre of the thickness or height of the arch at middle.

This equation may be put in words as follows:

Rule LXV.—Multiply the weight by the length; divide the product by 9425 times the depth, and the square root of the quotient will be the diameter of each rod.

Example.—What should be the diameter of each of the pair of tie-rods required to sustain a brick arch 20 feet span from centres, with a versed sine or height at middle of 30 inches, to carry a brick wall 12 inches thick and 30 feet high, weighing 100 pounds per cubic foot? The load upon this arch will be for so much of the wall as will occur over the opening, which will be about one foot less than the span of the arch, or $20 - 1 = 19$ feet. Therefore, the load will equal $19 \times 30 \times 1 \times 100 = 57,000$ pounds; and hence, $U = 57000$, $l = 20$, $d = 30$, and, by the rule—

$$D = \sqrt{\frac{57000 \times 20}{9425 \times 30}} = \sqrt{4.0318} = 2.008;$$

or, the diameter of each rod is required to be 2 inches.

FRAMED GIRDERS.

195.—Graphic Representation of Strains.—In the first part of this section, commencing at *Art.* 71, the method was developed of ascertaining the strains in the various parts of a frame by the parallelogram or triangle of forces. The method, so far as there explained, is adequate to solve simple cases; but when more than three pieces of a frame converge in one point, the task by that method becomes difficult. This difficulty, however, disappears when recourse is had to the method known as that of "Reciprocal Figures, Frames, and Diagrams of Forces," proposed by Professor I. Clerk Maxwell in 1867. This is an extension of the method by the triangle of forces, and may be illustrated as follows:

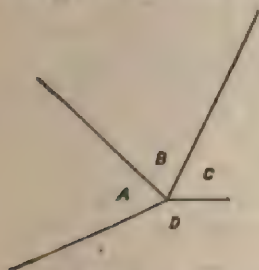


FIG. 50.

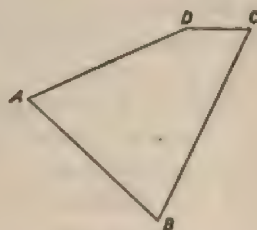


FIG. 51.

Let the lines in *Fig.* 50 represent, in direction and amount, four converging forces in equilibrium in any frame, as, for example, the truss of a roof; let the lines in *Fig.* 51 be drawn parallel to those in *Fig.* 50, in the manner following, namely: Let the line *AB* be drawn parallel with the line of *Fig.* 50 which is between the corresponding letters *A* and *B*, and let it be of corresponding length; from *B* draw the line *BC* parallel with the line of *Fig.* 50 which is between the letters *B* and *C*, and of corresponding length; then from *C* draw *CD*, and from *A* draw *AD*, respectively parallel with the lines of *Fig.* 50 designated by the corresponding letters, and extend them till they intersect at *D*. The lengths of these two lines, the last two drawn, are determined by the point *D* where they intersect; their lengths, therefore, need not be previously known. The lengths of the lines in *Fig.* 51 are respectively in proportion to the

several strains in *Fig. 50*, provided these strains are in equilibrium. *Fig. 51* is termed a closed polygon of forces. A system of such polygons, one for each point, in the frame where forces converge, so constructed that no line representing a force shall be repeated, is termed a *diagram of forces*. This diagram of forces is a reciprocal of the frame from which it is drawn, its lines and angles being the same. The facility of tracing the forces in the diagram of forces depends materially upon the system of lettering here shown, and which was proposed by Mr. Bow, in his excellent work on the *Economics of Construction*. In this system each line of the frame is designated by the two letters which it separates; thus the line between *A* and *B* is called line *AB*; that between *C* and *D* is called line *CD*; and so of others; and in the diagram the corresponding lines are called by the same letters, but here the letters designating the line are, as usual, at the ends of the line. Any point in a frame where forces converge is designated by the several letters which cluster around it; as, for example, in *Fig. 50*, the point of convergence there shown is designated as point *ABCD*.

This invaluable method of defining graphically the strains in the various pieces composing a frame, such as a girder or roof-truss, is remarkably simple, and is of general application. Its utility will now be exemplified in its application to framed girders, and afterwards to roof-trusses.

196.—Framed Girders.—Girders of solid timber are useful for the support of floors only where posts are admissible as supports, at intervals of from 8 to 15 feet. For unobstructed long spans it becomes requisite to construct a frame to serve as a girder (*Arts.* 163, 182). A frame of this kind requires two horizontal pieces, a top and a bottom chord, and a system of struts and suspension-pieces by which the top and bottom chords are held in position, and the strains from the load are transmitted to the bearings at the ends of the girders. Various methods of arranging these struts and ties have been proposed. One of the most simple and effective is shown in *Fig. 52*, forming a series of isosceles triangles. The proportion between the length and height of a girder is important as an element of economy

both of space and cost. When circumstances do not control in limiting the height, it may be determined by this equation from *Transverse Strains*, Art. 624—

$$d = \frac{(175 + l)l}{2400}; \quad (90.)$$

in which d is the depth or height between the axes of the top and bottom chords, and l is the length between the centres of bearings at the supports (d and l both in feet). This equation in words is as follows:

Rule LXVI.—To the length add 175; multiply the sum by the length; divide the product by 2400, and the quotient will be the required height between the axes of the top and bottom chords.

Example.—What should be the depth of a girder which is 40 feet long between the centres of action at the supports? For this the rule gives—

$$d = \frac{(175 + 40) \times 40}{2400} = 3.58\frac{1}{2};$$

or, the proper depth for economy of material is 3 feet and 7 inches.

The number of bays, panels, or triangles into which the bottom chord may be divided is a matter of some consideration. Usually girders from—

20 to	59 feet long	should have	5 bays.
59 "	85 "	" "	6 "
85 "	107 "	" "	7 "
107 "	127 "	" "	8 "
127 "	146 "	" "	9 "

197.—Framed Girder and Diagram of Forces.—Let *Fig. 52* represent a framed girder of six bays of, say, 11 feet each, or of a total length of 66 feet.

The lines shown are the axial lines, or the imaginary lines passing through the axes of the several pieces composing the frame. The six arrows indicate the six pressures into which the equally distributed load is supposed to be divided. Each of these is at the apex of a triangle, the base of which lies along the lower chord.

The spaces between the arrows are lettered; so, also, the space between the last arrow at either end and the point of support has a letter, and so has each triangle, and there is one for the space beneath the lower chord. These letters are to be used in describing the diagram of forces, as was explained in *Art.* 195. The diagram of forces (*Fig.* 53) for this girder-frame is drawn as follows, namely: Upon a verti-

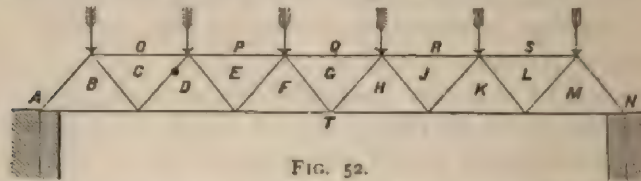


FIG. 52.

cal line AN mark the points A, O, P, Q, R, S , and N , at equal distances, to represent the six equal vertical pressures indicated by the arrows in *Fig.* 52. The equal distances AO, OP , etc., may be made of any convenient size; but it will

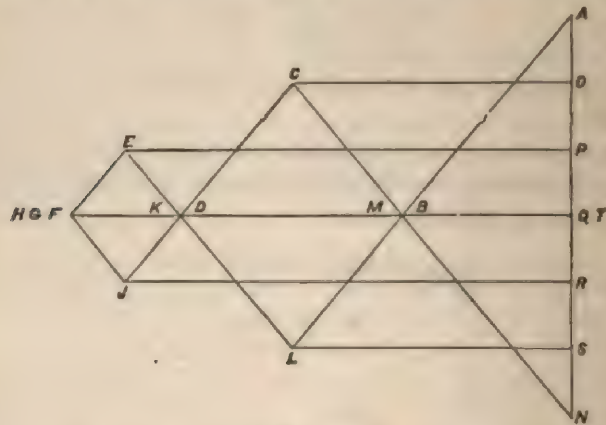


FIG. 53.

serve to facilitate the measurement of the forces in the diagram if they are made by a scale of equal parts, and the number of parts given to each division be made equal to the number of tons of 2000 pounds each which is contained in the pressure indicated by each arrow. On this vertical line the distance AO represents the load at the apex of the triangle B , or the point $AOCB$ (*Art.* 195); the distance OP

represents the weight at the second arrow, or at the point $OPEDC$, and so of the rest. If the weights upon the points in the upper chord had been unequal, then the division of the vertical line AN would have had to be correspondingly unequal, each division being laid off by the scale, to accord with the weight represented by each. The line of loads, AN , being adjusted, the other lines are drawn from it (*Art.* 195), so as to make a closed polygon for the forces converging at each point of the frame, *Fig.* 52—commencing with the point ABT , *Fig.* 52, where there are three forces, namely, the force acting through the inclined strut AB , the horizontal force in BT , and the vertical reaction AT at the point of support. This last is equal to half the entire load, or equal to the pressure indicated by the three arrows, AQ , OP , and PQ , and is represented in *Fig.* 53 by AQ or AT . From the point Q draw a horizontal line QB ; this is parallel with the force BT of *Fig.* 52, in the lower chord. From the point A draw AB parallel with the strut AB of *Fig.* 52. This line intersects the line BT in B and closes the polygon $ABTA$; the point B defines the length of the lines AB and BT , and these lines measured by the scale by which the line of loads was constructed give the required pressures in the corresponding lines, AB and BT , of *Fig.* 52.

Taking next the point $ABCO$, where four forces meet, of which we already have two, namely, the force in the strut AB and the load AO —from the point O draw the horizontal line OC ; this is parallel to the horizontal force OC of *Fig.* 52. Now from B draw BC parallel with the suspension-piece BC of *Fig.* 52. This line intersects OC in C , and the point C limits the lines OC and BC and closes the polygon $ABCOA$, the four sides of which are respectively in proportion to the four forces converging at the point $ABCO$ of *Fig.* 52, and when measured by the scale by which the line of loads was constructed give the required strains respectively in each. Taking next the point $BCDT$, where four forces converge, of which we already have two, BC and BT —from B extend the horizontal line TB to D ; from C draw CD parallel with CD of *Fig.* 52, and extend it to intersect TD in D , and thus close the polygon $TBCDT$.

The lines in a part of this polygon coincide—those from B to T ; this is because the two strains BT and DT , *Fig. 52*, lie in the same horizontal line. Again, taking the point $OCDEP$, where five forces meet, three of which, OP , OC , and CD , we already have—draw from D the line DE parallel with DE of *Fig. 52*, and from P the line PE horizontally or parallel with PE of *Fig. 52*. These two lines intersect at E and close the polygon $POCDEP$, the sides of which measure the forces converging in the point $POCDE$, *Fig. 52*. Next in order is the point $DEFT$, *Fig. 52*, where four forces meet, two of which, TD and DE , are known. From E draw EF parallel with EF in *Fig. 52*; and from T , TF parallel with TF in *Fig. 52*; these two lines meet in F and close the polygon $TDEFT$, the sides of which measure the required strains in the lines converging at the point $DEFT$, *Fig. 52*. Taking next the point $PEFGQ$, *Fig. 52*, where five forces meet, of which we already have three, QP , PE , and EF —from F draw a line parallel with FG of *Fig. 52*, and from Q a line parallel with QG of *Fig. 52*. These two intersect at G and complete the polygon $QPEFGQ$, the lines of which measure the forces converging at $PEFGQ$ in *Fig. 52*.

In this last polygon, a peculiarity seems to indicate an error: the line FG has no length; it begins and ends at the same point; or, rather, the polygon is complete without it. This is easily understood when it is considered that the two lines FG and GH do not contribute any strength toward sustaining the loads PQ and QR , and in so far as these weights are concerned they might be dispensed with, and the space occupied by the three triangles F , G , and H left free, and be designated by only one letter instead of three. Thus it appears that there are only four instead of five forces at the point $PEFGQ$, and that the four are represented by the lines of the polygon $QPEFQ$.

The peculiarity above explained arises from considering loads only on the top chord: the analysis of the case is correct as worked from the premises given; but in practice there is always more or less load on the bottom chord at the middle, which should be considered. This will be included in a case proposed in the next article. One half of the dia-

gram of forces is now complete. The other half being exactly the same, except that it is in reversed order, need not here be drawn.

198.—Framed Girders: Load on Both Chords.—Let *Fig. 54* represent the axial lines of a girder carrying an

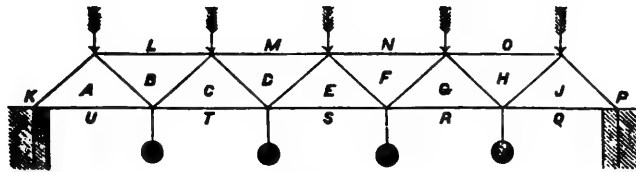


FIG. 54.

equally distributed load on each chord, represented by the arrows and balls shown in the figure. Let each bay measure 10 feet, or the length of the girder be 50 feet, and its height

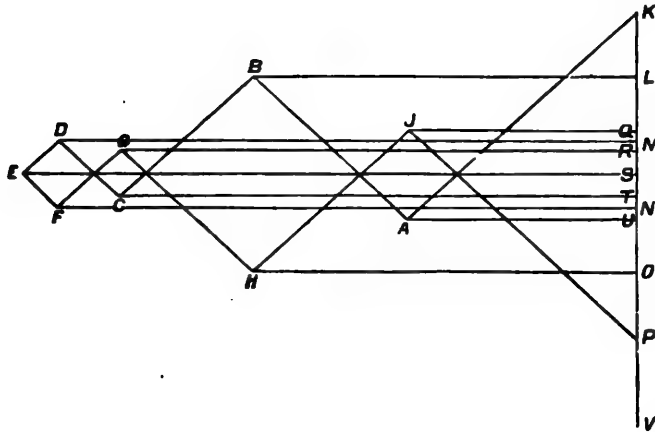


FIG. 55.

be $4\frac{1}{2}$ feet. The diagram of forces (*Fig. 55*) for this girder is obtained thus:

The plan of the girder, *Fig. 54*, requires to be lettered as shown; having one letter within each panel and outside the frame, and one between every two weights or strains. Then, in *Fig. 55*, mark the vertical line *KV* at *L, M, N, O*,

and P , dividing it by scale into equal parts, corresponding with the weights on the top chord represented by the arrows. For example, if the load at each arrow equals $6\frac{1}{2}$ tons, make KL , LM , MN , etc., each equal to $6\frac{1}{2}$ parts of the scale. Then KP will equal the total load on the top flange. Make the distance PV equal to the sum of the loads on the bottom chord. Then KV equals the total load on the girder. Bisect KV in U ; then KU or UV equals half the total load; consequently, equals the reaction of the bearing at K or P of *Fig. 54*.

Now, to obtain the polygon of forces converging at KAU , *Fig. 54*, we have one of these forces, KU , or the reaction of the bearing at KAU , equal to KU , *Fig. 55*. From U draw UA parallel with UA of *Fig. 54*, and from K draw KA parallel with the strut KA , *Fig. 54*, and intersecting the line UA at A , a point which marks the limit of KA and UA , and closes the polygon KAU , the sides of which are in proportion respectively to the three strains which converge at the point AUK , *Fig. 54*. For example, since the line KU by scale measures the vertical reaction, KU , of the bearing at AUK , *Fig. 54*, therefore the line KA of the diagram of forces by the same scale measures the strain in the strut KA , *Fig. 54*, and the line AU of the diagram by the same scale measures the strain in the bottom chord at AU , *Fig. 54*. For the strains converging at $KABL$, *Fig. 54*, of which two, KA and KL , are already known, we draw from A the line AB parallel with the line AB , *Fig. 54*, and from L draw LB parallel with LB , *Fig. 54*, meeting AB at B , a point which limits the two lines and closes the polygon $KABL$, the lines of which are in proportion respectively to the strains converging at the point $KABL$, *Fig. 54*, as before explained. Of the five strains converging at $UABCT$, we already have three— TU , UA , and AB ; to obtain the other two, make UQ equal to PV , equal to the total load upon the lower flange; divide UQ into four equal parts, QR , RS , ST , and TU , corresponding with the four weights on the lower chord, and represented by the four balls, *Fig. 54*. Now, from T , the point marking the first of these divisions, draw TC parallel with TC , *Fig. 54*, and from B draw BC paral-

lel with the strut BC , *Fig. 54*, meeting TC in C , a point which limits the lines BC and TC and closes the polygon $TUABC T$, the sides of which are in proportion respectively to the strains converging in the point $TUABC T$, *Fig. 54*. Of the five forces converging at $MLBCD$, we already have three— ML , LB , and BC ; to obtain the other two, from M draw MD parallel with MD , *Fig. 54*, and from C draw CD parallel with CD , *Fig. 54*, meeting MD at D , a point limiting the lines MD and CD and closing the polygon $MLBCDM$, the sides of which are in proportion to the strains converging at the point $MLBCD$, *Fig. 54*. Of the five forces converging at the point $STCDE$, three— ST , TC , and CD —are known; to obtain the other two, from S draw SE parallel with SE , *Fig. 54*, and from D draw DE , parallel with the strut DE , *Fig. 54*, meeting the line SE in E , a point limiting the two lines SE and DE and closing the polygon $STCDES$, the sides of which are in proportion to the strains converging at $STCDE$, *Fig. 54*. One half of the strains in *Fig. 54* are now shown in its diagram of forces, *Fig. 55*; and since the two halves of the girder are symmetrical, the forces in one half corresponding to those in the other, hence the lines of the diagram for one half of the forces may be used for the corresponding forces of the other half.

199. — Framed Girders: Dimensions of Parts. — The parts of a framed girder are the two horizontal chords (top and bottom) and the diagonals—the struts and ties. The top chord is in a state of compression, while the bottom chord experiences a tensile strain. Those of the diagonal pieces which have a direction from the top to the bottom chord, and from the middle towards one of the bearings of the girder, as KA , BC , or DE , *Fig. 54*, are *struts*, and are subjected to compression. The diagonal pieces which have a direction from the bottom to the top chord, and from the middle towards one of the supports, as AB or CD , *Fig. 54*, are *ties*, and are subjected to extension, (*Art. 83*). The amount of strain in each piece in a framed girder having been ascertained in a diagram of forces, as shown in *Arts. 197 and 198*, the dimensions of each piece may be obtained

by rules already given. The dimensions of the pieces in a state of compression are to be ascertained by the rules for posts in *Arts.* 107 to 114, and those in a state of tension by *Arts.* 117 to 119 (see *Arts.* 226 to 229). Care is required, in obtaining the size of the lower chord, to allow for the joints which necessarily occur in long ties, for the reason that timber is not readily obtained sufficiently long without splicing. Usually, in cases where the length of the girder is too great to obtain a bottom chord in one piece, the chord is made up of vertical lamina, and in as long lengths as practicable, and secured with bolts. A chord thus made will usually require about twice the material: or, its sectional area of cross-section will require to be twice the size of a chord which is in one whole piece; and in this chord it is usual to put the factor of safety at from 8 to 10.

The diagonal ties are usually made of wrought iron, and it is well to secure the struts, especially the end ones, with iron stirrups and bolts. And, to prevent the evil effects of shrinkage, it is well to provide iron bearings extending through the depth of each chord, so shaped that the struts and rods may have their bearings upon it, instead of upon the wood.

PARTITIONS.

200.—Partitions.—Such partitions as are required for the divisions in ordinary houses are usually formed by timber of small size, termed *studs* or *joists*. These are placed upright at 12 or 16 inches from centres, and well nailed. Upon these studs lath are nailed, and these are covered with plastering. The strength of the plastering depends in a great measure upon the clinch formed by the mortar which has been pressed through between the lath. That this clinch may be interfered with in the least possible degree, it is proper that the edges of the partition-joists which are presented to receive the lath should be as narrow as practicable; those which are necessarily large should be reduced by chamfering the corners. The derangements in floors, plastering, and doors which too frequently disfigure the interior of pretentious houses with gaping cracks in the

fastening and in the door-casings are due in nearly all cases to defective partitions, and to the shrinkage of floor-timbers. A plastered partition is too heavy to be trusted upon an ordinary tier of beams, unless so braced as to prevent its weight from pressing upon the beams. This precaution becomes especially important when, in addition to its own weight, the partition serves as a girder to carry the weight of the floor-beams next above it. In order to reduce to the smallest practicable degree the derangements named, it is important that the studs in a partition should be *trussed* or braced so as to throw the weight upon firmly sustained points in the construction beneath, and that the timber in both partitions and floors should be well seasoned and carefully framed. To avoid the settlement due to the shrinkage of a tier of beams, it is important, in a partition standing over one in the story below or over a girder, that the studs pass between the beams to the plate of the lower partition, or to the girder; and, to be able to do this, it is also important to arrange the partitions of the several stories vertically over each other. All principal partitions should be of brick, especially such as are required to assist in sustaining the floors of the building.

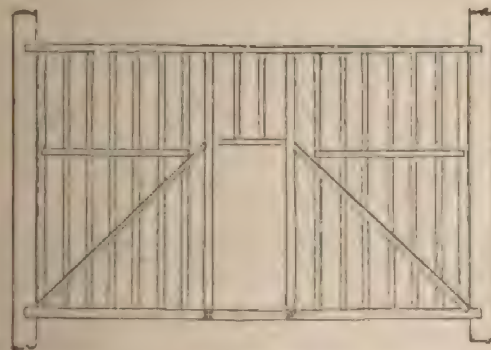


FIG. 56.

201.—Examples of Partitions.—*Fig. 56* represents a partition having a door in the middle. Its construction is simple but effective. *Fig. 57* shows the manner of constructing a

partition having doors near the ends. The truss is formed above the door-heads, and the lower parts are suspended from it. The posts *a* and *b* are halved, and nailed to the tie *cd* and the sill *ef*. The braces in a trussed partition

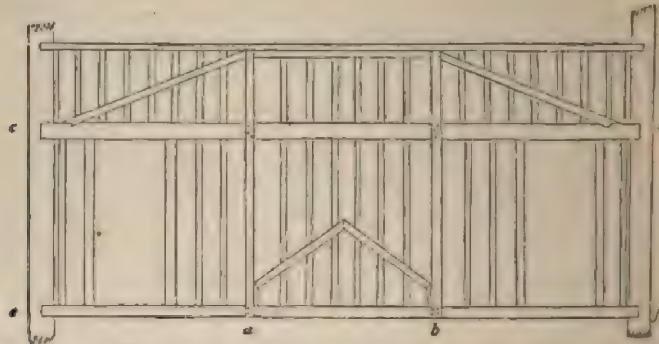


FIG. 57.

should be placed so as to form, as near as possible, an angle of 40 degrees with the horizon. The braces in a partition should be so placed as to discharge the weight upon the

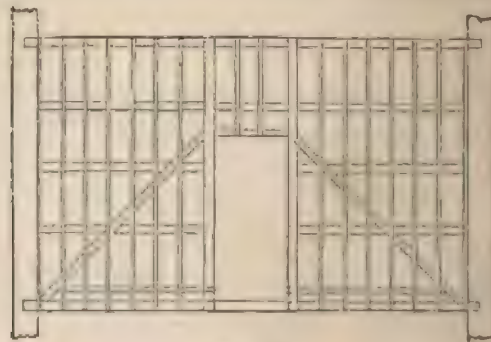


FIG. 58.

points of support. All oblique pieces that fail to do this should be omitted.

When the principal timbers of a partition require to be large for the purpose of greater strength, it is a good plan

Omit the upright filling-in pieces, and in their stead to place a few horizontal pieces, as in *Fig. 58*, in order that upon these and the principal timbers upright battens may be nailed at the proper distances for lathing. A partition thus constructed requires a little more space than others; but it has the advantage of insuring greater stability to the plastering, and also of preventing to a good degree the conversation of one room from being overheard in the adjoining one. Ordinary partitions are constructed with 3×4 , 3×5 , or 4×6 inch joists, for the principal pieces, and with 2×4 , 2×5 , or 2×6 filling-in studs, well strutted at intervals of about 5 feet. When a partition is required to support, in addition to its own weight, that of a floor or some other burden resting upon it, the dimensions of the timbers should be ascertained, by applying the principles which regulate the laws of pressure and those of the resistance of timber, as explained in the first part of this section, and in *Arts.* 196 to 199 for framed girders. The following data may assist in calculating the amount of pressure upon partitions:

White-pine timber weighs from 22 to 32 pounds per cubic foot, varying in accordance with the amount of seasoning it has had. Assuming it to weigh 30 pounds, the weight of the beams and floor-plank in every superficial foot of the flooring will be—

6 pounds when the beams are 3×8 inches, and placed 20 inches from centres.								
7½	"	"	"	3×10	"	"	18	"
9	"	"	"	3×12	"	"	16	"
11	"	"	"	3×12	"	"	12	"
13	"	"	"	4×12	"	"	12	"
13	"	"	"	4×14	"	"	14	"

In addition to the beams and plank, there is generally the plastering of the ceiling of the apartments beneath, and sometimes the *deafening*. Plastering may be assumed to weigh 9 pounds per superficial foot, and deafening 11 pounds.

Hemlock weighs about the same as white pine. A partition of 3×4 joists of hemlock, set 12 inches from centres, therefore, will weigh about $2\frac{1}{2}$ pounds per foot superficial and when plastered on both sides, $20\frac{1}{2}$ pounds.

ROOFS.

202.—Roofs.—In ancient Norman and Gothic buildings, the walls and buttresses were erected so massive and firm that it was customary to construct their roofs without a tie-beam, the walls being abundantly capable of resisting the lateral pressure exerted by the rafters. But in modern buildings, usually the walls are so slightly built as to be incapable of resisting much if any oblique pressure; hence the necessity of care in constructing the roof so as to avoid oblique and lateral strains. The roof so constructed, instead of tending to separate the walls, will bind and steady them,



FIG. 59.



FIG. 60.

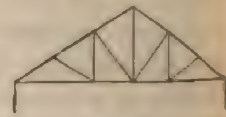


FIG. 61.



FIG. 62.

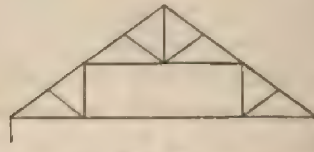


FIG. 63.



FIG. 64.



FIG. 65.



FIG. 66.



FIG. 67.

203.—Comparison of Roof-Trusses.—Designs for roof-trusses, illustrating various principles of roof construction, are herewith presented.

The designs at *Figs. 59 to 63* are distinguished from those at *Figs. 64 to 67* by having a horizontal tie-beam. In the latter group, and in all designs similarly destitute of the horizontal tie at the foot of the rafters, the strains are much greater than in those having the tie, unless the truss be pro-

ected by exterior resistance, such as may be afforded by competent buttresses.

To the uninitiated it may appear preferable, in *Fig. 64*, to extend the inclined ties to the rafters, as shown by the dotted lines. But this would not be beneficial; on the contrary, it would be injurious. The point of the rafter where the tie would be attached is near the middle of its length, and consequently is a point the least capable of resisting transverse strains. The weight of the roofing itself tends to bend the rafter; and the inclined tie, were it attached to the rafter, would, by its tension, have a tendency to increase this bending. As a necessary consequence, the feet of the rafters would separate, and the ridge descend.

In *Fig. 65* the inclined ties are extended to the rafters; but here the horizontal strut or straining beam, located at the points of contact between the ties and rafters, counteracts the bending tendency of the rafters and renders these points stable. In this design, therefore, and only in such designs, it is permissible to extend the ties through to the rafters. Even here it is not advisable to do so, because of the increased strain produced. (See *Figs. 77* and *79*.) The design in *Fig. 64*, *66*, or *67* is to be preferred to that in *Fig. 65*.

204.—Force Diagram: Load upon Each Support.—By a comparison of the force diagrams hereinafter given, of each of the foregoing designs, we may see that the strains in the trusses without horizontal tie-beams at the feet of the rafters are greatly in excess of those having the tie. In constructing these diagrams, the first step is to ascertain the reaction of, or load carried by, each of the supports at the ends of the truss. In symmetrically loaded trusses, the weight upon each support is always just one half of the whole load.

205.—Force Diagram for Truss in *Fig. 59*.—To obtain the force diagram appropriate to the design in *Fig. 59*, first letter the figure as directed in *Art. 195*, and as in *Fig. 68*. Then draw a vertical line, *EF* (*Fig. 69*), equal to the weight *W* at the apex of roof; or (which is the same thing in effect) equal to the sum of the two loads of the roof, one extending on each side of *W* half-way to the foot of the rafter. Di-

vide EF into two equal parts at G . Make GC and GD each equal to one half of the weight N . Now, since EG is equal to one half of the upper load, and GD to one half of the lower load, therefore their sum, $EG + GD = ED$, is equal to one half of the total load, or to the reaction of each support, E or F . From D draw DA parallel with DA of Fig. 68, and from E draw EA parallel with EA of Fig. 68. The three lines of the triangle AED represent the strains, respectively, in the three lines converging at the point A of Fig. 68. Draw the other lines of the diagram parallel with the lines of

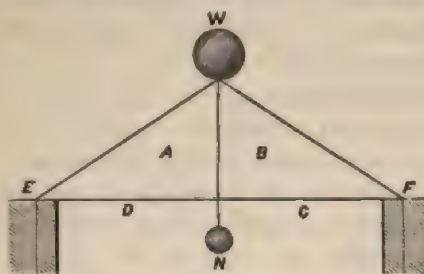


FIG. 68.

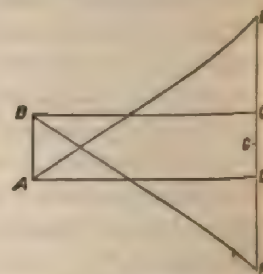


FIG. 69.

Fig. 68, and as directed in *Arts.* 195 and 197. The various lines of Fig. 69 will represent the forces in the corresponding lines of Fig. 68; bearing in mind (*Art.* 195.) that while a line in the force diagram is designated in the usual manner by the letters at the two ends of it, a line of the frame diagram is designated by the two letters between which it passes. Thus, the horizontal lines AD , the vertical lines AB , and the inclined lines AE have these letters at their ends in Fig. 69, while they pass between these letters in Fig. 68.

206.—Force Diagram for Truss in Fig. 60.—For this truss we have, in Fig. 70, a like design, repeated and lettered as required. We here have one load on the tie-beam, and three loads above the truss: one on each rafter and one at the ridge. In the force diagram, Fig. 71, make GH , HJ , and JK , by any convenient scale, equal respectively to the weights GH , HJ , and JK of Fig. 70. Divide GK into two equal parts at L . Make LE and LF each equal to one half the weight EF (Fig. 70). Then GF is equal to one half the

total load, or to the load upon the support G (*Art.* 205). Complete the diagram by drawing its several lines parallel with the lines of *Fig.* 70, as indicated by the letters (see *Art.* 205), commencing with GF , the load on the support G (*Fig.* 70). Draw from F and G the two lines FA and GA parallel with these lines in *Fig.* 70. Their point of intersection defines the point A . From this the several points B , C , and D are developed, and the figure completed. Then the lines in *Fig.* 71 will represent the forces in the corresponding lines of *Fig.* 70, as indicated by the lettering. (See *Art.* 195.)

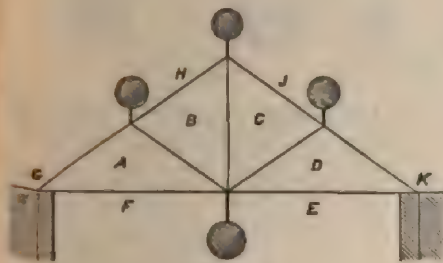


FIG. 70.

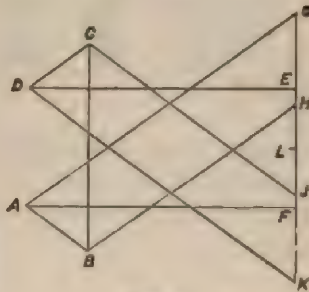


FIG. 71.

207.—Force Diagram for Truss in *Fig.* 61.—For this truss we have, in *Fig.* 72, a similar design, properly prepared by weights and lettering; and in *Fig.* 73 the force diagram appropriate to it.

In the construction of this diagram, proceed as directed in the previous example, by first constructing NS , the vertical line of weights; in which line NO , OP , PQ , QR , and RS are made respectively equal to the several weights above the truss in *Fig.* 72. Then divide NS into two equal parts at T . Make TK and TL each equal to the half of the weight KL . Make JK and LM equal to the weights JK and LM of *Fig.* 72. Now, since MN is equal to one half of the weights above the truss plus one half of the weights below the truss, or half of the whole weight, it is therefore the weight upon the support N (*Fig.* 72), and represents the reaction of that support. A horizontal line drawn from M will meet the inclined line drawn from N , parallel with the rafter AN (*Fig.* 72), in the

point *A*, and the three sides of the triangle *AMN*, *Fig. 73*, will give the strains in the three corresponding lines meeting at the point *AMN*, *Fig. 72*. The sides of the triangle *HJS*, *Fig.*

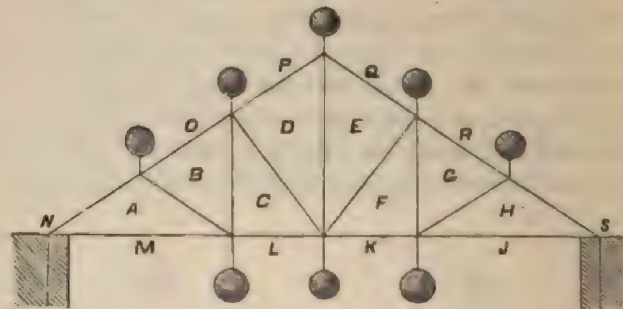


FIG. 72.

73, give likewise the strains in the three corresponding lines meeting at the point *HJS*, *Fig. 72*. Continuing the construction, draw all the other lines of the force diagram parallel

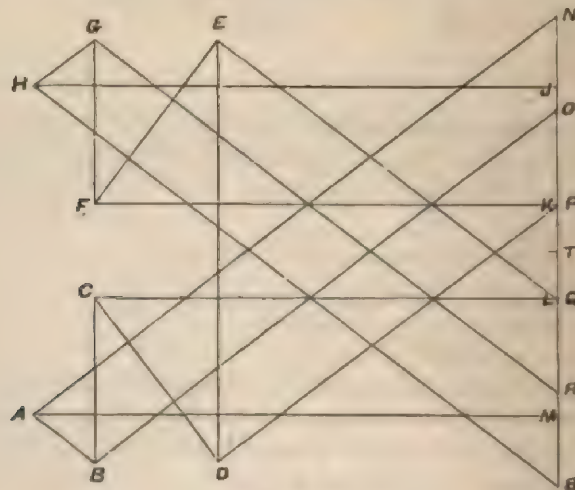


FIG. 73.

with the corresponding lines of *Fig. 72*, and as directed in *Art. 195*. The completed diagram will measure the strains in all the lines of *Fig. 72*.

208.—Force Diagram for Truss in Fig. 63.—The roof truss indicated at Fig. 63 is repeated in Fig. 74, with the ad

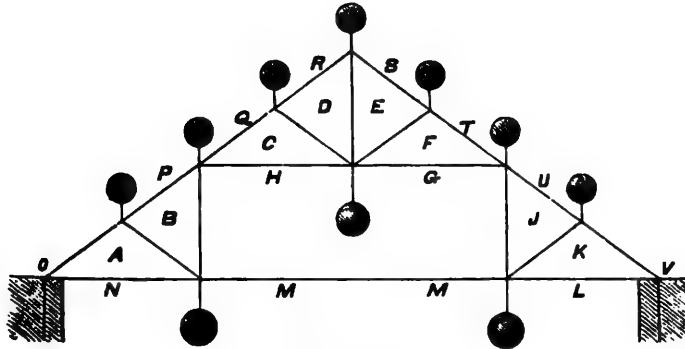


FIG. 74.

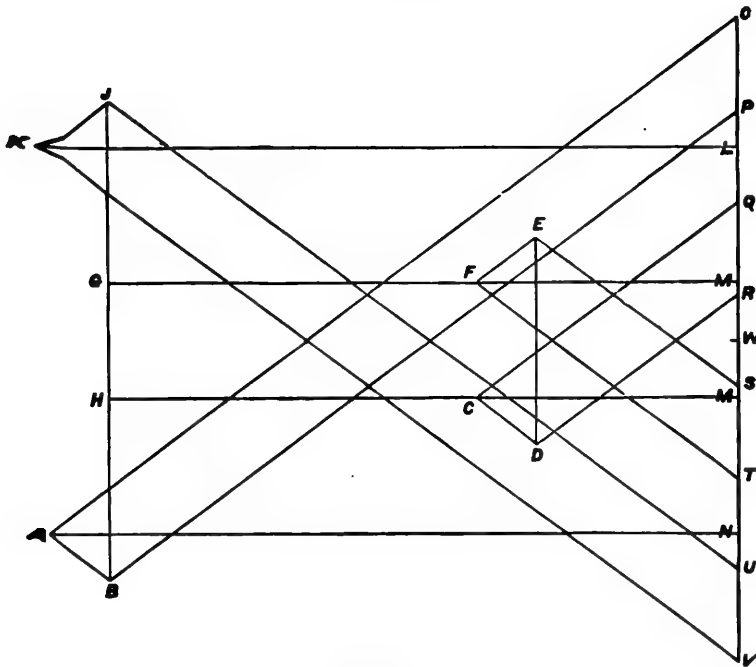


FIG. 75.

dition of the lettering required for the construction of the force diagram, *Fig. 75*.

In this case there are seven weights, or loads, above the truss, and three below. Divide the vertical line OV at W into two equal parts, and place the lower loads in two equal parts on each side of W . Owing to the middle one of these loads not being on the tie-beam with the other two, but on the upper tie-beam, the line GH , its representative in the force diagram, has to be removed to the vertical $B\mathcal{J}$, and the letter M is duplicated. The line NO equals half the whole weight of the truss, or $3\frac{1}{2}$ of the upper loads, plus one of the lower loads, plus half of the load at the upper tie-beam. It is, therefore, the true reaction of the support NO , and AN is the horizontal strain in the beam there. It will be observed also that while HM and GM (*Fig. 75*), which are equal lines, show the strain in the lower tie-beam at the middle of the truss, the lines CH and FG , also equal but considerably shorter lines, show the strains in the upper tie-beam. Ordinarily, in a truss of this design, the strain in the upper beam would be equal to that in the lower one, which becomes true when the rafters and braces above the upper beam are omitted. In the present case, the thrusts of the upper rafters produce tension in the upper beam equal to CM or FM of *Fig. 75*, and thus, by counteracting the compression in the beam, reduce it to CH or FG of the force diagram, as shown.

209.—Force Diagram for Truss in *Fig. 64*.—The force diagram for the roof-truss at *Fig. 64* is given in *Fig. 77*, while *Fig. 78* is the truss reproduced, with the lettering requisite for the construction of *Fig. 77*.

The vertical EF (*Fig. 77*) represents the load at the ridge. Divide this equally at W , and place half the lower weight each side of W , so that CD equals the lower weight. Then ED is equal to half the whole load, and equal to the reaction of the support E (*Fig. 76*). The lines in the triangle ADE give the strains in the corresponding lines converging at the point ADE of *Fig. 76*. The other lines, according to the lettering, give the strains in the corresponding lines of the truss. (See *Art. 195*.)

210.—**Force Diagram for Truss in Fig. 65.**—This truss is reproduced in Fig. 78, with the letters proper for use in the force diagram, Fig. 79.

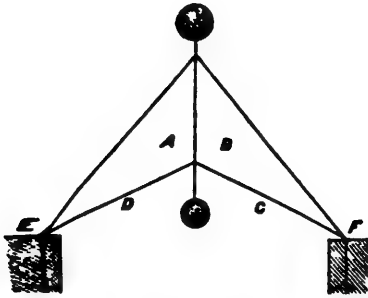


FIG. 76.

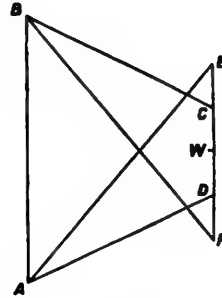


FIG. 77.

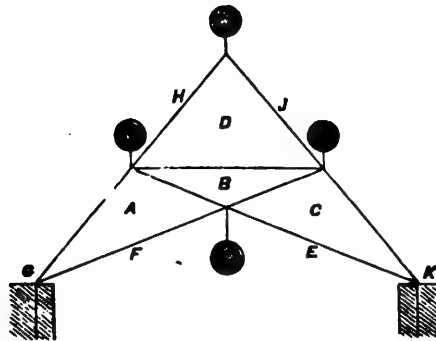


FIG. 78.

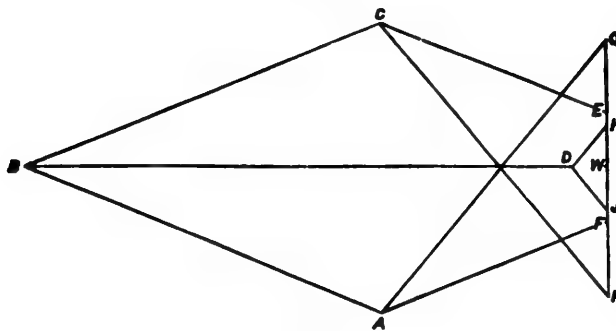


FIG. 79.

Here the vertical GK , containing the three upper loads G , H , and J , is divided equally at W , and the lower

load EF is placed half on each side of W , and extends from E to F . Then FG represents one half of the whole load of the truss, and therefore the reaction of the support G (*Fig. 78*). Drawing the several lines of *Fig. 79* parallel with the corresponding lines of *Fig. 78*, the force diagram is complete, and the strains in the several lines of 78 are measured by the corresponding lines of 79. (See *Art. 195*.)

A comparison of the force diagram of the truss in *Fig. 76* with that of the truss in *Fig. 78* shows much greater strains in the latter, and we thus see that *Fig. 76* or 64 is the more economical form.

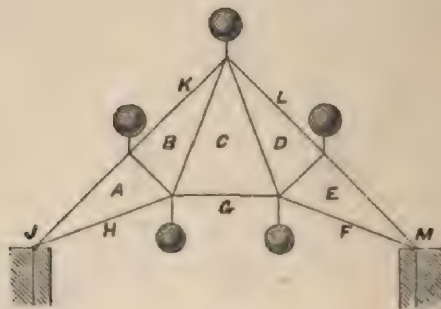


FIG. 80.

211.—Force Diagram for Truss in *Fig. 66*.—This truss is reproduced and prepared by proper lettering in *Fig. 80*, and its force diagram is given in *Fig. 81*.

Here the vertical JM contains the three upper loads JK , KL , and LM . Divide JM into two equal parts at G , and make FG and GH respectively equal to the two loads FG and GH of *Fig. 80*. Then HJ represents one half of the whole weight of the truss, and therefore the reaction of the support J . From H and J draw lines parallel with AH and AJ of *Fig. 80*, and the sides of the triangle AHJ will give the strains in the three lines concentrating in the point AHJ (*Fig. 80*). The other lines of *Fig.*

81 are all drawn parallel with their corresponding lines in Fig. 80, as indicated by the lettering. (See Art. 195.)

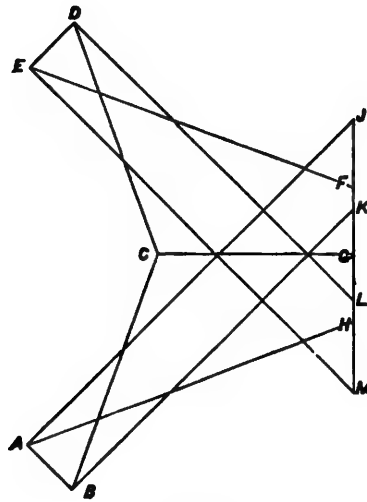


FIG. 81.

212.—Roof-Truss: Effect of Elevating the Tie-Beam.—

From Arts. 670, 671, *Transverse Strains*, it appears that the

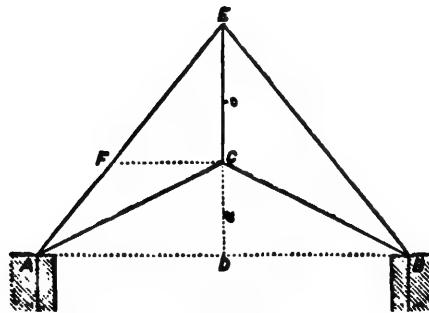


FIG. 82

Effect of substituting inclined ties for the horizontal tie at level of rafters is—

$$V = P \frac{a}{b} \quad (91.)$$

in which P represents half the weight of the whole truss and the load upon it; $a + b$ = height of the truss at middle above a horizontal line drawn at the feet of the rafters; a equals the height from this line to the point where the two inclined ties meet; b , the height thence to the top of the truss; and V , the additional vertical strain at the middle of the truss due to elevating the tie from a horizontal line.

Examples are given to show that when the elevation of the tie equals $\frac{1}{4}$ of the whole height, the vertical strain thereby induced is equal to a weight which equals $\frac{1}{3}$ of half the whole load; and that when the elevation equals half the whole height, the vertical strain is equal to half the whole load. This is the strain in the vertical rod at middle. The strains in the rafters and inclined ties are proportionately increased.

213.—Planning a Roof.—In designing a roof for a building, the first point requiring attention is the location of the trusses. These should be so placed as to secure solid bearings upon the walls; care being taken not to place either of the trusses over an opening, such as those for windows or doors, in the wall below. Ordinarily, trusses are placed so as to be centrally over the piers between the windows; the number of windows consequently ruling in determining the number of trusses and their distances from centres. This distance should be from ten to twenty feet; fifteen feet apart being a suitable medium distance. The farther apart the trusses are placed, the more they will have to carry; not only in having a larger surface to support, but also in that the roof-timbers will be heavier; for the size and weight of the roof-beams will increase with the span over which they have to reach.

In the roof-covering itself, the roof-planking may be laid upon jack-rafters, carried by purlins supported by the trusses; or upon roof-beams laid directly upon the back of the principal rafters in the trusses. In either case, proper

struts should be provided, and set at proper intervals to resist the bending of the rafter. In case purlins are used, one of these struts should be placed at the location of each purlin.

The number of these points of support rules largely in determining the design for the truss, thus:

For a short span, where the rafter will not require support at an intermediate point, *Fig. 59* or *64* will be proper.

For a span in which the rafter requires supporting at one intermediate point, take *Fig. 60, 65, or 66.*

For a span with two intermediate points of support for the rafter, take *Fig. 61 or 67.*

For a span with three intermediate points, take *Fig. 63.*

Generally, it is found convenient to locate these points of support at nine to twelve feet apart. They should be sufficiently close to make it certain that the rafter will not be subject to the possibility of bending.

214.—Load upon Roof-Truss.—In constructing the force diagram for any truss, it is requisite to determine the points of the truss which are to serve as points of support (see *Figs. 70, 72, etc.*), and to ascertain the amount of strain, or loading, which will occur at every such point.

The points of support along the rafters will be required to sustain the roofing timbers, the planking, the slating, the snow, and the force of the wind. The points along the tie-beam will have to sustain the weight of the ceiling and the flooring of a loft within the roof, if there be one, together with the loading upon this floor. The weight of the truss itself must be added to the weight of roof and ceiling.

215.—Load on Roof per Superficial Foot.—In any important work, each of the items in *Art. 214* should be carefully estimated, in making up the load to be carried. For ordinary roofs, the weights may be taken per foot superficial, as follows:

Slate,	about	7.0	pounds.
Roof-plank,	"	2.7	"
Roof-beams or jack-rafters,	"	2.3	"
In all,		12	pounds.

This is for the superficial foot of the inclined roof. For the foot horizontal, the augmentation of load due to the angle of the roof will be in proportion to its steepness. In ordinary cases, the twelve pounds of the inclined surface will not be far from fifteen pounds upon the horizontal foot.

For the roof-load we may take as follows :

Roofing,	about	15	pounds.
Roof-truss,	"	5	"
Snow,	"	20	"
Wind,	"	10	"
		—	
Total on roof,		50	pounds

per square foot horizontal.

This estimate is for a roof of moderate inclination, say one in which the height does not exceed $\frac{1}{4}$ of the span. Upon a steeper roof the snow would not gather so heavily, but the wind, on the contrary, would exert a greater force. Again, the wind acting on one side of a roof may drift the snow from that side, and perhaps add it to that already lodged upon the opposite side. These two, the wind and the snow, are compensating forces. The action of the snow is vertical: that of the wind is horizontal, or nearly so. The power of the wind in this latitude is not more than thirty pounds upon a superficial foot of a vertical surface: except, perhaps, on elevated places, as mountain-tops for example, where it should be taken as high as fifty pounds per foot of vertical surface.

216.—Load upon Tie-Beam.—The load upon the tie-beam must of course be estimated according to the requirements of each case. If the timber is to be exposed to view, the load to be carried will be that only of the tie-beam and the timber struts resting upon it. If there is to be a ceiling attached to the tie-beam, the weight to be added will be in accordance with the material composing the ceiling. If of wood, it need not weigh more than two or three pounds per foot. If of lath and plaster, it will weigh about nine pounds; and if of iron, from ten to fifteen pounds, according to the

thickness of the metal. Again, if there is to be a loft in the roof, the requisite flooring may be taken at five pounds, and the load upon the floor at from twenty-five to seventy pounds, according to the purpose for which it is to be used.

217.—Roof-Weights in Detail.—The load to be sustained by a roof-truss has been referred to in the previous three articles in general terms. It will now be treated more in detail. But first a few words regarding the slope of the roof. In a severe climate, roofs ought to be constructed steeper than in a milder one, in order that snow may have a tendency to slide off before it becomes of sufficient weight to endanger the safety of the roof. In selecting the material with which the roof is to be covered, regard should be had to the requirements of the inclination: slate and shingles cannot be used safely on roofs of small rise. The smallest inclination of the various kinds of covering is here given, together with the weight per superficial foot of each.

MATERIAL.	Least Inclination.	Weight upon a square foot.
Tin	Rise 1 inch to a foot.	$\frac{1}{2}$ to $1\frac{1}{2}$ lbs.
Copper.....	" 1 " " "	1 to $1\frac{1}{2}$ "
Lead.....	" 2 inches " "	4 to 7 "
Zinc	" 3 " " "	$1\frac{1}{2}$ to 2 "
Short pine shingles.....	" 5 " " "	$1\frac{1}{2}$ to 2 "
Long cypress shingles...	" 6 " " "	2 to 3 "
Slate.....	" 6 " " "	5 to 9 "

The weight of the covering as here estimated includes the weight of whatever is used to fix it in place, such as nails, etc. The weight of that which the covering is laid upon, such as plank, boards, or lath, is not included. The weight of plank is about 3 pounds per foot superficial; of boards, 2 pounds; and lath, about half a pound.

Generally, for a slate roof, the weight of the covering, including plank and jack-rafters, amounts to about 12 pounds, as stated in *Art.* 215; but in every case, the weight of each article of the covering should be estimated, and the full load ascertained by summing up these weights.

218.—Load per Foot Horizontal.—The weight of the covering as referred to in the last article is the weight per foot on the *inclined* surface; but it is desirable to know how much per foot, measured *horizontally*, this is equal to. The horizontal measure of one foot of the inclined surface is equal to the cosine of the angle of inclination. Then, to obtain the inclined measure corresponding to one foot horizontal, we have—

$$\cos. : 1 :: p : C = \frac{p}{\cos.};$$

where p represents the pressure on a foot of the inclined surface, and C the weight of so much of the inclined covering as corresponds to one foot horizontal. The cosine of an angle is equal to the base of the right-angled triangle divided by the hypotenuse (see Trigonometrical Terms, *Art.* 474), which in this case is half the span divided by the length of the rafter, or $\frac{s}{2l}$, where s is the span, and l the length of the rafter. Hence, the load per foot horizontal equals—

$$C = \frac{p}{\cos.} = \frac{p}{\frac{s}{2l}} = \frac{2lp}{s}; \quad (92.)$$

or, twice the pressure per foot of *inclined* surface multiplied by the length of the rafter and divided by the span, both in feet, will give the weight per foot measured horizontally.

219.—Weight of Truss.—The weight of the framed truss will be in proportion to the load and to the span. This, for the weight upon a foot horizontal, will about equal—

$$T = 0.077 Cs;$$

which equals the weight in pounds per foot horizontal to be allowed for a wooden truss with iron suspension-rods and a horizontal tie-beam, near enough for the requirements of our present purpose; where s equals the length or span of the

truss, and C the weight per foot horizontal of the roof covering, as in equation (92.). Substituting for C its value, as in (92.), we have—

$$T = 0.0077s \frac{2lp}{s};$$

or—

$$T = 0.0154 lp; \quad (93.)$$

which equals the weight in pounds per foot horizontal to be allowed for the truss.

220.—Weight of Snow on Roofs.—The weight of snow will be in proportion to the depth it acquires, which will be in proportion to the rigor of the climate of the place where the building is to be erected. Upon roofs of ordinary inclination, snow, if deposited in the absence of wind, will not slide off; at least until after it has acquired some depth, and then the tendency to slide will be in proportion to the angle of inclination. The weight of snow may be taken, therefore, at its weight per cubic foot (8 pounds) multiplied by the depth it is usual for it to acquire. This, in the latitude of New York, may be taken at about $2\frac{1}{2}$ feet. Its weight would, therefore, be 20 pounds per foot superficial, measured horizontally.

221.—Effect of Wind on Roofs.—The direction of wind is horizontal, or nearly so, when unobstructed. Precipitous mountains or tall buildings deflect the wind considerably from its usual horizontal direction. Its power usually does not exceed 30 pounds per superficial foot except on elevated places, where it sometimes reaches 50 pounds or more. This is the pressure upon a vertical surface; roofs, however, generally present to the wind an inclined surface. The effect of a horizontal force on an inclined surface is in proportion to the sine of the angle of inclination; the direction of this effect being at right angles to the inclined surface. The force thus acting may be resolved into forces acting in two directions—the one horizontal, the other vertical; the former tending, in the case of a roof, to thrust aside the walls

on which the roof rests, and the latter acting directly on the materials of which the roof is constructed—this latter force being in proportion to the sine of the angle of inclination multiplied by the cosine. This will be made clear by the

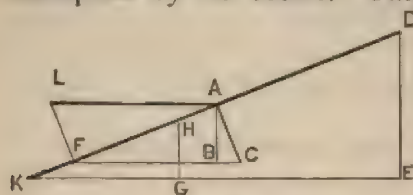


FIG. 83.

following explanation. Referring to *Fig. 83*, let DKE be the angle of inclination of the roof, DE being equal to one foot. Bisect DK at A ; draw AL parallel with KE ; make AL equal to the

horizontal pressure of the wind upon one foot superficial of a vertical plane. Draw AC perpendicular to DK , and LF parallel with AC from F draw FC parallel with KE ; draw AB parallel with DE . The sides of the triangle $LA F$ represent the three several forces in equilibrium: LA is the force of the wind; LF is the pressure upon the roof; and AF is the force with which the wind moves on up the roof towards D . Now, to find the relation of the force of the wind to the strain produced by it in the direction AC , we have—

$$\begin{aligned} \text{rad.} : \sin. &:: FC : AC; \\ FC &= LA; \text{ therefore—} \\ \text{rad.} : \sin. &:: LA : AC = LA \sin.; \\ AC &= F \sin.; \end{aligned}$$

or, the strain perpendicular to the surface of the roof equals the force of the wind multiplied by the sine of the angle of inclination. When AC represents this strain, then, of the two forces referred to above, BC represents the horizontal force, and AB the vertical force. To obtain this last force, we have—

$$\text{rad.} : \cos. :: AC : AB.$$

Putting for AC its value as above, we have—

$$\begin{aligned} \text{rad.} : \cos. &:: F \sin. : AB = F \sin. \cos.; \\ AB &= F \sin. \cos.; \end{aligned}$$

or, the vertical effect is equal to the product of the force of the wind upon a superficial foot into the sine and the cosine of the angle of inclination. This result is that which is due to the pressure of the wind upon so much of the inclined surface as is covered by one square foot of a vertical surface. The wind, acting horizontally through one foot superficial of vertical section, acts on an area of inclined surface equal to the reciprocal of the sine of inclination, and the horizontal measurement of this inclined surface is equal to the cosine of the angle of inclination divided by the sine. This may be illustrated from *Fig. 83*, thus—

$$\sin. : \text{rad.} :: DE : DK.$$

DE equals 1 foot ; therefore—

$$\sin. : \text{rad.} :: 1 : DK = \frac{1}{\sin.} ;$$

or, the surface acted upon by one square foot of sectional area equals the reciprocal of the sine of the angle of inclination. Again, the horizontal measure of this inclined surface may be obtained thus—

$$\sin. : \cos. :: DE : KE = \frac{\cos.}{\sin.} ;$$

or, *KE*, the horizontal measurement, equals the cosine of the angle of inclination divided by the sine.

In the figure, make *KG* equal to one foot ; then we have—

$$KE : KG :: V : W ;$$

in which *V*, as above, represents the vertical pressure due to the wind acting upon the surface *KD*, and *W* the vertical pressure due to the wind acting upon the surface *KH*, or so much as covers *KG*, one foot horizontal.

Now we have, as above, *KE* equal to $\frac{\cos.}{\sin.}$, *KG* = 1, and

$V = F \sin. \cos.$ Substituting these values, we have, instead of the above proportion—

$$\frac{\cos.}{\sin.} : 1 :: F \sin. \cos. : W;$$

from which—

$$W = \frac{F \sin. \cos.}{\frac{\cos.}{\sin.}} = F \sin.^2 \quad (94.)$$

or, the vertical effect of the wind upon so much of the roof as covers each square foot horizontal, is equal to the product of the force of the wind per square foot into the square of the sine of the angle of inclination.

Example.—When the force of the wind upon a square foot of vertical surface is 30 pounds, what will be the vertical effect per square foot horizontal upon a roof the inclination of which is $26^\circ 33'$, or 6 inches to the foot?

Here we have $F = 30$, and the sine of $26^\circ 33'$ is 0.44698; therefore—

$$W = 30 \times 0.44698^2 = 5.9937.$$

This is conveniently solved by logarithms; thus—

$$\begin{array}{rcl} \log. 30 & = & 1.4771213 \\ 0.44698 & = & \overline{9}.6502868 \\ 0.44698 & = & \overline{9}.6502868 \\ \hline 5.9937 & = & 0.7776949 \end{array}$$

or, the vertical effect is (5.9937, or) 6 pounds.

The form of equation (94.) may be changed; for, in a right-angled triangle, the sine of the angle at the base is equal to the perpendicular divided by the hypotenuse; which, in the case of a roof, is the height divided by the length of the rafter; or—

$$\text{Sine} = \frac{\text{height}}{\text{rafter}} = \frac{h}{2}.$$

Therefore, equation (94.) may be changed to—

$$W = F \frac{h^3}{l^3}; \quad (95.)$$

or, the vertical effect upon each square foot of a roof is equal to the product of the force of the wind per foot into the square of the height of the roof at the ridge, divided by the square of the length of the rafter (the height and length both in feet.)

Example.—When the force of the wind is 30 pounds, the height of the roof 10 feet, and the length of the rafter 22.36 feet, what will be the vertical effect of the wind? Here we have $F = 30$, $h = 10$, and $l = 22.36$; and—

$$W = 30 \times \frac{10^3}{22.36^3} = 6.$$

222.—Total Load per Foot Horizontal.—The various items comprising the total load upon a roof are the covering, the truss, the wind, snow, the plastering or other kind of ceiling, and the load which may be deposited upon a floor formed in the roof; or, the total load—

$$M = C + T + W + S + P + L.$$

The value per foot horizontal for these has been found as follows: $C = \frac{2lp}{s}$; $T = 0.0154lp$; $W = F \frac{h^3}{l^3}$. For S the value must be taken according to circumstances, as in *Art.* 220. So, also, the value of P and L are to be assigned as required for each particular case, as in *Art.* 216. The total load, therefore, with these substitutions, will be—

$$M = \frac{2lp}{s} + 0.0154lp + F \frac{h^3}{l^3} + S + P + L;$$

which reduces to—

$$M = lp \left(\frac{2}{s} + 0.0154 \right) + F \frac{h^3}{l^3} + S + P + L; \quad (96.)$$

in which l is the length of the rafter; p is the weight of the covering per foot superficial, including the roof boards or slats, the jack-rafters, etc.; s is the span of the roof; h is the vertical height above a horizontal line passing through the feet of the rafters; F is the force of the wind per square foot against a vertical surface; S is the weight of snow per square foot horizontal; P is the weight per superficial foot of the ceiling at the tie-beam; and L , the load per superficial foot in the roof, including weight of flooring and floor-timbers. The dimensions, s , l , and h , are each in feet; the weight of p , F , S , P , and L are each in pounds. The value of p is for a square foot of the *inclined* surface.

223.—Strains in Roof-Timbers Computed.—The graphic method of obtaining the strains, as shown in *Arts.* 205 to 211, is, for its conciseness and simplicity, to be preferred to any other method; yet, on some accounts, the method of obtaining the strains by the parallelogram of forces and by arithmetical computations will be found useful, and will now be referred to.

By the parallelogram of forces, the weight of the roof is in proportion to the oblique thrust or pressure in the axis of the rafter as twice the height of the roof is to the length of the rafter; or—

$$R : Y :: 2 h : l;$$

or, transposing—

$$2 h : l :: R : Y = \frac{R l}{2 h}; \quad (97.)$$

where Y equals the pressure in the axis of the rafter, and R the weight of one truss and its load. Again, the weight of the roof is in proportion to the horizontal thrust in the tie-beam as twice the height of the roof is to half the span; or—

$$R : H :: 2 h : \frac{s}{2};$$

or, transposing—

$$2 h : \frac{s}{2} :: R : H = \frac{R s}{4 h}; \quad (98.)$$

where H equals the horizontal thrust in the tie-beam. To obtain R , the weight of the roof, multiply M , the load per foot, as in equation (96.), by s , the span, and by c , the distance from centres at which the trusses are placed; or—

$$R = M c s.$$

With this value of R substituted for it, we have—

$$Y = \frac{M c s l}{2 h}; \quad (99.)$$

and—

$$H = \frac{M c s^2}{4 h}; \quad (100.)$$

in which Y equals the strain in the axis of the rafter, and H the strain in the tie-beam. These are the greatest strains in the rafter and tie-beam. At certain parts of these pieces the strains are less, as will be shown in the next article.

224.—Strains in Roof-Timbers Shown Geometrically.—

The pressure in each timber may be obtained as shown in Fig. 84, where AB represents the axis of the tie-beam, AC the axis of the rafter, DE and FB the axes of the braces, and DG , FE , and CB the axes of the suspension-rods. In this design for a truss, the distance AB is divided into three equal parts, and the rods located at the two points of division, G and E . By this arrangement the rafter AC is supported at equidistant points, D and F . The point D supports the rafter for a distance extending half-way to A and half-way to F , and the point F sustains half-way to D and half-way to C . Also, the point C sustains half-way to F , and, on the other rafter, half-way to the corresponding point to F . And because these points of support are located at equal distances apart, therefore the load on each is the same in amount. On DG make Da equal by any decimally divided scale to the number of hundreds of pounds in the load on D , and draw the parallelogram $abDc$. Then, by the same scale, Db represents (Art. 71) the pressure in the axis of the rafter by the load at

D ; also, Dc the pressure in the brace DE . Draw cd horizontal; then Dd is the vertical pressure exerted by the brace DE at E . The point F sustains, besides the common load represented by Da , also the vertical pressure exerted by the brace DE ; therefore, make Fe equal to the sum of Da and Dd , and draw the parallelogram $Fgef$. Then Fg , measured by the scale, is the pressure in the axis of the rafter caused by the load at F , and Ff is the load in the axis of the brace FB . Draw fh horizontal; then Fh is the vertical pressure exerted by the brace FB at B . The point C , besides the common load represented by Da , sustains the vertical pressure Fh caused by the brace FB , and a like amount from the corresponding brace on the opposite side. Therefore, make Cj equal to the sum of Da and twice Fh , and draw jk parallel to the opposite rafter. Then Ck is the pressure in the axis of the rafter at C . This is not the only pressure in the rafter, although it is the total pressure at its head C . At the point F , besides the pressure Ck , there is Fg . At the point D , besides these two pressures, there is the pressure Db . At the foot, at A , there is still an additional pressure; for while the point D sustains the load half-way to F and half-way to A , the point A sustains the load half-way to D . This load is, in this case, just half the load at D . Therefore draw Am vertical, and equal, by the scale, to half of Da . Extend CA to l ; draw ml horizontal. Then Al is the pressure in the rafter at A caused by the weight of the roof from A half-way to D . Now the total of the pressures in the rafter is equal to the sum of $Al + Db + Fg$ added to Ck . Therefore make kn equal to the sum of $Al + Db + Fg$, and draw no parallel with the opposite rafter, and nj horizontal. Then Co , measured by the same scale, will be found equal to the total weight of the roof on both sides of CB . Since Da represents s , the portion of the weight borne by the point D , therefore Co , representing the whole weight of the roof, should equal six times Da , as it does, because D supports just one sixth of the whole load. Since Cn is the total oblique thrust in the axis of the rafter at its foot, therefore nj is the horizontal thrust in the tie-beam at A .

225.—Application of the Geometrical System of Strains.

The strains in a roof-truss can be ascertained geometrically, as shown in *Art.* 224. To make a practical application of the results, in any particular case, it is requisite first to ascertain the load at the head of each brace, as represented by the line *Da*, *Fig.* 84. The load corresponding to any part of the roof is equal to the product of the superficial area of that particular part (measured horizontally) multiplied by the weight per square foot of the roof. Or, when *M* equals the weight per square foot, *c* the distance from centres at which the trusses are placed, and *n* the horizontal distance between the heads of the braces, then the total load at the head of a brace is represented by—

$$N = M c n. \quad (101.)$$

The value of *M* is given in general terms in equation (96.). To show its actual value, let it be required to find the weight per square foot upon a roof 52 feet span and 13 feet high at middle; or (*Fig.* 84), where *AB* equals half the space, or 26 feet, and *CB* 13 feet, then *AC*, the length of the rafter, will be 26.069, nearly. And where the weight of covering per square foot, on the inclination, is 12 pounds, the force of the wind against a vertical plane is 30 pounds; the weight of snow per foot horizontal is 20 pounds; the weight of the plastering forming the ceiling at the tie-beam is 9 pounds; and the load in the roof is nothing;—with these quantities substituted, equation (96.) becomes—

$$M = 29.069 \times 12 \left(\frac{2}{52} + 0.0154 \right) + 30 \frac{13^2}{29.069^2} + 20 + 9 + 0;$$

$$M = (29.069 \times 12 \times 0.05386) + (30 \times 0.2) + 20 + 9;$$

$$M = 18.788 + 6 + 29 = 53.788;$$

or, say, 53.8 pounds. Then if *c*, the distance from centres between trusses, is 10 feet, and *n*, the distance between braces, is one third of *AB*, *Fig.* 84, or $\frac{26}{3} = 8\frac{2}{3}$, the total load at the head of a brace will be, as per equation (101.)—

$$N = 53.8 \times 10 \times 8\frac{2}{3} = 4663;$$

or, say, 4650 pounds. Now, by any decimally divided scale, make $D a$, Fig. 84, equal to $46\frac{1}{2}$ parts of the scale; this being the number of hundreds of pounds contained in the weight at D , as above. Then, by the same scale, the several lines in the figure drawn as before shown will be found to represent respectively the weights here set opposite to them, as follows:

$D d = d a = h e = 23\frac{1}{4}$, and represents	2325 pounds;	
$D a = d c = h f = F h = 46\frac{1}{2}$	"	4650 "
$D c = D b = A l = F g = 52$	"	5200 "
$F e = D a + D d = 69\frac{3}{4}$	"	6975 "
$F f = 65\frac{3}{4}$	"	6575 "
$C j = 3 D a = 139\frac{1}{2}$	"	13950 "
$C K = 3 D b = 156$	"	15600 "
$C n = C k + F g + D b + A l = 312$	"	31200 "
$C n = C k + 3 D b = 6 D b = 2 C k$		
$= 312$	"	31200 "
$N j = C o = 6 D a = 6 \times 46\frac{1}{2} = 279$	"	27900 "

It should be observed here that the equality of the lines $n j$ and $C o$ is a coincidence dependent upon the relation which in this particular case the line $C B$ happens to bear to the line $A B$; $A B$ being equal to twice $C B$. And so of some other lines in the figure. If the inclination of the roof were made greater or less, the equality of the lines referred to would disappear. It should also be observed that the strains above found are not quite exact; they are, however, correct to within a fraction of a hundred pounds, which is a sufficiently near approximation for the purpose intended. From the results obtained above, we ascertain that the strain in the rafter, from F to C , is represented by $C K$, and is equal to 15,600 pounds; while the strain at the foot of the rafter, from A to D , is represented by $C n$, and equals 31,200 pounds, or double that which is at the head of the rafter. We ascertain, also, that the maximum strain in the tie-beam, represented by $n j$, is 27,900 pounds; that that in the brace $D E$, represented by $D c$, is 5200 pounds; and that that in the brace $F B$, represented by $F f$, is 6575 pounds. The strain

in the vertical rod DG is theoretically nothing. There is, however, a small strain in it, for it has to carry a part of the tie-beam and so much of the ceiling as depends for support upon that part. But the manner of locating the weights, adopted in this article, does not recognize any load located at the point G . This is an objection to this system, but it is not material.

For a recognition of weights at the tie-beam, see *Arts.* 205 to 211. The load at G may be found by obtaining the product of the surface carried into the weight per foot of the ceiling; or, say, $10cn = 10 \times 10 \times 8\frac{1}{2} = 867$ pounds. The load to be carried by the rod FE is shown at $Dd = hi$, which above is found to be 2325 pounds. To this is to be added 867 pounds for the ceiling at E , as before found for the ceiling at G ; or, together, 3192 pounds. The central rod CB has to carry the two loads brought to B by the two braces footed there; and also the weight of the ceiling supported by B . The vertical strain from the brace FB is represented at Fh , and equals 4650 pounds; therefore, the total load on CB is $4650 + 4650 + 867 = 10,167$ pounds.

226.—Roof-Timbers: the Tie-Beam.—The roof-timbers comprised in the truss shown in *Fig. 84* are the rafters, tie-beam, two braces, and three rods. Of these, taking first the *tie-beam*, we have a piece subject to tension and sometimes to cross-strain (see *Art. 682, Transverse Strains*). In this case the tensile strain only need be considered. For this a rule is given in *Art. 117*. In this rule, if the factor of safety be taken at 20, the result will be sufficiently large to allow for necessary cuttings at the joints. Therefore, if the beam be of Georgia pine, equation (16.), *Art. 117*, becomes—

$$A = \frac{27900 \times 20}{16000} = 34\frac{1}{2};$$

or, say, 35 inches. This is ample to resist the tensile strain; but, to resist the transverse strains to which such a long piece of timber is subjected in the hands of the workman, it would be proper to make it, say, 6×9 .

227.—The Rafter.—A rafter, like a post, is subject to a compressive force, and is liable to fail in three ways, namely : by flexure, by being crushed, or by crushing the material against which it presses. To render it entirely safe, therefore, it is requisite to ascertain the requirements for resisting failure in each of these three ways.

Of these it will be convenient to consider, first, that of the liability to being crushed. The rule for this is found in *Art.* 107. Let the rafter be of Georgia pine, then the value of *C*, Table I., will be 9500. The strain in the rafter (*Art.* 225) is 31,200 pounds. Now, taking the value of *a*, the factor of safety, at 10, we have, by Rule VI. (*Art.* 107.)—

$$A = \frac{31200 \times 10}{9500} = 32.737;$$

or, 33 inches area of cross-section. This is the size of the rafter at its smallest section; for example, at any one of the joints where it is customary to reduce the area by cutting for the struts and rods.

Again: Let the liability of the rafter to flexure be now considered. For this we have a rule in *Art.* 114. The length of the rafter between unsupported points is nearly $9\frac{1}{2}$ feet, or $9\frac{1}{2} \times 12 = 116$ inches. Let the thickness of the rafter be taken at 6 inches. Then, by Rule XI. (*Art.* 114), we have—

$$b = \frac{W a (1 + \frac{1}{2} c r^2)}{C t} = \frac{31200 \times 10 (1 + \frac{1}{2} \times .00109 \times r^2)}{9500 \times 6};$$

$$r = \frac{l}{t} = \frac{116}{6} = 19\frac{1}{3}; \quad 19\frac{1}{3}^2 = 373.8.$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Then, } \frac{1}{2} \times .00109 \times 373.8 &= 0.611127 \\ \text{adding unity} &= 1. \\ &\hline 1.611127 \end{aligned}$$

Substituting this, we have—

$$b = \frac{31200 \times 10 \times 1.611127}{9500 \times 6} = \frac{502671.624}{57000} = 8.819;$$

or, to resist flexure the breadth is required to be 8.82, or, say, 9 inches; or, the rafter is to be 6×9 inches at the foot. The strain in the rafter at the upper end is only half that at the foot; the area of cross-section, therefore, at the head need not be more than half that which is required at the foot; but it is usual to make it there about $\frac{2}{3}$ of the size at the foot. In this case it would be, therefore, 6×6 inches at the upper end.

Lastly, the requirement to resist crushing the surfaces against which the rafter presses is to be considered.

The fibres of timber yield much more readily when pressed together by a force acting at *right angles* to the direction of their length than when it acts *in a line* with their length.

The value of timber subjected to pressure in these two ways is shown in *Arts.* 94, 98. In Table I., the value per square inch of the first stated resistance is expressed by P , and the ultimate resistance of the other by $\frac{C}{a}$. The value of timber per square inch to safely resist crushing may be expressed by $\frac{C}{a}$, in which a is the factor of safety. Timber pressed in an oblique direction will resist a force exceeding that expressed by P , and less than that expressed by $\frac{C}{a}$. When the angle of inclination at which the force acts is just 45° , then the force will be an average between P and $\frac{C}{a}$. And for any angle of inclination, the force will vary inversely as the angle; approaching P as the angle is enlarged, but approaching $\frac{C}{a}$ as the angle is diminished. It will be equal to $\frac{C}{a}$ when the angle becomes zero, and equal P when the angle becomes 90° . The resistance of timber per square inch to an oblique force is therefore expressed by—

$$M = P + \frac{A^\circ}{90} \left(\frac{C}{a} - P \right); \quad (102.)$$

where A° equals the complement of the angle of inclination. In a roof, A° is the acute angle formed by the rafter with a vertical line. If no convenient instrument be at hand to measure the angle, describe an arc upon the plan of the truss—thus: with CB (*Fig. 84*) for radius, describe the arc Bg , and get the length of this arc in feet by stepping it off with a pair of dividers. Then—

$$\frac{A^\circ}{90} = 0.63\frac{k}{h};$$

where k equals the length of the arc, and h equals BC , the height of the roof. Therefore—

$$M = P + 0.63\frac{k}{h} \left(\frac{C}{a} - P \right) \quad (103.)$$

equals the value of timber per square inch in a tie-beam, C and P being obtained from Table I., *Art. 94*. When C for the kind of wood in the tie-beam exceeds C set opposite the kind of wood in the rafter, then the latter is to be used in the rules instead of the former.

The value of M , equation (103.), is the resistance per square inch of the surface pressed at the foot of the rafter. The resistance of the entire surface will therefore be MA , where A equals the area of the joint. Then, when the resistance equals the strain, we will have—

$$MA = S = A \left[P + 0.63\frac{k}{h} \left(\frac{C}{a} - P \right) \right];$$

from which we have—

$$A = \frac{S}{P + 0.63\frac{k}{h} \left(\frac{C}{a} - P \right)}; \quad (104.)$$

in which S is the strain to be resisted.

Now, the end of the rafter must be of sufficient size to afford a joint the area of which will not be less than that expressed by A in equation (104.).

For example, the strain to which the rafter, *Fig. 84*, is subject at its foot is ascertained to be (*Art. 225*) 31,200 pounds. For Georgia pine, the material of the tie-beam, $P = 900$ (*Art. 94*, Table I.), and $C = 9500$.

The length of the arc Bg is about 14.4 feet; the height BC is 13 feet. Let a , the factor of safety, be taken at 10, then we have (104.)—

$$A = \frac{31200}{900 + (0.63\frac{2}{3} \times 14.4) (\frac{2600}{110} - 900)};$$

$$A = \frac{31200}{900 + (0.705 \times 50)} = 33.36;$$

or, the superficial area of the bearing at the joint required to prevent crushing the tie-beam is $33\frac{1}{2}$ inches.

The results of the computations show that the rafter is required to be 6 inches thick, 9 inches wide at the foot, and 6 inches wide at the top. It is also ascertained that, in cutting for the bearing for the struts and boring for the suspension-rods, it is required that there shall be at least 33 inches area of cross-section left intact; and, farther, that the area of the surface of the joint against the tie-beam should not be less than $33\frac{1}{2}$ inches.

228.—The Braces.—Each brace is subject to compression, and is liable to fail if too small, in the same manner as the rafter. Its size is to be ascertained, therefore, in the manner described for the rafter; which need not be here repeated, except, perhaps, as to the liability to fail by flexure; for in this case we have the breadth given, and need to find the thickness. The breadth of the brace is fixed by the thickness of the rafter, for it is usual to have the two pieces flush with each other. Rule XI. (*Art.* 114) is to be used, but with this difference, namely: instead of the thickness, use the breadth as one of the factors in the divisor. Thus—

$$t = \frac{W a (1 + \frac{1}{2} e r^2)}{C b}. \quad (105.)$$

In working this rule, it is required, in order to get the value of r , the ratio between the height and thickness, to assume the thickness before it is ascertained; and after computation, if the result shows that the assumed value was not a near approximation, a second trial will have to be made. Usually the first trial will be sufficient.

For example, the brace DE is about $9\frac{1}{2}$ feet or 116 inches long. As the strain in it is only 5200 pounds, the thickness will probably be not over 3 inches. Assuming it at this, we have $r = \frac{l}{t} = 1\frac{1}{2} = 38\frac{1}{2}$; the square of which is about 1495.

Therefore, we have—

$$\begin{array}{r} \frac{1}{2} \times .00109 \times 1495 = 2.4445 \\ \text{add unity} = 1. \\ \hline 3.4445 \end{array}$$

The equation reduces, therefore, to this—

$$t = \frac{5200 \times 10 \times 3.4445}{9500 \times 6} = 3.1424;$$

or, the required thickness of the brace is $3\frac{1}{4}$ inches, or the brace should be, say, $3\frac{1}{4} \times 6$ inches. In this case the result is so near the assumed value, a second trial is not needed.

For the second brace, we have the length equal to about $12\frac{3}{4}$ feet or 147 inches; and the strain equal to 6575 pounds (Art. 225). The ratio, therefore, may be obtained by assuming the thickness, say, at 4. With this, we have—

$$r = \frac{l}{t} = 14\frac{1}{4} = 36.75; \text{ the square of which is } 1350\frac{9}{16}.$$

With this value of r^2 —

$$\begin{array}{r} \frac{1}{2} \times .00109 \times 1350\frac{9}{16} = 2.2081 \\ \text{add unity} = 1. \\ \hline 3.2081 \end{array}$$

Then—

$$t = \frac{6575 \times 10 \times 3.2081}{9500 \times 6} = 3.7006.$$

Comparing this result with the assumed value of $t = 4$, we find the difference so great as to require a second trial. As the value of r was taken too low, the result obtained is correspondingly low. The true value is somewhere between 3.7 and 4. Assume it now, say, at 3.9. With this value, we have—

$$r = \frac{l}{t} = \frac{147}{3.9} = 37.692; \text{ the square of which is } 1420.7.$$

With this value of r^2 —

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{1}{4} \times .00109 \times 1420.7 &= 2.32282 \\ \text{add unity} &= 1. \\ \hline &3.32282 \end{aligned}$$

Then—

$$t = \frac{6575 \times 10 \times 3.32282}{9500 \times 6} = 3.833.$$

This result is a trifle less than the assumed value, 3.9. The true value is between these, and probably is about 3.86. This is quite near enough for use. This brace, therefore, is required to be 3.86×6 inches, or, say, 4×6 inches.

229.—The Suspension-Rods.—These are usually made of wrought iron. This metal, when of excellent quality, may be safely trusted with 12,000 pounds per inch sectional area. But it is usual, for good work, to compute the area at only 9000 pounds per inch, and, as ordinarily made, these rods ought not to be loaded with more than 7000 pounds. The strain divided by this value per inch of the metal will give the sectional area of cross-section. For example, the strain in the rod *DG*, *Fig. 84*, is 867 pounds (*Art. 225*); therefore—

$$A = \frac{867}{7000} = 0.124;$$

or, the sectional area required is only an eighth of an inch. By reference to the table of areas of circles in the Appendix, the diameter of a rod containing the required area, as above, will be found to be a little less than half an inch. A rod half an inch in diameter will therefore be of ample strength. For appearance's sake, however, no rod in a truss should be less than $\frac{3}{4}$ of an inch in diameter.

The rod *FE* has to resist a strain of 3192 pounds. For this, then, we have—

$$A = \frac{3192}{7000} = 0.456.$$

A reference to the table of areas shows that a rod contain-

ing this area would be a little more than $\frac{1}{8}$ of an inch in diameter; it would be of ample strength, say, at $\frac{1}{8}$ of an inch in diameter.

The rod CB , at the centre, has to carry a strain of 10,167 pounds. For this, then, we have—

$$A = \frac{10167}{7000} = 1.452.$$

A reference to the table of areas shows that this rod should be $1\frac{1}{4}$ inches in diameter.

230.—Roof-Beams, Jack-Rafters, and Purlins.—These timbers are subject to loads nearly uniformly distributed, and their dimensions may be obtained by Rule XXX., equation (35.), *Art.* 140. In this equation, $U = cfl$ (*Art.* 152). Substituting this value for U , and rl for δ , equation (35.) becomes—

$$bd^3 = \frac{fcl^3}{1.6Fr};$$

and putting for r the rate of deflection, .04, we have—

$$bd^3 = \frac{fcl^3}{0.064F}, \quad (106.)$$

a formula convenient for roof-timbers.

Example.—In a roof where the roofing is to be supported on white-pine roof-beams 10 feet long, placed $2\frac{1}{2}$ feet from centres, and where the load per foot superficial is to be 40 pounds, including wind and snow: what should be the dimensions of the roof-beams? By equation (106.)—

$$bd^3 = \frac{40 \times 2\frac{1}{2} \times 10^3}{0.064 \times 2900} = 538.8.$$

Now if b , the breadth, be fixed, say, at 3, then—

$$d^3 = \frac{538.8}{3} = 179.6;$$

$$d = 5.64 \text{ nearly.}$$

The roof-beams, therefore, require to be $3 \times 5\frac{1}{2}$, or, say, 3×6 . All pieces of timber subject to cross-strains will sustain safely much greater strains when extended in one piece over two, three, or more distances between bearings; therefore, roof-beams, jack-rafters, and purlins should, if possible, be made in as long lengths as practicable; the roof-beams and purlins laid on, not framed into, the principal rafters, and extended over at least two spaces, the joints alternating on the trusses; and likewise the jack-rafters laid on the purlins in long lengths.

231.—Five Examples of Roofs: are shown at *Figs. 85, 86, 87, 88, and 89.* In *Fig. 85*, *a* is an iron suspension-rod, *b, b* are braces. In *Fig. 86*, *a, a*, and *b* are iron rods, and *d, d, c, c* are braces. In *Fig. 87*, *a, b* are iron rods, *d, d* braces, and *c* the straining beam. In *Fig. 88*, *a, a, b, b* are iron rods, *c, c, d, d* are braces, and *e* is a straining beam. In *Fig. 89*, pur-

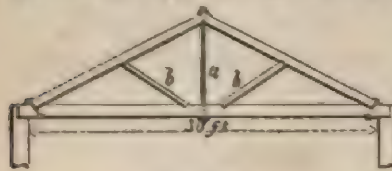


FIG. 85.

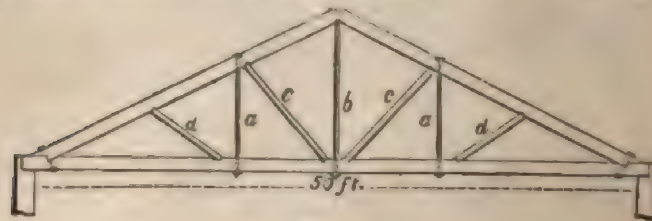


FIG. 86.

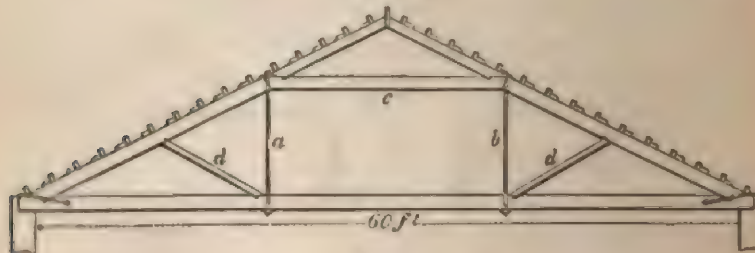
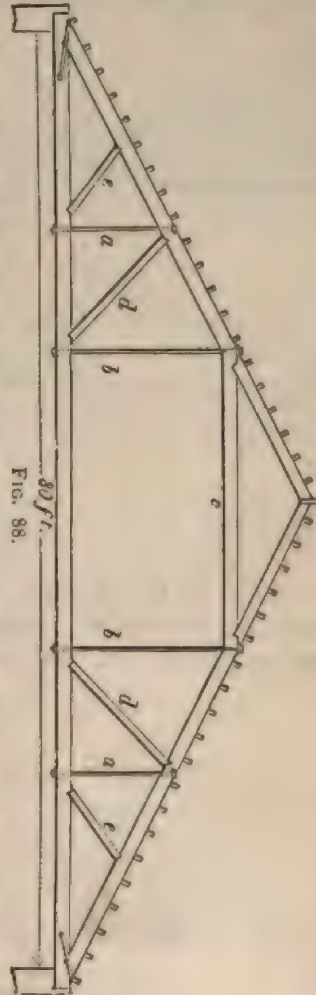


FIG. 87.

lins are located at *PP*, etc.; the inclined beam that lies upon them is the jack-rafter; the post at the ridge is the king-

post, the others are queen-posts. In this design the tie-beam is increased in height along the middle by a strengthening piece (*Art.* 163), for the purpose of sustaining additional weight placed in the room formed in the truss (*Art.* 216).

Fig. 90 shows a method of constructing a truss having a *built-rib* in the place of principal rafters. The proper form for the curve is that of the parabola (*Art.* 560). This curve, when as flat as is described in the figure, approximates so closely to that of the circle that the latter may be used in its stead. The height, ab , is just half of ac , the curve to pass through the middle of the rib. The rib is composed of two series of abutting pieces, bolted together. These pieces should be as long as the dimensions of the timber will admit, in order that there may be but few joints. The suspending pieces are in halves, notched and bolted to the tie-beam and rib, and a purlin is framed upon the upper end of each. A truss of this construction needs, for ordinary roofs, no diagonal braces between the suspending pieces, but if extra strength is required the braces may be added. The best place for the suspending pieces is at the joints of the rib. A rib of this kind will be sufficiently strong if the area of its section contain about one fourth more timber than is required for that of a rafter for a roof of the same size. The proportion of the depth to the thickness should be about as 10 to 7.



232.—Roof-Truss with Elevated Tie-Beam.—Designs such as are shown in *Fig. 91* have the tie elevated for the accommodation of an arch in the ceiling. This and all similar designs are seriously objectionable, and should always be

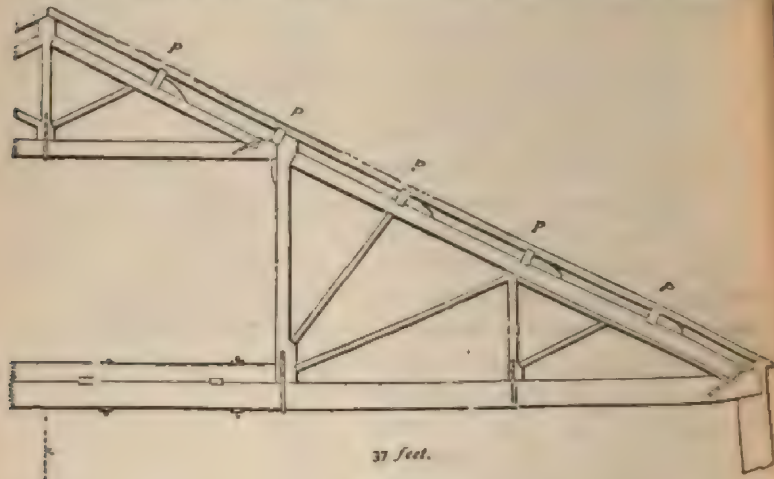


FIG. 89.

avoided; as the small height gained by the omission of the tie-beam can never compensate for the powerful lateral strains which are exerted by the oblique position of the

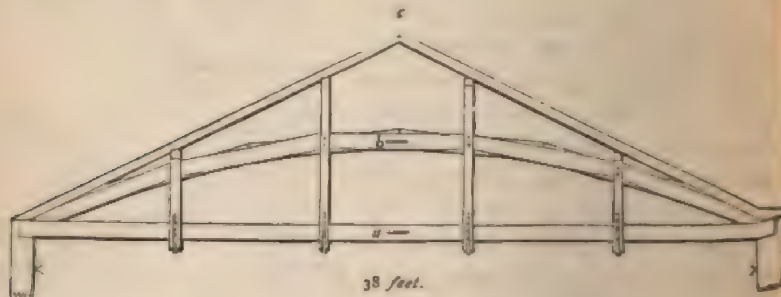


FIG. 90.

supports, tending to separate the walls. Where an arch is required in the ceiling, the best plan is to carry up the walls as high as the top of the arch. Then, by using a horizontal tie-beam, the oblique strains will be entirely re-

moved. It is well known that many a public building has been all but ruined by the settling of the roof, consequent upon a defective plan in the formation of the truss in this respect. It is very necessary, therefore, that the horizontal

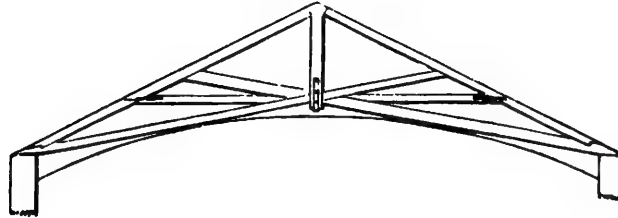


FIG. 91.

tie-beam be used, except where the walls are made so strong and firm by buttresses, or other support, as to prevent a possibility of their separating. (See *Art. 212.*)

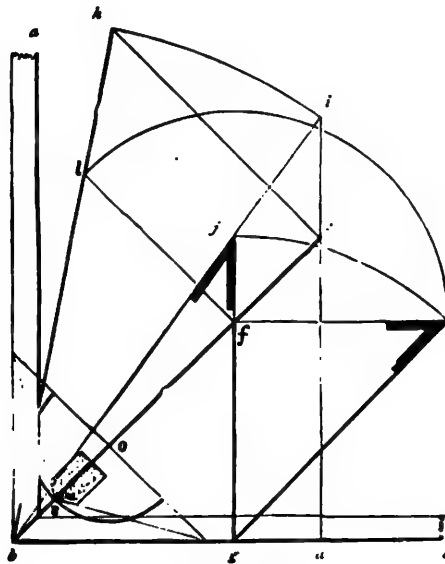


FIG. 92.

233.—Hip-Roofs: Lines and Bevels.—The lines ab and bc , in *Fig. 92*, represent the walls at the angle of a building; bc is the seat of the hip-rafter, and gf of a jack or cripple rafter. Draw ek at right angles to bc , and make it equal

to the rise of the roof; join b and h , and $h b$ will be the length of the hip-rafter. Through c draw $d i$ at right angles to $b c$; upon b , with the radius $b h$, describe the arc $h i$, cutting $d i$ in i ; join b and i , and extend $g f$ to meet $b i$ in j ; then $g j$ will be the length of the jack-rafter. The length of each jack-rafter is found in the same manner—by extending its seat to cut the line $b i$. From f draw $f k$ at right angles to $f g$, also $f l$ at right angles to $b e$; make $f k$ equal to $f l$ by the arc $l k$, or make $g k$ equal to $g j$ by the arc $j k$; then the angle at j will be the *top-bevil* of the jack-rafters, and the one at k will be the *down-bevil*.*

234.—The Backing of the Hip-Rafter.—At any convenient place in $b e$ (*Fig. 92*), as o , draw $m n$ at right angles to $b e$; from o , tangential to $b h$, describe a semicircle, cutting $b e$ in s ; join m and s and n and s ; then these lines will form at s the proper angle for bevilling the top of the hip-rafter.

DOMES.†

235.—Domes.—The usual form for domes is that of the sphere; the base circular. When the interior dome does not

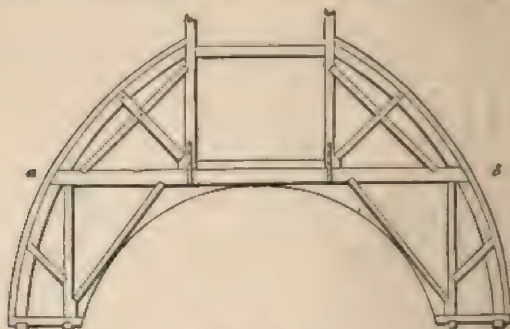


FIG. 93.

rise too high, a horizontal tie may be thrown across, by which any degree of strength required may be obtained.

* The lengths and bevils of rafters for roof-valleys can also be found by the above process.

† See also *Art. 68*.

Fig. 93 shows a section, and *Fig. 94* the plan, of a dome of this kind, *ab* being the tie-beam in both. Two trusses of this kind (*Fig. 93*), parallel to each other, are to be placed one on each side of the opening in the top of the dome. Upon these the whole framework is to depend for support,

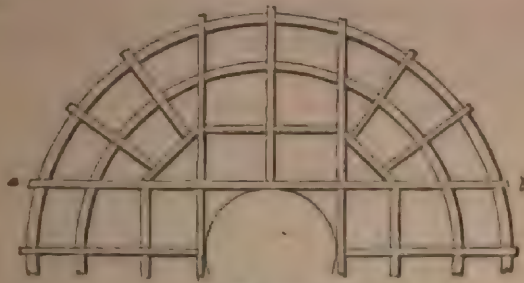


FIG. 94.

and their strength must be calculated accordingly. (See *Arts.* 70 to 80 and 214 to 222.) If the dome is large and of importance, two other trusses may be introduced at right angles to the foregoing, the tie-beams being preserved in

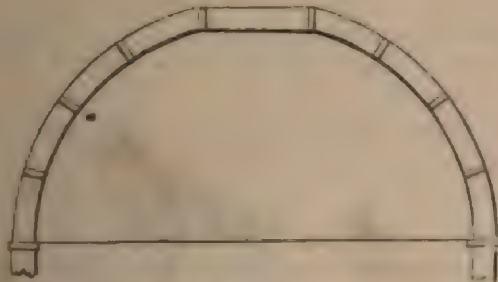


FIG. 95.

one continuous length by framing them high enough to pass over the others.

236.—Ribbed Dome.—When the interior must be kept free, then the framing may be composed of a succession of ribs standing upon a continuous circular curb of timber, as

over the whole surface, is that of a parabola (*Art.* 460); for a dome having no *lantern*, tower, or cupola above it, a *cubic parabola* (*Fig.* 97); and for one having a tower, etc., above it, a curve approaching that of an hyperbola must be adopted, as the greatest strength is required at its upper parts. If the curve of a dome be circular (as in the vertical section, *Fig.* 95), the pressure will have a tendency to burst the dome outwards at about one third of its height. Therefore, when this form is used in the construction of an extensive dome, an iron band should be placed around the framework at that height; and whatever may be the form of the curve, a band or tie of some kind is necessary around or across the base.

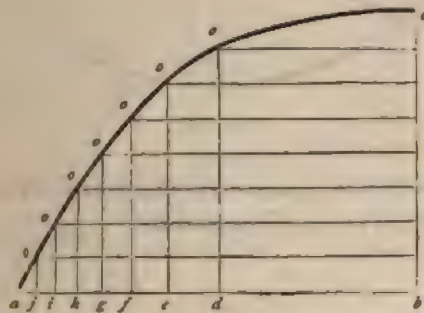


FIG. 97.

If the framing be of a form less convex than the curve of equilibrium, the weight will have a tendency to crush the ribs inwards, but this pressure may be effectually overcome by strutting between the ribs; and hence it is important that the struts be so placed as to form continuous horizontal circles.

238.—Cubic Parabola Computed.—Let $a b$ (*Fig.* 97) be the base, and $b c$ the height. Bisect $a b$ at d , and divide $a d$ into 100 equal parts; of these give $d e$ 26, $e f$ $18\frac{1}{2}$, $f g$ $14\frac{1}{2}$, $g h$ $12\frac{1}{2}$, $h i$ $10\frac{1}{2}$, $i j$ $9\frac{1}{2}$, and the balance, $8\frac{1}{2}$, to $j a$; divide $b c$ into 8 equal parts, and from the points of division draw lines parallel to $a b$, to meet perpendiculars from the several points

of division in ab , at the points o, o, o , etc. Then a curve traced through these points will be the one required.

239.—Small Domes over Stairways: are frequently made elliptical in both plan and section; and as no two of the ribs

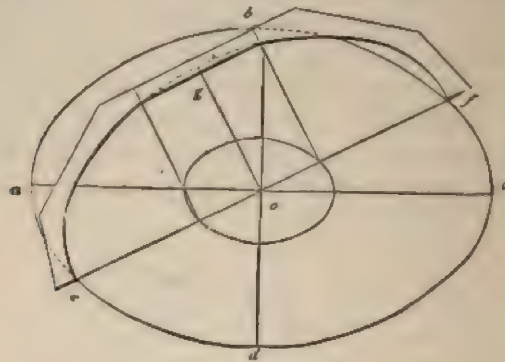


FIG. 98.

in one quarter of the dome are alike in form, a method for obtaining the curves may be useful.

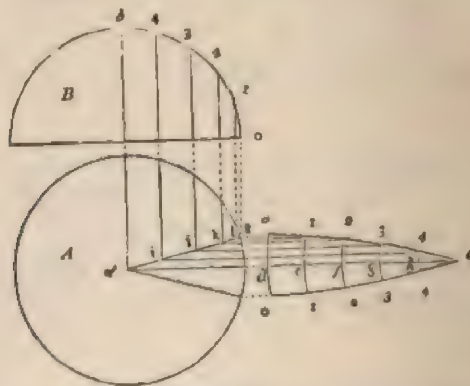


FIG. 99.

To find the curves for the ribs of an elliptical dome, let $abcd$ (Fig. 98) be the plan of a dome, and ef the seat of one of the ribs. Then take ef for the transverse axis and twice the rise, og , of the dome for the conjugate, and de-

scribe (according to *Arts.* 548, 549, etc.) the semi-ellipse egf , which will be the curve required for the rib egf . The other ribs are found in the same manner.

240.—Covering for a Spherical Dome.—To find the shape, let A (*Fig.* 99) be the plan, and B the section, of a given dome. From a draw ac at right angles to ab ; find the stretch-out (*Art.* 524) of ob , and make dc equal to it; divide the arc ob and the line dc each into a like number of equal parts, as 5 (a large number will insure greater accuracy than a small one); upon c , through the several points of division in cd , describe the arcs odo , $1c1$, $2f2$, etc.; make do equal to half the width of one of the boards, and draw os parallel

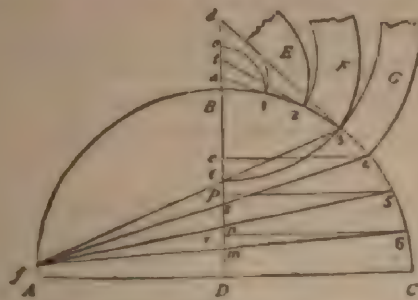


FIG. 100.

to ac ; join s and a , and from the points of division in the arc ob drop perpendiculars, meeting as in i, j, k, l ; from these points draw $i4, j3$, etc., parallel to ac ; make $do, c1$, etc., on the lower side of ac , equal to $do, c1$, etc., on the upper side; trace a curve through the points $o, 1, 2, 3, 4, c$, on each side of dc ; then odo will be the proper shape for the board. By dividing the circumference of the base A into equal parts, and making the bottom, odo , of the board of a size equal to one of those parts, every board may be made of the same size. In the same manner as the above, the shape of the covering for sections of another form may be found, such as an ogee, cove, etc.

To find the curve of the boards when laid in horizontal courses, let ABC (*Fig.* 100) be the section of a given dome,

board—taking $p/5$ for half the chord, and $p/11$ for the height of the segment. Should the segment be too large to be described easily, reduce it by finding intermediate points in the curve, as at *Art.* 515.

241.—Polygonal Dome: Form of Angle-Rib.—To obtain the shape of this rib, let AGH (*Fig.* 102) be the plan of a given dome, and CD a vertical section taken at the line cf . From 1, 2, 3, etc., in the arc CD draw ordinates, parallel to AD , to meet fG ; from the points of intersection on fG draw ordinates at right angles to fG ; make s_1 equal to o_1 , s_2 equal to o_2 , etc.; then GfB , obtained in this way, will be the angle-rib required. The best position for the sheathing-boards for a dome of this kind is horizontal, but if they are required to be bent from the base to the vertex, their shape may be found in a similar manner to that shown at *Fig.* 99.

BRIDGES.

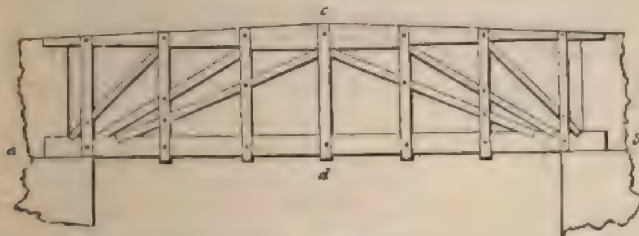


FIG. 103

242.—Bridges.—Of plans for the construction of bridges, perhaps the following are the most useful. *Fig.* 103 shows a method of constructing wooden bridges where the banks of the river are high enough to permit the use of the tie-beam, ab . The upright pieces, cd , are notched and bolted on in pairs, for the support of the tie-beam. A bridge of this construction exerts no lateral pressure upon the abutments. This method may be employed even where the banks of the river are low, by letting the timbers for the roadway rest immediately upon the tie-beam. In this case the framework above will serve the purpose of a railing.

Fig. 104 exhibits a wooden bridge without a tie-beam. Where staunch buttresses can be obtained this method may be recommended; but if there is any doubt of their stability, it should not be attempted, as it is evident that such a system of framing is capable of a tremendous lateral thrust.



FIG. 104.

243.—Bridges: Built-Rib.—Fig. 105 represents a bridge with a *built-rib* (see Art. 231) as a chief support. The curve of equilibrium will not differ much from that of a parabola: this, therefore, may be used—especially if the rib is made

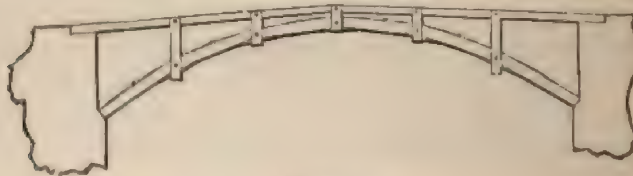


FIG. 105.

gradually a little stronger as it approaches the buttresses. As it is desirable that a bridge be kept low, the following table is given to show the least rise that may be given to the rib.

Span in Feet.	Least Rise in Feet	Span in Feet.	Least Rise in Feet	Span in Feet.	Least Rise in Feet
30	0.5	120	7	280	24
40	0.8	140	8	300	28
50	1.4	160	10	320	32
60	2	180	11	350	39
70	2½	200	12	380	47
80	3	220	14	400	53
90	4	240	17		
100	5	260	20		

The rise should never be made less than this, but in all cases greater if practicable; as a small rise requires a greater quantity of timber to make the bridge equally strong. The greatest uniform weight with which a bridge is likely to be loaded is, probably, that of a dense crowd of people. This may be estimated at 70 pounds per square foot, and the framing and gravelled roadway at 230 pounds more; which amounts to 300 pounds on a square foot. The following rule, based upon this estimate, may be useful in determining the area of the ribs.

Rule LXVII.—Multiply the width of the bridge by the square of half the span, both in feet, and divide this product by the rise in feet multiplied by the number of ribs; the quotient multiplied by the decimal 0.0011 will give the area of each rib in feet. When the roadway is only planked, use the decimal 0.0007 instead of 0.0011.

Example.—What should be the area of the ribs for a bridge of 200 feet span, to rise 15 feet and be 30 feet wide, with three curved ribs? The half of the span is 100, and its square is 10000; this multiplied by 30 gives 300000, and 15 multiplied by 3 gives 45; then 300000 divided by 45 gives 6666 $\frac{2}{3}$, which multiplied by 0.0011 gives 7.333 feet or 1056 inches for the area of each rib. Such a rib may be 24 inches thick by 44 inches deep, and composed of 6 pieces, 2 in width and 3 in depth.

The above rule gives the area of a rib that would be requisite to support the greatest possible *uniform* load. But in large bridges, a *variable* load, such as a heavy wagon, is capable of exerting much greater strains; in such cases, therefore, the rib should be made larger.*

In constructing these ribs, if the span be not over 50 feet, each rib may be made in two or three thicknesses of timber (three thicknesses is preferable), of convenient lengths bolted together; but in larger spans, where the rib will be such as to render it difficult to procure timber of sufficient breadth, they may be constructed by bending the pieces to the proper curve and bolting them together. In this case, where tim-

* See Tredgold's *Carpentry* by Hurst, Arts. 174 to 177.

ber of sufficient length to span the opening cannot be obtained, and scarfing is necessary. such joints must be made as will resist both tension and compression (see *Fig. 114*). To ascertain the greatest depth for the pieces which compose the rib, so that the process of bending may not injure their elasticity, multiply the radius of curvature in feet by the decimal 0.05, and the product will be the depth in inches.

Example.—Suppose the curve of the rib to be described with a radius of 100 feet, then what should be the depth? The radius in feet, 100, multiplied by 0.05 gives a product of 5 inches. White pine or oak timber 5 inches thick would freely bend to the above curve; and if the required depth of such a rib be 20 inches, it would have to be composed of at least 4 pieces. Pitch pine is not quite so elastic as white pine or oak—its thickness may be found by using the decimal 0.046 instead of 0.05.

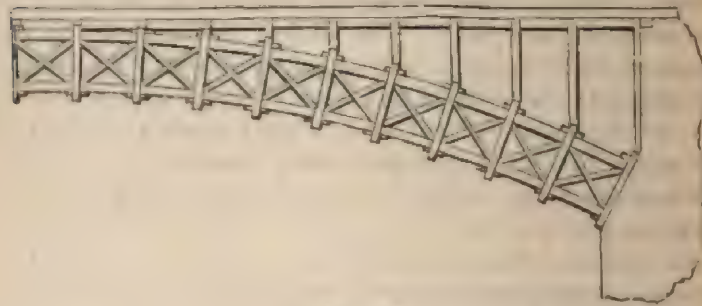


FIG. 106.

244.—Bridges: Framed Rib.—In spans of over 250 feet, a *framed rib*, as in *Fig. 106*, would be preferable to the foregoing. Of this, the upper and the lower edges are formed as just described, by bending the timber to the proper curve. The pieces that tend to the centre of the curve, called *radials*, are notched and bolted on in pairs, and the cross-braces are halved together in the middle, and abut end to end between the radials. The distance between the ribs of a bridge should not exceed about 8 feet. The roadway should be supported by vertical standards bolted to the ribs

at about every 10 to 15 feet. At the place where they rest on the ribs, a double, horizontal tie should be notched and bolted on the back of the ribs, and also another on the underside; and diagonal braces should be framed between the standards, over the space between the ribs, to prevent lateral motion. The timbers for the roadway may be as light as their situation will admit, as all useless timber is only an unnecessary load upon the arch.

245.—Bridges: Roadway.—If a roadway be 18 feet wide, two carriages can pass without inconvenience. Its width, therefore, should be either 9, 18, 27, or 36 feet, according to the amount of travel. The width of the foot-path should be two feet for every person. When a stream of water has a rapid current, as few piers as practicable should be allowed to obstruct its course; otherwise the bridge will be liable to be swept away by freshets. When the span is not over 300 feet, and the banks of the river are of sufficient height to admit of it, only one arch should be employed. The rise of the arch is limited by the form of the roadway, and by the height of the banks of the river (See Art. 243). The rise of the roadway should not exceed one in 24 feet, but as the framing settles about one in 72, the roadway should be framed to rise one in 18, that it may be one in 24 after settling. The commencement of the arch at the abutments—the *spring*, as it is termed—should not be below high-water mark; and the bridge should be placed at right angles with the course of the current.

246.—Bridges: Abutments.—The best material for the abutments and piers of a bridge is stone; and no other should be used. The following rule is to determine the extent of the abutments, they being rectangular, and built with stone weighing 120 pounds to a cubic foot.

Rule LXVIII—Multiply the square of the height of the abutment by 160, and divide this product by the weight of a square foot of the arch, and by the rise of the arch; add unity to the quotient, and extract the square root. Diminish the square root by unity, and multiply the root so dimin-

ished by half the span of the arch, and by the weight of a square foot of the arch. Divide the last product by 120 times the height of the abutment, and the quotient will be the thickness of the abutment.

Example.—Let the height of the abutment from the base to the springing of the arch be 20 feet, half the span 100 feet, the weight of a square foot of the arch, including the greatest possible load upon it, 300 pounds, and the rise of the arch 18 feet: what should be its thickness? The square of the height of the abutment, 400, multiplied by 160 gives 64000, and 300 by 18 gives 5400; 64000 divided by 5400 gives a quotient of 11.852; one added to this makes 12.852, the square root of which is 3.6; this, less one is 2.6; this multiplied by 100 gives 260, and this again by 300 gives 78000; this divided by 120 times the height of the abutment, 2400, gives 32 feet 6 inches, the thickness required.

The dimensions of a pier will be found by the same rule; for, although the thrust of an arch may be balanced by an adjoining arch when the bridge is finished, and while it remains uninjured, yet, during the erection, and in the event of one arch being destroyed, the pier should be capable of sustaining the entire thrust of the other.

Piers are sometimes constructed of timber their principal strength depending on piles driven into the earth; but such piers should never be adopted where it is possible to avoid them; for, being alternately wet and dry, they decay much sooner than the upper parts of the bridge. Spruce and elm are considered good for piles. Where the height from the bottom of the river to the roadway is great, it is a good plan to cut them off at a little below low-water mark, cap them with a horizontal tie, and upon this erect the posts for the support of the roadway. This method cuts off the part that is continually wet from that which is only occasionally so, and thus affords an opportunity for replacing the upper part. The pieces which are immersed will last a great length of time, especially when of elm; for it is a well-established fact that timber is less durable when subject to alternate dryness and moisture than when it is either continually wet or continually dry. It has been ascertained that

the piles under London Bridge, after having been driven about 600 years, were not materially decayed. These piles are chiefly of elm, and wholly immersed.

247.—Centres for Stone Bridges.—*Fig. 107* is a design for a centre for a stone bridge where intermediate supports, as piles driven into the bed of the river, are practicable. Its timbers are so distributed as to sustain the weight of the arch-stones as they are being laid, without destroying the original form of the centre; and also to prevent its destruction or settlement, should any of the piles be swept away. The most usual error in badly-constructed centres is that the timbers are disposed so as to cause the framing to rise at the crown during the laying of the arch-stones up

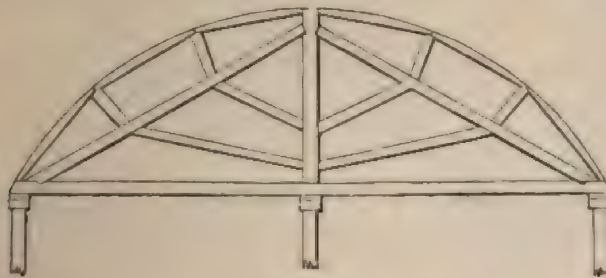


FIG. 107.

the sides. To remedy this evil, some have loaded the crown with heavy stones; but a centre properly constructed will need no such precaution.

Experiments have shown that an arch-stone does not press upon the centring until its bed is inclined to the horizon at an angle of from 30 to 45 degrees, according to the hardness of the stone, and whether it is laid in mortar or not. For general purposes, the point at which the pressure commences may be considered to be at that joint which forms an angle of 32 degrees with the horizon. At this point the pressure is inconsiderable, but gradually increases towards the crown. The following table gives the *portion* of the weight of the arch-stones that presses upon the framing at the various angles of inclination formed by the bed of the

stone with the horizon. The pressure perpendicular to the curve is equal to the weight of the arch-stone multiplied by the decimal—

.0, when the angle of inclination is 32 degrees.

.04	"	"	"	34	"
.08	"	"	"	36	"
.12	"	"	"	38	"
.17	"	"	"	40	"
.21	"	"	"	42	"
.25	"	"	"	44	"
.29	"	"	"	46	"
.33	"	"	"	48	"
.37	"	"	"	50	"
.4	"	"	"	52	"
.44	"	"	"	54	"
.48	"	"	"	56	"
.52	"	"	"	58	"
.54	"	"	"	60	"

From this it is seen that at the inclination of 44 degrees the pressure equals one quarter the weight of the stone; at 57 degrees, half the weight; and when a vertical line, as *ab* (*Fig. 108*), passing through the centre of gravity of the arch-stone, does not fall within its bed, *cd*, the pressure may be considered equal to the whole weight of the stone. This will be the case at about 60 degrees, when the depth of the stone is double its breadth. The direction of these

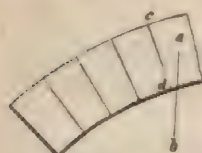


FIG. 108.

pressures is considered in a line with the radius of the curve. The weight upon a centre being known, the pressure may be estimated and the timber calculated accordingly. But it must be remembered that the whole weight is never placed upon the framing at once—as seems to have been the idea had in view by the designers of some centres. In building the arch, it should be commenced at each buttress at the same time (as is generally the case), and each side should progress equally towards the crown. In designing the fram-

ing, the effect produced by each successive layer of stone should be considered. The pressure of the stones upon one side should, by the arrangement of the struts, be counterpoised by that of the stones upon the other side.

Over a river whose stream is rapid, or where it is necessary to preserve an uninterrupted passage for the purposes of navigation, the centre must be constructed without intermediate supports, and without a continued horizontal tie at the base: such a centre is shown at *Fig. 100*. In laying the stones from the base up to *a* and *c*, the pieces *b d* and *b' d'* act as ties to prevent any rising at *b*. After this, while the stones are being laid from *a* and from *c* to *b*, they act as struts: the piece *f g* is added for additional security. Upon this plan, with some variation to suit circumstances,

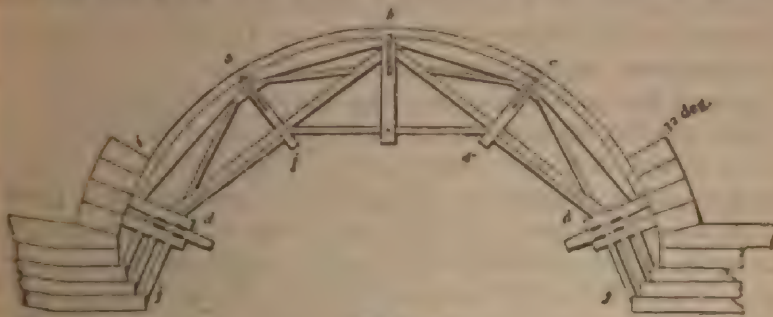


FIG. 100.

Centres may be constructed for any span usual in stone-bridge building.

In bridge centres, the principal timbers should abut, and not be intercepted by a suspension or radial piece between. These should be in halves, notched on each side and bolted. The timbers should intersect as little as possible, for the more joints the greater is the settling; and halving them together is a bad practice, as it destroys nearly one half the strength of the timber. Ties should be introduced across, especially where many timbers meet; and as the centre is to serve but a temporary purpose, the whole should be designed with a view to employ the timber afterwards for other uses. For this reason, all unnecessary cutting should be avoided.

Centres should be sufficiently strong to preserve a staunch and steady form during the whole process of building; for any shaking or trembling will have a tendency to prevent the mortar or cement from *setting*. For this purpose, also, the centre should be lowered a trifle immediately after the key-stone is laid, in order that the stones may take their bearing before the mortar is set; otherwise the joints will open on the underside. The trusses, in centring, are placed at the distance of from 4 to 6 feet apart, according to their strength and the weight of the arch. Between every two trusses diagonal braces should be introduced to prevent lateral motion.

In order that the centre may be easily lowered, the frames, or trusses, should be placed upon wedge-formed sills, as is shown at *d* (*Fig. 109*). These are contrived so as to admit of the settling of the frame by driving the wedge *d* with a maul, or, in large centres, with a piece of timber mounted as a battering-ram. The operation of lowering a centre should be very slowly performed, in order that the parts of the arch may take their bearing uniformly. The wedge pieces, instead of being placed parallel with the truss, are sometimes made sufficiently long and laid through the arch, in a direction at right angles to that shown at *Fig. 109*. This method obviates the necessity of stationing men beneath the arch during the process of lowering; and was originally adopted with success soon after the occurrence of an accident, in lowering a centre, by which nine men were killed.

To give some idea of the manner of estimating the pressures, in order to select timber of the proper scantling, calculate the pressure (*Art. 247*) of the arch-stones from *i* to *b* (*Fig. 109*), and suppose half this pressure concentrated at *a*, and acting in the direction *a f*. Then, by the parallelogram of forces (*Art. 71*), the strain in the several pieces composing the frame *b d a* may be computed. Again, calculate the pressure of that portion of the arch included between *a* and *c*, and consider half of it collected at *b*, and acting in a vertical direction; then, by the parallelogram of forces, the pressure on the beams *b d* and *b d* may be found. Add the

pressure of that portion of the arch which is included between i and b to half the weight of the centre, and consider this amount concentrated at d , and acting in a vertical direction; then, by constructing the parallelogram of forces, the pressure upon $d j$ may be ascertained.

The strains having been obtained, the dimensions of the several pieces in the frames $b a d$ and $b c d$ may be found by computation, as directed in the case of roof-trusses, from *Arts.* 226 to 229. The tie-beams $b d, b d$, if made of sufficient size to resist the compressive strain acting upon them from the load at b , will be more than large enough to resist the tensile strain upon them during the laying of the first part of the arch-stones below a and c .

248.—Arch-Stones: Joints.—In an arch, the arch-stones are so shaped that the joints between them are perpendicular to the curve of the arch, or to its tangent at the point at which the joint intersects the curve. In a circular arch, the

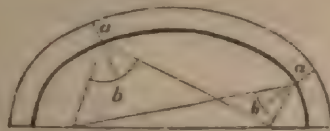


FIG. 110.

joints tend toward the centre of the circle; in an elliptical arch, the joints may be found by the following process:

To find the direction of the joints for an elliptical arch;

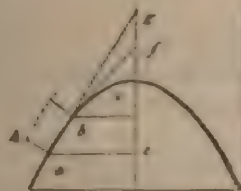


FIG. 111.

a joint being wanted at a (*Fig.* 110), draw lines from that point to the foci, f and f ; bisect the angle $f a f$ with the line $a b$; then $a b$ will be the direction of the joint.

To find the direction of the joints for a parabolic arch: a joint being wanted at *a* (*Fig. 111*), draw *ae* at right angles to the axis *cg*; make *cg* equal to *ce*, and join *a* and *g*; draw *ah* at right angles to *ag*; then *ah* will be the direction of the joint. The direction of the joint from *b* is found in the same manner. The lines *ag* and *bf* are tangents to the curve at those points respectively; and any number of joints in the curve may be obtained by first ascertaining the tangents, and then drawing lines at right angles to them. (See *Art. 462*.)

JOINTS.

249.—Timber Joints.—The joint shown in *Fig. 112* is simple and strong; but the strength consists wholly in the bolts, and in the friction of the parts produced by screwing the pieces firmly together. Should the timber shrink to

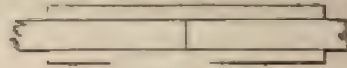


FIG. 112.

even a small degree, the strength would depend altogether on the bolts. It would be made much stronger by indenting the pieces together, as at the upper edge of the tie-beam



FIG. 113.

in *Fig. 113*, or by placing keys in the joints, as at the lower edge in the same figure. This process, however, weakens the beam in proportion to the depth of the indents.

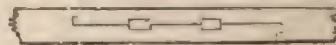


FIG. 114

Fig. 114 shows a method of scarfing, or splicing, a tie-beam without bolts. The keys are to be of well-seasoned, hard wood, and, if possible, very cross-grained. The addi-

on of bolts would make this a very strong splice, or even white-oak pins would add materially to its strength.

Fig. 115 shows about as strong a splice, perhaps, as can be made. It is to be recommended for its simplicity; on account of there being no oblique joints in it, it can be readily and accurately executed. A complicated joint is the worst that can be adopted; still, some have proposed joints that seem to have little else besides complication to commend them.

In proportioning the parts of these scarfs, the depths of

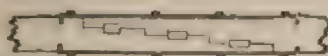


FIG. 115.

the indents taken together should be equal to one third the depth of the beam. In oak, ash or elm, the whole length of the scarf should be six times the depth, or thickness, of the beam, when there are no bolts; but, if bolts instead of indents are used, then three times the breadth; and when both methods are combined, twice the depth of the beam. The length of the scarf in pine and similar soft woods, depending wholly on indents, should be about 12 times the thickness, or depth, of the beam; when depending wholly on bolts, 6 times the breadth; and when both methods are combined, 4 times the depth.

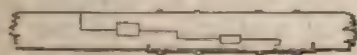


FIG. 116.

Sometimes beams have to be pieced that are required to resist cross-strains—such as a girder, or the tie-beam of a roof when supporting the ceiling. In such beams, the fibres of the wood in the upper part are compressed; and therefore a simple butt joint at that place (as in *Fig. 116*) is preferable to any other. In such case, an oblique joint is the very worst. The under side of the beam being in a state of tension, it must be indented or bolted, or both; and an iron plate under the heads of the bolts gives a great addition of strength.

Scarfig requires accuracy and care, as all the indents should bear equally; otherwise, one being strained more than another, there would be a tendency to splinter off the parts. Hence the simplest form that will attain the object is by far the best. In all beams that are compressed endwise, abutting joints, formed at right angles to the direction of their length, are at once the simplest and the best. For a temporary purpose, *Fig. 112* would do very well; it would be improved, however, by having a piece bolted on all four sides. *Fig. 113*, and indeed each of the others, since they have no oblique joints, would resist compression well.

In framing one beam into another for bearing purposes, such as a floor-beam into a trimmer, the best place to make the mortise in the trimmer is in the neutral line (*Arts. 120, 121*), which is in the middle of its depth. Some have thought that, as the fibres of the upper edge are compressed,



FIG. 117.

a mortise might be made there, and the tenon driven in tight enough to make the parts as capable of resisting the compression as they would be without it; and they have therefore concluded that plan to be the best. This could not be the case, even if the tenon would not shrink; for a joint between two pieces cannot possibly be made to resist compression so well as a solid piece without joints. The proper place, therefore, for the mortise is at the middle of the depth of the beam; but the best place for the tenon, in the floor-beam, is at its bottom edge. For the nearer this is placed to the upper edge, the greater is the liability for it to splinter off; if the joint is formed, therefore, as at *Fig. 117*, it will combine all the advantages that can be obtained. Double tenons are objectionable, because the piece framed into is needlessly weakened, and the tenons are seldom so accurately made as to bear equally. For this reason, unless the tusk

at *a* in the figure fits exactly, so as to bear equally with the *tenon*, it had better be omitted. And in sawing the shoulders *care* should be taken not to saw into the *tenon* in the least, as it would wound the beam in the place least able to bear it.

Thus it will be seen that framing weakens both pieces, *more or less*. It should, therefore, be avoided as much as possible, and where it is practicable one piece should rest *upon* the other, rather than be framed into it. This *remark* applies to the bearing of floor-beams on a girder, to the purlins and jack-rafters of a roof, etc.

In a framed truss for a roof, bridge, partition, etc., the *joints* should be so constructed as to direct the pressures *through* the axes of the several pieces, and also to avoid *every* tendency of the parts to slide. To attain this object,



FIG. 118.



FIG. 119.



FIG. 120.

the abutting surface on the end of a strut should be at *right angles* to the direction of the pressure; as at the joint shown in *Fig. 118* for the foot of a rafter (see *Art. 86*), in *Fig. 119* for the head of a rafter, and in *Fig. 120* for the foot of a strut or brace. The joint at *Fig. 118* is not cut completely across the tie-beam, but a narrow lip is left standing in the middle, and a corresponding indent is made in the rafter, to prevent the parts from separating sideways. The abutting surface should be made as large as the attainment of other necessary objects will admit. The iron strap is added to prevent the rafter sliding out, should the end of the tie-beam, by decay or otherwise, splinter off. In making the joint shown at *Fig. 119*, it should be left a little open at *a*, so as to bring the parts to a fair bearing at the settling of the truss, which must necessarily take place from the shrinking of the king-post and other parts. If the joint is made fair at first, when the truss settles it will cause it to open at

the under side of the rafter, thus throwing the whole pressure upon the sharp edge at *a*. This will cause an indentation in the king-post, by which the truss will be made to settle further; and this pressure not being in the axis of the rafter, it will be greatly increased, thereby rendering the rafter liable to split and break.



FIG. 121.



FIG. 122.



FIG. 123.

If the rafters and struts were made to abut end to end, as in *Figs. 121, 122 and 123*, and the king or queen post notched on in halves and bolted, the ill effects of shrinking would be avoided. This method has been practised with success in some of the most celebrated bridges and roofs in Europe; and, were its use adopted in this country, the unseemly sight of a *hogged* ridge would seldom be met with.



FIG. 124.



FIG. 125.

A plate of cast-iron between the abutting surfaces will equalize the pressure.

Fig. 124 is a proper joint for a collar-beam in a small roof: the principle shown here should characterize all tie-joints. The dovetail joint, although extensively practised in the above and similar cases, is the very worst that can be employed. The shrinking of the timber, if only to a small

degree, permits the tie to withdraw—as is shown at *Fig. 125*. The dotted line shows the position of the tie after it has shrunk.

Locust and white-oak pins are great additions to the strength of a joint. In many cases they would supply the place of iron bolts; and, on account of their small cost, they should be used in preference wherever the strength of iron is not requisite. In small framing, good cut nails are of great service at the joints; but they should not be trusted to bear any considerable pressure, as they are apt to be brittle. Iron straps are seldom necessary, as all the joinings in carpentry may be made without them. They can be used to advantage, however, at the foot of suspending-pieces, and for the rafter at the end of the tie-beam. In roofs for ordinary purposes, the iron straps for suspending-pieces may be as follows: When the longest unsupported part of the tie-beam is—

10 feet, the strap may be 1 inch wide by $\frac{3}{16}$ thick.

15	"	"	"	$1\frac{1}{8}$	"	"	$\frac{1}{4}$	"
20	"	"	"	2	"	"	$\frac{1}{4}$	"

In fastening a strap, its hold on the suspending-piece will be much increased by turning its ends into the wood. Iron straps should be protected from rust; for thin plates of iron decay very soon, especially when exposed to dampness. For this purpose, as soon as the strap is made let it be heated to about a blue heat, and, while it is hot, pour over its entire surface raw linseed oil, or rub it with beeswax. Either of these will give it a coating which dampness will not penetrate.

SECTION III.—STAIRS.

250.—Stairs : General Requirements.—The STAIRS is that commodious arrangement of steps in a building by which access is obtained from one story to another. Their position, form, and finish, when determined with discriminating taste, add greatly to the comfort and elegance of a structure. As regards their position, the first object should be to have them near the middle of the building, in order that they may afford an equally easy access to all the rooms and passages. Next in importance is light; to obtain which they would seem to be best situated near an outer wall, in which windows might be constructed for the purpose; yet a skylight, or opening in the roof, would not only provide light, and so secure a central position for the stairs, but may be made, also, to assist materially as an ornament to the building, and, what is of more importance, afford an opportunity for better ventilation.

All stairs, especially those of the most important buildings, should be erected of *stone* or some equally durable and fire-resisting material, that the means of egress from a burning building may not be too rapidly destroyed.

Winding stairs, or those in which the direction is gradually changed by means of *winders*, or steps which taper in width, are interesting by reason of the greater skill required in their construction; but are objectionable, for the reason that children are exposed to accident by their liability to fall when passing over the narrow ends of the steps. Stairs of this kind should be tolerated only where there is not sufficient space for those with *flyers*, or steps of parallel width.

Stairs in one long continuous flight are ~~also~~ objectionable. *Platforms* or landings should be introduced at intervals, so that any one flight may not contain more than about twelve or fifteen steps.

The *width* of stairs should be in accordance with the im-



KHORSABAD.—ASSYRIAN TEMPLE, RESTORED.

tance of the building in which they are placed, varying from 3 to 12 feet. Where two persons are expected to pass each other conveniently the least width admissible is 3 feet. In crowded cities, where land is valuable, the space allowed for passages is correspondingly small, and in these cases stairs are sometimes made as narrow as $2\frac{1}{4}$ feet.

From 3 to 4 feet is a suitable width for a good dwelling ; 4 to 5 feet will be found ample for stairs in buildings occupied by many people ; and from 8 to 12 feet is sufficient for the width of stairs in halls of assembly.

To avoid tripping or stumbling, care should be exercised, in the planning of a stairs, to secure an even grade. At this end, the *nosings*, or outer edge, of each step should be exactly in line with all the other nosings. In stairs composed of both flyers and winders, precaution in this regard is specially needed. In such stairs, the steps—flyers and winders alike—should be of one width on the line along which a person would naturally walk when having his hand on the rail. This *tread-line*, consequently, would be parallel with the hand-rail, and is usually taken at a distance of from 18 to 20 inches from the centre of it. In the plan of stairs this tread-line should be drawn and divided into equal parts, each part being the *tread*, or width of a flyer on the face of one riser to the face of the next.

251.—The Grade of Stairs.—The extra exertion required in ascending a staircase over that for walking on level ground is due to the weight which a person at each step is required to lift ; that is, the weight of his own body. Hence the difficulty of ascent will be in proportion to the height of a step, or to the *rise*, as it is termed. To facilitate the action of going up stairs, therefore, the *risers* should be

The grade of a stairs, or its angle of ascent, depends only upon the height of the riser, but also upon the width of the step ; and this has a certain relation to the angle ; for the width of a step should be in proportion to the steepness of the angle of ascent.

The distance from the top of one riser to the top of the next is the distance travelled at each step taken, and this dis-

tance should vary as the grade of the stairs; for a person who in climbing a ladder, or a nearly vertical stairs, can travel only 12 inches, or less, at a step, will be able with equal or greater facility to travel at least twice this distance on level ground. The distance travelled, therefore, should be in proportion inversely to the angle of ascent; or, the dimensions of riser and step should be reciprocal: a low rise should have a wide step, and a high rise a narrow step.

252.—Pitch-Board: Relation of Rise to Tread.—Among the various devices for determining the relation of the rise to the *tread*, or net width of step, one is to make the sum of the two equal to 18 inches.

For example, for a rise of 6 inches the tread should be 12, for 7 inches the tread should be 11; or—

$$6 + 12 = 18$$

$$6\frac{1}{2} + 11\frac{1}{2} = 18$$

$$7 + 11 = 18$$

$$7\frac{1}{2} + 10\frac{1}{2} = 18$$

$$8 + 10 = 18$$

$$8\frac{1}{2} + 9\frac{1}{2} = 18$$

$$9 + 9 = 18$$

$$9\frac{1}{2} + 8\frac{1}{2} = 18$$

This rule is simple, but the results in extreme cases are not satisfactory. If the ascent of a stairs be gradual and easy—the length from the top of one rise to that of another, or the hypotenuse of the pitch-board, may be proportionally long but if the stairs be steep, the length must be shorter.

There is a French method, introduced by Blondel in his *Cours d'Architecture*. It is referred to in Gwilt's *Encyclopedia*, Art. 2813.

This method is based upon the assumed distance of 24 inches as being a convenient step upon level ground, and upon 12 inches as the most convenient height to rise when the ascent is vertical. These are French inches, old system. The 24 inches French equals about 25 $\frac{3}{4}$ inches English.

With these distances as base and perpendicular, a right-angled triangle is formed, which is used as a scale upon which the proportions of a pitch-board are found. For example, let a line be drawn from any point in the hypotenuse of this triangle to the right angle of the triangle; then this line will equal the length of the pitch-board, along the

take, for a stairs having a grade equal to the angle formed by this line and the base-line of the scale.

In the absence of the triangular scale, the lengths of the pitch-boards, as found by this rule, may be computed by this expression—

$$W = 25\frac{7}{8} - 2h; \quad (107.)$$

in which W equals the tread, or base of the pitch-board, and h the riser, or its perpendicular height.

For example, let $h = 6$; then—

$$W = 25\frac{7}{8} - 2 \times 6 = 13\frac{7}{8}.$$

This result is greater than would be proper in some cases.

The length of the hypotenuse of the pitch-board should be proportional not only to the angle of ascent (*Art.* 251), but also to the strength and height of the class of people who are to use the stairs. Tall and strong persons will take longer steps than short and feeble people. The hypotenuse of the pitch-board should be made in proportion to the distance taken at a step on level ground by the persons who are to use the stairs.

If people are divided into two classes, one composed of robust workmen and the other of delicate women and infirm men, then there may be two scales formed for the pitch-boards of stairs—one to be used for shops and factories, and the other for dwellings. The distance on level ground travelled per step, by men, varies from about 26 to 32 inches, or on an average 28 inches. The height to which men are accustomed to rise on ladders is from 12 to 16 inches at each step, or on the average 14 inches.

With these dimensions, therefore, of 14 and 28 inches, a scale may be formed for pitch-boards for stairs, in buildings to be used exclusively by robust workmen. And with 12 and 24 inches another scale may be formed for pitch-boards for stairs, in buildings to be used by women and feeble people. These two scales are both shown in *Fig.* 126. They are made thus: Let CAB be a right angle. Make AB equal to 28 inches, and AC equal to 14; then join B and

C. At right angles to *CB*, from *A*, draw *AF*; then with *AF* for radius describe the arc *FG*. Then a line, as *AK* or *AL*, drawn from *A* at any angle with *AB* and limited by the line *GFB* will give the length of the hypotenuse of the pitch-board, for shop stairs of a grade equal to the angle which said line makes with *AB*. From *K*, perpendicular to *AB*, draw *KN*; then *KN* will be the proper riser for a pitch-board of which *AN* is the tread. So, likewise, *LM* will be the appropriate riser for the tread *AM*. The arc *FG* is introduced to limit the rake-line of pitch-boards occurring between *F* and *C*, in order to avoid making them longer than the one at *F*. The scale for the stairs for dwellings is made in the same manner; *AD* = 24 inches being the base, *AE* = 12 inches the rise, and *FHD* the line limiting the rake-lines of pitch-boards.

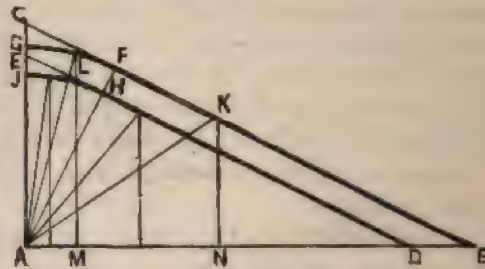


FIG. 126.

To compute the length of risers and treads, we have for the scale for shops, for those occurring between *F* and *B*—

$$r = \frac{1}{2} (28 - t); \quad (108.)$$

$$t = 28 - 2r; \quad (109.)$$

and for those between *F* and *G*, we have—

$$r = \sqrt{156.8 - t^2}; \quad (108, A.)$$

$$t = \sqrt{156.8 - r^2}; \quad (109, A.)$$

For the scale for dwellings, we have, for those occurring between *H* and *D*—

$$r = \frac{1}{2} (24 - t); \quad (108, B.)$$

$$t = 24 - 2r; \quad (109, B.)$$

and for those between H and \mathcal{F} , we have—

$$r = \sqrt{115.2 - t^2}; \quad (108, C.)$$

$$t = \sqrt{115.2 - r^2}; \quad (109, C.)$$

where, in each equation, r represents the riser, and t the tread, or net step.

By these formulæ, the following tables have been computed:

STAIRS FOR SHOPS.

Rise.	Tread.	Ratio—Rise to Tread.	Rise.	Tread.	Ratio—Rise to Tread.
2.	24.	1 to 12.	7.40	13.20	1 to 1.78
3.	22.	1 " 7.33	7.60	12.80	1 " 1.68
3.50	21.	1 " 6.	7.80	12.40	1 " 1.59
4.	20.	1 " 5.	8.	12.	1 " 1.50
4.50	19.	1 " 4.22	8.20	11.6	1 " 1.41
5.	18.	1 " 3.60	8.50	11.	1 " 1.29
5.4	17.20	1 " 3.19	8.80	10.40	1 " 1.18
5.7	16.60	1 " 2.91	9.	10.	1 " 1.11
6.	16.	1 " 2.67	9.30	9.40	1 " 1.01
6.25	15.50	1 " 2.48	9.60	8.80	1 " 0.92
6.50	15.	1 " 2.31	10.	8.	1 " 0.80
6.70	14.60	1 " 2.18	10.50	7.	1 " 0.67
6.90	14.20	1 " 2.06	11.	6.	1 " 0.55
7.	14.	1 " 2.	11.50	4.95	1 " 0.43
7.20	13.60	1 " 1.89	12.	3.58	1 " 0.30

STAIRS FOR DWELLINGS.

Rise.	Tread.	Ratio—Rise to Tread.	Rise.	Tread.	Ratio—Rise to Tread.
2.	20.	1 to 10.	7.40	9.20	1 to 1.24
3.	18.	1 " 6.	7.50	9.	1 " 1.20
3.50	17.	1 " 4.86	7.60	8.80	1 " 1.16
4.	16.	1 " 4.	7.70	8.60	1 " 1.12
4.50	15.	1 " 3.33	7.80	8.40	1 " 1.08
5.	14.	1 " 2.80	7.90	8.20	1 " 1.04
5.40	13.20	1 " 2.44	8.	8.	1 " 1.
5.70	12.60	1 " 2.21	8.10	7.80	1 " 0.96
6.	12.	1 " 2.	8.30	7.40	1 " 0.89
6.25	11.50	1 " 1.84	8.50	7.	1 " 0.82
6.50	11.	1 " 1.69	8.75	6.50	1 " 0.74
6.75	10.50	1 " 1.56	9.	6.	1 " 0.67
7.	10.	1 " 1.43	9.30	5.40	1 " 0.58
7.10	9.80	1 " 1.38	9.60	4.80	1 " 0.50
7.20	9.60	1 " 1.33	10.	3.90	1 " 0.39
7.30	9.40	1 " 1.29	10.50	2.20	1 " 0.21

These tables will be useful in determining questions in-

volving the proportion between the rise and tread of a pitch-board.

For stairs in which the run is limited, to determine the number of risers which would give an easy ascent: *Divide the run by the height*, and find in the proper table, above, the *ratio nearest to the quotient*, and in a line with this ratio, in the *second column to the left*, will be found the corresponding *riser*. With this divide the *rise* in inches; the *quotient*, or the *nearest whole number* thereto, will be the required number of risers in the stairs.

Example.—For the stairs in a dwelling, let the rise be 12' 8", or 152 inches. Let the run between the extreme risers be 17' 2". To this, for the purpose of obtaining the correct angle of ascent, by having an equal number of risers and treads, add, for one more tread, say 10 inches, its probable width; thus making the total run 18 feet, or 216 inches. Thus we have for the run 216, and for the rise 152. Dividing the former by the latter gives 1.42 nearly. In the table of stairs for dwellings, the ratio nearest to this is 1.43, and in the line to the left, in the second column, is 7, the approximate size of riser appropriate to this case. Dividing the rise, 152 inches, by this 7, we have 21½ as the quotient.

This is nearer to 22 than to 21; therefore, the number of risers required is 22.

When the number of risers is determined, then the rise divided by this number will give the height of each riser; thus, in the above case, the rise is 152 inches. This divided by 22 gives 6.909 inches for the height of the riser.

When the height of the riser is known, then, if the run is unlimited, the width of tread will be found in the proper table above. For example, if the riser is 7 inches or nearly that, then in the table of stairs for dwellings, in the next column to the right, and opposite 7 in the column of risers, is found 10, the approximate width of tread. By the use of equation (109, B.), the width may be had exactly according to the scale. For example, equation (109, B.) with 6.91 for the riser, becomes—

$$t = 24 - 2 \times 6.91 = 10.18,$$

or about 10½ inches.

When the run is limited and the number of risers is known, then the width of tread is obtained by dividing the run by the number of treads. There are always of treads one less than there are of risers, in each flight.

253.—Dimensions of the Pitch-Board.—The first thing in commencing to build a stairs is to make the *pitch-board*; this is done in the following manner: Obtain very accurately, in feet and inches, the rise, or perpendicular height, of the story in which the stairs are to be placed. This must be taken from the top of the lower floor to the top of the upper floor. Then, to obtain the number of rises and treads and their size, proceed as directed in *Art.* 252. Having obtained these, the pitch-board may be made in the following manner: Upon a piece of well-seasoned board about $\frac{3}{8}$ of an inch thick, having one edge jointed straight and square, lay the corner of a steel square, as shown at *Fig.* 127. Make *a b* equal to the riser, and *b c* equal to the tread; mark along the edges with a knife, and cut by the marks, making the edges of the pitch-board perfectly square. The grain of the wood should run in the direction indicated in the figure, because, in case of shrinkage, the rise and the tread will be equally affected by it. When a pitch-board is first made, the dimensions of the riser and tread should be preserved in figures, in order that, in case of shrinkage or damage otherwise, a second may be made.

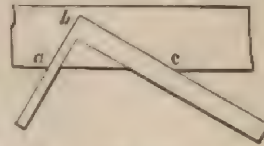


FIG. 127.

254.—The String of a Stairs.—The space required for timber and plastering under the steps is about 5 inches for ordinary stairs, or 6 inches if furred; set a gauge, therefore, at 5 or 6 inches, as the case requires, and run it on the lower edge of the plank, as *a b* (*Fig.* 128). Commencing at one end, lay the longest side of the pitch-board against the gauge-mark, *a b*, as at *c*, and draw by the edges the lines for the first rise and tread; then place it successively as at *d*, *e*,

and *f*, until the required number of risers shall be laid down. To insure accuracy, it is well to ascertain the theoretical raking length of the pitch-board by computation, as in note to *Art.* 536, by getting the square root of the sum of the squares of the rise and run, and using this by which to divide the line *ab* into equal parts.

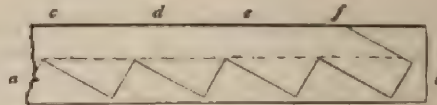


FIG. 128.

255.—Step and Riser Connection.—*Fig.* 129 represents a section of step and riser, joined after the most approved method. In this, *a* represents the end of a block about 2

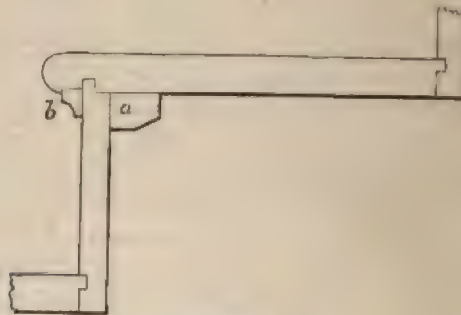


FIG. 129.

inches long, two or three of which, in the length of the step, are glued in the corner. The cove at *b* is planed up square, glued in, and *stuck* or moulded after the glue is set.

PLATFORM STAIRS.

256.—Platform Stairs: the Cylinder.—A platform stairs ascends from one story to another in two or more flights, having platforms or landings between for resting and to change their direction. This kind of stairs, being simple, is

easily constructed, and at the same time is to be preferred to those with *winders*, for the convenience it affords in use (*Art.* 250). The cylinder may be of any diameter desirable, from a few inches to 3 or more feet, but it is generally small, about 6 inches. It may be worked out of one solid piece, but a better way is to glue together 3 pieces, as in *Fig.* 130; in which the pieces *a*, *b*, and *c* compose the cylinder, and *d* and *e* represent parts of the strings. The strings, after being glued to the cylinder, are secured with screws. The joining at *o* and *o* is the most proper for that kind of joint.

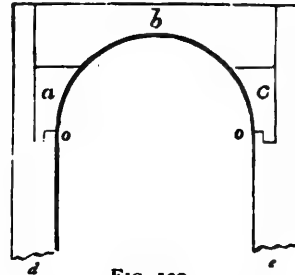


FIG. 130.

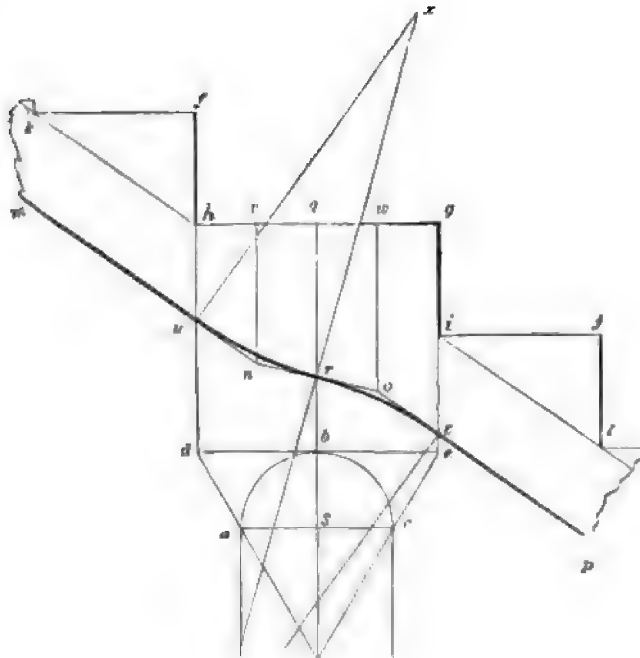


FIG. 131.

257.—Form of Lower Edge of Cylinder.—Find the stretch-out, *de* (*Fig.* 131), of the face of the cylinder, *abc*,

according to *Art.* 524; from d and e draw df and de at right angles to de ; draw hg parallel to dc , and make hf and gi each equal to one riser; from i and f draw ij and fk parallel to hg ; place the tread of the pitch-board at these last lines, and draw by the lower edge the lines kh and il ; parallel to these draw mn and op , at the requisite distance for the dimensions of the string; from s , the centre of the plan, draw sq parallel to df ; divide hq and qg each into two equal parts, as at v and w ; from v and w draw vn and wo parallel to fd ; join n and o , cutting qs in r ; then the angles unr and rot , being eased off according to *Art.* 521, will give the proper curve for the bottom edge of the cylinder. A centre may be found upon which to describe these curves, thus: from u draw ux at right angles to mn ; from r draw rx at right angles to no ; then x will be the centre for the curve ur . The centre for the curve rt may be found in a similar manner. Centres from which to strike these curves are usually quite unnecessary: an experienced workman will readily form the curves guided alone by his practised eye.

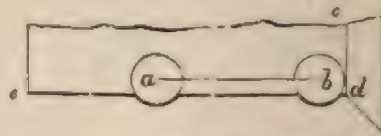


FIG. 132.

258.—Position of the Balusters.—Place the centre of the first baluster, b (*Fig.* 132), half its diameter from the face of the riser, cd , and one third its diameter from the end of the step, ed ; and place the centre of the other baluster, a , half the tread from the centre of the first. A line through the centre of the rail will occur vertically over the centres of the balusters. The usual length of the balusters is 2 feet 5 inches and 2 feet 9 inches respectively, for the short and long balusters. Their length may be greater than is here indicated, but, for safety, should never be less. The difference in length between the short and long balusters is equal to one half the height of a riser.

249.—Winding Stairs: have the steps narrower at one end than at the other. In some stairs there are steps of parallel width incorporated with the tapering steps; in this case the former are called *flyers*, and the latter *winder*.

260.—Regular Winding Stairs.—In *Fig. 133*, *abcd* represents the inner surface of the wall enclosing the space allotted to the stairs, *ae* the length of the steps, and *efgh* the cylinder, or face of the front-string. The line *ae* is given as the face of the first riser, and the point *j* for the limit of

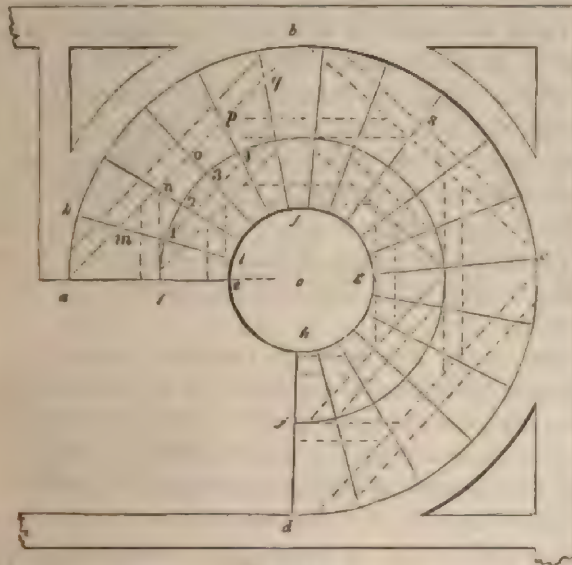


FIG. 133.

the last. Make *ei* equal to 18 inches, and upon *o*, with *oi* for radius, describe the arc *ij*; obtain the number of risers and of treads required to ascend to the floor at *j*, according to *Art. 252*, and divide the arc *ij* into the same number of equal parts as there are to be treads: through the points of division, 1, 2, 3, etc., and from the wall-string to the front-string, draw lines tending to the centre, *o*; then these lines will represent the face of each riser, and determine the form and width of the steps. Allow the necessary projection for the nosing beyond *ae*, which should be equal to the thick-

ness of the step, and then $a e l k$ will be the dimensions for each step. Make a pitch-board for the wall-string having $a k$ for the tread, and the rise as previously ascertained: with this lay out on a thickened plank the several risers and treads, as at *Fig. 128*, gauging from the upper edge of the string for the line at which to set the pitch-board.

Upon the back of the string, with a $1\frac{1}{4}$ -inch dado plane, make a succession of grooves $1\frac{1}{4}$ inches apart, and parallel with the lines for the risers on the face. These grooves must be cut along the whole length of the plank, and deep enough to admit of the plank's bending around the curve $a b c d$. Then construct a drum, or cylinder, of any common kind of stuff, made to fit a curve with a radius the thickness of the string less than $o a$; upon this the string must be bent, and the grooves filled with strips of wood, called *keys*, which must be very nicely fitted and glued in. After it has dried, a board thin enough to bend around on the outside of the string must be glued on from one end to the other, and nailed with clout-nails. In doing this, be careful not to nail into any place opposite to where a riser or step is to enter on the face.

After the string has been on the drum a sufficient time for the glue to set, take it off, and cut the mortices for the steps and risers on the face at the lines previously made; which may be done by boring with a centre-bit half through the string, and nicely chiselling to the line. The drum need not be made to extend over the whole space occupied by the stairs, but merely so far as requisite to receive one piece of the wall-string at a time; for it is evident that more than one will be required. The front-string may be constructed in the same manner; taking $e l$ instead of $a k$ for the tread of the pitch-board, dadoing it with a smaller dado plane, and bending it on a drum of the proper size.

261.—Winding Stairs: Shape and Position of Timbers.—

The dotted lines in *Fig. 133* show the position of the timbers as regards the plan; the shape of each is obtained as follows: In *Fig. 134*, the line $1 a$ is equal to a riser, less the thickness of the floor, and the lines $2 m$, $3 n$, $4 o$, $5 p$, and $6 q$ are each

equal to one riser. The line $a 2$ is equal to $a m$ in *Fig. 133*, the line $m 3$ to $m n$ in that figure, etc. In drawing this figure, commence at a , and make the lines $a 1$ and $a 2$ of the length above specified, and draw them at right angles to each other: draw $2 m$ at right angles to $a 2$, and $m 3$ at right angles to $m 2$, and make $2 m$ and $m 3$ of the lengths as above specified; and so proceed to the end. Then through the points 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, and 6 trace the line $1 b$; upon the points 1, 2, 3, 4, etc., with the size of the timber for radius, describe arcs as shown in the figure, and by these the lower line may be traced parallel to the upper. This will give the proper shape for the timber, $a b$, in *Fig. 133*; and that of the others may be found in a similar manner. In ordinary cases, the shape of one face of the timber will be sufficient, for a good workman can easily hew it to its proper level by that; but where great accuracy is desirable, a pattern for the other side may be found in the same man-



FIG. 134.

ner as for the first. In many cases, the timbers beneath circular stairs are put up after the stairs are erected, and without previously giving them the required form; the workman in shaping them being guided by the form marked out by the lower edge of the risers.

262.—Winding Stairs with Flyers: Grade of Front-String.—In stairs of this kind, if the winders are confined to the quarter circle, the transition from the winders to the flyers is too abrupt for convenience, as well as in appearance. To remove this unsightly bend in the rail and string, it is usual to take in among the winders one or more of the flyers, and thus graduate the width of the winders to that of the flyers. But this is not always done so as to secure the best results. By the method now to be shown, both rail and strings will be gracefully graded. In *Fig. 135*, $a b$ represents the line of the fascia along the floor of the upper story,

$b e c$ the face of the cylinder, and $c d$ the face of the front-string. Make $g b$ equal to $\frac{1}{4}$ of the diameter of the baluster, and parallel to $a b$, $b e c$, and $c d$ draw the centre-line of the rail, $f g$, $g h i$, and $i j$; make $g k$ and $g l$ each equal to half the width of the rail, and through k and l , parallel to the centre-line, draw lines for the convex and the concave sides of the rail; tangential to the convex side of the rail, and parallel to $k m$, draw $n o$; obtain the stretch-out, $q r$, of the semicircle, $k p m$, according to *Art.* 524; extend $a b$ to t , and $k m$ to s ; make $c s$ equal to the length of the steps, and $i u$ equal to 18 inches, and parallel to $m p$ describe the arcs $s t$ and $u v$; from t draw $t w$, tending to the centre of the cylinder; from 6, and on the line $6 u x$, run off the regular tread, as at 5, 4, 3, 2, 1, and v ; make $u x$ equal to half the arc $u v$, and make the point of division nearest to x , as r , the limit of the parallel steps, or flyers; make $r o$ equal to $m s$; from o draw $o a^2$ at right angles to $n o$, and equal to one riser; from a^2 draw $a^2 s$ parallel to $n o$, and equal to one tread; from s , through o , draw $s b^2$.

Then from w draw $w c^2$ at right angles to $n o$, and set up on the line $w c^2$ the same number of risers that the floor, a^1 , is above the first winder, B , as at 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, and 6; through 5 (on the arc $6 u$) draw $d^2 c^2$, tending to the centre of the cylinder; from c^2 draw $c^2 f^2$ at right angles to $n o$, and through 5 (on the line $w c^2$) draw $g^2 f^2$ parallel to $n o$; through 6 (on the line $w c^2$) and f^2 draw the line $h^2 b^2$; make $6 c^2$ equal to half a riser, and from c^2 and 6 draw $c^2 i^2$ and $6 j^2$ parallel to $n o$; make $h^2 i^2$ equal to $h^2 f^2$; from i^2 draw $i^2 k^2$ at right angles to $i^2 h^2$, and from f^2 draw $f^2 k^2$ at right angles to $f^2 h^2$; upon k^2 , with $k^2 f^2$ for radius, describe the arc $f^2 i^2$; make $b^2 l^2$ equal to $b^2 f^2$, and ease off the angle at b^2 by the curve $f^2 l^2$. In the figure, the curve is described from a centre, but as this might be impracticable in a full-size plan, the curve may be obtained accord-

* In the references a^2 , b^2 , etc., a new form is introduced for the first time. During the time taken to refer to the figure, the memory of the *form* of these may pass from the mind, while that of the *sound* alone remains; they may then be mistaken for $a 2$, $b 2$, etc. This can be avoided in reading by giving them a sound corresponding to their meaning, which is *a second*, *b second*, etc.

ing to *Art.* 521. Then from 1, 2, 3, and 4 (on the line $w c^2$) draw lines parallel to $n o$, meeting the curve in m^2 , n^2 , o^2 , and p^2 ; from these points draw lines at right angles to $n o$, and meeting it in x^2 , r^2 , s^2 , and t^2 ; from x^2 and r^2 draw

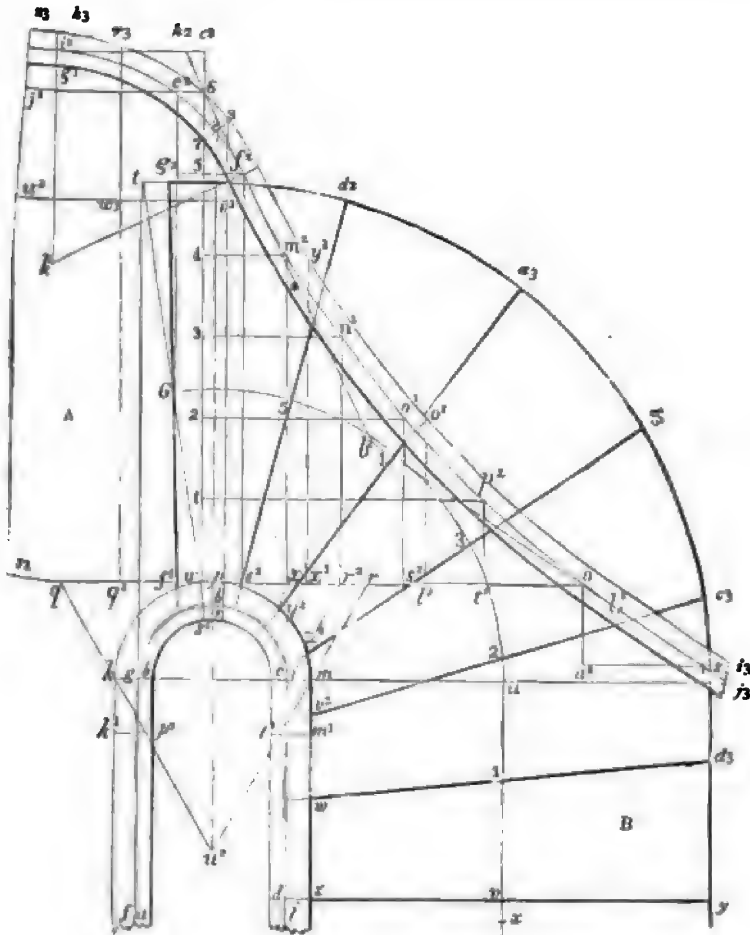


FIG. 135.

lines tending to n^2 , and meeting the convex side of the rail in y^2 and z^2 ; make $m v^2$ equal to $r s^2$, and $m w^2$ equal to $r t^2$; from y^2 , z^2 , v^2 , and w^2 , through 4, 3, 2, and 1, draw lines meeting the line of the wall-string in a^2 , b^2 , c^2 , and d^2 ; from

e^3 , where the centre-line of the rail crosses the line of the floor, draw $e^3 f^3$ at right angles to $n o$, and from f^3 , through 6, draw $f^3 g^3$; then the heavy lines $f^3 g^3$, $e^2 d^2$, $y^2 a^3$, $e^3 d^3$, $v^2 c^3$, $w^2 d^3$, and $z y$ will be the lines for the risers, which, being extended to the line of the front-string, $b e c d$, will give the dimensions of the winders and the grading of the front-string, as was required.

HAND-RAILING.

263.—Hand-Railing for Stairs.—A piece of hand-railing intended for the curved part of a stairs, when properly shaped, has a twisted form, deviating widely from plane surfaces. If laid upon a table it may easily be rocked to and fro, and can be made to coincide with the surface of the table in only three points. And yet it is usual to cut such twisted pieces from ordinary parallel-faced plank; and to cut the plank in form according to a *face-mould*, previously formed from given dimensions obtained from the plan of the stairs. The shape of the finished wreath differs so widely from the piece when first cut from the plank as to make it appear to a novice a matter of exceeding difficulty, if not an impossibility, to design a face-mould which shall cover accurately the form of the completed wreath. But he will find, as he progresses in a study of the subject, that it is not only a possibility, but that the science has been reduced to such a system that all necessary moulds may be obtained with great facility. To attain to this proficiency, however, requires close attention and continued persistent study, yet no more than this important science deserves. The young carpenter may entertain a less worthy ambition than that of desiring to be able to form from planks of black-walnut or mahogany those pieces of hand-railing which, when secured together with rail-screws, shall, on applying them over the stairs for which they are intended, be found to fit their places exactly, and to form graceful curves at the cylinders. That railing which requires to be placed upon the stairs before cutting the joints, or which requires the curves or butt-joints to be refitted after leaving the shop, is discredit-

able to the workman who makes it. No true mechanic will be content until he shall be proved able to form the curves and cut the joints in the shop, and so accurately that no alteration shall be needed when the railing is brought to its place on the stairs. The science of hand-railing requires some knowledge of *descriptive geometry*—that branch of geometry which has for its object the solution of problems involving three dimensions by means of intersecting planes. The method of obtaining the lengths and bevils of hip and valley rafters, etc., as in *Art.* 233, is a practical example of descriptive geometry. The lines and angles to be developed in problems of hand-railing are to be obtained by methods dependent upon like principles.

264.—Hand-Railing: Definitions; Planes and Solids.

—Preliminary to an exposition of the method for drawing the face-moulds of a hand-rail wreath, certain terms used in descriptive geometry need to be defined. Among the tools used by a carpenter are those well-known implements called *planes*, such as the jack-plane, fore-plane, smoothing-plane, etc. These enable the workman to straighten and smooth the faces of boards and plank, and to dress them *out of wind*, or so that their surfaces shall be true and unwinding. The term *plane*, as used in descriptive geometry, however, refers not to the implement aforesaid, but to the unwinding surface formed by these implements. A plane in geometry is defined to be such a surface that if any two points in it be joined by a straight line, this line will be in contact with the surface at every point in its length. With like results lines may be drawn in all possible directions upon such a surface. This can be done only upon an unwinding surface; therefore, a plane is an unwinding surface. Planes are understood to be unlimited in their extent, and to pass freely through other planes encountered.

The science of stair-building has to do with *prisms* and *cylinders*, examples of which are shown in *Figs.* 136, 137, and 138. A right prism (*Figs.* 136 and 137) is a solid standing upon a horizontal plane, and with faces each of which is a plane. Two of these faces—top and bottom—are horizontal

and are equal polygons, having their corresponding sides parallel.

The other faces of the prism are parallelograms, each of which is a vertical plane. When the vertical sides of a prism are of equal width, and in number increased indefinitely, the two polygonal faces of the prism do not differ essentially from circles, and thence the prism becomes a *cylinder*. Thus a right cylinder may be defined to be a prism, with circles for the horizontal faces (*Fig. 138*).



FIG. 136.



FIG. 137.



FIG. 138.

265.—Hand-Railing: Preliminary Considerations.—

If within the *well-hole*, or stair-opening, of a circular stairs a solid cylinder be constructed of such diameter as shall fill the well-hole completely, touching the hand-railing at all points, and then if the top of this cylinder be cut off on a line with the top of the hand-railing, the upper end of the cylinder would present a winding surface. But if, instead of cutting the cylinder as suggested, it be cut by several planes, each of which shall extend so as to cover only one of the wreaths of the railing, and be so inclined as to touch its top in three points, then the form of each of these planes, at its intersection with the vertical sides of the cylinder, would present the shape of the concave edge of the face-mould for that particular piece of hand-railing covered by the plane. Again, if a hollow cylinder be constructed so as to be in contact with the outer edge of the hand-railing throughout its length, and this cylinder be also cut by the aforesaid

planes, then each of said planes at its intersection with this latter cylinder would present the form of the convex edge of the said face-mould. A plank of proper thickness may now have marked upon it the shape of this face-mould, and the piece covered by the face-mould, when cut from the plank, will evidently contain a wreath like that over which the face-mould was formed, and which, by cutting away the surplus material above and below, may be gradually wrought into the graceful form of the required wreath.

By the considerations here presented some general idea may be had of the method pursued, by which the form of a face-mould for hand-railing is obtained. A little reflection upon what has been advanced will show that the problem to be solved is to pass a plane obliquely through a cylinder at certain given points, and find its shape at its intersection with the vertical surface of the cylinder. Peter Nicholson was the first to show how this might be done, and for the invention was rewarded, by a scientific society of London, with a gold medal. Other writers have suggested some slight improvements on Nicholson's methods. The method to which preference is now given, for its simplicity of working and certainty of results, is that which deals with the *tangents* to the curves, instead of with the curves themselves; so we do not pass a plane through a cylinder, but through a *prism* the vertical sides of which are tangent to the cylinder, and contain the controlling tangents of the face-moulds. The task, therefore, is confined principally to finding the tangents upon the face-mould. This accomplished, the rest is easy, as will be seen.

The method by which is found the form of the top of a prism cut by an oblique plane will now be shown.

266.—A Prism Cut by an Oblique Plane.—A prism is shown in perspective at *Fig. 139*, cut by an oblique plane. The points *abcd* are the angles of the horizontal base, and *abg*, *bef*, *cdef*, and *adeg* are the vertical sides; while *efbg* is the top, the form of which is to be shown.

267.—Form of Top of Prism.—In *Fig. 139* the form of the top of the prism is shown as it appears in perspective,

not in its *real* shape; this is now to be developed. In *Fig. 140*, let the square $abcd$ represent by scale the actual form

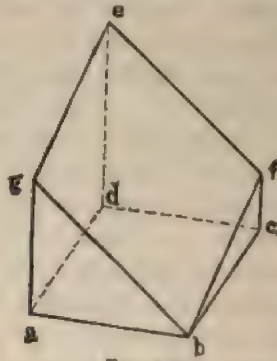


FIG. 139.

and size of the base, $abcd$, of the prism shown in *Fig. 139*. Make cc_1 and dd_1 respectively equal to the actual heights at

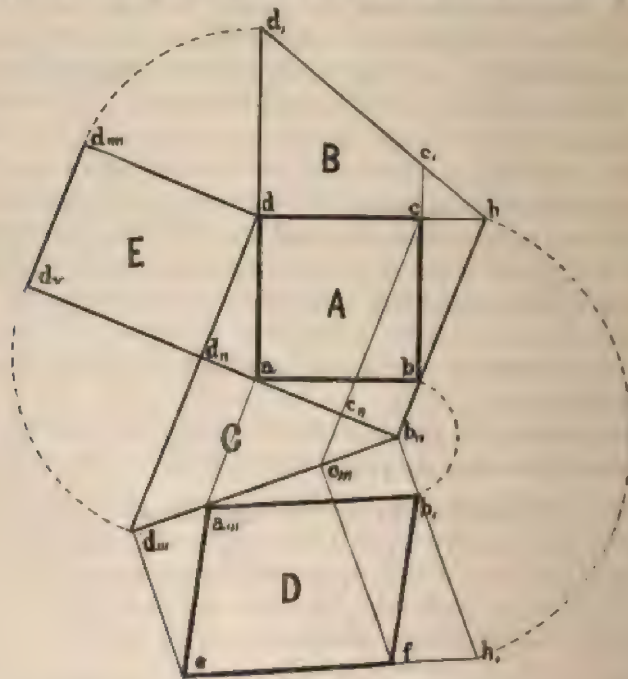


FIG. 140.

ef and dc , *Fig. 139*; the lines dd_1 and cc_1 being set up perpendicular to the line dc . Extend the lines dc and d_1c_1 until

they meet in h ; join b and h . Now this line bh is the intersection of two planes: one, the base, or horizontal plane upon which the prism stands; the other, the *cutting* plane, or the plane which, passing obliquely through the prism, cuts it so as to produce, by intersecting the vertical sides of the prism, the form $bfcg$, *Fig. 139*.

To show that bh is the line of intersection of these two planes, let the paper on which the triangle dhd_i is drawn (designated by the letter B) be lifted by the point d_i and revolved on the line dh until d_i stands vertically over d , and over c ; then B will be a plane standing on the line dh , and vertical to the base-plane A . The point h being in the line dh extended, and the line cd being in the base-plane A , therefore h is in the base-plane A . Now the line $d_i c$ represents the line cf of *Fig. 139*, and is therefore in the cutting plane; consequently the point h , being also in the line $d_i c$ extended, is also in the cutting plane. By reference to *Fig. 139* it will be seen that the point b is in both the cutting and the base planes; we must therefore conclude that, since the two points b and h are in both the cutting and base planes, a line joining these two points must be the intersection of these two planes. The determination of the line of intersection of the base and cutting planes is very important, as it is a controlling line; as will be seen in defining the lines upon which the form of the face-mould depends. Care should therefore be taken that the method of obtaining it be clearly understood.

It will be observed that the intersecting line bh , being in the horizontal plane A , is therefore a horizontal line. Also, as this horizontal line bh being a line in the cutting plane, therefore all lines upon the cutting plane which are drawn parallel to bh must also be horizontal lines. The importance of this will shortly be seen. Through a , perpendicular to bh , draw the line $b''d''$, and parallel with this line draw $d''d'''$; on d as centre describe the arc $d_i d'''$; draw $d'''d''$ parallel with dd'' , and extend the latter to d''' ; on d'' as centre describe the arc $d_i d'''$; join b'' and d''' . We now have three vertical planes which are to be brought into position around the base-plane A , as follows: Revolve B

upon dh , E upon dd_1 , and C upon b_1d_1 , each until it stands perpendicular to the plane A . Then the points d_1 and d_{11} will coincide and be vertically over d ; the points d_{11} and d_1 will coincide and stand vertically over d_1 ; and e_1 will cover e . These vertical planes will enclose a wedge-shaped figure, lying with one face, b_1d_1dh , horizontal and coincident with the base-plane A , and three vertical faces, $b_1d_1d_{11}$, dd_1d_{11} , and hdd_1 . By drawing the figure upon a piece of stout paper, cutting it out at the outer edges, making creases in the lines hd , dd_1 , d_1b_1 , then folding the three planes B , E , and C at right angles to A , the relation of the lines will be readily seen. Now, to obtain the form of the top or cover to the wedge-shaped figure, perpendicular to b_1d_1 , draw b_1h_1 and $d_{11}e_1$; on b_1 as centre describe the arc hh_1 ; make $d_{11}e_1$ equal to d_1d ; join e_1 and h_1 . Now the form of the top of the wedge-shaped figure is shown within the bounds $d_{11}b_1h_1e_1$. By revolving this plane D on the line b_1d_{11} until it is at a right angle to the plane C , and this while the latter is supposed to be vertical to the plane A , it will be perceived that this movement will place the plane D on top of the wedge-shaped figure, and in such a manner as that the point e_1 will coincide with $d_{11}d_1$, and the point h_1 will fall upon and be coincident with the point h , and the lines of the cover will coincide with the corresponding lines of the top edges of the sides of the figure; for example, the line b_1d_{11} is common to the top and the side C ; the line $d_{11}e_1$ equals d_1d , which equals d_1d_{11} ; therefore, the line $d_{11}e_1$ will coincide with d_1d_{11} of the side E ; the line e_1h_1 will coincide with d_1h of the side B ; and the line b_1h_1 will coincide with the line b_1h . Thus the figure D bounded by $b_1d_{11}e_1h_1$ will exactly fit as a cover to the wedge-shaped figure. Upon this cover we may now develop the form of the top of the prism.

Preliminary thereto, however, it will be observed, as was before remarked, that lines upon the cutting plane which are parallel to the intersecting line b_1h_1 are horizontal; and each, therefore, must be of the same length as the line in the base-plane A vertically beneath it. For example, the line $d_{11}e_1$ is a line in the cutting plane D , parallel with the line b_1h_1 in the same plane, and this line b_1h_1 will (when the

cutting plane D is revolved into its proper position) be coincident with the intersecting line $b''h$; therefore, the line $d''e$ is a line in the cutting plane D , drawn parallel with the intersecting line $b''h$. Now this line $d''e$, when in position, will be coincident with the line $d'''d''$, which lies vertically over the line $d''d$ of the base-plane A ; its length, therefore, is equal to that of the latter. In like manner it may be shown that the length of any line on the plane D parallel to $b''h$, is equal in length to the corresponding line upon the plane A vertically beneath it.

Therefore, to obtain the form of the top of the prism, we proceed as follows: Perpendicular to $b''d''$, draw ec''' , and aa''' ; perpendicular to $b''d'''$, draw $c'''f$ and equal to $c'''e$; on b'' as centre describe the arc bb'' ; join b, a''' , b, f , and $a'''e$. Now we have here in plane D the form of the top of the prism, as shown in the figure bounded by the lines $a'''b, f, e$. This will be readily seen when the plane D is revolved into position. Then the point a''' will be vertically over a ; the point e coincident with d, d''' and vertically over d ; the point f coincident with c , and vertically over c ; while b , will coincide with b of the base-plane A .

The figure $a'''b, f, e$, therefore, represents correctly both in form and size the top of the prism as it is shown in perspective at $b f e g$, *Fig. 139*. The line ef , *Fig. 140*, is equal to the line d, c , and so of the other lines bounding the edges of the figure.

The cutting plane $b f e g$, *Fig. 139*, may be taken to represent the surface of the plank from which the wreath of hand-railing is to be cut; the wreath curving around from b to e , as shown in *Fig. 141*, the lines bg and ge being tangent to the curve in the cutting plane; while ab and ad are tangents to the curve on the base plane, or plane of the cylinder. The location of the cutting plane, however, is usually not at the upper surface of the plank, but midway between the upper and under surfaces. The tangents in the plane are found to be more conveniently located here for determining the position of the butt-joints. For a moulded rail two curved lines, each with a pair of tangents, are required upon the cutting plane, one for the outer edge of the rail,

and the other for the inner edge; but for a round rail only one curve with its tangents is required, as that from b to o in *Fig. 141*, which is taken to represent the curved line running through the centre of the cross-section of the rail. **A:** an easy application of the principles regarding the prism just developed, an example will now be given.

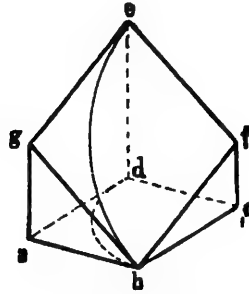


FIG. 141.

268.—Face-Mould for Hand-Railing of Platform Stairs.

—Let jk and lm , *Fig. 142*, represent the central or axial lines of the hand-rails of the two flights, one above, the other below the platform; and let the semicircle jdl be the central line of the rail around the cylinder at the platform, the risers at the platform being located at j and l . Vertically over the platform risers draw gg_1 ; make gr_1 equal to a riser of the lower flight, and r_1g_1 and ss_1 each equal to a riser of the upper flight. Draw g_1s and g_1k_1 horizontal and equal each to a tread of each flight respectively. Through r_1 draw k_1a_1 , and through g_1 draw s_1t_1 . Vertically over d draw a_1t_1 . Horizontally draw a_1a_1 and t_1t_1 .

It is usual to extend the wreath of the cylinder so as to include a part of the straight rail—such a part as convenience may require. Let the straight part here to be included extend from l to b on the plan. Vertically over b draw b_1c_1 , and horizontally draw b_1w_1 ; at any point on b_1w_1 locate w_1 , and make w_1w_1 equal to jl , and bisect it in w ; erect the perpendiculars w_1a_1 , w_1d_1 , and w_1v ; join t_1 and a_1 ; from d_1 horizontally draw d_1v_1 parallel with r_1k_1 , draw d_1c_1 . We now have the plan and elevations of the prism,

containing at its angles the tangents required for the wreath extending from b to d on the plan. The elevation F is a view of the cylinder looking in the direction dc .

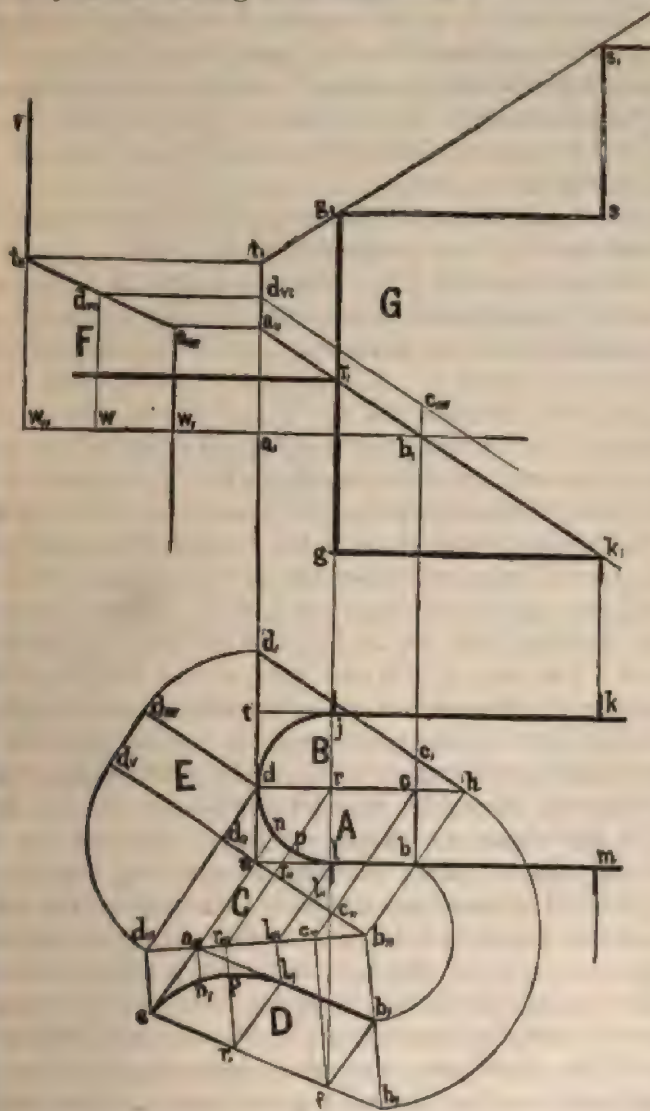


FIG. 142.

Comparing *Fig. 142* with *Fig. 141*; the line b, w_{11} is the face, upon a vertical plane, of the horizontal plane $abcd$

of *Fig. 141*, or is the ground-line from which the heights of the prism are to be taken.

The triangle a, b, a'' is represented in *Fig. 141* at abg , and the inclined line b, a'' is the tangent of the rail of the lower flight, and is represented in *Fig. 141* at bg ; while a, a'' is the tangent of the railing around the cylinder, and the half of it is represented in *Fig. 141* at ge . The height b, c'' is shown in *Fig. 141* at cf , while the height a, d'' , or a, d'' , is shown in *Fig. 141* at de .

The vertical planes BEC may now be constructed about the prism as in *Fig. 140*, proceeding thus: Make cc' equal to b, c'' , and dd' equal to a, d'' ; through c , draw d, h ; through b draw h, b'' ; perpendicular to h, b'' through a draw b, d'' ; from d parallel with b, d'' draw d, d'' ; on d as centre describe the arc d, d'' ; draw d, d'' , also d, d'' , parallel with h, b'' ; on d'' as centre describe the arc d, d'' ; join d'' to b'' . Parallel with b, h draw from each important point of the plan, as shown, an ordinate extending to the line b, d'' , and there across plane D draw ordinates perpendicular to b, d'' , and make them respectively equal to the corresponding ordinates of the plane A , measured from the line b, d'' ; join e to f , to b, a'' to c , and b to f ; also join l to r . Then a, b is the tangent standing over ab , and a, c is the tangent standing over ad . The line b, l is the part of the tangent which stands over bl , the portion of the wreath which is straight. The curve en, p, l , is the trace upon the cutting plane of the quarter circle dnp, l , traced through the points n, p , and as many more as desirable, found by ordinates as any other point in the plane A . Thus we have complete the line b, l, n, e , the central line of the wreath extending from b to d in the plan. This is the essential part of the face-mould, which is now to be drawn as follows: At *Fig. 143* repeat the parallelogram a, b, f, e of *Fig. 142*, and, with a radius equal to half the diameter of the rail, describe, from centres taken on the central line, the several circles shown; and tangent to these circles draw the outer and inner edges of the rail. The joint at b is to be drawn perpendicular to the tangent b, a'' , while that at e is to be perpendicular to the tangent e, a'' . This completes the face-mould for the wreath over

blind of the plan. If the pitch-board of the upper flight be the same as that of the lower flight, the face-mould at *Fig. 143* will, reversed, serve also for the wreath over the other half of the cylinder.

In using this face-mould, place it upon a plank equal in thickness to the diameter of the rail, mark its form upon the plank, and saw square through; then chamfer the wreath to an octagonal form, after which carefully remove the angles so as to produce the required round form. The joints, as well as the curved edges, are to be cut square through the plank.

Many more lines have been used in obtaining this face-mould than were really necessary for so simple a case, but no more than was deemed advisable in order properly to elucidate the general principles involved. A very simple method

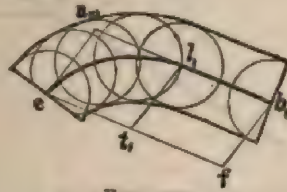


FIG. 143.

for face-moulds of platform stairs with small cylinders will now be shown.

269.—More Simple Method for Hand-Rail to Platform Stairs.—In *Fig. 144*, *jge* represents a pitch-board of the first flight, and *d* and *i* the pitch-board of the second flight of a platform stairs, the line *ef* being the top of the platform; and *abc* is the plan of a line passing through the centre of the rail around the cylinder. Through *i* and *d* draw *ik*, and through *j* and *e* draw *jk*; from *k* draw *kl* parallel to *fe*; from *b* draw *bm* parallel to *gd*; from *l* draw *lr* parallel to *kj*; from *n* draw *nt* at right angles to *jk*; on the line *ob* make *ot* equal to *nt*; join *c* and *t*; on the line *jc*, *Fig. 145*, make *ec* equal to *en* at *Fig. 144*; from *c* draw *ct* at right angles to *jc*, and make *ct* equal to *ct* at *Fig. 144*; through *t* draw *pl* parallel to *jc*, and make *tl* equal to *tl* at *Fig. 144*; join *l* and *c*, and complete the parallelogram *ecls*; find the points *o, o, o*, according to *Art. 551*; upon *c, o, o, o*, and *l*,

successively, with a radius equal to half the width of the rail, describe the circles shown in the figure; then a curve traced on both sides of these circles, and just touching them,

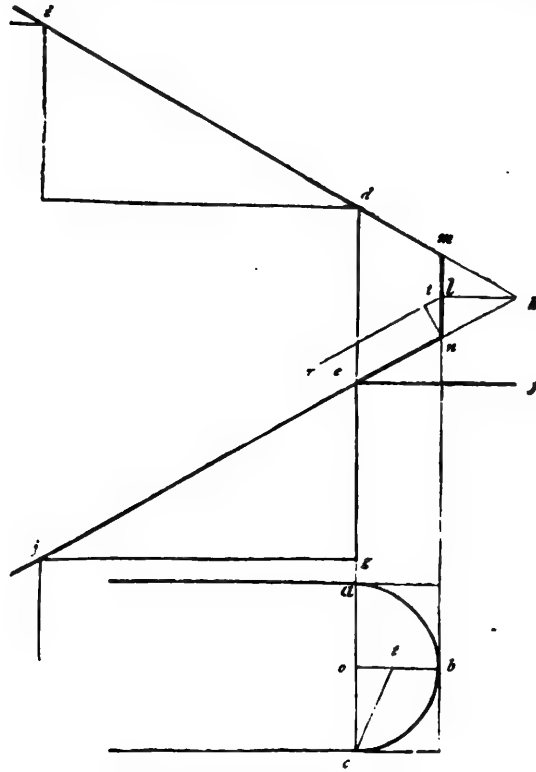


FIG. 144.

will give the proper form for the mould. The joint at *l* is drawn at right angles to *c l*.

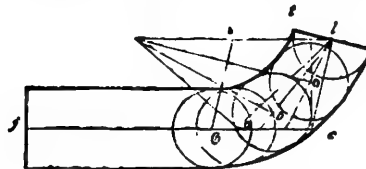


FIG. 145.

This simple method for obtaining the face-moulds for the hand-rail of a platform stairs appeared first in the early editions of this work. It was invented by a Mr. Kells, an

ninent stair-builder of this city. A comparison with *Fig. 12* will explain the use of the few lines introduced.' For a full comprehension of it reference is made to 'Fig. 146, in which the cylinder, for this purpose, is made rectangular

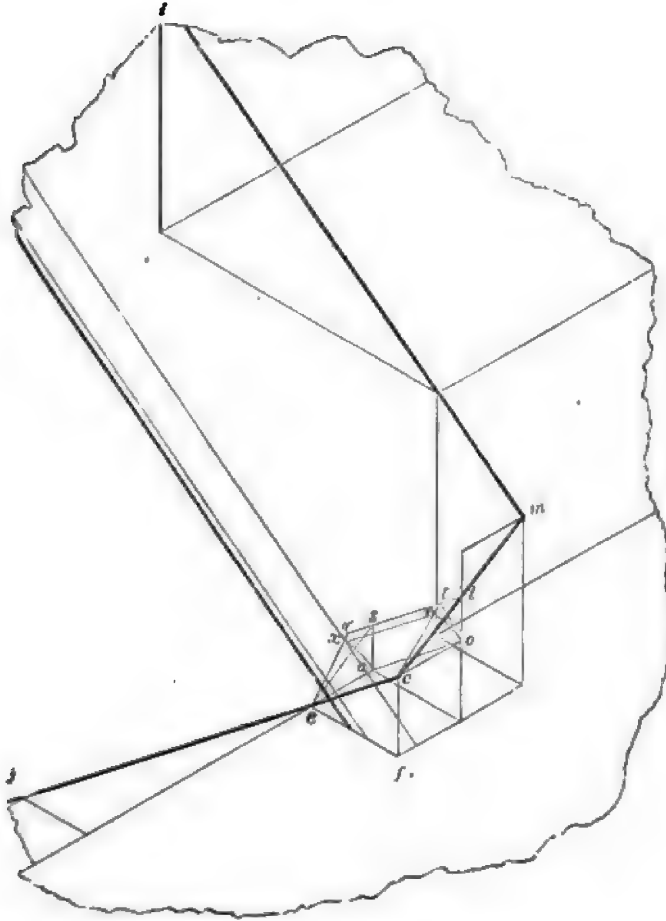


FIG. 146.

stead of circular. The figure gives a perspective view of part of the upper and of the lower flights, and a part of the platform about the cylinder. The heavy lines, im , mc , dcj , show the direction of the rail, and are supposed to pass through the centre of it. Assuming that the rake of

order to reach the point l , be lengthened the distance nt , and the right angle ect be made obtuse by the addition to it of the angle tcl . By reference to *Fig. 144*, it will be seen that this lengthening is performed by forming the right-angled triangle cot , corresponding to the triangle cot in *Fig. 146*. The line ct is then transferred to *Fig. 145*, and placed at right angles to ec ; this angle ect is then increased by adding the angle tcl , corresponding to tcl , *Fig. 146*. Thus the point l is reached, and the proper position and length of the lines ec and cl obtained. To obtain the face-mould for a rail over a cylindrical well-hole, the same process is necessary to be followed until the length and position of these lines are found; then, by forming the parallelogram $ecfs$, and describing a quarter of an ellipse therein, the proper form will be given.

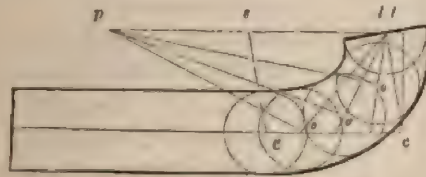


FIG. 148.

270.—Hand-Railing for a Larger Cylinder.—*Fig. 147* represents a plan and a vertical section of a line passing through the centre of the rail as before. From b draw bk parallel to cd ; extend the lines id and je until they meet kb in k and f ; from n draw nl parallel to ob ; through l draw lt parallel to jk ; from k draw kt at right angles to jk ; on the line ob make ot equal to kt . Make ec (*Fig. 148*) equal to ek at *Fig. 147*; from e draw et at right angles to ec , and equal to ct at *Fig. 147*; from t draw tp parallel to ce , and make tl equal to tl at *Fig. 147*; complete the parallelogram $ecfs$, and find the points o, o, o , as before; then describe the circles and complete the mould as in *Fig. 145*. The difference between this and Case 1 is that the line et , instead of being raised and thrown out, is lowered and drawn in. A method of planning a cylinder so as to avoid the necessity of canting the plank, either up or down, will now be shown.

parallel to hg ; bisect fn in l , and from l draw lt parallel to nj ; from n draw nt at right angles to jn ; on the line ob make ot equal to nt . Then, to obtain a mould for the twist going up the flight, proceed as at *Fig. 145*; making ec in that figure equal to en in *Fig. 150*, and the other lines of a length and position such as is indicated by the letters of reference in each figure. To obtain the mould for the level

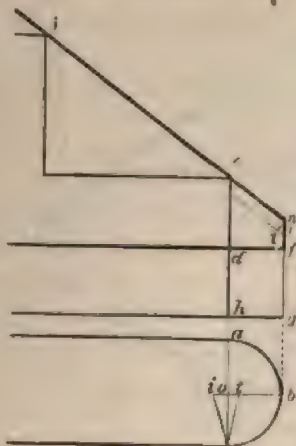


FIG. 150.

rail, extend bo (Fig. 150) to i ; make oi equal to fl , and join i and c ; make ci (Fig. 151) equal to ci at Fig. 150; through

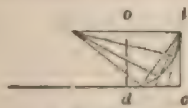


FIG. 151.

draw cd at right angles to ci ; make dc equal to df at Fig. 150, and complete the parallelogram $odci$; then proceed as in the previous cases to find the mould.

273.—Application of Face-Moulds to Plank.—All the moulds obtained by the preceding examples have been for round rails. For these, the mould may be applied to a plank of the same thickness as the rail is intended to be, and the

plank sawed square through, the joints being cut square from the face of the plank. A twist thus cut and truly rounded will hang in a proper position over the plan, and present a perfect and graceful wreath.

274.—Face-Moulds for Moulded Rails upon Platform Stairs.—In *Fig. 152*, *abc* is the plan of a line passing through

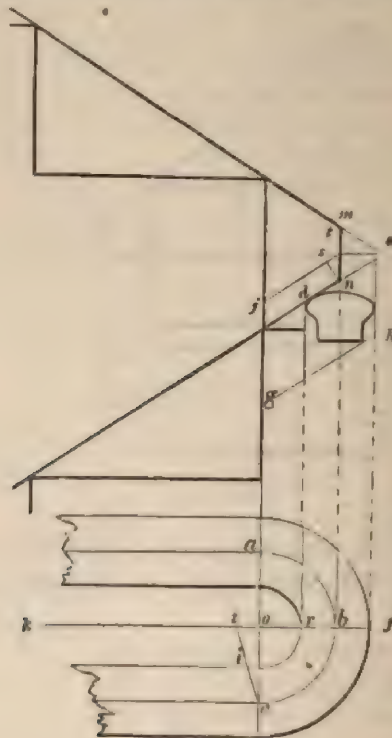


FIG. 152.

the centre of the rail around the cylinder, as before, and the lines above it are a vertical section of steps, risers, and platform, with the lines for the rail obtained as in *Fig. 144*. Set half the width of the rail from *b* to *f* and from *b* to *r*, and from *f* and *r* draw *fc* and *rd* parallel to *ca*. At *Fig. 153* the centre-lines of the rail *jc* and *cl* are obtained as in the previous examples, making *jc* equal *ju* of *Fig. 152*, *cl*

equal ct of *Fig. 152*, and tl equal sl of *Fig. 152*. Make ci and ck each equal to ci at *Fig. 152*, and draw the lines im and kg parallel to cf ; make le and lr equal to ne and nd at *Fig. 152*, and draw dn and eq parallel to lc ; also, through j draw og parallel to lc ; then, in the parallelograms $mnro$ and $goeq$, find the elliptic curves, dm and eg , according to *Art. 551*, and they will define the curves. The line dp , being drawn through l perpendicular to lc , defines the joint which is to be cut square through the plank.

275.—Application of Face-Moulds to Plank.—In *Fig. 152* make a drawing, from d to h , of the cross-section of the hand-rail, and tangent to the lower corner draw the line gh . The distance between the lines fe and gh is the thickness of the plank from which the rail is to be cut. Lay the face-mould upon the plank, mark its shape upon the plank, and

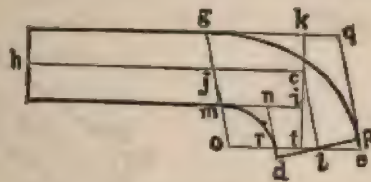


FIG. 153.

saw it *square* through. To proceed strictly in accordance with the requirements of the principles upon which the face-mould is formed, the cutting ought to be made vertically through the plank, the latter being in the position which it would occupy when upon the stairs. Formerly it was the custom to cut it thus, with its long raking lines. But, owing to the great labor and inconvenience of this method, efforts were made to secure an easier process. By investigation it was found that it was possible, without change in the face-mould, to cut the plank square through and still obtain the correct figure for the railing, and this method is the one now usually pursued. Not only is the labor of sawing much reduced by this change; but to the workman it is an entire relief, as he now, after marking the form of the wreath upon the plank, sends it to a steam saw-mill, and, at a small cost, has it

cut out with an upright scroll-saw. When thus cut out in the square, the upper surface of the plank is to be faced up true and unwinding, and the outer edge jointed straight and square from the face. Then a figure of the cross-section of the hand-railing is to be carefully drawn on the ends of the squared block as shown in *Figs. 154 and 155*, and which are regulated so as to be correctly in position, as follows. *First*, as to the end *h* of the straight part *hj*: In *Fig. 154*, let *abcd* be an end view of the squared block, of which *ae fd* is the shape of the end of the straight part. Let the point *g* be the centre of this end of the straight part; through *g* draw upon the end *ae fd* the line *jk*, so that the angle *bjk* shall be equal to the angle *k t c*, *Fig. 152*. This is the angle at which the plank is required to be canted, revolving it on



FIG. 154.

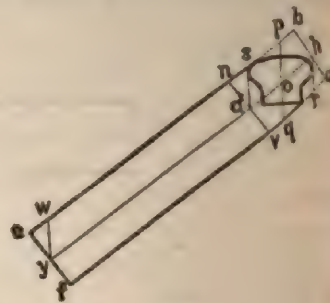


FIG. 155.

the axis of the straight part of the rail. Through *g* draw the line *nh* parallel with *ab*. Upon a thin sheet of metal (zinc is preferable) mark carefully the exact figure of the cross-section of the rail, drawing a vertical line through its centre, cut away the surplus metal, then, with this *template* as a pattern, mark upon the end *ae fd*, *Fig. 154*, the figure of the rail as shown, the vertical line upon the template being made to coincide with the line *jk*. From *n* and *h* draw the vertical lines *hm* and *ln* parallel with *jk*.

Now, as to the other end of the square block: Let *b c f e*, *Fig. 155*, represent the block, of which *b c v n* is the form of the end at the curved part, and *o* its centre. Through *o* draw *p q*, so that the angle *epq* shall be equal to the angle *j n b*, *Fig. 152*. Also, through *o* draw *dh* parallel with *eb*;

from d and h draw the vertical lines $h r$ and $d s$ parallel with $p q$. Place the template on $b c r n$, the end of the block, so that the vertical line through its centre shall coincide with $p q$; mark its form, then from y , at mid-thickness, draw $w y$ parallel with $p q$.

In applying the mould, let *Fig. 156* represent the upper face of the squared block, with the face-mould lying upon it. With the distance $a l$, *Fig. 154*, and by the edge $a x$, mark a gauge-line upon the upper face of the squared block. Set the outer edge of the face-mould to coincide with this gauge-line. Let the end of the face-mould be set at w , $e w$ being equal to $e w$, *Fig. 155*; then mark the block by the edge of the face-mould.

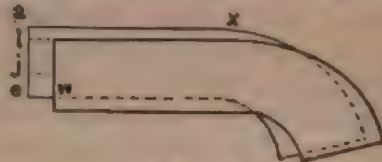


FIG. 156.

Now turn the block over and apply the face-mould to the underside, as in *Fig. 157*. With the distance $d w$, *Fig. 154*, and by the outer edge of the block, mark a gauge-line from m , *Fig. 157*. Set the inner edge of the face-mould to this gauge-line, and slide it endwise till the

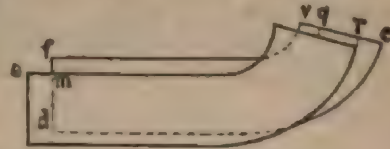


FIG. 157.

distance $e m$ shall equal $e w$, *Fig. 155*, then mark the block by the edges of the face-mould. The over wood may now be removed as indicated by the vertical lines at the sides of the cross-section marked on each end of the block (see also *Fig. 167*): the direction of the cutting at the curves must be vertical; the inner curve will require a round-faced plane. A comparison of the several figures referred to, with the directions given, together with a little reflection, will manifest the reasons for the method here given for applying the face-mould. Especially so when it is remembered that the face-mould was obtained not for the top of the rail, but for the rail at the mid-thickness of the block. So, therefore, in the application to the upper surface of the block, the face-mould is slid up the rake far enough to put the mould in position vertically over its true position at mid-thickness; and on the

contrary, in applying the face-mould to the underside of the plank, it is slid down until it is vertically beneath its true position at the mid-thickness of the block.

When the vertical faces are completed, the over wood above and below the wreath is to be removed. In doing this, the form at the ends, as given by the template, is a sufficient guide there. Between these the upper and under surfaces are to be warped from one end to the other, so as to form a graceful curve. With a little practice an intelligent mechanic will be able to work these surfaces with facility. The form of cross-section produced by this operation is that of a parallelogram, tangent to the top, bottom, and two sides of the rail; and which at and near the ends of the block is not quite full. The next operation is that of working the moulding at the sides and on top, first by rebates at the sides, then chamfering, and finally moulding the curves. Templates to fit the rail, one at the sides, another on top, are useful as checks against cutting away too much of the wood.

The joints are all to be worked square through the plank in the line drawn perpendicular to the tangent, as shown in *Fig. 153*.

276.—Hand-Railing for Circular Stairs.—Let it be required to furnish the face-moulds for a circular stairs similar to that shown in *Fig. 133*.

Preliminary to making the face-moulds it is requisite to make a plan, or horizontal projection of the stairs, and on this to locate the projections of the tangents and develop their vertical projections. For this purpose let *bcdefg*, *Fig. 158*, be the horizontal projection of the centre of the rail, and the lines numbered from 1 to 19 be the risers. At any point, *a*, on an extension of the line of the first riser locate the centre of the newel. On *a* as a centre describe the two circles; the larger one equal in diameter to the diameter of the newel-cap, the inner one distant from the outer one equal to half the width of the rail. Let the first joint in the hand-rail be located at *b*, at the fourth riser; through *b* draw *hk* tangent to the circle. Select a point, *h*, on this

tangent which shall be equally distant from *b* and from the inner circle of the newel-cap, measured on a line tending to *a*: join *b* and *a*, and from a point, *q*, on the line *bo* describe

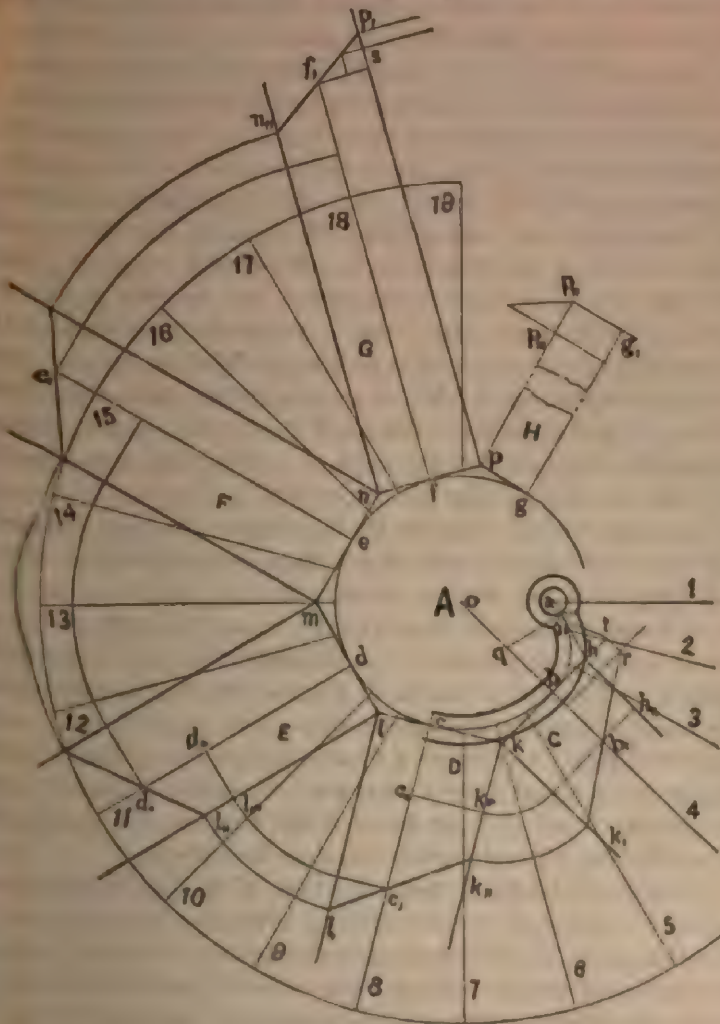


FIG. 158.

the curve from *b* to the point of the mitre of the newel-cap, the curve being tangent, at this point, to the line *ab*. Select positions for the other joints in the hand-rail as at *c*, *d*, *e*, and *f*.

Through these draw lines tangent to the circle.* Then the horizontal projection of the tangents will be the lines $h k$, $k i$, $l m$, $m n$, and $n p$. Now, if a vertical plane stand upon each of these lines, these planes would form a prism not quite complete standing upon the base-plane, A . Upon these vertical planes, C , D , E , F , G , and H , lines may be drawn which at each joint shall be tangent to the central line of the rail. These are the tangents now to be sought. Perpendicular to the tangents at b , c , d , etc., draw the lines $b b$, $c c$, $d d$, $e e$, $f f$, $g g$, and $h h$, $k k$, $k k$, $l l$, $l l$, etc. As b is at the fourth riser, and the height is counted from the top of the first riser, make $b b$ equal to three risers. (To avoid extending the drawing to inconvenient dimensions, the heights in it are made only half their actual size. As this is done uniformly throughout the drawing, this reduction will lead to no error in the desired results.) As c is on the eighth riser, therefore make $c c$ equal to seven risers, and so, in like manner, make the heights $d d$, $e e$, and $f f$, each of a height to correspond with the number of the riser at which it is placed, deducting one riser. These heights fix the location of each tangent at its point of contact with the central line of the rail. But each tangent is yet free to revolve on this point of contact, up or down, as may be required to bring the ends of each pair of tangents in contact; or, to make equal in height the edges of each pair of vertical planes, which coincide after they are revolved on their base-lines into a vertical position; as, for example: the edges $k k$, and $k k$, of the planes C and D must be of equal height; so, also, the edges $l l$, and $l l$, of the planes D and E must be of equal height. The method of establishing these heights will now be shown.

To this end let it be observed, that of the horizontal projection of any pair of intersecting tangents, their lengths, from the point of intersection to the points of contact with the circle, are equal; for example: of the two tangents $h k$ and $l k$, the distances from k , their point of intersection, to b and c , their points of contact with the circle, are equal; and so also $c l$ equals $d l$, $d m$ equals $e m$, etc. It will be observed

* A tangent is a line perpendicular to the radius, drawn from the point of contact.

that this equality is not dependent on b, c, d , etc., the points of contact, being disposed at equal distances; for, in this example, they are placed at unequal distances, some being at three treads apart and others at four; and yet while this unequal distribution of the points b, c, d , etc., has the effect of causing the point of contact, as b, c , or c , to divide each whole tangent into two unequal parts, it does not disturb the equality of the two adjoining parts of any two adjacent tangents. Now, because of this equality of the two adjoining parts of a pair of tangents, the height to be overcome in passing from one point of contact to the next must be divided equally between the two; each tangent takes half the distance. Therefore, for stairs of this kind, the arrangement being symmetrical, we have this rule by which to fix the height of the ends of any two adjoining tangents, namely: To the height at the lower point of contact add half the difference between the heights at the two points of contact: the sum will be the required height of the two adjoining ends of tangents. For example: the heights at b and c , two adjacent points of contact, are respectively three and seven risers; the difference is four risers; half this added to three, the height of the lower rise, gives five risers as the height of kk , kk , the height at the adjoining ends of the tangents kk and lk . Again, the heights at c and d are respectively seven and ten risers; their difference is three; half of which, or one and a half risers, added to seven, the height at the lower point of contact, makes nine and a half risers as the heights ll , ll , at the ends of the adjoining tangents kl and ml . In a similar manner are established the heights of the tangents at m, n , and p .

The rule for finding the heights of tangents as just given is applicable to circular stairs in which the treads are divided equally at the front-string, as in *Fig. 158*. Stairs of irregular plan require to have drawn an elevation of the rail, stretched out into a plane, upon which the tangents can be located. This will be shown farther on.

The locations of the joints c, d, e , in this example, were disposed at unequal distances merely to show the effect on the tangents as before noticed. In practice it is proper to

locate them at equal distances, for then one face-mould in such a stairs will serve for each wreath.

When the tangent at G has been drawn, the level tangent for the landing may be obtained in this manner: As the joint f is located at the eighteenth riser, one riser below the landing, draw a horizontal line at s , one riser above the point f , and at half a riser above this draw the level line at p ; then this line is the level tangent, and p its point of intersection with the raking tangent. Draw the vertical line p, p , and from p draw the tangent p, g , which is the horizontal projection of the tangent p, g , on plane H (which, to avoid undue enlargement of the drawing, is reduced in height), where p, p , equals p, p .

To obtain the horizontal tangent t, u at the newel, proceed thus: Fix the point r , in the tangent r, k , at a height above b, t equal to the elevation of the centre of the newel above the height of a short baluster—for example, from 5 to 8 inches—and draw a line through r parallel to b, t ; this is a horizontal line through the middle of the height of the newel-cap, and upon which and the rake the easement to the newel is formed. Perpendicular to b, t draw r, t , and join t and u ; then t, u is the horizontal tangent.

277.—Face-Moulds for Circular Stairs.—At *Fig. 159* the plan of the newel and the adjacent hand-rail are repeated, but upon an enlarged scale; and in which b, b_1 is the reduced height of the point b , or is equal to b, b_1 less t, r , *Fig. 158*, and the angle b, b_1, t equals the angle b, b_1, r of *Fig. 158*. In this plan the *actual* heights must now be taken. Join t and u ; then t, u is the level tangent, as also the line of intersection of the cutting plane C and the horizontal plane A . Perpendicular to t, u , at a point t or anywhere above it, draw u, b_1 . Parallel with t, u draw b, b_{100} ; make b, b_{100} equal to b, b_1 ; join b_{100} and u ; then the angle b, b_{100}, u , is the angle which the plank in position makes with a vertical line, or what is usually termed the *plumb-bevil*. Perpendicular to b_{100}, u draw u, u_1 and b_{100}, b_{100} ; make b_{100}, b_{100} equal to b, b_{100} ; make u, t equal to u, t , and u, u_1 to u, u ; join b_{100} and t ; then b_{100}, t is the tangent in the cutting plane, the horizontal projection of

is δt . The butt-joint at δ_{\dots} is drawn square to the line $\delta_{\dots} t$. Parallel to the intersecting line $t u$, draw lines across the plane A from as many points as desired, and extend them to the rake-line u, δ_{\dots} ; through the points of their intersection with this line, and perpendicular to the line $t u$, draw corresponding ordinates across the plane C . Make δ_{\dots} equal to d, d , and so in like manner, for all other points,

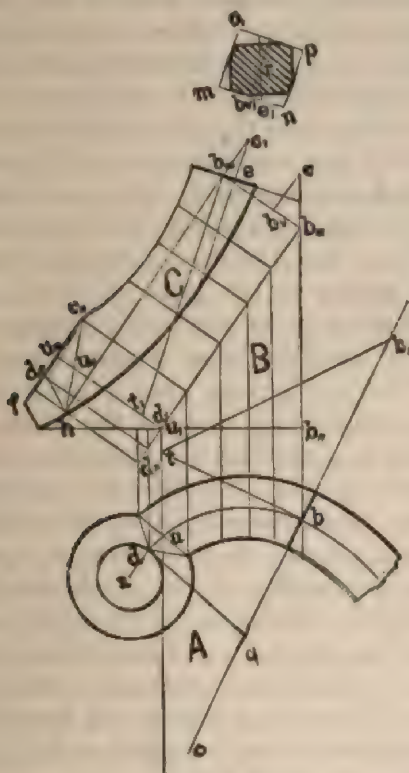


FIG. 159.

in the plane C for each point in the horizontal plane A and its corresponding point in the plane C ; in each case find the distance to the point in the plane A from the line u and applying it in the plane C from the rake-line u, b_{mn} , bend the curves to coincide with the points obtained, and draw the curve by the side of the strip. The point of the mitre is at d_{mn} , the mitre-joint is

shown at $h d_{...}$ and $d_{...} c_{...}$. The line $f c_{...}$ is drawn through $c_{...}$, the most projecting point of the mitre, and parallel to the rake-line $u, b_{...}$. Additional wood is left attached, extending from h to f ; this is an allowance to cover the mitre, which has to be cut vertically; the butt-joint at $b_{...}$ and the face at $f c_{...}$ are both to be cut square through the plank. The face $f c_{...}$, because it is parallel to the rake-line $u, b_{...}$, is a vertical face, as well as being perpendicular to the surface of the plank. On it, therefore, lines drawn according to the rake, or like the angle $u, b_{...} b_{...}$, will be vertical and will give the direction of the mitre-faces. We now have at C the face-mould for the railing over the plan from b to d in A . The mould thus found is that made upon a cutting plane C , passed through the plank, parallel to its face, but at the middle of its thickness. To put it in position, let the plane C be lifted by its upper edge $c_{...}$ and revolved upon the line $u, b_{...}$ until it stands perpendicular to the plane B . Now revolve both C and B (kept in this relative position during the revolution) upon the line $u, b_{...}$ until the plane B stands perpendicular to the plane A . Then every point upon plane C will be vertically over its corresponding point in the plane A . For example, the point $b_{...}$ will be vertically over b, t , over t , and so of all other points. To show the application of the face-mould to the plank, make $b_{...} b_{...}$ equal to half the thickness of the plank; parallel to $u, b_{...}$ draw $b_{...} c_{...}$, a line which represents the upper surface of the plank, for the line $u, b_{...}$ is at the middle of the thickness. Through $b_{...}$ and parallel with $b_{...} u_{...}$ draw the line $c_{...} b_{...}$ and extend it across the face-mould; make $b_{...} c_{...}$ equal to $b_{...} c_{...}$; through $c_{...}$ and parallel with $b_{...} t_{...}$ draw $c_{...} e$. Now, $m n o, p$ is an end view of the plank, showing the face view of the butt-joint at $b_{...}$. Through r , the centre, draw a line parallel with the sides. Then $b_{...}$ represents the point $b_{...}$; make $b_{...} e$ equal to $b_{...} c_{...}$; through r , the centre, draw e, r across the face of the joint; then e, r is a vertical line (see *Art.* 284), parallel and perpendicular to which the four sides of the squared-up wreath are to be drawn as shown. In applying the face-mould to the plank at first, for the purpose of marking by its edges the form of the face-mould, it will be observed that the face-mould is understood to have the position indicated by the line $u, b_{...}$ or at

the middle of the thickness of the plank. By this marking the rail-piece is cut square through the plank, and this cutting gives the correct form of the wreath, but *only* at the middle of the thickness of the plank. After it is cut square through the plank, then, to obtain the form at the upper and under surfaces, the face-mould is required to be moved endwise, but parallel with the auxiliary plane B , and so far as to bring the face-mould into a position vertically over or under its true position at the middle of the thickness of the plank. For example, the point b_{\dots} , if the mould were placed at the middle of the thickness of the plank, would be at the height of the point b_{\dots} ; but when upon the top of the plank, the point b_{\dots} would have to be at the height of the point c_{\dots} , therefore the mould must be so moved that the point b_{\dots} shall pass from b_{\dots} to c_{\dots} ; consequently $b_{\dots}c_{\dots}$ is the distance the mould must be moved, or, as it is technically termed, the sliding distance; hence $b_{\dots}c_{\dots}$, which is equal to $b_{\dots}c_{\dots}$, is the distance the mould is to be moved: up when on top, and down when underneath. This is more fully explained in *Art.* 284.

278.—Face-Moulds for Circular Stairs.—At *Fig.* 160 so much of the horizontal projection of the hand-railing of stairs in *Fig.* 158 is repeated as extends from the joint b to that at d , but at an enlarged scale. Upon the tangent ek set up the heights as given in *Fig.* 158; for example, make k_k equal to $k_{\dots}k_{\dots}$ of *Fig.* 158, and cc_{\dots} equal to $c_{\dots}c_{\dots}$ of *Fig.* 158. Join c_{\dots} and k_{\dots} and extend the line to meet ek , extended, in a . Join a and b ; then ab is the line of intersection of the cutting and horizontal planes; it is therefore a horizontal line, parallel to which the ordinates are to be drawn. Perpendicular to ab draw $b_{\dots}c_{\dots}$. Parallel to ab draw cc_{\dots} and k_k ; join b and c_{\dots} ; the angle $cc_{\dots}b_{\dots}$ is the plumb-bevil; perpendicular to $b_{\dots}c_{\dots}$ draw $b_{\dots}b_{\dots}$, $k_{\dots}k_{\dots}$, and $c_{\dots}c_{\dots}$; make $b_{\dots}b_{\dots}$ equal to $b_{\dots}b_{\dots}$, and so of the other two points, k_{\dots} and c_{\dots} , make them respectively equal to their horizontal projections upon the plane A . Join c_{\dots} and k_{\dots} ; also, k_{\dots} and b_{\dots} ; then $b_{\dots}k_{\dots}$ and $k_{\dots}c_{\dots}$ are the tangents. From c_{\dots} draw the line $c_{\dots}b_{\dots}$ parallel to $b_{\dots}c_{\dots}$; this is the slide-line. In this example, this

line passes through the point b_v ; the slide-line does always pass through the ends of the two tangents; it is required to pass through both, but it is indispensable that it be drawn parallel with the rake-line $b_v c_v$. The lines for joints at each end are drawn square to the tangent line. Points in the curves, as many as are desirable, are now to be found by ordinates as shown in the figure, and as before.

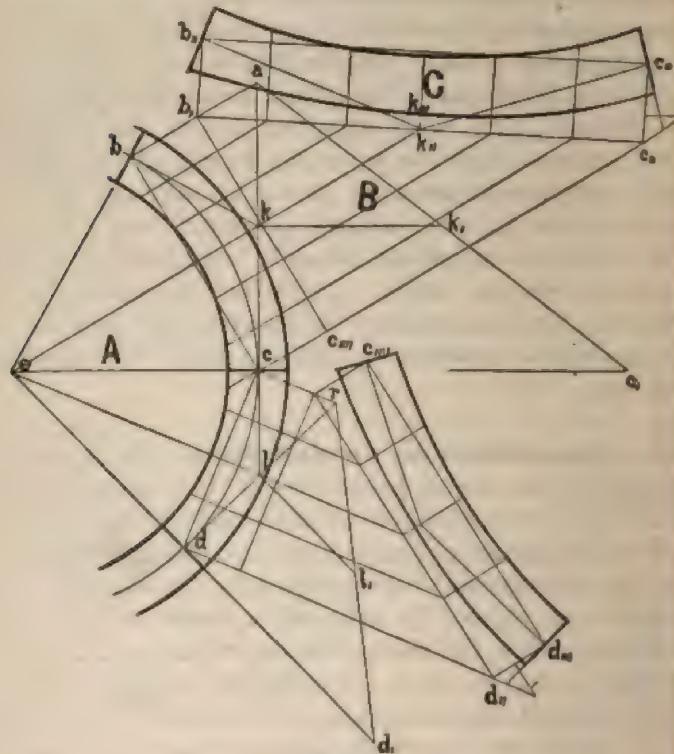


FIG. 160.

explained for the points in the tangents. The curves are made by drawing a line against the side of a flexible strip bent to coincide with the points.

The face-mould may be put in position by revolving planes C and B , as explained in the last article, for the face-mould at the newel.

The face-mould for the rail over the plan from c to d is

be obtained in a similar manner, taking the heights from *Fig. 158*. For example, make $d'd_1$ equal to d_1d_2 of *Fig. 158*, and ll_1 equal to l_1l_2 of *Fig. 158* (taking the heights at their actual measurement now). Join d_1 and l_1 , and extend the line to meet the line $d'l$ extended in r ; join r and c ; then rc is the line of intersection, and parallel to which the ordinates are to be drawn. The points in the face-mould may now be obtained as in the previous cases, giving attention first to the tangent and slide-line: drawing the lines for the joints perpendicular to the tangents.

It may be remarked here that the chord-line bc is parallel with the measuring line b_1c_1 , and that the line ok bisects the chord-line; so, also, the line ol bisects the chord-line cd . This coincidence is not accidental; it will always occur in a regular circular stairs.

Hence in cases of this kind it is not necessary to go through the preliminaries by which to obtain the intersecting line ab , but draw it at once parallel to the line ok , bisecting the chord bc and passing through the point of intersection of the two tangents. For the distance to slide the mould in its after-application, the lines are given at c_1 and d_1 , and their use is explained in the last article, and more fully in *Art. 284*.

279.—Face-Moulds for Circular Stairs, again.—At *Fig. 161* so much of the plan of the hand-railing of the stairs of *Fig. 158* is repeated as is required to show the rail from f to g , but drawn at a larger scale. To prepare for the face-moulds, perpendicular to pf draw pp_1 , and make pp_1 equal to p_1p_2 of *Fig. 158* (taking this height now at its actual measurement); join p_1 and f ; then fp_1 is the tangent of the vertical plane C , and f is a point in the cutting plane at its intersection with the base-plane A . Now since rs , the tangent over pg , is horizontal and is in the cutting plane, therefore from f draw fa parallel with rs or pg ; then fa is the line of intersection of the cutting and horizontal planes, and gives direction to the ordinates. Draw f_1p_1 perpendicular to fa ; make p_1p_1 equal to pp_1 ; join p_1 and f_1 ; then the angle pp_1f_1 is the plumb-bevil; perpendicular

to $p_{11}f$, draw f_1f_{11} and $p_{11}p_{111}$; make $p_{11}p_{111}$ equal to $p_{11}d$ equal to $p_{111}p$; join d and f_{11} ; then df_{11} and d_1 the tangents. Make $p_{11}e$ equal to half the thickness plank; draw $f_{11}a$ parallel with f_1p_{11} ; make $f_{11}a$ equal draw ac_1 parallel with the tangent $f_{11}d$; through c_1 perpendicular to $f_{11}d$, draw the line for the butt-joint; this is the distance required to determine the vertical line face of the joint at f_{11} , as shown at A . Through p_{11}

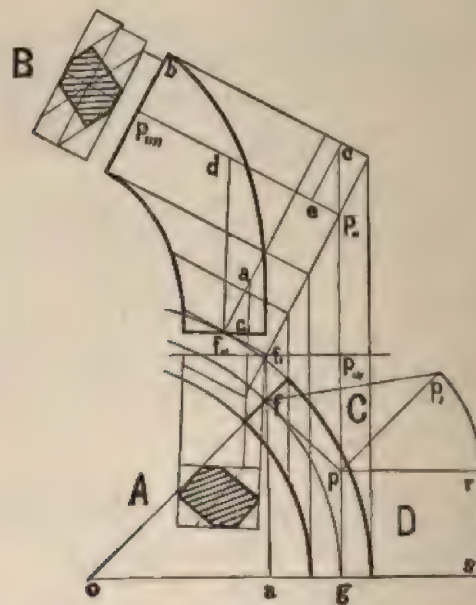


FIG. 161.

perpendicular to the tangent $p_{111}d$, draw the line for the joint; make $p_{111}b$ equal to ec ; then $p_{111}b$ is the distance required for determining the vertical line on the face of the joint at p_{111} , as shown at B (see Art. 284). The curves are obtained by drawing a line against the edges of a flexible rod bent to as many points as desirable, obtaining the ordinates of the plan at A and transferring them to the face-mould by the corresponding ordinates before explained.

cylinder; make $b_i i_i$ equal to $b i$; perpendicular to $f b$, draw $b_i b_{ii}$ and $i_i i_{ii}$. As there are four risers from e to h , make $a_i a_{ii}$ equal to four risers, and draw $a_{ii} i_{ii}$ parallel with $f a$, through i_{ii} draw $a_i b_{ii}$; by intersecting lines, or in any convenient manner, ease off to any extent the angle $f a_i i_{ii}$. Through j , a point in this curve (chosen so as to be perpendicularly over m , a point between a and f , nearer to a), draw $k l$, a tangent to the curve. Perpendicularly to this tangent, through j , draw the line for a butt-joint; also through b_{ii} and perpendicularly to $a_i b_{ii}$, draw the line for the joint at the centre of the half circle. On the line $a a_{ii}$, set up points of division for the riser heights, and through these points of division draw horizontal lines to the line $b_{ii} j f$.

From these points of contact drop perpendiculars to the line $f a b_i$, and transfer such of them as require it to the circle $a i$, by drawing lines tending to g . Through these points of intersection with the central line of the rail, and through the points of division on the tread-line, draw the riser-lines $n e$, $a n$, etc. At half a riser above the floor-line, on top of the upper riser draw a horizontal line, and ease off the angle as shown; the intersection of the floor-line with this curve gives the position of the top riser at the centre of the rail. This completes the plan of the steps and the elevation of the rail—requisite preliminaries for the face-moulds. The graduation of the treads from flyers to winders obviates an abrupt angle at their junction in the rail and front-string. The objection to the graduation, that it interferes with the regularity of stepping at the tread-line, is not realized in practice.

281.—Face-Moulds for Winding Stairs.—At *Fig. 163* so much of the plan at *Fig. 162* is repeated as is required for the face-moulds, but for perspicuity at twice the size. The horizontal projection of the tangents for the first wreath are $a d$ and $d b$ drawn at right angles to each other, tangent to the circle at a and b . Let those tangents be extended beyond d ; through m , the lower end of the wreath, draw $m d$, making an angle with $m d$ equal to that in *Fig. 162*, between the

line af and a,f ; or let the angle dmd , equal $a fa$, of *Fig.* 162. Make dd_1 equal to dd . Make bb_1 equal to b_1, b_1 of *Fig.* 162; join d_1 and b_1 and extend the line to e_1 ; make $b_1 e_1$ equal to b_1, b_1 of *Fig.* 162, and draw $b_1 e_1$ parallel with

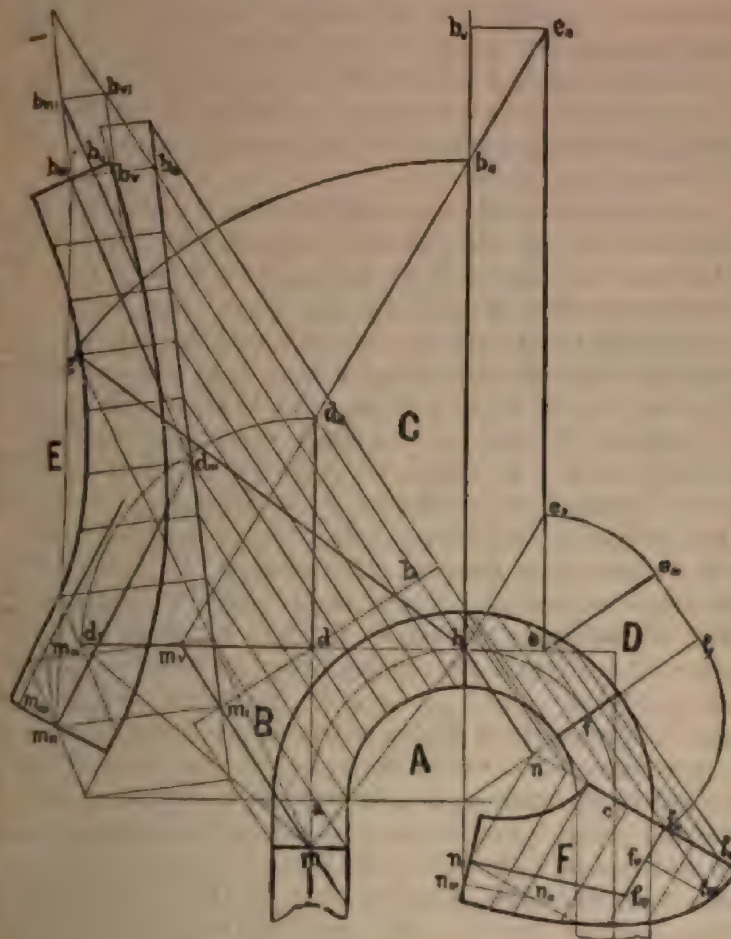


FIG. 163.

de. From e , draw $e_e e$ parallel with $b_e b$; through e and f draw ef tangent to the circle at f ; then be and ef are the horizontal projections of the tangents for the upper wreath. Then if the plane B be revolved on ad , the plane C on de .

and the plane D on ef until they each stand vertical to the plane A , the lines md , $d'e$, and $e'f$, will constitute the tangents of the two wreaths in position. This arrangement locates the upper joint of the upper wreath at f , leaving f , a part of the circle, to be worked as a part of the long level rail on the landing. As the tangent over ef is level, the raking part of the rail will all be included in the wreath $b'f$, so that at the joint f the rail terminates on the level.

The portion fc , therefore, is a level rail requiring no canting, and it requires no other face-mould than that afforded by the plan from f to c .

For the face-mould for the rail over mab , let the line $e'd$ be extended to m_e , a point in the base-line $b'm$; then m_e is a point in the base-plane A , as well as in the cutting plane E ; therefore the line $m_e m$ is the intersecting line parallel to which all the ordinates on plane A are to be drawn. Perpendicular to this intersecting line $m_e m$, at any convenient place draw $m_b b$; make $b'b_{...}$ parallel to $m_e m$ and equal to $b'b$; connect $b_{...}$ with m_b , a point at the intersection of the lines $m_e m$ and $b'm$; then the angle $b'b_{...}m_b$ is the plumb-bevil. Through d , parallel to $m_e m$, draw $d'd_{...}$; from the three points m_b , $d_{...}$, and $b_{...}$ draw lines perpendicular to $m_b b_{...}$; make $m_b m_{...}$ equal to $m_b m$; make $b_{...} b_{...}$ equal to $b'b$. Since the measuring base-line $m_b b$ passes through d , the point of the angle formed by the two tangents, $d_{...}$ is the point of this angle in the cutting plane E ; therefore join $m_{...}$ and $d_{...}$, also $d_{...}$ and $b_{...}$; then $b_{...} d_{...}$ and $d_{...} m_{...}$ are the two tangents at right angles to which the joints at $m_{...}$ and $b_{...}$ are drawn. The curves of the face-mould are now found as usual, by transferring the distances by ordinates, as shown, from the plane A to the plane E , making the distance from the rake-line $m_b b_{...}$ to each point in plane E equal to the distance from the corresponding point in the plane A to the measuring base-line $m_b b$. Now, to obtain the sliding distance and the vertical line upon the butt-joints, make $b_{...} b_{...}$ equal to half the thickness of the plank; parallel with $m_b b_{...}$ draw $b_v b_{v1}$; also, $b_{...} b_{v11}$ and $m_{...} m_{...}$; make $b_{...} b_{v11}$ and $m_{...} m_{...}$ each equal to $b_v b_{v1}$; through b_{v11} and $m_{...}$, and parallel to the respective tangents, draw $b_{v11} b_x$ and $m_{...} m_{...}$; then b_x and

m_{iii} are the points from which, through the centre of the butt-joints, a line is to be drawn which will be vertical when the wreath is in position. (See *Art.* 284.)

For the face-mould for the upper quarter, through b , *Fig.* 163, draw $b e$, parallel with $d_{ii} e_{ii}$; make $e e_{iii}$ equal to $e e_i$; draw $e_{iii} f_i$ parallel with $e f$. Now, since $e_{iii} f_i$ is a horizontal line and is in the cutting plane F , therefore, parallel with $e_{iii} f_i$ and through b_i , draw $b n$; then $b n$ is the required intersecting line. Extend $e f$ to f_{ii} ; make $f f_{ii}$ equal to $f f_i$; join f_{ii} and n ; then the angle $f f_{ii} n$ is the plumb-bevil. Perpendicular to $n f_{ii}$ draw $f_{ii} f_{iii}$ and $n n_i$, and make these lines respectively equal to $e f$ and $b n$; join f_{ii} and f_{iii} ; also f_{iii} and n_i ; then $f_{ii} f_{iii}$ and $f_{iii} n_i$ are the required tangents. The butt-joints at f_i and n_i are drawn perpendicular to their respective tangents. To get the slide distance and vertical lines on the butt-joints, make $f_{ii} f_v$ equal to half the thickness of the plank; parallel with $n f_{iii}$ through f_v draw $f_v f_{iiii}$; also, through n , draw $n_i n_{ii}$; make $n_i n_{ii}$ equal to $f_v f_{iiii}$; through n_{ii} , parallel with $n_i f_{iiii}$, draw $n_{ii} n_{iii}$; then n_{iii} is the point through which a line is to be drawn to the centre of the butt-joint, and this line will be in the vertical plane containing the tangent. So, also, parallel with the tangent $f_{ii} f_{iii}$ and through f_{iiii} , draw $f_{iiii} f_{vi}$; then f_{vi} is the point through which a line is to be drawn to the centre of the butt-joint (see *Art.* 284). The curve is now to be obtained by the ordinates, as before explained.

282.—Face-Moulds for Winding Stairs, again.—In the last article, in getting the face-moulds for a winding stairs, the two wreaths are found to be very dissimilar in length. This dissimilarity may be obviated by a judicious location of the butt-joint connecting the two wreaths, as shown in *Fig.* 164. Instead of locating the joint precisely at the middle of the half circle, as was done in *Fig.* 163, place it farther down, say at n , which is at n in *Fig.* 162, two risers down from the top, or at any other point at will. Then through n in the plan draw $m s$ tangent to the circle at n ; and perpendicular to this tangent draw $n n_{ii}$ and $d d_{ii}$; make $n n_{ii}$ equal to $n_i n$ of *Fig.* 162; from d erect $d d_i$ perpendicular to $m d$;

by the ordinates to the cutting plane md and n the three points of the plan at the ends of the tangents, as before described, as also such points in the curve as may be required to mark the curve upon the face-mould, all as shown in previous examples. For the face-mould of the upper wreath, make $n_{...}n_{...}$ equal to $nn_{...}$ of *Fig. 162*. From $n_{...}$ draw $n_{...}s_{...}$ parallel with $m_{...}s_{...}$; extend the line $d_{...}n_{...}$ to intersect $n_{...}s_{...}$ in $s_{...}$; parallel with $n_{...}n_{...}$ draw $s_{...}r_{...}$; from $s_{...}$ draw $s_{...}r_{...}$ tangent to the circle at r ($s_{...}n_{...}$ equals $s_{...}r_{...}$); through r , tending to the centre of the cylinder, draw the butt-joint; then $r_{...}s_{...}$ and $s_{...}n_{...}$ are the horizontal projections of the tangents for the upper wreath-piece, the tangent $s_{...}r_{...}$ being level and, consequently, parallel to the intersecting line drawn through n . Perpendicular to $r_{...}s_{...}$ draw $r_{...}p_{...}$; parallel with $n_{...}s_{...}$ draw $n_{...}s_{...}$; make $r_{...}r_{...}$ equal to $s_{...}s_{...}$; join $r_{...}$ and $p_{...}$. From this line and the measuring base-line $r_{...}p_{...}$, the points for the tangents are first to be obtained and then the points in the curve, all as before described. The part of the circle from r to c is on the level, as before shown, and may be worked upon the end of the long level rail, its form being just what is shown in the plan from c to r .

203.—Face-Moulds: Test of Accuracy.—The methods which have been advanced for obtaining face-moulds are based upon principles of such undoubted correctness that there can be no question as to the results, when the methods given are thoroughly followed. And yet, notwithstanding the correctness of the system and its thorough comprehension by the stair-builder, he will fail of success unless he exercises the greatest care in getting his dimensions, his perpendiculars, and his angles. The slightest deviation in a perpendicular terminated by an oblique line will result in a magnified error at the oblique line. To secure the greatest possible degree of accuracy, care must be exercised in the choice of the instruments by which the drawings are to be made: care to know that a straight-edge is what it purports to be; that a square, or right-angle, is truly a right-angle; that the compasses or dividers be well made, the joint perfect, and the ends neatly ground to a point. Then let the drawing-board be carefully planed to a true surface; and,

if possible, let the drawing, full size, be made upon large, stout roll-paper rather than upon the drawing-board itself, as then the points for the face-mould may be pricked through upon the board out of which the face-mould is to be cut, and thus a correct transfer be made. For long straight lines it is better to use a fine chalk-line than the edge of a wooden straight-edge. The line is more trustworthy. Perpendiculars, especially when long, are better obtained by measurement or by calculation (*Art.* 503) than by a square. The pencil used should be of fine quality—rather hard, in order that its point may be kept fine. With these precautions in regard to the instruments used, and with due care in the manipulations, the face-moulds may be correctly drawn, accurate in size and form. As a test of the accuracy of the work, it will be well to observe in regard to the tangents, that the length of a tangent, as found upon the face-mould, should always equal its length as shown upon the vertical plane. For example, in *Fig.* 160, the tangent $k_a c_m$ on the face-mould should be equal to $k_a c_v$, the tangent on the vertical plane *B*; and in cases like this, where the stairs are quite regular, with equal treads at the front-string, the two tangents of a face-mould are equal to each other, or $k_a c_m$ equals $k_a b_m$; and in this case, the line $b_a c_m$ should equal the rake-line $b_a c_v$.

Again, as another example, in *Fig.* 161, $d f_a$, the tangent upon the face-mould, should be equal to $f p_a$, the tangent of the vertical plane *C*; while $d p_m$, the other tangent on the face-mould, should be equal to $r s$, the tangent of the vertical plane *D*. But the more important test is in the length of the chord-line joining the ends of the two tangents; as, for example, the chord $m_a b_m$ of *Fig.* 163, the horizontal projection of which is the chord $m b$ in plane *A*. Perpendicular to $m b$ draw $b g$; make $b g$ equal to $b b_m$, and join g and m ; then $m_a b_m$, the chord of the face-mould, should be equal to $m g$. After fully testing the accuracy of the drawing for the face-mould, choose a well-seasoned thin piece of white-wood, or any other wood not liable to split, and plane it to an even thickness throughout; mark upon it the curves, joints, tangents, and slide-line, and cut the edges true to the curve-

lines and joints square through the board; then square over such marks as are required to draw each tangent and the slide-line also upon the reverse side of the board. This completes the face-mould.

284.—Application of the Face-Mould.—In order that a more comprehensive idea of the lines given for applying a face-mould may be had, let *A*, *Fig. 165*, represent one end of a wreath-piece as it appears when first cut from a plank, and when held up in the position it is to occupy at completion over the stairs. Also, let *B* represent the corresponding face-mould, laid upon the wreath-piece *A* in the position which it should have after sliding. And, for the purpose of a clearer illustration, let it be supposed that the two pieces, *A* and *B*, are transparent. Then let *a, a b d c, e*, represent a solid of wedge form, having a triangular level base, *a b d*, upon the three lines of which stand these three vertical planes, namely: on the line *a b* the plane *a, a b c*, upon the line *a d* the plane *a, a d e*, and on the line *d b* the plane *b d e, e*; the top of the solid is an inclined plane, *a, c, e*, and the vertical line *a, a* is the edge of the wedge. Now, it will be observed that the point *a* in the base of the solid is identical with *a*, the centre of the butt-joint, and the point *a*, (at the intersection of two vertical planes and the inclined plane of the solid) is vertically over *a*, and is identical with *a*, a point in the upper surface of the plank. Also, the inclined plane *e, c, a*, which forms the top of the solid, coincides with the upper surface of the plank *A*, from which the wreath-piece has been squared; and the line *c, a*, (at the angle formed by the inclined plane *e, c, a*, and the vertical plane *a, a b c*,) coincides with *f g*, the slide-line drawn upon the top of the plank; also, the line *e, a*, (at the angle formed by the inclined plane *e, c, a*, and the vertical plane *a, a d e*,) coincides with *a, k*, the tangent line upon the underside of the face-mould after it has been slid to its new position, vertically over its true position at the middle of the thickness of the plank. From *a* the line *a c* is drawn parallel with *a, c*; so, also, the line *a e* is drawn parallel with *a, e*; consequently the line *e c* is parallel with *e, c*; and the plane *e c a* is parallel

with the plane e, c, a , and coincides with a plane passing through the middle of the thickness of the plank, and, consequently, is the cutting plane referred to in previous articles, upon which the lines are drawn which give shape to the

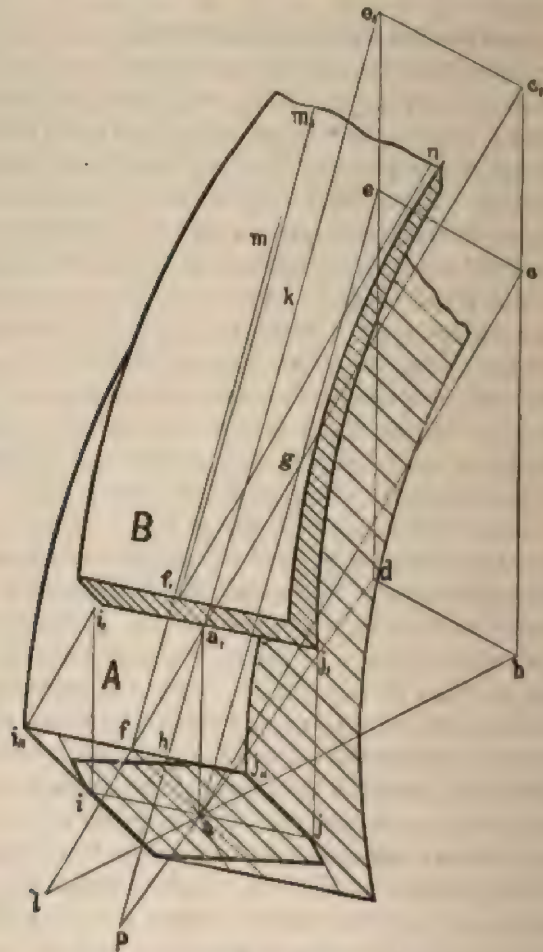


FIG. 165.

face-mould. When the face-mould is first laid upon the plank the line i, j , coincides with i_1, j_1 , and when in that position, its form marked upon the plank is the form by which the plank is sawed square through; but this gives the form of

the wreath, not as it is at the surface of the plank, but as it is at the middle of the thickness of the plank, or upon the plane aec ; so that, for example, the line i_1j_1 represents the line ij drawn through a , the centre of the butt-joint; and when the mould B is slid to the position shown in the figure, the line i_1j_1 comes into a position vertically over ij ; hence the three lines i_1i , a_1a , and j_1j are each vertical and in a vertical plane, i_1i, j_1j . By these considerations it will be seen that the face-mould B , located as shown in the figure, is in its true position for the second marking, by which the additional cutting is now to be performed vertically. This being established, it will now be shown how to get upon the butt-joint a line in the vertical plane containing the tangent. If the top and bottom lines of the vertical plane a_1a, b_1c_1 , be extended, they will meet in the point l , and will extend the plane into a triangle lb_1c_1 , cutting the upper edge of the butt-joint in f , the end of the tangent, and the point in which the point a , of the underside of the face-mould was located when the mould was first applied to the plank. The line fa on the butt-joint is perpendicular to ij or i_1j_1 . Again, if the top and bottom lines of the plane a_1a, d_1e_1 , be extended, they will meet in p , and will extend the plane into the triangle pd_1e_1 , cutting the edge of the butt-joint in h , a point from which, if a line be drawn upon the butt-joint to a , its centre, this line will be in the vertical plane pd_1e_1 , which plane contains the tangent perpendicular to which the butt-joint is drawn; consequently lines upon the butt-joint parallel to ha will each be in a vertical plane parallel to the vertical tangent plane, and lines drawn upon the butt-joint perpendicular to these lines will be horizontal lines; hence the line ha is the required line by which to square the wreath at the butt-joint. Now, it will be observed that the triangle af_1a_1 is like that given in the various figures for obtaining face-moulds, to regulate the sliding of the face-mould and the squaring at the butt-joint. For example, in *Fig.* 163, the right-angled triangle b_1, b_1, b_1 is the one referred to. This triangle is in a vertical plane parallel to one containing the slide-line; its longer side is a vertical line; one of the sides containing the right angle is equal to half the thickness

of the plank, while the other, drawn parallel to the face of the plank, is the distance the face-mould is required to slide. Precisely like this, the triangle $a f a$, of *Fig. 165* is in the vertical plane $l b c$, containing $f g$, the slide-line; its longer side, a, a , is a vertical line; $f a$, one of the sides containing the right angle, is equal to half the thickness of the plank, while the other side, drawn coincident with the surface of

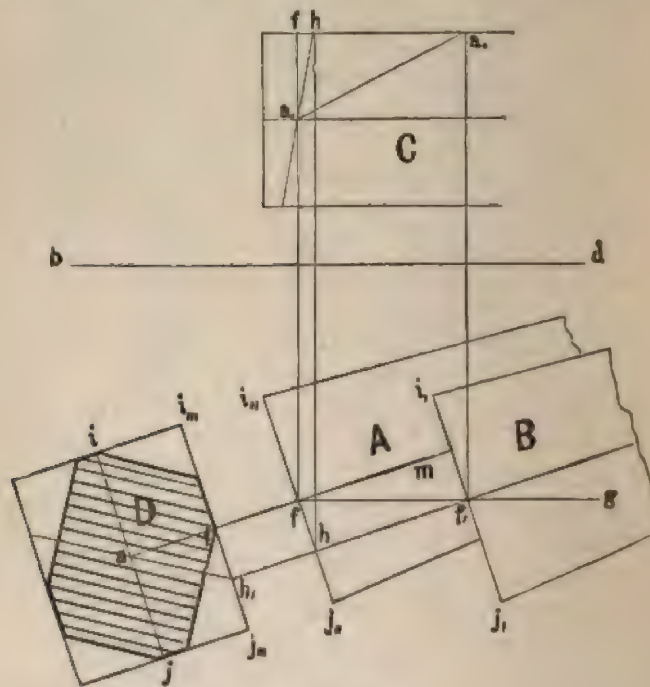


FIG. 166.

the plank, is the distance to slide the face-mould. Therefore the triangle $a, f a$ of *Fig. 165* gives the required lines by which to regulate the application of the face-moulds. The relative position of the more important of these lines is geometrically shown in *Fig. 166*, in which *A* and *B* are upon the horizontal plane of the paper, *C* is in a vertical plane standing on the ground-line $b d$, and *D* is a plan of the butt-joint, revolved upon the line i, j , into the horizontal plane, and

then perpendicularly removed to the distance ff . The lettering corresponds with that in *Fig. 165*. The shaded part of *D* shows the end of the squared wreath. When the blocked piece has been marked by the face-mould in its second application, its edges are to be trimmed vertically as shown in *Fig. 167*, after which the top and bottom surfaces of the wreath are to be formed from the shape marked on the butt-joints.

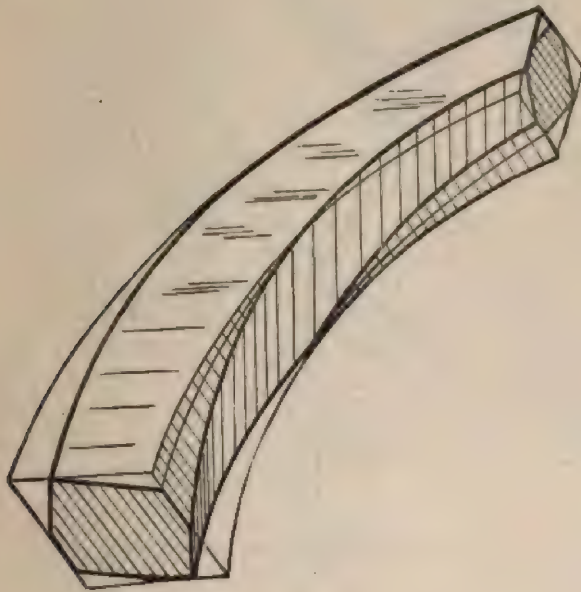


FIG. 167.

285.—Face-Mould Curves are Elliptical.—The curves of the face-mould for the hand-railing of any stairs of circular plan are elliptical, and may be drawn by a trammel, or in any other convenient manner. The trouble, however, attending the process of obtaining the axes, so as to be able to employ the trammel in describing the curves, is, in many cases, greater than it would be to obtain the curves through points found by ordinates, in the usual manner. But as

this method for certain reasons may be preferred by an example is here given in which the curves are drawn with a trammel, and in which the method of obtaining the heights is shown.

Let *Fig. 168* represent the plan of a hand-rail around

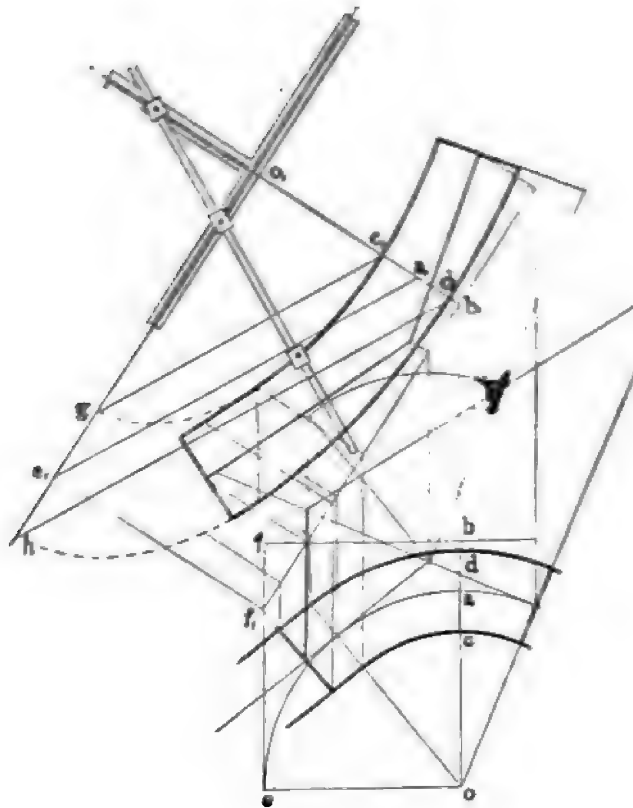


FIG. 168.

of a cylinder and with the heights set up, the intersecting line obtained, the measuring base-line drawn, the radii established, and the tangents on the face-mould located in the usual manner as hereinbefore described. To prepare for the trammel, from *o*, the centre of the cylinder, draw *ob*, parallel with the intersecting line, and *b, o, p*

pendicular to b, f , the rake-line; make b, o , equal to bo , and a, a , equal to oa ; through o , draw o, h parallel with b, f . From o draw oe perpendicular to ob ; continue the central circular line of the rail around to e ; parallel with ob , draw ef , and from f , the point of intersection of ef with b, f , and perpendicular to b, f , draw f, e ; make f, e , equal to fe ; then o is the centre of the ellipse, and o, a , the semi-conjugate diameter and o, e , the semi-transverse diameter of an ellipse drawn through the centre of the face-mould. To get the diameters for the edges of the face-mould, make a, c , and a, d each equal to half the width of the rail, as at cad ; parallel to a line drawn from a , to e , and through c , draw the line c, g ; also, parallel with a line drawn from a , to e , draw d, g (see *Art.* 559); then for the curve at the inner edge of the face-mould, o, g is the semi-transverse diameter, and o, c , the semi-conjugate; while for the curve at the outer edge o, d is the semi-transverse diameter, and o, g , the semi-conjugate. So much of the edges of the face-mould as are straight are parallel with the tangent. Now, placing the trammel at the centre, as shown in the figure, and making the distance on the rod from the pencil to the first pin equal to the semi-conjugate diameter, and the distance to the second pin equal to the semi-transverse diameter, each curve may be drawn as shown. (See *Art.* 549.)

286. — Face-Moulds for Round Rails.—The previous examples given for finding face-moulds are intended for *moulded* rails. For *round* rails the same process is to be followed, with this difference: that instead of finding curves on the face-mould for the sides of the rail, find one for a centre-line and describe circles upon it, as at *Fig.* 145; then trace the sides of the mould by the points so found. The thickness of stuff for the twists of a round rail is the same as for the straight part. The twists are to be sawed square through.

287. — Position of the Butt-Joint.—When a block for the wreath of a hand-rail is sawed square through the plank, the joint, in all cases, is to be laid on the face-mould square to the tangent and cut square through the plank.

Managed in this way, the butt-joint is in a plane perpendicularly by the tangent. But if the block sawed square through, but vertically from the edge

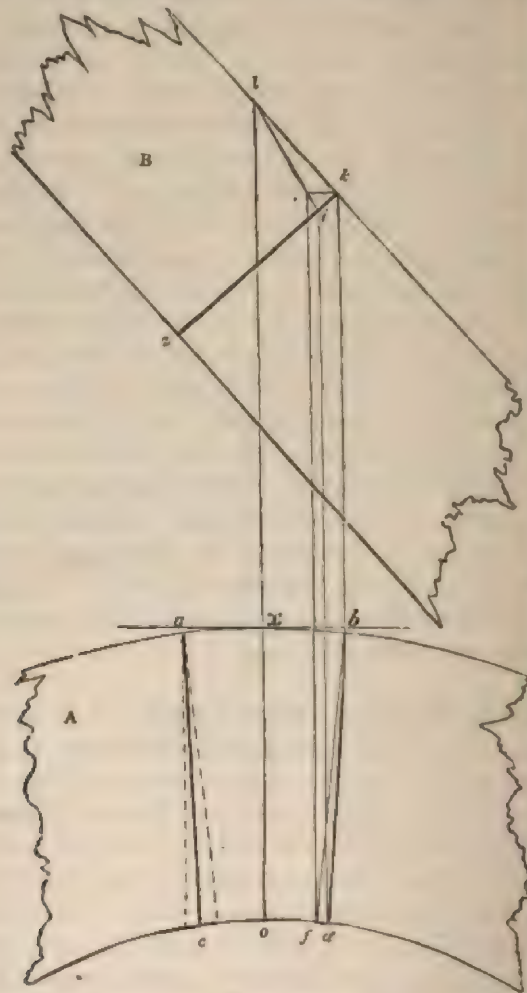


FIG. 169.

face-mould, then, especially, care is required in locating the joint. The method of sawing square through is a method with so many advantages that it is now generally preferred, yet, as it is possible that for certain reasons some may

place the cases, to saw vertically, it is proper that the method of finding the position of the joint for that purpose should be given. Therefore, let *A*, *Fig. 169*, be the plan of the rail,

B the elevation, showing its side; in which *kz* is the section of the butt-joint. From *k* draw *kb* parallel to *lo*, and *ke* at right angles to *kb*; from *b* draw *bf*, tending to the centre of the plan, and from *f* draw *fe* parallel to *bk*; from *l*, through *e*, draw *li*, and from *i* draw *id* parallel to *li*; join *d* and *b*, and *db* will be the proper direction for the joint on the plan. The direction of the joint on the other side, *ac*, can be found by transferring the distances *xb* and *id* to *xa* and *oc*. Then the allowance for over wood to cover the butt-joint is shown as that which is included between the lines *ox* and *db*. The face-mould must be so drawn as to cover the plan to the line *bd* for the wreath at the left, and to the line *ac* for that at the right. By some the direction of the joint is made to radiate toward the centre of the cylinder; indeed, even Mr. Nicholson, in his *Carpenter's Guide*, so advised. That this is an error may be shown as follows: In *Fig. 170*, *arji* is the plan of a part of the rail about the joint, *su* is the stretch-out of *ai*, and *gp* is the helinet, or vertical projection of the plan *arji*. This is found by drawing a horizontal line from the height set upon each perpendicular standing upon the stretch-out line *su*. The lines upon the plan *arji* are drawn radiating to the centre of the cylinder, and therefore correspond to the horizontal lines of the helinet drawn upon its upper and under surfaces.

Bisect *rt* on the ordinate drawn from the centre of the plan, and through the middle draw *cb* at right angles to *gv*; from *b* and *c* draw *cd* and *be* at right angles to *su*; from *d* and *e* draw lines radiating toward the centre of the plan; then *do* and *em* will be the direction of the joint on the plan, according to Nicholson, and *cb* its direction on the falling-mould. It must be admitted that all the lines on the upper or the lower side of the rail which radiate toward the centre of the cylinder, as *do*, *em*, or *ij*, are level; for instance, the level line *wv*, on the top of the rail in the helinet, is a true representation of the radiating line *ji* on

the plan. The line bh , therefore, on the top of the rail the helinet, is a true representation of em on the plan, and kc on the bottom of the rail truly represents do . From c draw kl parallel to cb , and from k draw hf parallel to bc .

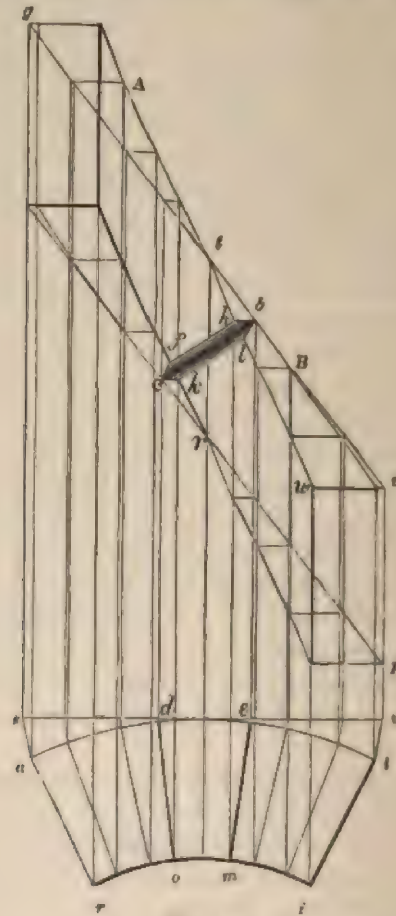


FIG. 170.

join l and b , also c and f ; then $cklb$ will be a true representation of the end of the lower piece, B , and $cfkb$ of the end of the upper piece, A ; and fk or hl will show how much the joint is open on the inner, or concave, side of rail.

Now that the process followed in *Art.* 287 is correct, and *em* (*Fig.* 171) be the direction of the butt-joint at *Fig.* 169. Now, to project, on the top of the rail linet, a line that does not radiate toward the centre

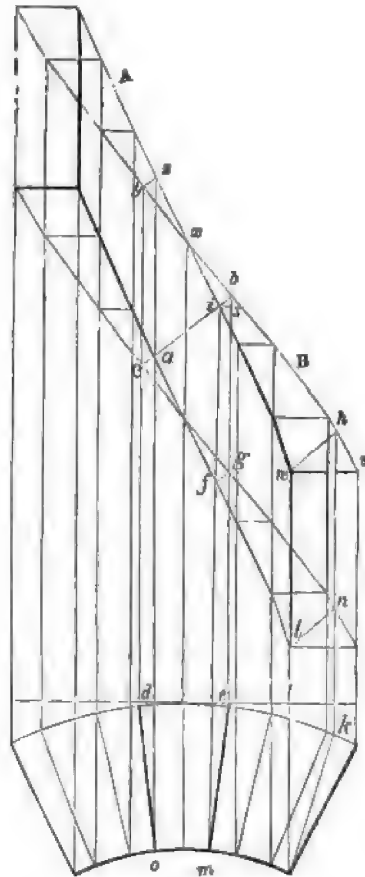


FIG. 171.

linder, as *jk*, draw vertical lines from *j* and *k* to *w* and join *w* and *h*; then it will be evident that *wh* is representation in the helinet of *jk* on the plan, it the same plane as *jk*, and also in the same winding as *vw*. The line *ln*, also, is a true representation of

the bottom of the helinet of the line jk in the plan. The line of the joint em , therefore, is projected in the same way, and truly, by ib on the top of the helinet, and the line da by ca on the bottom. Join a and i , and then it will be seen that the lines ca , ai , and ib exactly coincide with cb , the line of the joint on the convex side of the rail; thus proving the lower end of the upper piece, A , and the upper end of the lower piece, B , to be in one and the same plane, and that the direction of the joint on the plan is the true one. By reference to *Fig. 169* it will be seen that the line li corresponds to xi in *Fig. 171*; and that ek in that figure is a representation of fb , and ik of db .

288.—Scrolls for Hand-Rails: General Rule for Size and Position of the Regulating Square.—The breadth which the scroll is to occupy, the number of its revolutions, and the relative size of the regulating square to the eye of the scroll being given, multiply the number of revolutions by 4, and to the product add the number of times a side of the square is contained in the diameter of the eye, and the sum will be the number of equal parts into which the breadth is to be divided. Make a side of the regulating square equal to one of these parts. To the breadth of the scroll add one of the parts thus found, and half the sum will be the length of the longest ordinate.

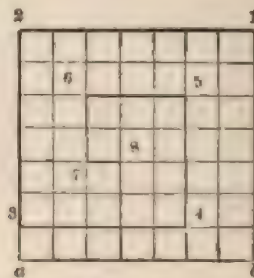


FIG. 172.

289.—Centres in Regulating Square.—Let a 2 1 b (*Fig. 172*) be the size of a regulating square, found according to the previous rule, the required number of revolutions being

18. Divide two adjacent sides, as $a\ 2$ and $2\ 1$, into as many equal parts as there are quarters in the number of revolutions, as seven; from those points of division draw lines across the square at right angles to the lines divided; then 1 being the first centre, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, and 7 are the centres for the other quarters, and 8 is the centre for the eye; the heavy lines that determine these centres being each one part less in length than its preceding line.

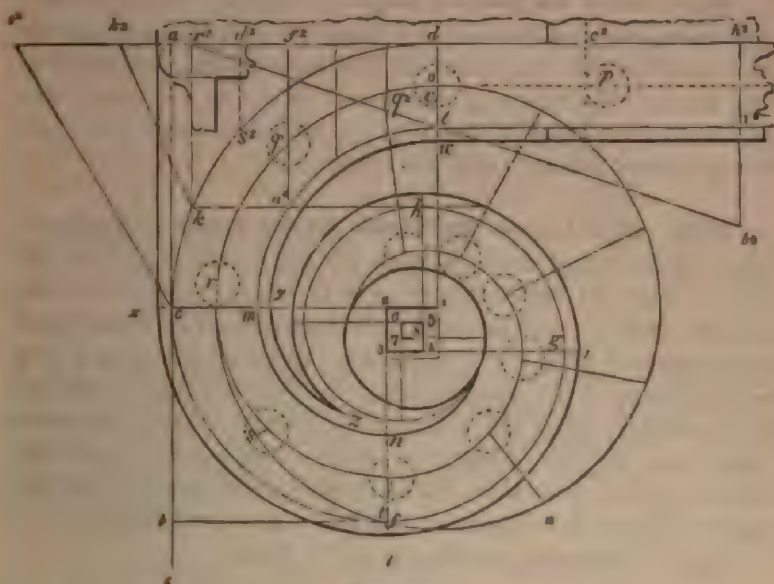


FIG. 173.

290.—Scroll for Hand-Roll Over Curtail Step.—Let $a b$ (Fig. 173) be the given breadth, $1\frac{3}{4}$ the given number of revolutions, and let the relative size of the regulating square to the eye be $\frac{1}{4}$ of the diameter of the eye. Then, by the rule, $1\frac{3}{4}$ multiplied by 4 gives 7, and 3, the number of times a side of the square is contained in the eye, being added, the sum is 10. Divide $a b$, therefore, into 10 equal parts, and set one from b to e ; bisect $a e$ in e ; then $a e$ will be the length of the longest ordinate ($1 d$ or $1 e$). From a draw $a d$, from e draw $e 1$, and from b draw $b f$, all at right angles to $a b$; make $e 1$ equal to a , and through 1 draw $1 d$ parallel

to $a b$; set $b c$ from 1 to 2, and upon 1 2 complete the regulating square; divide this square as at *Fig. 172*; then describe the arcs that compose the scroll, as follows: upon 1 describe $d e$, upon 2 describe $e f$, upon 3 describe $f g$, upon 4 describe $g h$, etc.; make $d l$ equal to the width of the rail, and upon 1 describe $l m$, upon 2 describe $m n$, etc.; describe the eye upon 8, and the scroll is completed.

291.—Scroll for Curtail Step.—Bisect $d l$ (*Fig. 173*) in o , and make $o v$ equal to $\frac{1}{8}$ of the diameter of a baluster; make $v w$ equal to the projection of the nosing, and $e x$ equal to $w l$; upon 1 describe $w y$, and upon 2 describe $y z$; also, upon 2 describe $x i$, upon 3 describe $i j$, and so around to s ; and the scroll for the step will be completed.

292.—Position of Balusters Under Scroll.—Bisect $d l$ (*Fig. 173*) in o , and upon 1, with 1 o for radius, describe the circle $o r u$; set the baluster at p fair with the face of the second riser, e^2 , and from p , with half the tread in the dividers, space off as at q, r, s, t, u , etc., as far as g^2 ; upon 2, 3, 4, and 5 describe the centre-line of the rail around to the eye of the scroll; from the points of division in the circle $o r u$ draw lines to the centre-line of the rail, tending to 8, the centre of the eye; then the intersection of these radiating lines with the centre-line of the rail will determine the position of the balusters, as shown in the figure.

293.—Falling-Mould for Raking Part of Scroll.—Tangential to the rail at h (*Fig. 173*) draw $h k$ parallel to $d a$; then $k a^2$ will be the joint between the twist and the other part of the scroll. Make $d e^2$ equal to the stretch-out of $d e$, and upon $d e^2$ find the position of the point k , as at k^2 ; at *Fig. 174*, make $e d$ equal to $e^2 d$ in *Fig. 173*, and $d c$ equal to $d c^2$ in that figure; from c draw $c a$ at right angles to $e c$, and equal to one rise; make $c b$ equal to one tread, and from b , through a , draw $b j$; bisect $a c$ in l , and through l draw $m q$ parallel to $c h$; $m q$ is the height of the level part of a scroll, which should always be about $3\frac{1}{4}$ feet from the floor; ease off the angle $m f j$, according to *Art. 521*, and draw

draw n parallel to $m x j$; and at a distance equal to the thickness of the rail; at a convenient place for the joint, as i , draw $i n$ at right angles to $b j$; through n draw $j h$ at right angles to $e h$; make $d k$ equal to $d k^2$ in Fig. 173, and from k draw $k o$ at right angles to $e h$; at Fig. 173, make $d h^2$ equal to $d h$ in Fig. 174, and draw $h^2 b^2$ at right angles to $d h^2$;

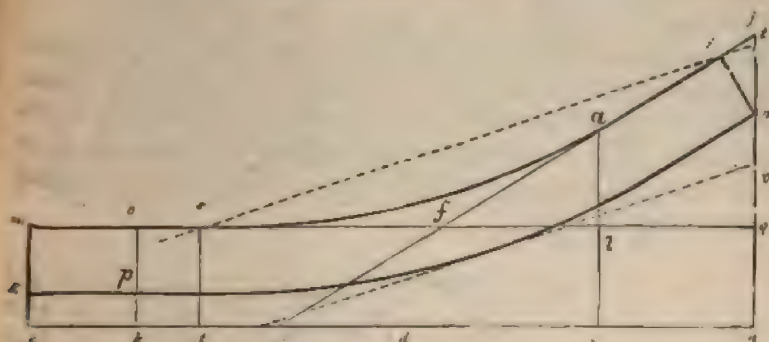


FIG. 174.

then $k a^2$ and $h^2 b^2$ will be the position of the joints on the plan, and, at *Fig. 174*, op and in their position on the falling-mould; and $po in$ (*Fig. 174*) will be the required falling-mould which is to be bent upon the vertical surface from h^2 to k (*Fig. 173*).

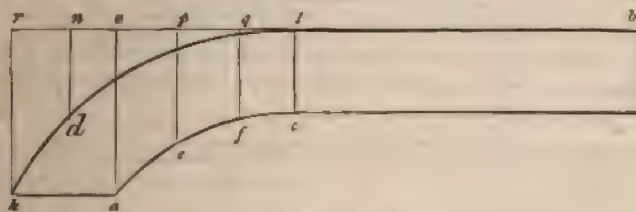


FIG. 175.

294.—Face-Mould for the Scroll.—At *Fig. 173*, from k draw kr^3 at right angles to r^2d ; at *Fig. 172*, make hr equal to h^3r^3 in *Fig. 173*, and from r draw rs at right angles to rh ; from the intersection of rs with the level line mq , through i , draw st ; at *Fig. 173*, make h^2b^3 equal to qt in *Fig. 172*, and join b^3 and r^3 ; from a^2 , and from as many

other points in the arcs, $a^2 l$ and $k d$, as is thought necessary, draw ordinates to $r^2 d$ at right angles to the latter; make $r b$ (*Fig. 175*) equal in its length and in its divisions to the line $r^2 b^2$ in *Fig. 173*; from r, u, o, p, q , and l draw the lines $r k, u d, o a, p e, q f$, and $l c$ at right angles to $r b$, and equal to $r^2 k, d^2 s^2, f^2 a^2$, etc., in *Fig. 173*; through the points thus found trace the curves $k l$ and $a c$, and complete the face-mould, as shown in the figure. This mould is to be applied to a square-edged plank, with the edge, $l b$ parallel to the edge of the plank. The rake-lines upon the edge of the plank are to be made to correspond to the angle $s t h$ in *Fig. 174*. The thickness of stuff required for this mould is shown at *Fig. 174*, between the lines $s t$ and $u v$ — $u v$ being drawn parallel to $s t$.

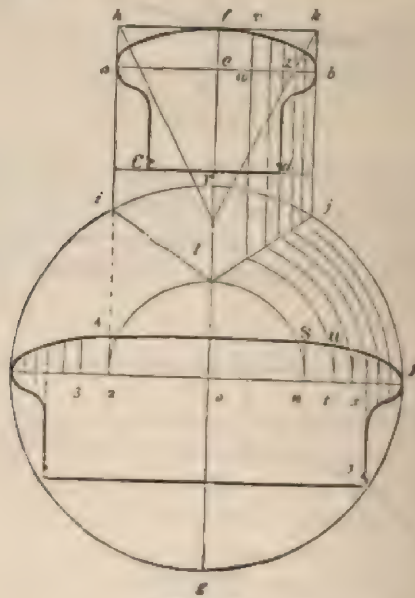


FIG. 176.

295.—Form of Newel-Cap from a Section of the Rail.

—Draw $a b$ (*Fig. 176*) through the widest part of the given section, and parallel to $c d$; bisect $a b$ in e , and through a, e , and b draw $h i, f g$, and $k j$ at right angles to $a b$; at a con-

venient place on the line fg , as o , with a radius equal to half the width of the cap, describe the circle ijg ; make rl equal to eb or ea ; join l and j , also l and i ; from the curve fb to the line lj draw as many ordinates as is thought necessary parallel to fg ; from the points at which these ordinates meet the line lj , and upon the centre, o , describe arcs in continuation to meet op ; from nlx , etc., draw ns, tu , etc., parallel to fg ; make ns, tu , etc., equal to ef, wv , etc.; make xy , etc., equal to zd , etc.; make $o2, o3$, etc., equal to on, ot , etc.; make 24 equal to ns , and in this way find the length of the lines crossing om ; through the points thus found describe the section of the newel-cap as shown in the figure.

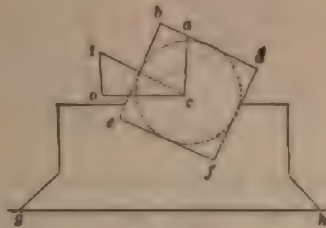


FIG. 177.

296.—Boring for Balusters in a Round Rail before it is Rounded.—Make the angle oct (Fig. 177) equal to the angle oct at Fig. 144; upon c describe a circle with a radius equal to half the thickness of the rail; draw the tangent bd parallel to tc , and complete the rectangle $ebdf$, having sides tangential to the circle; from c draw ca at right angles to oc ; then, bd being the bottom of the rail, set a gauge from b to a , and run it the whole length of the stuff; in boring, place the centre of the bit in the gauge-mark at a , and bore in the direction ac . To do this easily, make *chucks* as represented in the figure, the bottom edge, gh , being parallel to oc , and having a place sawed out, as ef , to receive the rail. These being nailed to the bench, the rail will be held steadily in its proper place for boring vertically. The distance apart that the balusters require to be, on the under-side of the rail, is one half the length of the *rake-side* of the pitch-board.

SPLAYED WORK.

297.—The Bevels in Splayed Work.—The principles employed in finding the lines in stairs are nearly allied to those required to find the bevels for *splayed* work—such as hoppers, bread-trays, etc. A method by which these may be

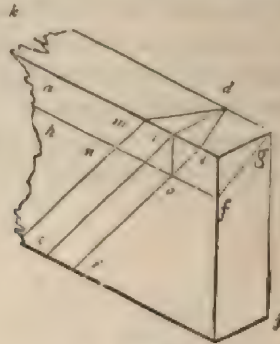
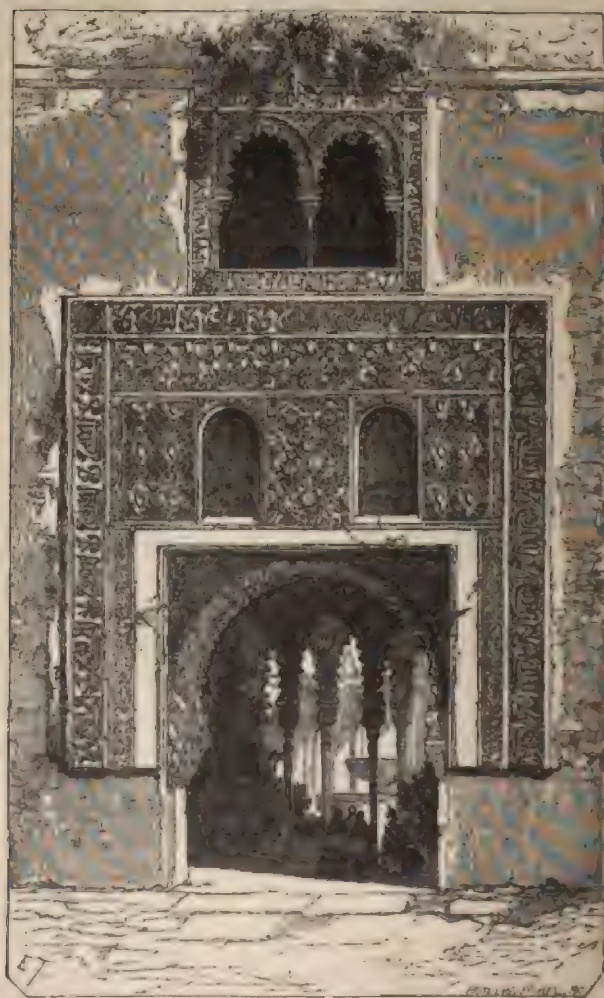


FIG. 178.

obtained will, therefore, here be shown. In *Fig. 178*, abc is the angle at which the work is splayed, and bd , on the upper edge of the board, is at right angles to ab ; make the angle fgj equal to abc , and from f draw fh parallel to ea ; from b draw bo at right angles to ab ; through o draw ie parallel to cb , and join c and d ; then the angle aed will be the proper bevil for the ends from the inside, or kde from the outside. If a mitre-joint is required, set fg , the thickness of the stuff on the level, from e to m , and join m and d ; then kdm will be the proper bevil for a mitre-joint.

If the upper edge of the splayed work is to be bevelled, so as to be horizontal when the work is placed in its proper position, then fgj , the same as abc , will be the proper bevil for that purpose. Suppose, therefore, that a piece indicated by the lines kg , gf , and fh were taken off; then a line drawn upon the bevelled surface from d at right angle to kd would show the true position of the joint, because it would be in the direction of the board for the other side but a line so drawn would pass through the point o , thus proving the principle correct. So, if a line were drawn upon the bevelled surface from d at an angle of 45 degrees to kd it would pass through the point n .



VII
VIEW IN THE ALHAMBRA.

SECTION IV.—DOORS AND WINDOWS.

DOORS.

298.—General Requirements.—Among the architectural arrangements of an edifice, the door is by no means the least in importance; and if properly constructed, it is not only an article of use, but also of ornament, adding materially to the regularity and elegance of the apartments. The dimensions and style of finish of a door should be in accordance with the size and style of the building, or the apartment for which it is designed. As regards the utility of doors, the principal door to a public building should be of sufficient width to admit of a free passage for a crowd of people; while that of a private apartment will be wide enough if it permit one person to pass without being incommoded. Experience has determined that the least width allowable for this is 2 feet 8 inches; although doors leading to inferior and unimportant rooms may, if circumstances require it, be as narrow as 2 feet 6 inches; and doors for closets, where an entrance is seldom required, may be but 2 feet wide. The width of the principal door to a public building may be from 6 to 12 feet, according to the size of the building; and the width of doors for a dwelling may be from 2 feet 8 inches to 3 feet 6 inches. If the importance of an apartment in a dwelling be such as to require a door of greater width than 3 feet 6 inches, the opening should be closed with two doors, or a door in two folds; generally, in such cases, where the opening is from 5 to 8 feet, folding or sliding doors are adopted. As to the height of a door, it should in no case be less than about 6 feet 3 inches; and generally not less than 6 feet 8 inches.

299.—The Proportion between Width and Height: of single doors, for a dwelling, should be as 2 is to 5; and, for entrance-doors to public buildings, as 1 is to 2. If the width is given and the height required of a door for a

dwelling, multiply the width by 5, and divide the product by 2; but if the height is given and the width required, divide by 5 and multiply by 2. Where two or more doors of different widths show in the same room, it is well to proportion the dimensions of the more important by the above rule, and make the narrower doors of the same height as the wider ones; as all the doors in a suit of apartments, except the folding or sliding doors, have the best appearance when of one height. The proportions for folding or sliding doors should be such that the width may be equal to $\frac{1}{3}$ of the height; yet this rule needs some qualification; for if the width of the opening be greater than one half the width of the room, there will not be a sufficient space left

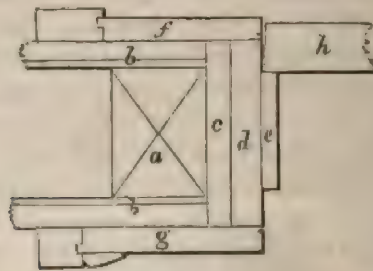


FIG. 179.

for opening the doors; also, the height should be about one tenth greater than that of the adjacent single doors.

300.—Panels.—Where doors have but two panels in width, let the stiles and muntins be each $\frac{1}{4}$ of the width; or, whatever number of panels there may be, let the united widths of the stiles and the muntins, or the whole width of the solid, be equal to $\frac{1}{3}$ of the width of the door. Thus: in a door 35 inches wide, containing two panels in width, the stiles should be 5 inches wide; and in a door 3 feet 6 inches wide, the stiles should be 6 inches. If a door 3 feet 6 inches wide is to have 3 panels in width, the stiles and muntins should be each $4\frac{1}{2}$ inches wide, each panel being 8 inches. The bottom rail and the lock-rail ought to be each equal in width to $\frac{1}{10}$ of the height of the door; and the top

rail, and all others, of the same width as the stiles. The moulding on the panel should be equal in width to $\frac{1}{4}$ of the width of the stile.

301.—Trimming.—*Fig. 179* shows a method of trimming doors: *a* is the door-stud; *b*, the lath and plaster; *c*, the ground; *d*, the jamb; *e*, the stop; *f* and *g*, architrave casings; and *h*, the door-stile. It is customary in ordinary work to form the stop for the door by *rebating* the jamb. But when the door is thick and heavy, a better plan is to nail on a piece as at *e* in the figure. This piece can be fitted to the door and put on after the door is hung; so, should the door be a trifle *winding*, this will correct the evil, and the door be made to shut solid.

Fig. 180 is an elevation of a door and trimmings suitable for the best rooms of a dwelling. (For trimmings generally, see Sect. V.) The number of panels into which a door should be divided may be fixed at pleasure; yet the present style of finishing requires that the number be as small as a proper regard for strength will admit. In some of our best dwellings, doors have been made having only two upright panels. A few years' experience, however, has proved that the omission of the lock-rail is at the expense of the strength and durability of the door; a four-panel door, therefore, is the best that can be made.

302.—Hanging Doors.—Doors should all be hung so as to open into the principal rooms; and, in general, no door should be hung to open into the hall, or passage. As to the proper edge of the door on which to affix the hinges, no general rule can be assigned.

WINDOWS.

303.—Requirements for Light.—A window should be of such dimensions, and in such a position, as to admit a sufficiency of light to that part of the apartment for which it is designed. No definite rule for the size can well be given that will answer in all cases; yet, as an approxima-

tion, the following has been used for general purpose. Multiply together the length and the breadth in feet of the apartment to be lighted, and the product by the height

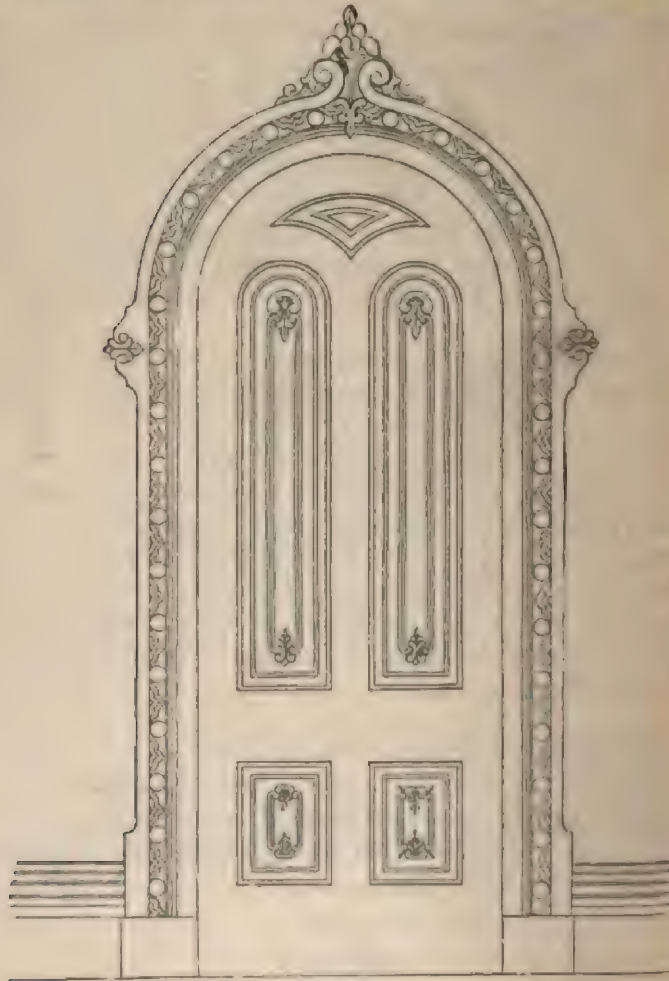


FIG. 180.

feet; then the square root of this product will show the required number of square feet of glass.

304.—Window-Frames.—For the size of window-frame add $4\frac{1}{2}$ inches to the width of the glass for their width, and

$6\frac{1}{2}$ inches to the height of the glass for their height. These give the dimensions, in the clear, of ordinary frames for 12-light windows; the height being taken at the inside edge of the sill. In a brick wall, the width of the opening is 8 inches more than the width of the glass— $4\frac{1}{2}$ for the stiles of the sash, and $3\frac{1}{2}$ for hanging stiles—and the height between the stone sill and lintel is about $10\frac{1}{2}$ inches more than the height of the glass, it being varied according to the thickness of the sill of the frame.

305.—Inside Shutters.—Inside shutters folding into *boxes* require to have the box-shutter about one inch wider than the flap, in order that the flap may not interfere when both are folded into the box. The usual margin shown between the face of the shutter when folded into the box and the quirk of the stop-bead, or edge of the casing, is half an inch; and, in the usual method of letting the *whole* of the thickness of the butt hinge into the edge of the box-shutter, it is necessary to make allowance for the *throw* of the hinge. This may, in general, be estimated at $\frac{1}{4}$ of an inch at each hinging; which being added to the margin, the entire width of the shutters will be $1\frac{1}{2}$ inches more than the width of the frame in the clear. Then, to ascertain the width of the box-shutter, add $1\frac{1}{2}$ inches to the width of the frame in the clear, between the pulley-stiles: divide this product by 4, and add half an inch to the quotient, and the last product will be the required width. For example, suppose the window to have 3 lights in width, 11 inches each. Then, 3 times 11 is 33, and $4\frac{1}{2}$ added for the wood of the sash gives $37\frac{1}{2}$; $37\frac{1}{2}$ and $1\frac{1}{2}$ is 39, and 39 divided by 4 gives $9\frac{3}{4}$; to which add half an inch, and the result will be $10\frac{1}{4}$ inches, the width required for the box-shutter.

306.—Proportion: Width and Height.—In disposing and locating windows in the walls of a building, the rules of architectural taste require that they be of different heights in different stories, but generally of the same width. The windows of the upper stories should all range perpendicularly over those of the first, or principal, story; and they

should be disposed so as to exhibit a balance of parts throughout the front of the building. To aid in this it is always proper to place the front door in the middle of the front of the building; and, where the size of the house will admit of it, this plan should be adopted. (See the latter part of *Art.* 50.) The proportion that the height should bear to the width may be, in accordance with general usage, as follows:

The height of basement windows, $1\frac{1}{3}$ of the width.

"	"	principal-story	"	$2\frac{1}{8}$	"
"	"	second-story	"	$1\frac{7}{8}$	"
"	"	third-story	"	$1\frac{3}{4}$	"
"	"	fourth-story	"	$1\frac{1}{2}$	"
"	"	attic-story	"	the same as the width.	

But, in determining the height of the windows for the several stories, it is necessary to take into consideration the height of the story in which the window is to be placed. For, in addition to the height from the floor, which is generally required to be from 28 to 30 inches, room is wanted above the head of the window for the window-trimming and the cornice of the room, besides some respectable space which there ought to be between these.

307.—Circular Heads.—Doors and windows usually terminate in a horizontal line at top. These require no special directions for their trimmings. But circular-headed doors and windows are more difficult of execution, and require some attention. If the jambs of a door or window be placed at right angles to the face of the wall, the edges of the *soffit*, or surface of the head, would be straight, and its length be found by getting the stretch-out of the circle (*Art.* 524); but when the jambs are placed obliquely to the face of the wall, occasioned by the demand for light in an oblique direction, the form of the soffit will be obtained by the following article; as also when the face of the wall is circular, as shown in the succeeding figure.

308.—Form of Soffit for Circular Window-Heads.—

When the light is received in an oblique direction, let $abcd$ (Fig. 181) be the ground-plan of a given window, and efa a vertical section taken at right angles to the face of the jambs.

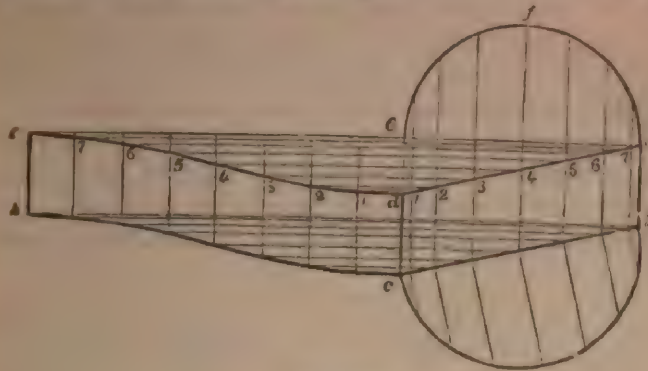


FIG. 181.

From a , through e , draw ag at right angles to ab ; obtain the stretch-out of efa , and make eg equal to it; divide eg and efa each into a like number of equal parts, and drop perpendiculars from the points of division in each; from the points of intersection, 1, 2, 3, etc., in the line ad ,

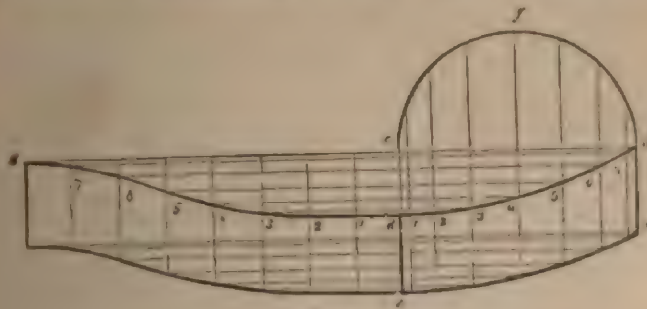


FIG. 182.

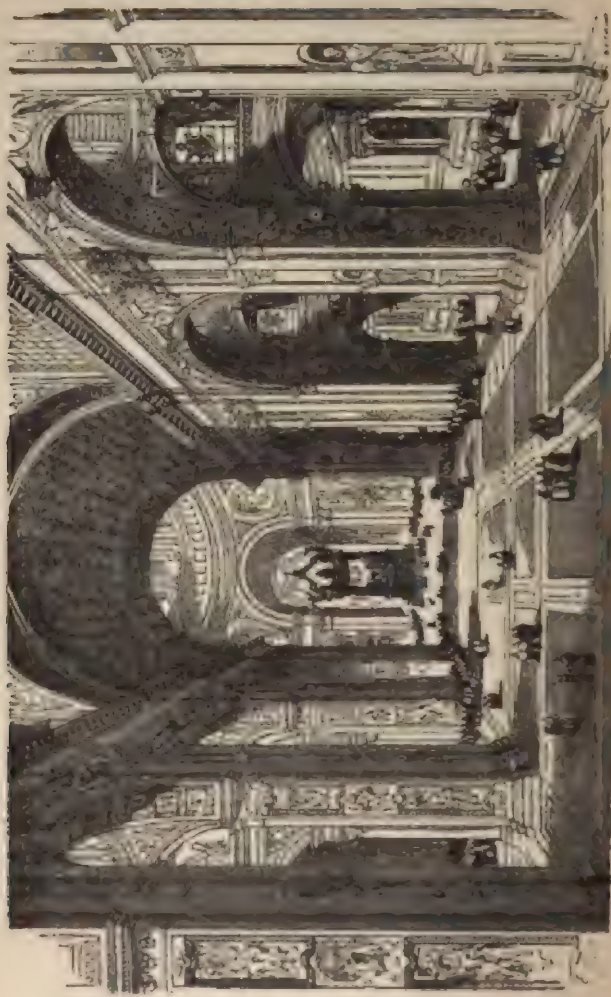
draw horizontal lines to meet corresponding perpendiculars from eg ; then those points of intersection will give the curve line dg , which will be the one required for the edge of the soffit. The other edge, ch , is found in the same manner.

For the form of the soffit for circular window-heads, when the face of the wall is curved, let $abcd$ (*Fig. 182*) be the ground-plan of a given window, and efa a vertical section of the head taken at right angles to the face of the jambs. Proceed as in the foregoing article to obtain the line dg ; then that will be the curve required for the edge of the soffit, the other edge being found in the same manner.

If the given vertical section be taken in a line with the face of the wall, instead of at right angles to the face of the jambs, place it upon the line cb (*Fig. 181*), and, having drawn ordinates at right angles to cb , transfer them to efa ; in this way a section at right angles to the jambs can be obtained.

THE NEW YORK
PUBLIC LIBRARY

ASTOR, LENOX
TILDEN FOUNDATIONS



INTERIOR OF ST. PETER'S, ROME.

SECTION V.—MOULDINGS AND CORNICES.

MOULDINGS.

309.—Mouldings: are so called because they are of the same determinate shape throughout their length, as though the whole had been cast in the same mould or form. The regular mouldings, as found in remains of classic architecture, are eight in number, and are known by the following names:

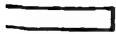


FIG. 183.

Annulet, band, cincture, fillet, listel or square.

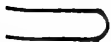


FIG. 184.

Astragal or bead.



FIG. 185.

Torus or tore.



FIG. 186.

Scotia, trochilus or mouth.



FIG. 187.

Ovolo, quarter-round or echinus.



FIG. 188.

Cavetto, cove or hollow.



FIG. 189.

Cymatium, or cyma-recta.



FIG. 190.

Inverted cymatium, or cyma-reversa.

Ogee }

Some of the terms are derived thus: Fillet, from the French word *fil*, thread. Astragal, from *astragalos*, a bone of the heel—or the curvature of the heel. Bead, because this moulding, when properly carved, resembles a string of beads. Torus, or tore, the Greek for *rope*, which it resembles when on the base of a column. Scotia, from *skotia*, darkness, because of the strong shadow which its depth produces, and which is increased by the projection of the torus above it. Ovolo, from *ovum*, an egg, which this member resembles when carved, as in the Ionic capital. Cavetto, from *cavus*, hollow. Cymatium, from *kumatōn*, a wave.

310.—Characteristics of Mouldings.—Neither of these mouldings is peculiar to any one of the orders of architecture; and although each has its appropriate use, yet it is by no means confined to any certain position in an assemblage of mouldings. The use of the fillet is to bind the parts, as also that of the astragal and torus, which resemble ropes. The ovolo and cyma-reversa are strong at their upper extremities, and are therefore used to support projecting parts above them. The cyma-recta and cavetto, being weak at their upper extremities, are not used as supporters, but are placed uppermost to cover and shelter the other parts. The scotia is introduced in the base of a column to separate the upper and lower torus, and to produce a pleasing variety and relief. The form of the bead and that of the torus is the same; the reasons for giving distinct names to them are that the torus, in every order, is always considerably larger than the bead, and is placed among the base mouldings,

as the bead is never placed there, but on the capital or
ature; the torus, also, is seldom carved, whereas the
s; and while the torus among the Greeks is frequently
cal in its form, the bead retains its circular shape. While
ptia is the reverse of the torus, the cavetto is the re-
of the ovolo, and the cyma-recta and cyma-reversa are
nations of the ovolo and cavetto.

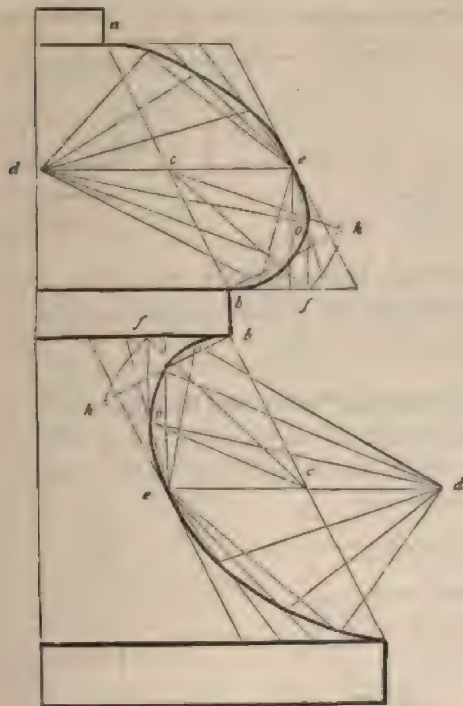


FIG. 191.

the curves of mouldings, in Roman architecture, were
generally composed of parts of circles; while those of
Greeks were almost always elliptical, or of some one of
conic sections, but rarely circular, except in the case of
bead, which was always, among both Greeks and Ro-
mans, of the form of a semicircle. Sections of the cone af-
ford a greater variety of forms than those of the sphere; and
perhaps this is one reason why the Grecian architecture so

much excels the Roman. The quick turnings of the ovolo and cyma-reversa, in particular, when exposed to a bright sun, cause those narrow, well-defined streaks of light which give life and splendor to the whole.

311.—A Profile: is an assemblage of essential parts and mouldings. That profile produces the happiest effect which

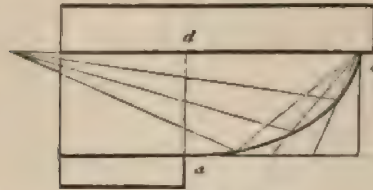


FIG. 192.



FIG. 193.

is composed of but few members, varied in form and size, and arranged so that the plane and the curved surfaces succeed each other alternately.

312.—The Grecian Torus and Scotia.—Join the extremities *a* and *b* (Fig. 191), and from *f*, the given projection of the moulding, draw *fo* at right angles to the fillets; from *b*

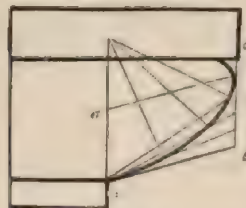


FIG. 194.



FIG. 195.

draw *bh* at right angles to *ab*; bisect *ab* in *c*; join *f* and *c*, and upon *c*, with the radius *cf*, describe the arc *fh*, cutting *bh* in *h*; through *c* draw *de* parallel with the fillets; make *de* and *ce* each equal to *bh*; then *de* and *ab* will be conjugate diameters of the required ellipse. To describe the curve by intersection of lines, proceed as directed at *Art.*

51 and *note*; by a trammel, see *Art.* 549; and to find the *oci*, in order to describe it with a string, see *Art.* 548.

313.—The Grecian Echinus.—*Figs.* 192 to 199 exhibit, variously modified, the Grecian ovolo, or echinus. *Figs.* 192 to 196 are elliptical, ab and bc being given tangents to the curve; parallel to which the semi-conjugate diameters, ad and dc ,

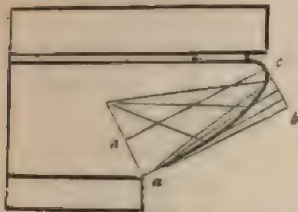


FIG. 196.

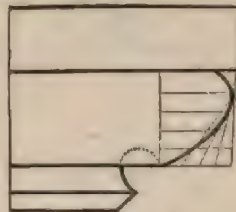


FIG. 197.

be drawn. In *Figs.* 192 and 193 the lines ad and dc are semi-conjugate diameters, the tangents, ab and bc , being at right angles to each other. To draw the curve, see *Art.* 551. In *Fig.* 197 the curve is parabolical, and is drawn according to *Art.* 560. In *Figs.* 198 and 199 the curve is hyperbolical, being described according to *Art.* 561. The length of the transverse axis, ab ,

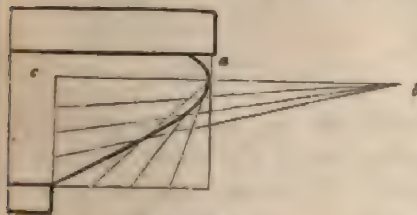


FIG. 198.

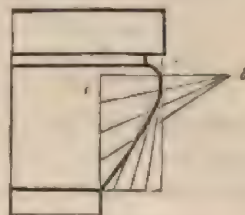


FIG. 199.

being taken at pleasure in order to flatten the curve, ab should be made short in proportion to ac .

314.—The Grecian Cavetto.—In order to describe this, see *Figs.* 200 and 201, having the height and projection given, see *Art.* 551.

315.—The Grecian Cyma-Recta.—When the projection is more than the height, as at *Fig.* 202, make ab equal to the

height, and divide $abcd$ into four equal parallelograms; then proceed as directed in note to *Art.* 551. When the projection is less than the height, draw da (*Fig.* 203) at right angles

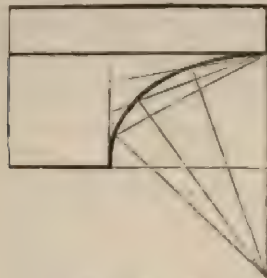


FIG. 200.

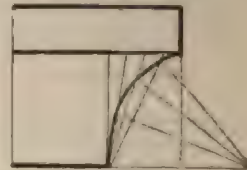


FIG. 201.

to ab ; complete the rectangle, $abcd$; divide this into four equal rectangles, and proceed according to *Art.* 551.

316.—The Grecian Cyma-Reversa.—When the projection

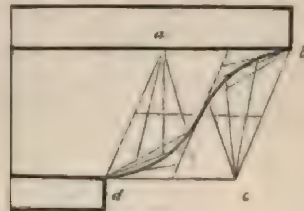


FIG. 202.



FIG. 203.

is more than the height, as at *Fig.* 204, proceed as directed for the last figure; the curve being the same as that, the position only being changed. When the projection is less

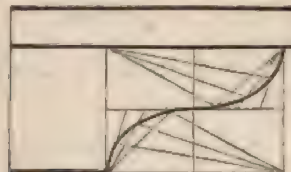


FIG. 204.



FIG. 205.

than the height, draw ad (*Fig.* 205) at right angles to the fillet; make ad equal to the projection of the moulding; then proceed as directed for *Fig.* 202.

317.—Roman Mouldings: are composed of parts of circles, and have, therefore, less beauty of form than the Grecian. The bead and torus are of the form of the semicircle, and the scotia, also, in some instances; but the latter is often composed of two quadrants, having different radii, as at *Figs. 206* and *207*, which resemble the elliptical curve. The ovolo and ca-

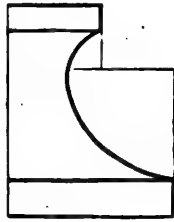


FIG. 206.

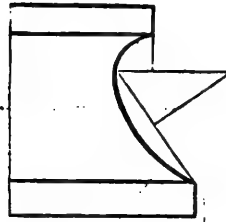


FIG. 207.

vetto are generally a quadrant, but often less. When they are less, as at *Fig. 210*, the centre is found thus: join the extremities, *a* and *b*, and bisect *ab* in *c*; from *c*, and at right angles to *ab*, draw *cd*, cutting a level line drawn from *a* in *d*; then *d* will be the centre. This moulding projects less than its height. When the projection is more than the height, as at *Fig. 212*, extend the line from *c* until it cuts a perpendicular

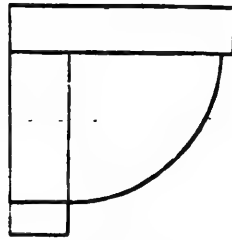


FIG. 208.

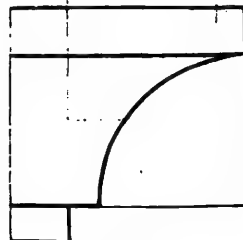


FIG. 209.

drawn from *a*, as at *d*; and that will be the centre of the curve. In a similar manner, the centres are found for the mouldings at *Figs. 207, 211, 213, 216, 217, 218, and 219*. The centres for the curves at *Figs. 220 and 221* are found thus: bisect the line *ab* at *c*; upon *a, c* and *b* successively, with *ac* or *cb* for radius, describe arcs intersecting at *d* and *d'*; then those intersections will be the centres.

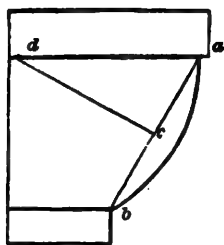


FIG. 210.

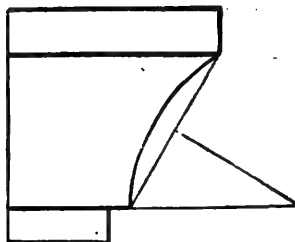


FIG. 211.

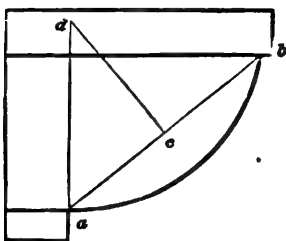


FIG. 212.

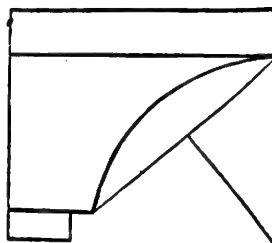


FIG. 213.

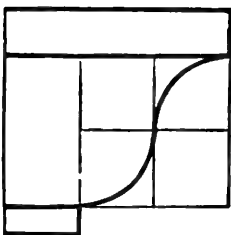


FIG. 214.

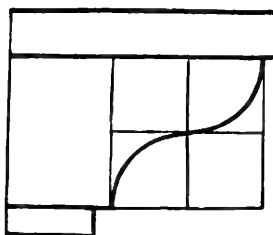


FIG. 215.

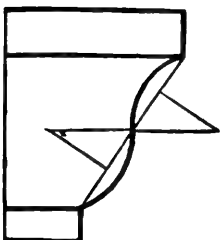


FIG. 216.

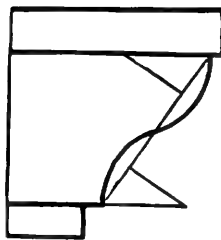


FIG. 217.

218.—**Modern Mouldings:** are represented in *Figs. 222* to *229*. They have been quite extensively and successfully used in inside finishing. *Fig. 222* is appropriate for a bed-moulding under a low projecting shelf, and is frequently used under mantel-shelves. The tangent ih is found thus: erect the line ab at c , and bc at d ; from d draw de at right angles to eb ; from b draw bf parallel to ed ; upon b ,

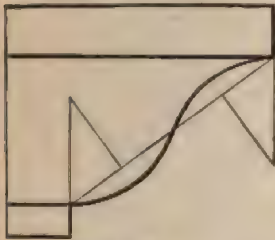


FIG. 218.

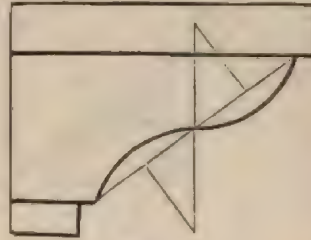


FIG. 219.

with bd for radius, describe the arc df ; divide this arc into 7 equal parts, and set one of the parts from s , the limit of the projection, to o ; make oh equal to oe ; from h , through o , draw the tangent hi ; divide bh , hc , ci , and ia each into the same number of equal parts, and draw the intersecting lines directed at *Art. 521*. If a bolder form is desired, draw the tangent, ih , nearer horizontal, and describe an elliptic

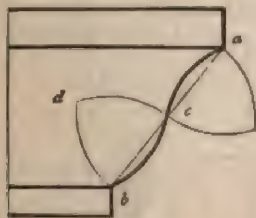


FIG. 220.

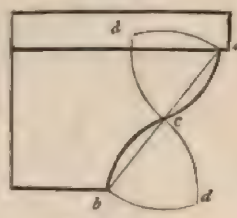


FIG. 221.

as shown in *Figs. 191* and *224*. *Fig. 223* is much used for base, or skirting, of rooms, and in deep panelling. The tangent is found in the same manner as that of *Fig. 222*. In this case, however, where the moulding has so little projection in comparison with its height, the point e being found in the last figure, hs may be made equal to se , instead of as in the last figure. *Fig. 224* is appropriate for a crown

MOULDINGS AND CORNICES.

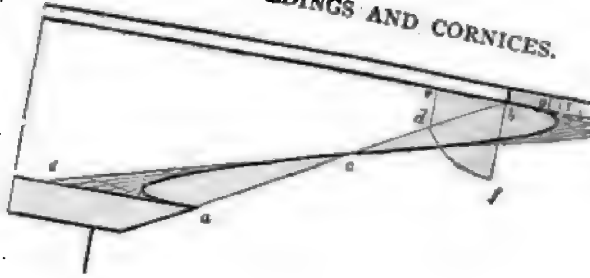


FIG. 222.

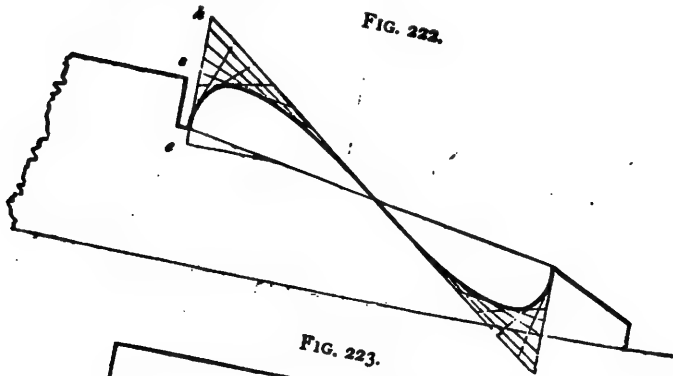


FIG. 223.

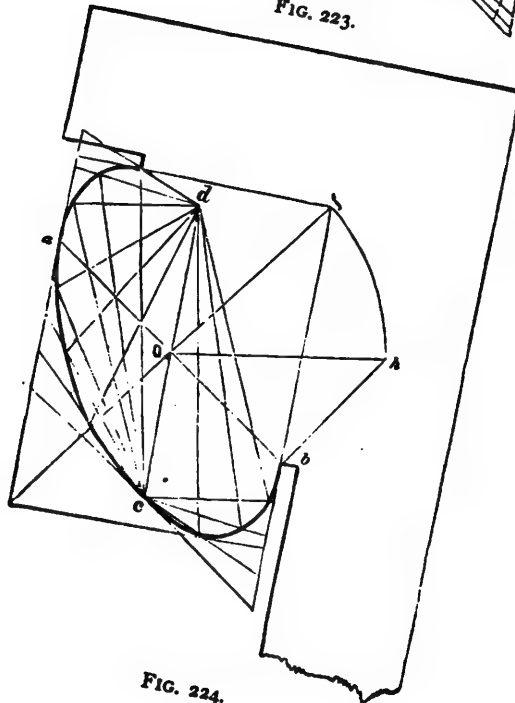


FIG. 224.

moulding of a cornice. In this figure the height and projection are given; the direction of the diameter, ab , drawn

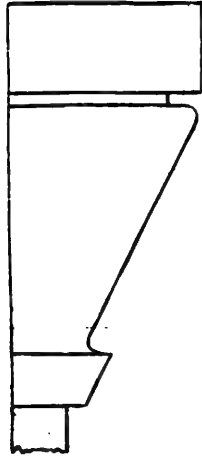


FIG. 225.

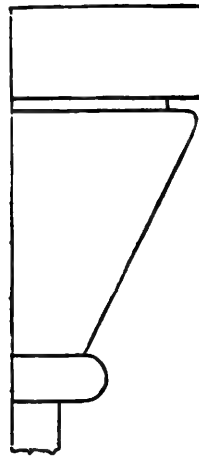


FIG. 226.

through the middle of the diagonal, ef , is taken at pleasure; and dc is parallel to ac . To find the length of dc , draw bh

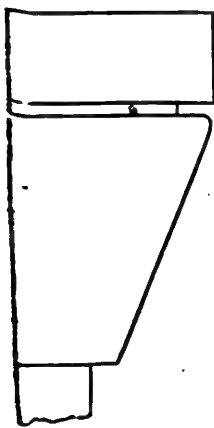


FIG. 227.

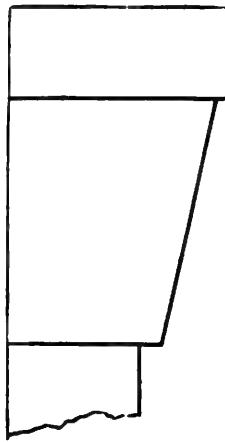


FIG. 228.

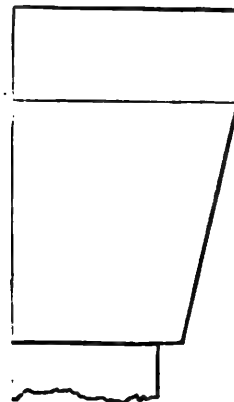


FIG. 229.

at right angles to ab ; upon o , with of for radius, describe the arc, fh , cutting bh in h ; then make oc and od each

equal to h/h .* To draw the curve, see note to *Art.* 551. *Figs.* 225 to 229 are peculiarly distinct from ancient mouldings being composed principally of straight lines; the few curves they possess are quite short and quick.

Figs. 230 and 231 are designs for antæ caps. The diameter of the antæ is divided into 20 equal parts, and the height and projection of the members are regulated in accordance with those parts, as denoted under *H* and *P*, height and projection. The projection is measured from the middle of the antæ. These will be found appropriate for porticos, doorways, mantelpieces, door and window trimmings,

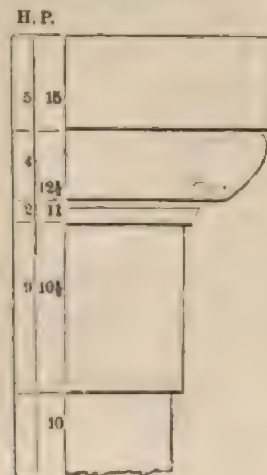


FIG. 230.

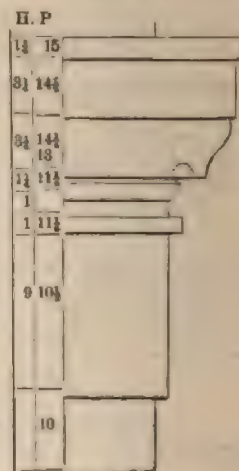


FIG. 231.

etc. The height of the antæ for mantelpieces should be from 5 to 6 diameters, having an entablature of from 2 to $2\frac{1}{2}$ diameters. This is a good proportion, it being similar to the Doric order. But for a portico these proportions are

* The manner of ascertaining the length of the conjugate diameter, &c. in this figure, and also in *Figs.* 191, 241, and 242 is new, and is important in this application. It is founded upon well-known mathematical principles, viz: All the parallelograms that may be circumscribed about an ellipse are equal to one another, and consequently any one is equal to the rectangle of the two axes. And again: The sum of the squares of every pair of conjugate diameters is equal to the sum of the squares of the two axes.

much too heavy: an antæ 15 diameters high and an entablature of 3 diameters will have a better appearance.

CORNICES.

319.—Designs for Cornices.—*Figs. 232 to 240* are designs for eave cornices, and *Figs. 241 and 242* are for stucco cornices for the inside finish of rooms. In some of these the projection of the uppermost member from the fascia is divided into twenty equal parts, and the various members

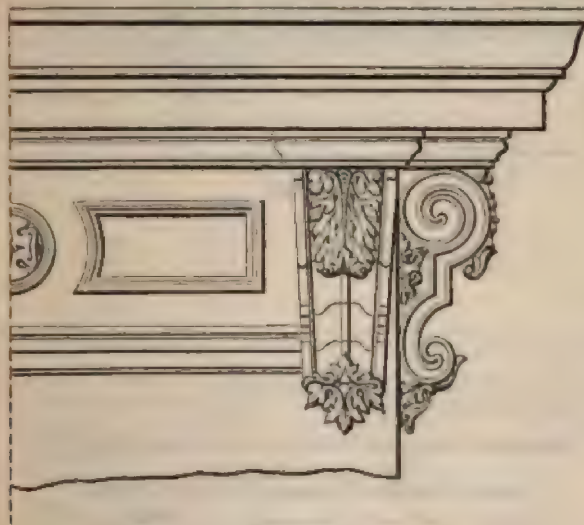


FIG. 232.

are proportioned according to those parts, as figured under *H* and *P*.

320.—Eave Cornices Proportioned to Height of Building.—Draw the line *ac* (*Fig. 243*), and make *bc* and *ba* each equal to 36 inches; from *b* draw *bd* at right angles to *ac*, and equal in length to $\frac{1}{3}$ of *ac*; bisect *bd* in *e*, and from *a*, through *e*, draw *af*; upon *a*, with *ac* for radius, describe the arc *cf*, and upon *e*, with *ef* for radius, describe the arc *fd*; divide the curve *dfe*, into 7 equal parts, as at 10, 20, 30, etc., and from these points of division draw lines to *bc*

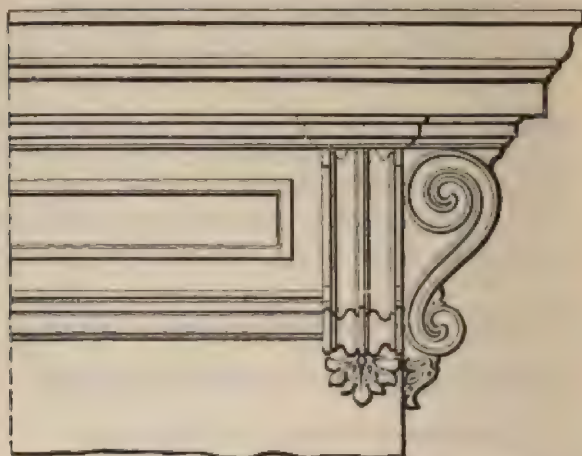


FIG. 233.

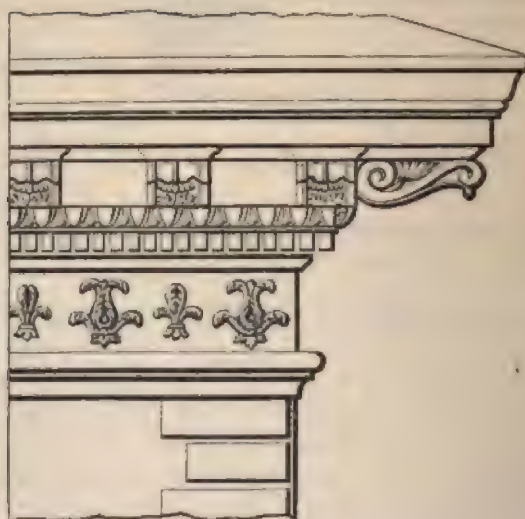


FIG. 234.

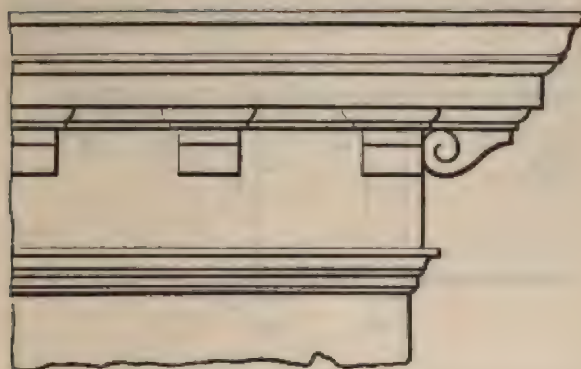


FIG. 235.

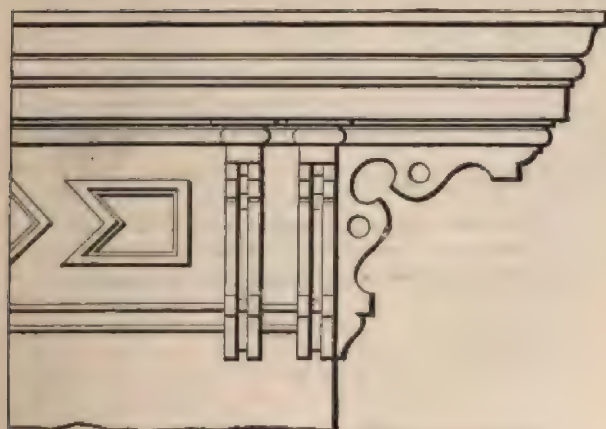


FIG. 236.

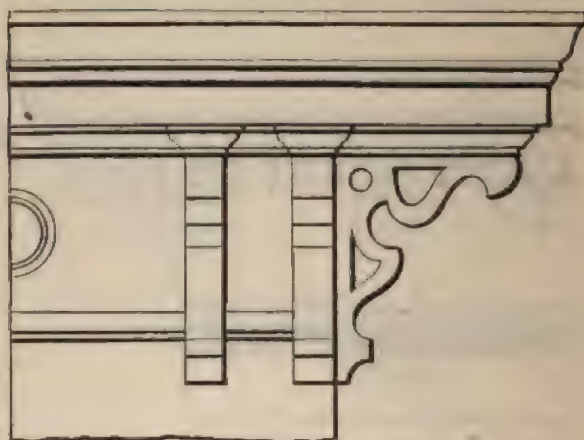


FIG. 237.

H. P.

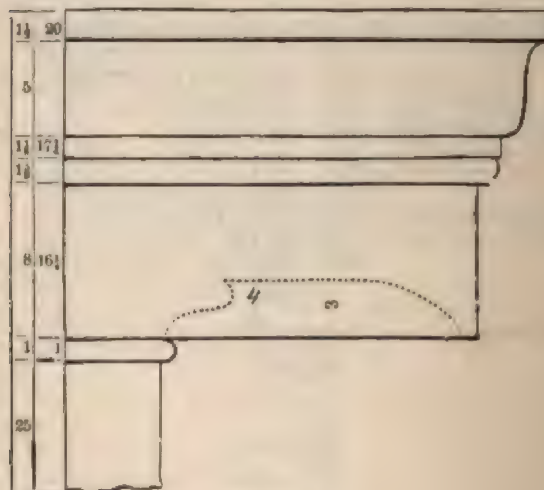


FIG. 238.

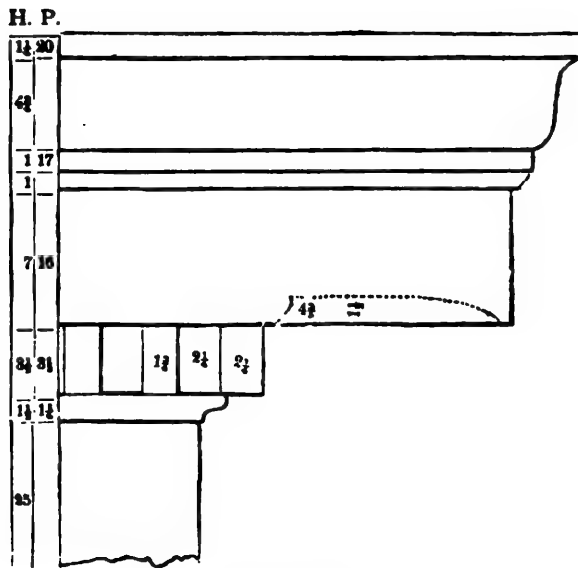


FIG. 239.

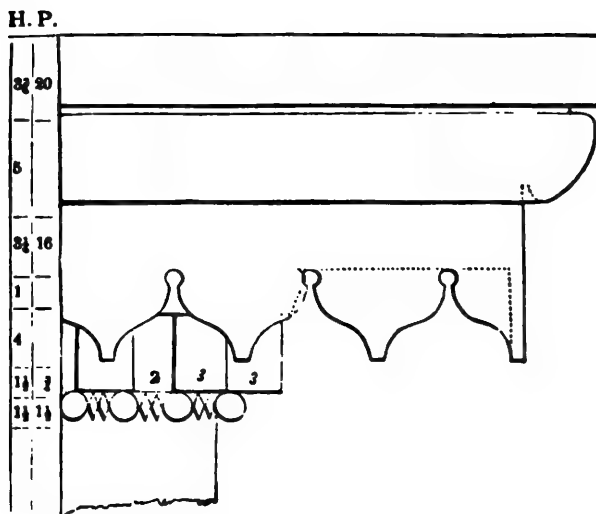


FIG. 240.

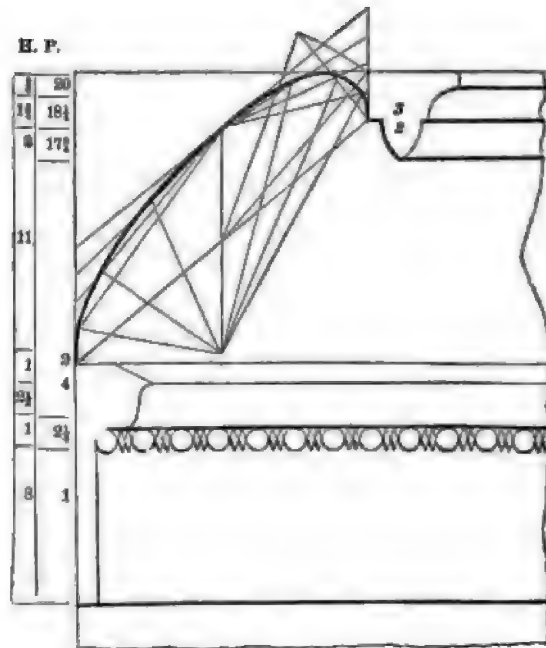


FIG. 241.

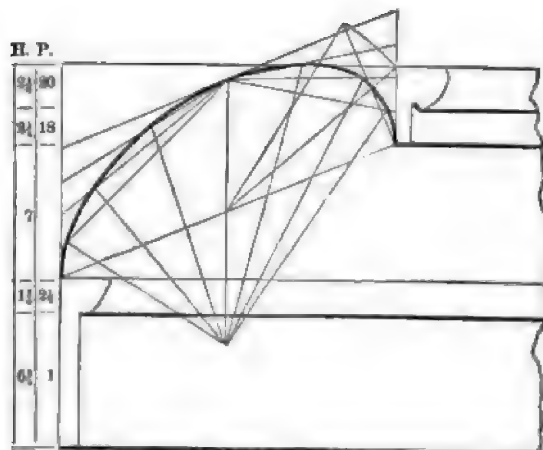


FIG. 242.

al to db ; then the distance $b1$ is the projection of a e for a building 10 feet high; $b2$, the projection at 20 feet; $b3$, the projection at 30 feet, etc. If the projection of a cornice for a building 34 feet high is required, the arc between 30 and 40 into 10 equal parts, and

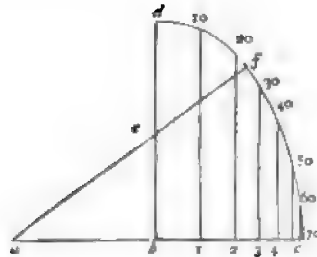


FIG. 243.

the fourth point from 30 draw a line to the base, bc , al with bd ; then the distance of the point at which line cuts the base from b will be the projection required. So proceed for a cornice of any height within 70. The above is based on the supposition that 36 inches

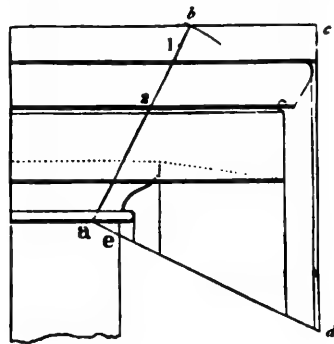


FIG. 244.

proper projection for a cornice 70 feet high. This, for general purposes, will be found correct; still, the length of line bc may be varied to suit the judgment of those who think differently. Having obtained the projection of a cornice, divide it into 10 equal parts, and apportion the several members

according to its destination—as is shown at *Figs. 238, 239, and 240.*

321.—Cornice Proportioned to a given Cornice.—Let the cornice at *Fig. 244* be the given cornice. Upon any point in the lowest line of the lowest member, as at *a*, with the height of the required cornice for radius, describe an intersecting arc across the uppermost line, as at *b*; join *a* and *b*; then *b 1* will be the perpendicular height of the upper fillet for the proposed cornice, *1 2* the height of the crown moulding—and so of all the members requiring to be enlarged to the sizes indicated on this line. For the projection of the

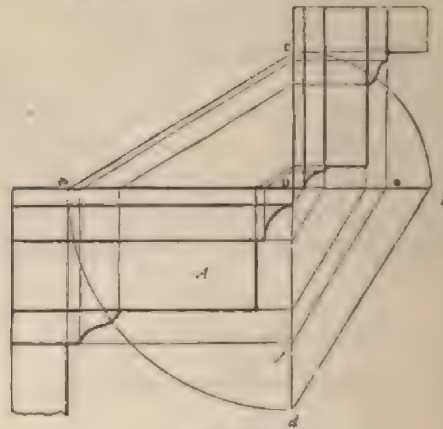


FIG. 245.

proposed cornice, draw *ad* at right angles to *ab*, and *cd* at right angles to *bc*; parallel with *cd* draw lines from each projection of the given cornice to the line *ad*; then *ed* will be the required projection for the proposed cornice, and the perpendicular lines falling upon *ed* will indicate the proper projection for the members.

To proportion a cornice according to a larger given cornice, let *A* (*Fig. 245*) be the given cornice. Extend *ao* to *b*, and draw *cd* at right angles to *ab*; extend the horizontal lines of the cornice, *A*, until they touch *od*; place the height of the proposed cornice from *o* to *e*, and join *f* and *e*; upon *e*, with the projection of the given cornice, *oa*, for radius,

describe the quadrant ad ; from d draw db parallel to fe ; upon a , with ab for radius, describe the quadrant bc ; then ac will be the proper projection for the proposed cornice. Join a and c ; draw lines from the projection of the different members of the given cornice to ao parallel to od ; from these divisions on the line ao draw lines to the line oc parallel to ac ; from the divisions on the line of draw lines to the line oc parallel to the line fe ; then the divisions on the lines oc and ac will indicate the proper height and projection for the different members of the proposed cornice. In this process, we have assumed the height, oc , of the proposed cornice to be given; but if the projection, oc , alone

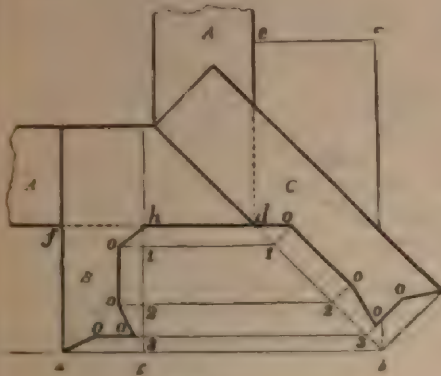


FIG. 246.

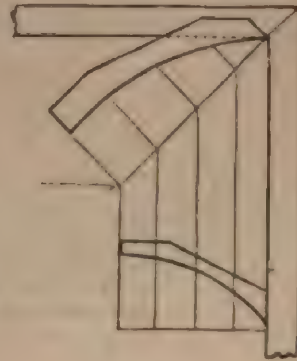


FIG. 247.

be given, we can obtain the same result by a different process. Thus: upon a , with oc for radius, describe the quadrant cb ; upon a , with oa for radius, describe the quadrant ad ; join d and b ; from f draw fe parallel to db ; then oc will be the proper height for the proposed cornice, and the height and projection of the different members can be obtained by the above directions. By this problem, a cornice can be proportioned according to a *smaller* given one as well as to a *larger*; but the method described in the previous article is much more simple for that purpose.

322.—Angle Bracket in a Built Cornice.—Let A (Fig. 240) be the wall of the building, and B the given bracket.

which, for the present purpose, is turned down horizontally. The angle-bracket, *C*, is obtained thus: through the extremity, *a*, and parallel with the wall, *fd*, draw the line *ab*; make *cc* equal *af*, and through *c* draw *cb* parallel with *fd*, join *d* and *b*, and from the several angular points in *B* draw ordinates to cut *db* in 1, 2, and 3; at those points erect lines perpendicular to *db*; from *h* draw *hg* parallel to *fa*; take

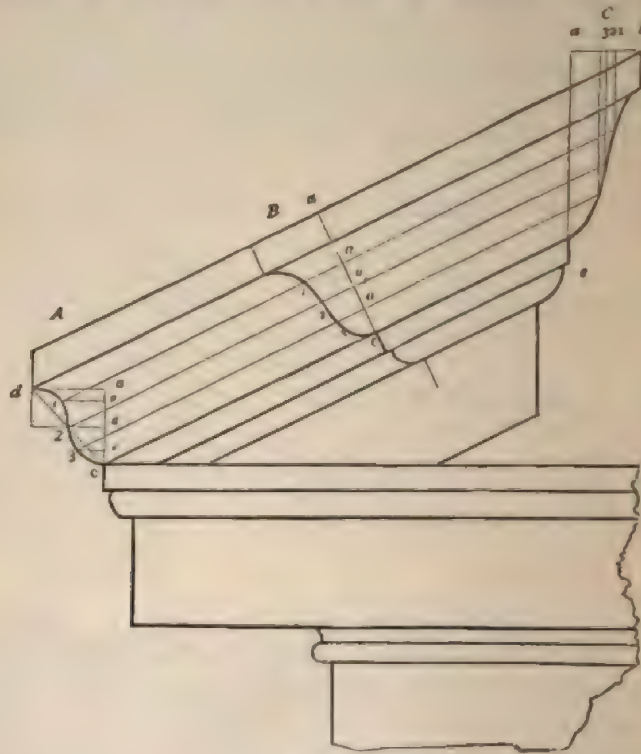


FIG. 248.

the ordinates, 1 *o*, 2 *o*, etc., at *B*, and transfer them to *C*, and the angle-bracket, *C*, will be defined. In the same manner, the angle-bracket for an internal cornice, or the angle-rib of a coved ceiling, or of groins, as at *Fig. 247*, can be found.

323.—Raking Mouldings matched with Level Returns.—Let *A* (*Fig. 248*) be the given moulding, and *A b* the rake of

roof. Divide the curve of the given moulding into any number of parts, equal or unequal, as at 1, 2, and 3; from these points draw horizontal lines to a perpendicular erected in c ; at any convenient place on the rake, as at B , draw at right angles to Ab ; also from b draw the horizontal line ba ; place the thickness, da , of the moulding at A from b to a , and from a draw the perpendicular line ae ; from points 1, 2, 3, at A , draw lines to C parallel to Ab ; take $a1$, $a2$, and $a3$, at B , and at C , equal to $a1$, etc., at A ; through the points, 1, 2, and 3, at B , trace the curve—this will be the proper form for the raking moulding. From 1, 2, and 3, at C , drop perpendiculars to the corresponding ordinates from 1, 2, and 3, at A ; through the points of intersection, trace the curve—this will be the proper form for the crown at the top.

PART II.

SECTION VI.—GEOMETRY.

324.—Mathematics Essential.—In this and the following Sections, which will constitute Part II., there are treated of certain matters which may be considered as *elementary*. They are all very necessary to be understood and acquired by the builder, and are here compactly presented in a shape which, it is believed, will aid him in his studies, and at the same time prove to be a great convenience as a matter of reference.

The many geometrical forms which enter into the composition of a building suggest a knowledge of Elementary Geometry as essential to an intelligent comprehension of its plan and purpose. One of the prime requisites of a building is stability, a quality which depends upon a proper distribution of the material of which the building is constructed; hence a knowledge of the laws of pressure and the strength of materials is essential; and as these are based upon the laws of proportion and are expressed more concisely in algebraic language, a knowledge of Proportion and of Algebra are likewise indispensable to a comprehensive understanding of the subject. There will be found in this work, however, only so much of these parts of mathematics as have been deemed of the most obvious utility in the Science of Building. For a more exhaustive treatment of the subjects named, the reader is referred to the many able works, readily accessible, which make these subjects their specialties.

325.—Elementary Geometry.—In all reasoning definitions are necessary, in order to insure in the minds of the

proponent and respondent identity of ideas. A *corollary* is an inference deduced from a previous course of reasoning. An *axiom* is a proposition evident at first sight. In the following demonstrations there are many axioms taken for granted (such as, things equal to the same thing are equal to one another, etc.); these it was thought not necessary to introduce in form.

326.—Definition.—If a straight line, as AB (*Fig. 249*), stand upon another straight line, as CD , so that the two

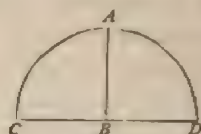


FIG. 249.

angles made at the point B are equal— ABC to ABD (*Art. 499, obtuse angle*)—then each of the two angles is called a *right angle*.

327.—Definition.—The circumference^{*} of every circle is supposed to be divided into 360 equal parts, called *degrees*; hence a semicircle contains 180 degrees, a quadrant 90, etc.

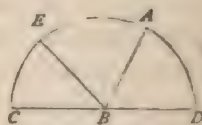


FIG. 250.

328.—Definition.—The *measure of an angle* is the number of degrees contained between its two sides, using the angular point as a centre upon which to describe the arc. Thus the arc CE (*Fig. 250*) is the measure of the angle CBE , EA of the angle EBA , and AD of the angle ABD .

329.—Corollary.—As the two angles at B (*Fig. 249*) are right angles, and as the semicircle, CAD , contains 180 degrees (*Art. 327*), the measure of two right angles, therefore, is

180 degrees; of one right angle, 90 degrees; of half a right angle, 45; of one third of a right angle, 30, etc.

330.—Definition.—In measuring an angle (*Art.* 328), no regard is to be had to the length of its sides, but only to the degree of their inclination. Hence *equal angles* are such as have the same degree of inclination, without regard to the length of their sides.

331.—Axiom.—If two straight lines parallel to one another, as AB and CD (*Fig.* 251), stand upon another straight line, as EF , the angles ABF and CDF are equal, and the angle ABE is equal to the angle CDE .

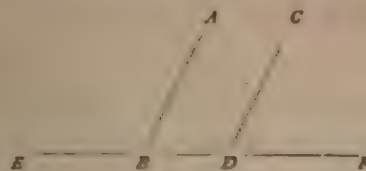


FIG. 251.

of the angles, as ABC , is called an *obtuse angle*, and the other, as ABD , an *acute angle*.

333.—Axiom.—The two angles ABD and ABC (*Fig.* 250) are together equal to two right angles (*Arts.* 326, 329); also, the three angles ABD , EBA , and CBE are together equal to two right angles.

334.—Corollary.—Hence all the angles that can be made upon one side of a line, meeting in a point in that line, are together equal to two right angles.

335.—Corollary.—Hence all the angles that can be made on both sides of a line, at a point in that line, or all the angles that can be made about a point, are together equal to four right angles.

336.—Proposition.—If to each of two equal angles a third angle be added, their sums will be equal. Let ABC and DEF (Fig. 252) be equal angles, and the angle IJK the one to be added. Make the angles GBA and HED each equal to the given angle IJK ; then the angle GBC will be equal to the angle HEF ; for if ABC and DEF be angles

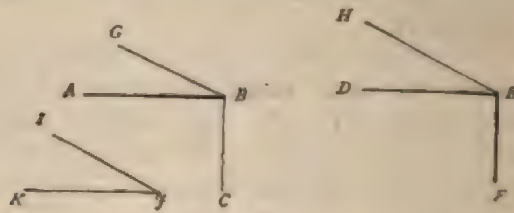


FIG. 252.

of 90 degrees, and IJK 30, then the angles GBC and HEF will be each equal to 90 and 30 added, viz., 120 degrees.

337.—Proposition.—Triangles that have two of their sides and the angle contained between them respectively equal, have also their third sides and the two remaining

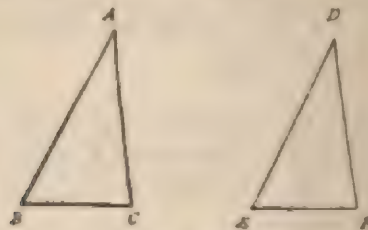


FIG. 253.

angles equal; and consequently one triangle will every way equal the other. Let ABC (Fig. 253) and DEF be two given triangles, having the angle at A equal to the angle at D , the side AB equal to the side DE , and the side AC equal to the side DF ; then the third side of one, BC , is equal to the third side of the other, EF ; the angle at B is equal to the angle at E , and the angle at C is equal to the angle at

For if one triangle be applied to the other, the three points B, A, C , coinciding with the three points E, D, F , the line BC must coincide with the line EF ; the angle at B with the angle at E ; the angle at C with the angle at F ; and the triangle BAC be every way equal to the triangle EDF .

338.—Proposition.—The two angles at the base of an isosceles triangle are equal. Let ABC (Fig. 254) be an

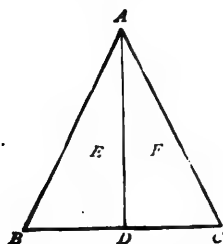


FIG. 254.

isosceles triangle, of which the sides, AB and AC , are equal. Bisect the angle (*Art.* 506) BAC by the line AD . Then, the line BA being equal to the line AC , the line AD of the triangle E being equal to the line AD of the triangle F (being common to each), the angle BAD being equal to the angle DAC ,—the line BD must, according to *Art.* 337, be

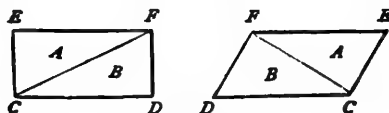


FIG. 255.

equal to the line DC , and the angle at B must be equal to the angle at C .

339.—Proposition.—A diagonal crossing a parallelogram divides it into two equal triangles. Let $CDEF$ (Fig. 255) be a given parallelogram, and CF a line crossing it diagonally. Then, as EC is equal to FD , and EF to CD , the angle at E to the angle at D , the triangle A must, according to *Art.* 337, be equal to the triangle B .

340.—Proposition.—Let $\mathcal{Y}KLM$ (Fig. 256) be a given parallelogram, and KL a diagonal. At any distance between $\mathcal{Y}K$ and LM draw NP parallel to $\mathcal{Y}K$; through the point G , the intersection of the lines KL and NP , draw HI parallel to KM . In every parallelogram thus divided, the parallelogram A is equal to the parallelogram B . For, according to *Art.* 339, the triangle $\mathcal{Y}KL$ is equal to the triangle KLM , the triangle C to the triangle D , and E to F .

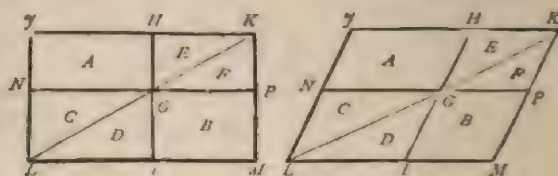


FIG. 256.

this being the case, take D and F from the triangle KLM and C and E from the triangle $\mathcal{Y}KL$, and what remains in one must be equal to what remains in the other; therefore the parallelogram A is equal to the parallelogram B .

341.—Proposition.—Parallelograms standing upon the same base and between the same parallels are equal. Let $ABCD$ and $EFCD$ (Fig. 257) be given parallelograms

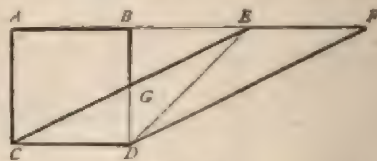


FIG. 257.

standing upon the same base, CD , and between the same parallels, AF and CD . Then AB and EF , being equal to CD , are equal to one another; BE being added to both AB and EF , AE equals BF ; the line AC being equal to BD , and AE to BF , and the angle CAE being equal (*Art.* 331) to the angle DBF , the triangle AEC must be equal (*Art.* 337) to the triangle BFD ; these two triangles being equal, take the same amount, the triangle BEG , from each.

and what remains in one, $ABGC$, must be equal to what remains in the other, $EFDG$; these two quadrangles being equal, add the same amount, the triangle CGD , to each, and they must still be equal; therefore, the parallelogram $ABCD$ is equal to the parallelogram $EFGD$.

342.—Corollary.—Hence, if a parallelogram and triangle stand upon the same base and between the same parallels,

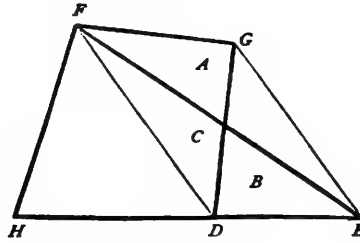


FIG. 258.

the parallelogram will be equal to double the triangle. Thus, the parallelogram AD (Fig. 257) is double (Art. 339) the triangle $CE D$.

343.—Proposition.—Let $FGHD$ (Fig. 258) be a given quadrangle with the diagonal FD . From G draw GE

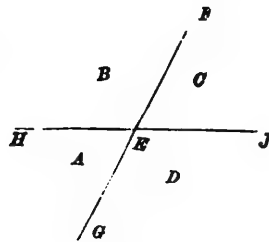


FIG. 259.

parallel to FD ; extend HD to E ; join F and E ; then the triangle FEH will be equal in area to the quadrangle $FGHD$. For since the triangles FDG and FDE stand upon the same base, FD , and between the same parallels, FD and GE , they are therefore equal (Arts. 341, 342); and since the triangle C is common to both, the remaining tri-

angles, A and B , are therefore equal; then, B being equal to A , the triangle $F E H$ is equal to the quadrangle $F G H D$.

344.—Proposition.—If two straight lines cut each other, as $F G$ and $H J$ (*Fig. 259*), the vertical, or opposite angles, A and C , are equal. Thus, $F E$, standing upon $H J$, forms the angles B and C , which together amount (*Art. 333*) to two right angles; in the same manner, the angles A and B form two right angles; since the angles A and B are equal to B and C , take the same amount, the angle B , from each pair, and what remains of one pair is equal to what remains of the other; therefore, the angle A is equal to the angle C . The same can be proved of the opposite angles B and D .

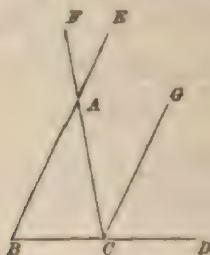


FIG. 260.

345.—Proposition.—The three angles of any triangle are equal to two right angles. Let $A B C$ (*Fig. 260*) be a given triangle, with its sides extended to F , E and D , and the line $C G$ drawn parallel to $B E$. As $C G$ is parallel to $B E$, the angle at H is equal (*Art. 331*) to the angle at L ; as the lines $F C$ and $B E$ cut one another at A , the opposite angles at A and N are equal (*Art. 334*); as the angle at N is equal (*Art. 331*) to the angle at J , the angle at J is equal to the angle at M ; therefore, the three angles meeting at C are equal to the three angles of the triangle $A B C$; and since the three angles at C are equal (*Art. 333*) to two right angles, the three angles of the triangle $A B C$ must likewise be equal to two right angles. Any triangle can be subjected to the same proof.

346.—Corollary.—Hence, if one angle of a triangle be a right angle, the other two angles amount to just one right angle.

347.—Corollary.—If one angle of a triangle be a right angle and the two remaining angles are equal to one another, these are each equal to half a right angle.

348.—Corollary.—If any two angles of a triangle amount to a right angle, the remaining one is a right angle.

349.—Corollary.—If any two angles of a triangle are together equal to the remaining angle, that remaining angle is a right angle.

350.—Corollary.—If any two angles of a triangle are each equal to two thirds of a right angle, the remaining angle is also equal to two thirds of a right angle.

351.—Corollary.—Hence, the angles of an equilateral triangle are each equal to two thirds of a right angle.

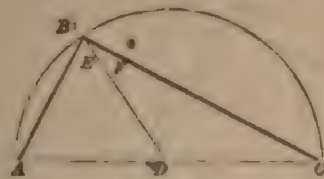


FIG. 261.

352.—Proposition.—If from the extremities of the diameter of a semicircle two straight lines be drawn to any point in the circumference, the angle formed by them at that point will be a right angle. Let ABC (Fig. 261) be a given semicircle; and AB and BC lines drawn from the extremities of the diameter AC to the given point B ; the angle formed at that point by these lines is a right angle. Join the point B and the centre D ; the lines DA , DB , and DC , being radii of the same circle, are equal; the angle at A is, therefore, equal (*Art.* 338) to the angle at E ; also, the angle at C is, for the same reason, equal to the angle at F ; the angle ABC , being equal to the angles at A and C taken together, must, therefore (*Art.* 349), be a right angle.

353.—Proposition.—The square on the hypotenuse of a right-angled triangle is equal to the squares on the two re-

maining sides. Let ABC (Fig. 262) be a given right-angled triangle, having a square formed on each of its sides; then the square BE is equal to the squares HC and GB taken together. This can be proved by showing that the parallelogram BL is equal to the square GB ; and that the parallelogram CL is equal to the square HC . The angle CBD is a right angle, and the angle ABF is a right angle; add to each of these the angle ABC ; then the angle FBC will evidently be equal (Art. 336) to the angle ABD ; the triangle FBC and the square GB , being both upon the same base, FB , and between the same parallels, FB and GC , the square GB is equal (Art. 342) to twice the triangle FBC ; the triangle ABD and the parallelogram BL , being both upon the same

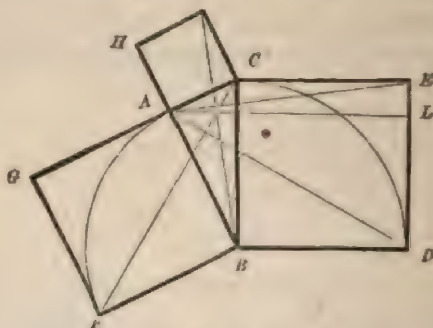


FIG. 262.

base, BD , and between the same parallels, BD and AL , the parallelogram BL is equal to twice the triangle ABD ; the triangles, FBC and ABD , being equal to one another (Art. 337), the square GB is equal to the parallelogram BL , either being equal to twice the triangle FBC or ABD . The method of proving HC equal to CL is exactly similar—thus proving the square BE equal to the squares HC and GB , taken together.

This problem, which is the 47th of the First Book of Euclid, is said to have been demonstrated first by Pythagoras. It is stated (but the story is of doubtful authority) that as a thank-offering for its discovery he sacrificed a hundred oxen to the gods. From this circumstance it is sometimes called the *hecatomb* problem. It is of great value in

the exact sciences, more especially in Mensuration and Astronomy, in which many otherwise intricate calculations are by it made easy of solution.

354.—Proposition.—In an equilateral octagon the semi-diagonal of a circumscribed square, having its sides coincident with four of the sides of the octagon, equals the distance along a side of the square from its corner to the more remote angle of the octagon occurring on that side of the square. Let *Fig. 263* represent the square referred to; in which *O* is the centre of each; then *AO* equals *AD*. To prove this, it need only be shown that the triangle *AOD* is an isosceles triangle having its sides *AO* and *AD* equal. The



FIG. 263.

octagon being equilateral, it is also equiangular, therefore the angles BCO , ECO , ADO , etc., are all equal. Of the right-angled triangle FEC , FC and FE being equal, the two angles FEC and FCE , are equal (*Art. 338*), and are therefore (*Art. 347*) each equal to half a right angle. In like manner it may be shown that FAB and FBA are also each equal to half a right angle. And since FEC and FAB are equal angles, therefore the lines EC and AB are parallel (*Art. 331*), and hence the angles ECO and AOD are equal. These being equal, and the angles ECO and ADO being equal by construction, as before shown, therefore the angles AOD and ADO are equal, and consequently the lines AO and AD are equal. (*Art. 338*.)

355.—Proposition.—An angle at the circumference of a circle is measured by half the arc that subtends it; that is, the angle ABC (*Fig. 264*) is equal to half the angle ADC . Through the centre D draw the diameter BE . The triangle ABD is an isosceles triangle, AD and BD being radii, and therefore equal; hence, the two angles at F and G are equal (*Art. 338*), and the sum of these two angles is equal to the angle at H (*Art. 345*), and therefore one of them, G , is equal to the half of H . The angles at H and at G (or ABE) are both subtended by the arc AE . Now, since the angle



FIG. 264.

at H is measured by the arc AE , which subtends it, therefore the half of the angle at H would be measured by the half of the arc AE ; and since G is equal to the half of H , therefore G or ABE is measured by the half of the arc AE . It may be shown in like manner that the angle ECB is measured by half the arc EC , and hence it follows that the angle ABC is measured by half the arc, AC , that subtends it.

356.—Proposition.—In a circle all the inscribed angles, A , B , and C (*Fig. 265*), which stand upon the same side of the

chord DE are equal. For each angle is measured by half the arc DFE (*Art.* 355). Hence the angles are all equal.

357.—Corollary.—Equal chords, in the same circle, subtend equal angles.

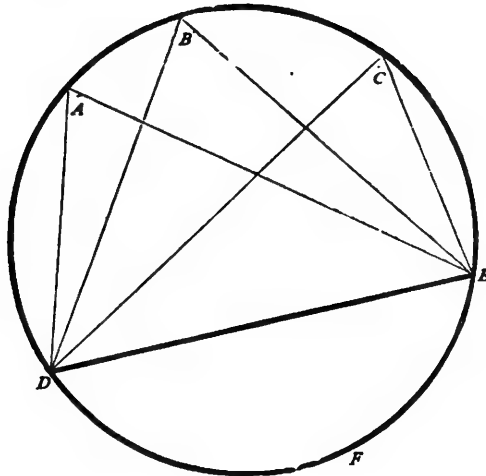


FIG. 265.

358.—Proposition.—The angle formed by a chord and tangent is equal to any inscribed angle in the opposite segment.

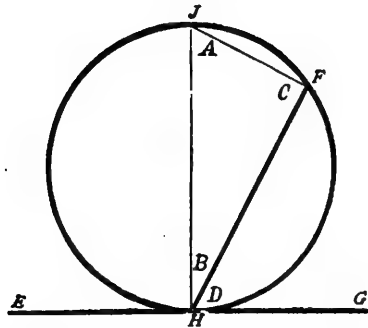


FIG. 266.

segment of the circle; that is, the angle D (*Fig.* 266) equals the angle A . Let HF be the chord, and EG the tangent; draw the diameter JH ; then JHG is a right angle, also JFH is

a right angle. (*Art.* 352.) The angles A and B together equal a right angle (*Art.* 346); also the angles B and D together equal a right angle (equal to the angle $\mathcal{F}HG$); therefore, the sum of A and B equals the sum of B and D . From each of these two equals, taking the like quantity B , the remainders A and D are equal. Thus, it is proved for the angle at A , it is also true for any other angle; for, since all other inscribed angles on that side of the chord line HF equal the angle A (*Art.* 356), therefore the angle formed by a chord and tangent equals any angle in the opposite segment of the circle. This being proved for the acute angle D , it is also true for the obtuse angle EHF ; for, from any point, K (*Fig.* 267) in the arc HKF , draw lines to \mathcal{F} , F and H ; now, if it can

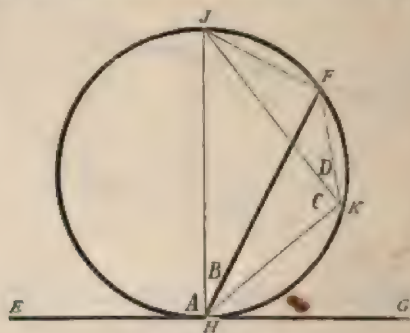


FIG. 267.

be proved that the angle EHF equals the angle FKH , the entire proposition is proved, for the angle FKH equals any of all the inscribed angles that can be drawn on that side of the chord. (*Art.* 356.) To prove, then, that EHF equals HKF : the angle EHF equals the sum of the angles A and B ; also the angle HKF equals the sum of the angles C and D . The angles B and D , being inscribed angles on the same chord, $\mathcal{F}F$, are equal. The angles C and A , being right angles (*Art.* 352), are likewise equal. Now, since A equals C and B equals D , therefore the sum of A and B equals the sum of C and D —or the angle EHF equals the angle HKF .

359. — Proposition. — The areas of parallelograms of equal altitude are to each other as the bases of the parallelo-

grams. In *Fig. 268* the areas of the rectangles $ABCD$ and $BEDF$ are to each other as the bases CD and DF . For, putting the two bases in form of a fraction and reducing this fraction to its lowest terms, then the numerator and denominator of the reduced fraction will be the numbers of equal parts into which the two bases respectively may be divided. For example, let the two given bases be 12 and 9 feet respectively, then $\frac{12}{9} = \frac{4}{3}$, and this gives four parts for the larger base and three parts for the smaller one. So, in *Fig. 268*, divide the base CD into four equal parts, and the base DF into three equal parts; then the length of any one of the parts in CD will equal the length of any one of the parts in DF . Now, parallel with AC , draw lines from each point of division to the line AE . These lines will evidently divide the whole figure into seven equal parts, four of them occupy-

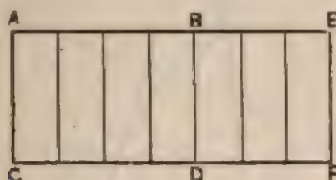


FIG. 268.

ing the area $ABCD$, and three of them occupying the area $BEDF$. Now it is evident, that the areas of the two rectangles are in proportion as the number of parts respectively into which the base-lines are divided, or that—

$$ABCD : BEDF :: CD : DF.$$

The areas in this particular case are as 4 to 3. But in general the proportion will be as the lengths of the bases. Thus the proposition is proved in regard to rectangles, but it has been shown (*Art. 341*) that all parallelograms of equal base and altitude are equal. Therefore the proposition is proved in regard to parallelograms generally, including rectangles.

360.—Proposition.—Triangles of equal altitude are to each other as their bases. It has been shown (*Art. 359*) that

parallelograms of equal altitude are in proportion as their bases, and it has also been shown (*Art.* 342) that of a triangle and parallelogram, when of equal base and altitude, the parallelogram is equal to double the triangle. Therefore triangles of equal altitude are to each other as their bases.

361.—Proposition.—Homologous triangles have their corresponding sides in proportion. Let the line CD (*Fig.* 269) be drawn parallel with AB . Then the angles ECD and EAB are equal (*Art.* 331), also the angles EDC and EBA are equal. Therefore the triangles ECD and EAB are homologous, or have their corresponding angles equal.

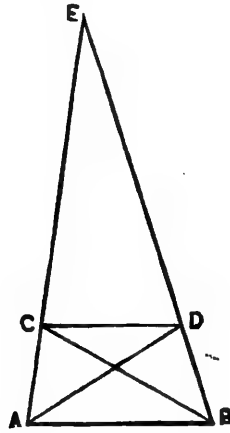


FIG. 269.

For, join C to B , and A to D , then the triangles ACD and BCD , standing on the same base, CD , and between the same parallels, CD and AB , are equal in area. To each of these equals join the common area CDE , and the sums ADE and BCE will be equal. The triangles CDE and ADE , having the same altitude, are to each other as their bases CE and AE (*Art.* 360), or—

$$CDE : ADE :: CE : AE.$$

Also the triangles CDE and BCE , having the same altitude, are to each other as their bases DE and BE , or—

$$CDE : BCE :: DE : BE.$$

And, since the triangles ADE and BCE are equal, as before shown, therefore, substituting in the last proportion ADE for BCE , we have—

$$CDE : ADE :: DE : BE.$$

The first two factors here being identical with the first two in the first proportion above, we have, comparing the two proportions—

$$CE : AE :: DE : BE;$$

or, we have the corresponding sides of one triangle, CDE , in proportion to the corresponding sides of the other, ADE .

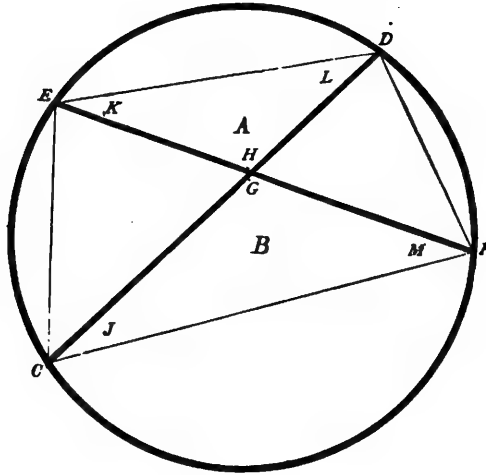


FIG. 270.

362.—Proposition.—Two chords, EF and CD (Fig. 270), intersecting, the parallelogram or rectangle formed by the two parts of one is equal to the rectangle formed by the two parts of the other. That is, the product of CG multiplied by GD is equal to the product of EG multiplied by GF . The triangle A is similar to the triangle B , because it is corresponding angles. The angle H equals the angle G (Art. 344); the angle at F equals the angle at K , because they stand upon the same chord, DF (Art. 356); for the same

reason the angle M equals the angle L , for each stands upon the same chord, EC . Therefore, the triangle A having the same angles as the triangle B , the length of the sides of one are in like proportion as the length of the sides in the other (*Art.* 361). So—

$$CG : EG :: GF : GD.$$

Hence, as the product of the means equals the product of the extremes (*Art.* 373), EG multiplied by GF is equal to CG multiplied by GD .

363.—Proposition.—If the sides of a quadrangle are bisected, and lines drawn joining the points of bisection in the adjacent sides, these lines will form a parallelogram.

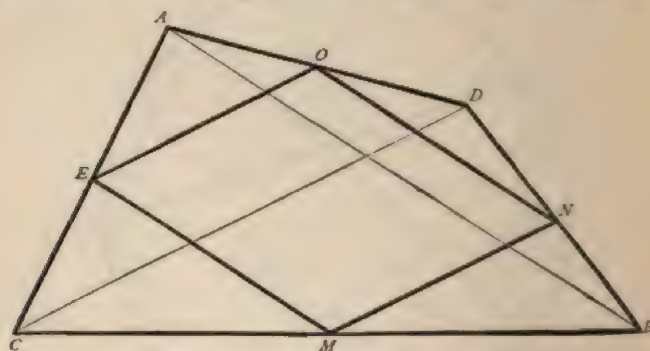


FIG. 271.

Draw the diagonals AB and CD (*Fig.* 271). It will here be perceived that the two triangles AEO and ACD are homologous, having like angles and proportionate sides. Two of the sides of one triangle lie coincident with the two corresponding sides of the other triangle, therefore the contained angles between these sides in each triangle are identical. By construction, these corresponding sides are proportionate; AC being equal to twice AE , and AD being equal to twice AO ; therefore the remaining sides are proportionate, CD being equal to twice EO , hence the remaining corresponding angles are equal. Since, then, the angles AEO and ACD are equal, therefore the line EO is parallel with

diagonal CD —so, likewise, the line MN is parallel to the diagonal, CD . If, therefore, these two lines, EO and MN , are parallel to the same line, CD , they must be parallel to each other. In the same manner the lines ON and EM are proved parallel to the diagonal AB , and to each other: therefore the inscribed figure $MEON$ is a parallelogram. It may be remarked, also, that the parallelogram so formed contains just one half the area of the circumscribing quadrangle.

SECTION VII.—RATIO, OR PROPORTION.

364.—Merchandise.—A carpenter buys 9 pounds of nails for 45 cents. He afterwards buys 87 pounds at the same rate. How much did he pay for them?

An answer to this question is readily found by multiplying the 87 pounds by 45 cents, the price of the 9 pounds, and dividing the product, 3915, by 9; the quotient, 435 cents, is the answer to the question.

365.—The “Rule of Three.”—The process by which this problem is solved is known as the Rule of Three, or Proportion.

In cases of this kind there are three quantities given, to find a fourth. Previous to working the question it is usual to make a statement, placing the three given quantities in such order that the quantity which is of like kind with the answer shall occupy the second place; the quantity upon which this depends for its value is put in the first place, and the remaining quantity, which is of like kind with that in the first place, is assigned to the third place.

When thus arranged, the second and third quantities are multiplied together and the product is divided by the first quantity; the quotient, the answer to the question, is a fourth quantity. These four quantities are related to each other in this manner, namely: the first is in proportion to the second as the third is to the fourth; or, taking the quantities of the given example, and putting them in a formal statement with the customary marks between them, we have—

$$9 : 45 :: 87 : 435,$$

which is read: 9 is to 45 as 87 is to 435; or, 9 is in proportion to 45 as 87 is to 435; or, 9 bears the same relation to 45 as 87 does to 435.

366.—Couples: Antecedent, Consequent.—These four quantities are termed *Proportionals*, and may be divided into *two couples*; the first and second quantities forming one couple, and the third and fourth the other couple. Of each couple the first quantity is termed the *antecedent*, and the last the *consequent*. Thus 9 is an antecedent and 45 its consequent; so, also, 87 is an antecedent and 435 its consequent.

367.—Equal Couples: an Equation.—These four quantities may be put in form thus:

$$\frac{45}{9} = \frac{435}{87}$$

Each couple is here stated as a fraction: each has its antecedent beneath its consequent, and the two couples are separated by a sign, two short parallel lines, signifying equality. This is an *equation*, and is read thus: 45 divided by 9 is equal to 435 divided by 87; or, as ordinary fractions: 5 ninths are equal to 435 eighty-sevenths.

368.—Equality of Ratios.—Each couple is also termed a *ratio*, and the two the Equality of Ratios. Thus the ratio $\frac{45}{9}$ is equal to the ratio $\frac{435}{87}$. If the division indicated in these two ratios be actually performed, the equality between the two will at once be apparent, for the quotient in each case is 5. The resolution of each couple into its simplest form by actual division is shown thus:

$$\frac{45}{9} = 5;$$

$$\frac{435}{87} = 5.$$

These are read: 45 divided by 9 equals 5; and 435 divided by 87 equals 5.

369.—Equals Multiplied by Equals Give Equals.—If two equal quantities be each multiplied by a given quantity, the

two products will be equal. For example, the fractions $\frac{1}{2}$ and $\frac{2}{4}$ are each equal to $\frac{1}{2}$, and are therefore equal to each other. If these two equal quantities be each multiplied by any given number, say, for example, by 4, we shall have 4 times $\frac{1}{2}$ equals 2 , and 4 times $\frac{2}{4}$ equals 2 ; these products, 2 and 2 are each equal to 2, and therefore equal to each other.

370.—Multiplying an Equation.—The quantity on each side of the sign = is called a *member* of the equation. If each member be multiplied by the same quantity, the equality of the two members is not thereby disturbed (*Art.* 369); therefore, if the two members of the equation $\frac{45}{9} = \frac{435}{87}$ (*Art.* 367) be each multiplied by 87, or be modified thus:

$$\frac{45 \times 87}{9} = \frac{435 \times 87}{87};$$

in which \times , the sign for multiplication, indicates that the quantities between which it is placed are to be multiplied together; this addition to each member of the equation does not destroy the equality; the members are still equal, though considerably enlarged. The equality may be easily tested by performing the operations indicated in the equation. For example: for the first member, we have 45 times 87 equals 3915, and this divided by 9 equals 435. Again, for the second member we have 435 times 87 equals 37845, and this divided by 87 equals 435, the same result as that for the first member. Thus the multiplication has not interfered with the equality of the members.

371.—Multiplying and Dividing one Member of an Equation: Cancelling.—If a quantity be multiplied by a given number, and the product be divided by the same given number, the quotient will equal the original quantity. For example: if 8 be multiplied by 3, the product will be 24; then if this product be divided by 3, the quotient will be 8, the original quantity. Thus the value of a quantity is not

changed by multiplying it by a number, provided it be also divided by the same number.

From this, also, we learn that the value of a quantity which is required to be multiplied and divided by the same number will not be changed if the multiplication and division be both omitted; one cancels the other. Therefore the number 87, appearing in the second member of the equation in the last article both as a multiplier and a divisor, may be omitted without destroying the equality of the two members. The equation thus treated will be reduced to—

$$\frac{45 \times 87}{9} = 435.$$

This expression is read: the product of 45 times 87 divided by 9 equals 435. It will be observed that we have here the four terms of the problem in *Art.* 365, three of them in the first member, and the fourth, the answer to the problem, in the second member.

372.—Transferring a Factor.—Each of the four quantities in the aforesaid equation is termed a *factor*. Comparing the equation of the last article with that of *Art.* 43, it appears that the two are alike excepting that the factor 87 has been transferred from one member of the equation to the other, and that, whereas it was before a divisor, it has now become a multiplier. From this we learn that a factor may be transferred from one member of an equation to the other, provided that in the transfer its relative position to the horizontal line above or below it be also changed; that is, if, before the transfer, it be below the line, it must be put above the line in the other member; or, if above the line, it must be put below, in the other member. For example: in the equation of the last article let the factor 9 be removed to the second member of the equation. It stands as a divisor in the first member; therefore, by the rule, it must appear as a multiplier after the transfer; or—

$$45 \times 87 = 9 \times 435;$$

which is read, 45 times 87 equals 9 times 435. By actually performing the operations here indicated, we find that each member gives the same product, 3915; thus proving that the equality of the two members was not interfered with by the transfer.

373.—Equality of Products: Means and Extremes.—In *Art.* 366, the four factors are put in the usual form of four proportionals. A comparison of these with the four factors as they appear in the equation in the last article, shows that the first member contains the second and third of the four proportionals, and the second member contains the first and the fourth; or, the first contains what are termed the *means*, and the second, the *extremes*. From this we learn that in any set of four proportionals, the product of the means equals the product of the extremes. As for example, $\frac{3}{2} = 1\frac{1}{2}$; so, also, $\frac{6}{4} = 1\frac{1}{2}$, an equality of ratios: hence the four factors, 2, 3, 4, 6, are four proportionals, and may be put thus:

Extreme, mean, mean, extreme.

$$2 : 3 :: 4 : 6$$

and, as above stated, the product of the means ($3 \times 4 =$) 12, equals the product of the extremes ($2 \times 6 =$) 12.

374.—Homologous Triangles Proportionate.—The discussion of the subject of Ratios has thus far been confined to its relations with the mercantile problem of *Art.* 364. The rules of proportion or the equality of ratios apply equally to questions other than those of a mercantile character. They apply alike to all questions in which quantities of any kind are comparable. For example, in geometry, lines, surfaces, and solids bear a certain fixed relation to one another, and are, therefore, fit subjects for the rules of proportion. It is shown, in *Art.* 361, that the corresponding sides of homologous triangles are in proportion to one another. Hence, when, of two similar triangles, two corresponding sides and one other side are given, then by the equality of ratios the side corresponding to this other side

may be computed. For example: in two triangles, such as ECD and EAB (*Fig. 269*), having their corresponding angles equal, let the side EC , in the triangle ECD , equal 12 feet, and the corresponding side EA , in the triangle EAB , equal 16 feet, and the side ED , of triangle ECD , equal 14 feet. Now, having these three sides given, how can we find the fourth? Putting them in proportion, we have, as in *Art. 361*—

$$CE : AE :: DE : BE;$$

and, substituting for the known sides, their dimensions, we have—

$$12 : 16 :: 14 : BE;$$

and, by *Art. 373*—

$$12 \times BE = 16 \times 14.$$

Dividing each member by 12, gives—

$$BE = \frac{16 \times 14}{12}.$$

Performing the multiplication and division indicated, we have—

$$BE = \frac{224}{12} = 18\frac{1}{3}.$$

Thus we have the fourth side equal to $18\frac{1}{3}$ feet.

375.—The Steelyard.—An example of four proportionals may also be found in the relation existing between the arms of a lever and the weights suspended at their ends. A familiar example of a lever is seen in the common *steelyard* used by merchants in weighing goods. This is a bar, AB , of steel, arranged as in *Fig. 272*, with hooks and links, and a suspended platform to carry R , the article to be weighed; and with a weight P , suspended by a link at B , from the bar AB , along which the weight P is movable.

The entire load is sustained by links attached to the fulcrum, or point of suspension C . The apparatus is in equilibrium without R and P . In weighing any article, R , the

weight P is moved along the bar BC until the weight just balances the load, or until the bar AB will remain in a horizontal position. If the weight P be too far from the fulcrum C the end of the bar B will fall, but if it be too near it will rise.

376.—The Lever Exemplified by the Steelyard.—To exemplify the principle of the lever, let the bar AB (Fig. 272) be balanced accurately with the scale platform, but without the weights R and P . Then, placing the article R upon the platform, move the weight P along the beam until there is an equilibrium. Suppose the distances AC and BC are found to be 2 and 40 inches respectively, and suppose

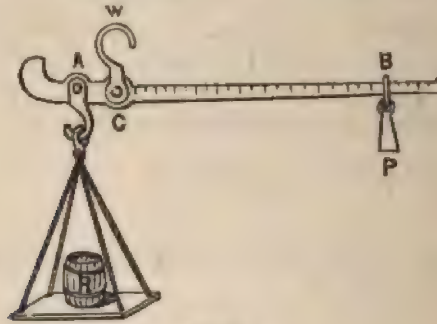


FIG. 272.

the weight P to equal 5 pounds, what at this point will be the weight of R ? By trial we shall find that $R = 100$ pounds. Again, if a portion of R be removed, then the weight P would have to be moved along the bar BC to produce an equilibrium; suppose it be moved until its distance from C be found to be 20 inches, then the weight of R would be found to be 50 pounds, or—

$$R = 50 \text{ pounds.}$$

Again, suppose a part of the weight taken from R be restored, and the weight P , on being moved to a point required for equilibrium, be found to measure 30 inches from C , then we shall find that—

$$R = 75 \text{ pounds.}$$

us when—

$$BC = 40, R = 100; \text{ or, } \frac{100}{40} = 2.5;$$

$$BC = 30, R = 75; \text{ or, } \frac{75}{30} = 2.5;$$

$$BC = 20, R = 50; \text{ or, } \frac{50}{20} = 2.5;$$

showing an equality of ratios; or, in general, BC is in proportion to R , or—

$$BC : R.$$

If, instead of moving P along BC , its position be permanent, and the weight P be reduced as needed to produce equilibrium with the various articles, R , which in turn may be put upon the scale; then we shall find that if when the weight P equals 5 pounds the article R equals 100, and there is an equilibrium, then when—

$$P = \frac{9}{10} \times 5 = 4.5, R \text{ will equal } \frac{9}{10} \times 100 = 90;$$

$$P = \frac{8}{10} \times 5 = 4, R \text{ will equal } \frac{8}{10} \times 100 = 80;$$

$$P = \frac{7}{10} \times 5 = 3.5, R \text{ will equal } \frac{7}{10} \times 100 = 70;$$

and so on for other proportions, and in every case we shall have the ratio $\frac{R}{P}$ equal 20, thus—

$$\frac{R}{P} = \frac{90}{4.5} = 20.$$

$$\frac{R}{P} = \frac{80}{4} = 20;$$

$$\frac{R}{P} = \frac{70}{3.5} = 20.$$

Thus we have an equality of ratios in comparing the weights.

Again, if the weight P and the article R be permanent in weight, and the distances AC , BC be made to vary, then if there be an equilibrium when AC is 2 and BC is 40, we shall find that when—

$$AC = \frac{8}{10} \times 2 = 1.6; \quad BC \text{ will equal } \frac{8}{10} \times 40 = 32,$$

$$AC = \frac{6}{10} \times 2 = 1.2; \quad BC \text{ will equal } \frac{6}{10} \times 40 = 24;$$

$$AC = \frac{4}{10} \times 2 = 0.8; \quad BC \text{ will equal } \frac{4}{10} \times 40 = 16;$$

and so on for other proportions, and in every case we shall

have the ratio $\frac{BC}{AC} = 20$; thus—

$$\frac{BC}{AC} = \frac{32}{1.6} = 20;$$

$$\frac{BC}{AC} = \frac{24}{1.2} = 20;$$

$$\frac{BC}{AC} = \frac{16}{0.8} = 20;$$

producing thus an equality of ratios in comparing the arms of the lever. From these experiments we have found, in comparing the article weighed with an arm of the lever, the constant ratio $BC : R$, and when comparing the weights we have found the constant ratio $P : R$. Again, in comparing the arms of the lever, we find the constant ratio $AC : BC$. Putting two of these couples in proportion, we have—

$$AC : BC :: P : R.$$

Hence (*Art.* 373) we have—

$$AC \times R = BC \times P.$$

Dividing both members by $A C$, we have—

$$R = \frac{B C \times P}{A C}.$$

In a steelyard the short arm, $A C$, and the weight, or poise, P , are unvarying ; therefore we have—

$$R = B C \times \frac{P}{A C};$$

Or, when $\frac{P}{A C}$ is constant, we have—

$$R : B C.$$

377.—The Lever Principle Demonstrated.—The relation between the weights and their arms of leverage may be demonstrated as follows : *

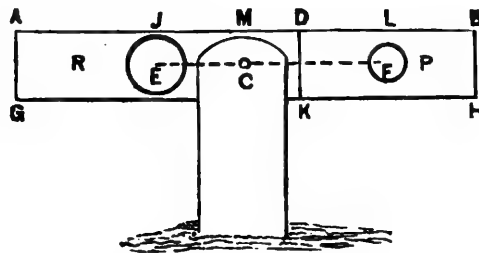


FIG. 273.

Let $A B G H$, *Fig. 273*, represent a beam of homogeneous material, of equal sectional area throughout, and suspended upon an axle or pin at C , its centre. This beam is evidently in a state of equilibrium. Of the part of the beam $A D G K$, let E be the centre of gravity ; and of the remaining part, $D B K H$, let F be the centre of gravity.

If the weight of the material in $A D G K$ be concentrated at E , its centre of gravity, and the weight of the material in

* The principle upon which this demonstration is based may be found in an article written by the author and published in the *Mathematical Monthly*, Cambridge, U. S., for 1858, p. 77.

$DBKH$ be concentrated in K , its centre of gravity, the state of equilibrium will not be interfered with. Therefore let the ball R be equal in weight to the part $ADGK$, and the ball P equal to the weight of the part $DBKH$; and let these two balls be connected by the rod EF . Then these two balls and rod, supported at C , will evidently be in a state of equilibrium (the rod EF being supposed to be without weight).

Now, it is proposed to show that R is to P as CF is to CE . This can be proved; for, since R equals the area $ADGK$ and P equals the area $DBKH$, therefore R is in proportion to AD , as P is to DB (*Art.* 359); or, taking the halves of these lines, R is in proportion to AF as P is to LB .

Also, FL equals half the length of the beam; for FD is the half of AD , and DL is the half of DB ; thus these two parts ($FD + DL$) equal the half of the two parts ($AD + DB$); or, FL equals the half of AB ; or, we have—

$$FD = \frac{AD}{2}; \quad DL = \frac{DB}{2}.$$

Adding these two equations together, we have—

$$FD + DL = \frac{AD}{2} + \frac{DB}{2} = \frac{AD + DB}{2}.$$

Now, $FD + DL = FL$, and $AD + DB = AB$; therefore,
 $FL = \frac{AB}{2}.$

Thus we have $AM = FL$. From each of these equals take FM , common to both, then the remainders, AF and ML , will be equal; therefore, $AF = CL$.

We have also $MB = FL$. From each of these equals take ML , common to both, and the remainders, FM and LB , will be equal; therefore, $LB = EC$. As was above shown—

$$R : AF :: P : LB.$$

Substituting for A J and L B their values, as just found, we have—

$$R : CF :: P : EC;$$

From which we have (*Art.* 373)—

$$P \times CF = R \times EC.$$

Thus it is demonstrated that the product of one weight into its arm of leverage, is equal to the product of the other weight into its arm of leverage: a proposition which is known as the law of the lever.

378.—Any One of Four Proportionals may be Found.
—Any three of four proportionals being given, the fourth may be found; for either one of the four factors may be made to stand alone; thus, taking the equation of the last article, if we divide both members by CF (*Art.* 371), we have—

$$\frac{P \times CF}{CF} = \frac{R \times EC}{CF}.$$

In the first member CF , in both numerator and denominator, cancel each other (*Art.* 371), therefore—

$$P = \frac{R \times EC}{CF};$$

so likewise we may obtain—

$$R = \frac{P \times CF}{EC}$$

$$CF = \frac{R \times EC}{P}$$

$$EC = \frac{P \times CF}{R}.$$

SECTION VIII.—FRACTIONS.

379.—A Fraction Defined.—As a fracture is a break or division into parts, so a fraction is literally a piece broken off; a part of the whole.

The figures which are generally used to express a fraction show what portion of the whole, or of an integer, the fraction is: for example, let the line AB , (*Fig. 274*), be divided into five equal parts, then the line AC , containing three of those parts, will be three fifths of the whole line AB , and may be expressed by the figures 3 and 5, placed thus, $\frac{3}{5}$, which is known as a fraction and is read, *three fifths*. The number 5 *below* the line denotes the number of parts into which an integer or unit, AB , is supposed to be divided: it

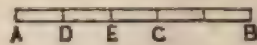


FIG. 274.

is therefore called the *denominator*, and expresses the denomination or kind, whether fifths, sixths, ninths, or any number, into which a unit is supposed to be divided. The number 3 above the line, denoting the number of parts contained in the fraction, is termed the *numerator*, and expresses the number of parts taken, as 2, 3, 4, or any other number.

380.—Graphical Representation of Fractions: Effect of Multiplication.—In *Fig. 275*, let the line AB be divided into three equal parts; the line CD into six equal parts; the line EF into nine equal parts; the line GH into twelve equal parts, and the line JK into fifteen equal parts. The lines AB , CD , EF , GH , and JK , being all of equal length.

Then the parts of these lines, AL , CM , EN , etc., may be expressed respectively by the fractions $\frac{1}{3}$, $\frac{2}{6}$, $\frac{3}{9}$, $\frac{4}{12}$ and $\frac{5}{15}$. In each case the figure below the line, as, 3, 6, 9, 12, or 15, expresses the number of parts into which the whole is divided, and the figure above the line, as 1, 2, 3, 4, or 5, the

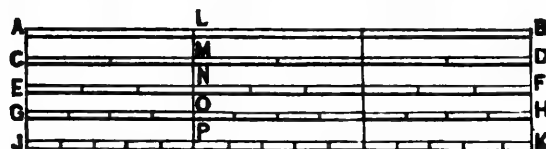


FIG. 275.

number of the parts taken; and, as the lines AL , CM , EN , etc., are all equal to each other, therefore these fractions are all equal to each other. If the numerator and denominator of the first fraction be each multiplied by 2, the products will equal the numerator and denominator of the second fraction; thus—

$$\frac{1}{3} \times 2 = \frac{2}{6};$$

so, also,
$$\frac{1}{3} \times 3 = \frac{3}{9};$$

and
$$\frac{1}{3} \times 4 = \frac{4}{12};$$

and
$$\frac{1}{3} \times 5 = \frac{5}{15}.$$

Thus it is shown that when the numerator and denominator of a fraction are each multiplied by the same factor, the product forms a new fraction which is of equal value with the original.

In like manner we have, $\frac{2}{8}$, $\frac{3}{12}$, $\frac{4}{16}$, $\frac{5}{20}$, etc., each equal to one fourth; and which may be found by multiplying the numerator and denominator of $\frac{1}{4}$ successively by 2, 3, 4, 5, etc.

381.—Form of Fraction Changed by Division.—By an operation the reverse of that in the last article, we may reduce several equal fractions to *one* of equal value. Thus, if in each we divide the numerator and denominator by the same number, we reduce it to a fraction of equal value, but with smaller factors.

For example, taking the fractions of the last article, $\frac{2}{6}$, $\frac{3}{9}$, $\frac{4}{12}$, $\frac{5}{15}$, let each be divided by a number which will divide both numerator and denominator without a remainder.*

$$\begin{array}{ll} \text{Thus,} & \frac{2 \div 2}{6 \div 2} = \frac{1}{3}, \quad \frac{3 \div 3}{9 \div 3} = \frac{1}{3} \\ & \frac{4 \div 4}{12 \div 4} = \frac{1}{3}, \quad \frac{5 \div 5}{15 \div 5} = \frac{1}{3} \end{array}$$

As these fractions are shown (*Art* 380) to be equal, and as the operation of dividing each factor by a common number produces quotients which in each case form the same fraction, $\frac{1}{3}$, we therefore conclude that the numerator and denominator of a fraction may be divided by a common number without changing the value of the fraction.

382.—Improper Fractions.—The fractions $\frac{4}{3}$, $\frac{5}{2}$, $\frac{7}{3}$, etc., all fractions which have the numerator larger than the denominator are termed *improper* fractions. They are not improper arithmetically, but they are so named because it is an improper use of language to call that a *part* which is greater than the whole.

As expressions of this kind, however, are subject to the same rules as those which are fractions proper, it is customary to include them all under the technical term of *fractions*. Expressions like these—all expressions in which one number is separated by a horizontal line from another number below it, or one set of numbers is thus separated from another set below it—may be called fractions, and are always to be understood as indicating division, or that the quantity above the line is to be divided by the quantity below the line.

* Division is indicated by this sign \div , which is read "divided by."

Thus, $\frac{9}{3}$, $\frac{17}{5}$, $\frac{24}{3}$, $\frac{3 \times 8 \times 4}{2 \times 12}$, $\frac{17 \times 82}{125}$, etc., are all fractions, technically, although each may be greater than unity. And it is understood in each case that the operation of division is required. Thus, $\frac{9}{3} = 3$, $\frac{24}{3} = 8$, $\frac{3 \times 8 \times 4}{2 \times 12} = 4$. When the division cannot be made without a remainder, then the fraction, by cutting the numerator into two, may be separated into two parts, one of which may be exactly divided, and the other will be a fraction proper. Thus, the fraction $\frac{17}{5}$ is equal to

$\frac{15}{5} + \frac{2}{5}$ (for $15 \div 5 = 3$); and since $\frac{15}{5}$ equals 3, therefore,

$\frac{17}{5} = \frac{15}{5} + \frac{2}{5} = 3 + \frac{2}{5} = 3\frac{2}{5}$. So, likewise, the fraction

$$\frac{17 \times 82}{125} = \frac{1394}{125} = \frac{1375}{125} + \frac{19}{125} = 11 + \frac{19}{125} = 11\frac{19}{125}.$$

383.—Reduction of Mixed Numbers to Fractions.—By an operation the reverse of that in the last article, a given mixed number (a whole number and fraction) can be put into the form of an improper fraction.

This is done by multiplying the whole number by the denominator of the fraction, the product being the numerator of a fraction equal in value to the whole number; the denominator of this fraction being the same as that of the given fraction. The numerator of this fraction being added to the numerator of the given fraction, the sum will be the numerator of the required improper fraction, the denominator of which is the same as that of the given fraction. For example, the required numerator for—

$$2\frac{1}{3}, \text{ is } 2 \times 3 + 1 = 7. \text{ So } 2\frac{1}{3} = \frac{7}{3}.$$

$$2\frac{1}{4}, \text{ is } 2 \times 4 + 1 = 9. \text{ So } 2\frac{1}{4} = \frac{9}{4}.$$

$$3\frac{2}{5}, \text{ is } 3 \times 5 + 2 = 17. \text{ So } 3\frac{2}{5} = \frac{17}{5}.$$

384.—Division Indicated by the Factors put as a Fraction.—Factors placed in the form of a fraction as $\frac{3}{5}$, $\frac{5}{3}$, $\frac{120}{75}$ or

$\frac{820}{41}$ indicate division (*Art.* 382); the denominator (the factor below the line) being the divisor, and the numerator (the factor above the line) the dividend, while the value of the fraction is the quotient. Thus of the fraction, $\frac{820}{41} = 20$. 41 is the divisor, 820 the dividend, and 20 the quotient. From this we learn that division may always be indicated by placing the factors in the form of a fraction, so that the divisor shall form the denominator and the dividend the numerator.

385. — Addition of Fractions having Like Denominators.—Let it be required to add the fractions $\frac{1}{5}$ and $\frac{2}{5}$. By

referring to *Art.* 379 we see that AD (*Fig.* 274), is one of the five parts into which the whole line AB is divided; it is, therefore, $\frac{1}{5}$. We also see that DC contains two of the five

parts; it is, therefore, $\frac{2}{5}$. We also see that $AD + DC = AC$,

which contains three of the five parts, or $AC = \frac{3}{5}$ of AB .

We therefore conclude that $\frac{1}{5} + \frac{2}{5} = \frac{3}{5}$. In this operation it is seen that the denominator is not changed, and that the resultant fraction has for a numerator a number equal to the sum of the numerators of the fractions which were required to be added.

By this it is shown that to *add fractions* we simply take the sum of the numerators for the new numerator, making the denominator of the resultant fraction the same as that of the fractions to be added. For example: What is the sum of the fractions $\frac{1}{9}$, $\frac{3}{9}$ and $\frac{4}{9}$? Here we have $1 + 3 + 4 = 8$ for the numerator, therefore—

$$\frac{1}{9} + \frac{3}{9} + \frac{4}{9} = \frac{8}{9}$$

386.—Subtraction of Fractions of Like Denominators.—Subtraction is the reverse of addition; therefore, to subtract fractions a reverse operation is required to that had in the process of addition; or simply to subtract instead of adding.

For example, if $\frac{2}{5}$ be required to be subtracted from $\frac{3}{5}$ we have—

$$\frac{3}{5} - \frac{2}{5} = \frac{1}{5}$$

By reference to *Fig. 274* an exemplification of this will be seen where we have $AC = \frac{3}{5}$, $AE = \frac{2}{5}$, and $EC = \frac{1}{5}$, and we have—

$$AC - AE = EC.$$

$$\frac{3}{5} - \frac{2}{5} = \frac{1}{5}.$$

We therefore have this rule for the subtraction of fractions: *Subtract the less from the greater numerator; the remainder will be the numerator of the required fraction. The denominator to be the same as that of the given fractions.*

387.—Dissimilar Denominators Equalized.—The rules just given for the addition and subtraction of fractions require that the given fractions have like denominators. When the denominators are unlike it is required, before adding or subtracting, that the fractions be modified so as to make the denominators equal. For example: Let it be required to find the sum of $\frac{2}{3}$ and $\frac{2}{9}$. By reference to *Fig. 75*, we find that $\frac{2}{3}$ on line AB is equal to $\frac{6}{9}$ on line EF . These being equal, we may therefore substitute $\frac{6}{9}$ for $\frac{2}{3}$. Then we have—

$$\frac{6}{9} + \frac{2}{9} = \frac{8}{9}$$

Now, it will be seen that the fraction $\frac{6}{9}$ may be had by multiplying both numerator and denominator of the given fraction $\frac{2}{3}$ by 3, for $\frac{2 \times 3}{3 \times 3} = \frac{6}{9}$;

and we have seen (*Art.* 380) that this operation does not change the value of the fraction. From this we learn that *the denominators may be made equal by multiplying the smaller denominator and its numerator by any number which will effect such a result.*

For example: $\frac{1}{3} + \frac{7}{15} = \frac{5}{15} + \frac{7}{15} = \frac{12}{15}$;

and $\frac{2}{5} + \frac{7}{35} = \frac{14}{35} + \frac{7}{35} = \frac{21}{35}$;

and $\frac{3}{4} + \frac{3}{12} + \frac{7}{16} = \frac{12}{16} + \frac{4}{16} + \frac{7}{16} = \frac{23}{16} = 1\frac{7}{16}$.

In this example the second fraction is changed by multiplying by $1\frac{1}{3}$.

388.—Reduction of Fractions to their Lowest Terms.—

The process resorted to in the last article to equalize the denominators, is not always successful. What is needed for a common denominator is to find the smallest number which shall be divisible by each of the given denominators. Before seeking this number, let each given fraction be reduced to its lowest terms, by dividing each factor by a

common number. For example: $\frac{5}{15}$ may, by dividing by 3,

be reduced to $\frac{1}{3}$, which is its equivalent. So, also, $\frac{21}{28}$, by di-

viding by 7, is reduced to $\frac{3}{4}$, its lowest terms.

389.—Least Common Denominator.—*To find the least common denominator*, place the several fractions in the order of their denominators, increasing toward the right. If the largest denominator be not divisible by each of the others, double it; if the division cannot now be performed, treble

and so proceed until it is multiplied by some number which will make it divisible by each of the other denominators. *This number multiplied by the largest denominator will be the least common denominator.* To raise the denominator of each fraction to this, *divide the common denominator by the denominator of one of the fractions*, the quotient will be the number by which that fraction is to be multiplied, both numerator and denominator, and so proceed with each fraction. For example: What is the sum of the fractions

$\frac{1}{2}, \frac{3}{4}, \frac{10}{12}, \frac{7}{8}$? One of these, $\frac{10}{12}$, may be reduced, by divid-

ing by 2, to $\frac{5}{6}$. Therefore, the series is $\frac{1}{2}, \frac{3}{4}, \frac{5}{6}, \frac{7}{8}$. On trial

we find that 8, the largest denominator, is divisible by the first and by the second, but not by the third, therefore the largest denominator is to be doubled: $2 \times 8 = 16$. This is not yet divisible by the third; therefore $3 \times 8 = 24$. This now is divisible by the third as well as by the first and the second; 24 is therefore the least common denominator.

Now dividing 24 by 2, the first denominator, the quotient 12 is the factor by which the terms of the first fraction are to be raised, or, $\frac{1 \times 12 = 12}{2 \times 12 = 24}$. For the second we have

$24 \div 4 = 6$, and $\frac{3 \times 6 = 18}{4 \times 6 = 24}$. For the third we have $24 \div 6 =$

4, and $\frac{5 \times 4 = 20}{6 \times 4 = 24}$; and for the fourth, $24 \div 8 = 3$, and

$\frac{7 \times 3 = 21}{8 \times 3 = 24}$. Thus the fractions in their reduced form are:

$$\frac{12}{24} + \frac{18}{24} + \frac{20}{24} + \frac{21}{24} = \frac{71}{24} = 2\frac{23}{24}.$$

390.—Least Common Denominator Again.—When the denominators are not divisible by one another, then to obtain a common denominator, it is requisite to *multiply together all of the denominators which will not divide any of the other denominators.* For example: What is the sum of the

fractions $\frac{1}{3}, \frac{2}{5}, \frac{3}{7}$, and $\frac{4}{9}$?

In this case the first denominator will divide the last, but the others are prime to each other. Therefore, for the common denominator, multiply together all but the first; or—

$$5 \times 7 \times 9 = 315 \text{ the common denominator ;}$$

and—

$$315 \div 3 = 105, \text{ common factor for the first fraction ;}$$

$$315 \div 5 = 63, \text{ common factor for the second fraction ;}$$

$$315 \div 7 = 45, \text{ common factor for the third ;}$$

$$315 \div 9 = 35, \text{ common factor for the fourth.}$$

And, then—

$$\frac{1 \times 105}{3 \times 105} = \frac{105}{315}; \quad \frac{2 \times 63}{5 \times 63} = \frac{126}{315}; \quad \frac{3 \times 45}{7 \times 45} = \frac{135}{315}; \quad \frac{4 \times 35}{9 \times 35} = \frac{140}{315};$$

$$\frac{105}{315} + \frac{126}{315} + \frac{135}{315} + \frac{140}{315} = \frac{506}{315} = 1\frac{191}{315}.$$

391.—Fractions Multiplied Graphically.—Let $ABCD$ (Fig. 276) be a rectangle of equal sides, or AB equal AC and each equal one foot. Then AB multiplied by AC will

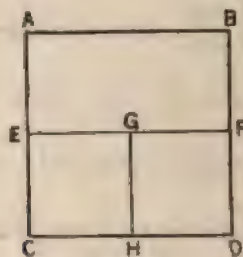


FIG. 276.

equal the area $ABCD$, or $1 \times 1 = 1$ square foot. Let the line EF be parallel with AB , and midway between AB and CD . Then $AB \times AE$ equals half the area of $ABCD$, or $1 \times \frac{1}{2} = \frac{1}{2}$. Again; let GH be parallel with EC , and midway between EC and FD . Then $EG \times EC = \frac{1}{2} \times \frac{1}{2}$ equals the area $EGCH$, which is equal to a quarter of the area

$ABCD$; or $\frac{1}{2} \times \frac{1}{2} = \frac{1}{4}$; which is a quarter of the superficial area.

The product here obtained is less than either of the factors producing it. It must be remembered, however, that while the factors represent *lines*, the product represents superficial area. The correctness of the result may be recognized by an inspection of the diagram.

392.—Fractions Multiplied Graphically.—In *Fig. 277* let AB equal 8 feet and AC equal 5 feet; then the rect-

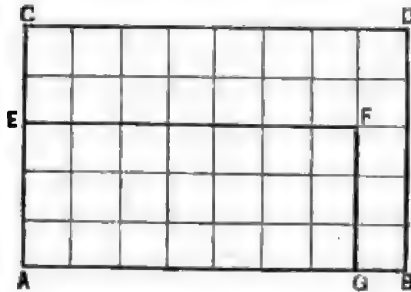


FIG. 277.

angle $ABCD$ contains $5 \times 8 = 40$ feet. The interior lines divide the space included within $ABCD$ into 40 equal squares of one foot each. Let AE equal 3 feet or $\frac{3}{5}$ of AC . Let AG equal 7 feet or $\frac{7}{8}$ of AB . Then the rectangle EFG contains $\frac{3}{5} \times \frac{7}{8} = \frac{21}{40}$, or twenty-one fortieths of the whole area $ABCD$. Thus, while the factor fractions $\frac{3}{5}$ and $\frac{7}{8}$ represent *lines*, it is shown that the product fraction $\frac{21}{40}$ represents surface. Thus $\frac{21}{40}$ is a fraction, EFG , of the whole surface, $CDA B$.

393.—Rule for Multiplication of Fractions, and Example.—In the example given in the last article it will be ob-

served that the product of the denominators of the two given fractions equals the area of the whole figure ($ABCD$), while the product of the numerators equals the area of the rectangle ($EFA G$), the sides of which are equal respectively to the given fractions. From this we obtain for the product of fractions this—

RULE.—*Multiply together the denominators for the new denominator, and the numerators for a new numerator.*

For example: what is the product of $\frac{13}{21}$ and $\frac{7}{20}$? Here we have $20 \times 21 = 420$ for the new denominator, and $7 \times 13 = 91$ for the new numerator; therefore the product of—

$$\frac{13}{21} \times \frac{7}{20} = \frac{91}{420};$$

or, of a rectangular area divided one way into 20 parts and the other way into 21 parts, thus containing 420 rectangles, the product of the two fractions $\frac{13}{21}$ and $\frac{7}{20}$ is equal to 91 of these rectangles, or $\frac{91}{420}$ of the whole.

394.—Fractions Divided Graphically.—Division is the reverse of multiplication; or, while multiplication requires the product of two given factors, division requires one of the factors when the other and the product are given. Or (referring to *Fig. 277*) in division we have the area of the rectangle, $EFA G$, and one side, EA , given, to find the other side, AG .

Now it is required to find the number of times EA is contained in $EFA G$. By inspection of the figure we perceive the answer to be, AG times; for $EA \times AG = EFA G$, the given area. Or, when $EFA G$ is given as $\frac{21}{40}$ and EA as $\frac{3}{5}$, we have as the given problem—

$$\frac{21}{40} \div \frac{3}{5}.$$

Since division is the reverse of multiplication, instead of multiplying we divide the factors, and have—

$$\frac{21 \div 3}{40 \div 5} = \frac{7}{8}.$$

Thus, to divide one fraction by another, for the numerator of the required factor, *divide the numerator of the product by the numerator of the given factor*, and for the denominator of the required factor *divide the denominator of the product by the denominator of the given factor*. For example:

$$\text{Divide } \frac{10}{63} \text{ by } \frac{2}{9}. \text{ Answer, } \frac{5}{7}.$$

$$\text{Divide } \frac{28}{27} \text{ by } \frac{4}{9}. \text{ Answer, } \frac{7}{3}.$$

395.—Rule for Division of Fractions.—The rule just given does not work well when the factors are not commensurable. For example, if it be required to divide $\frac{5}{7}$ by $\frac{2}{9}$ we have by the above rule—

$$\frac{5 \div 2}{7 \div 9} = \frac{\frac{5}{2}}{\frac{7}{9}}.$$

Producing fractional numerators and denominators for the resulting fraction, which require modification in order to reach those composed only of whole numbers. If the numerators, 5 and 7, of this compound fraction be multiplied by 9 (the denominator of the denominator fraction), or the compound fraction by 9, we shall have—

$$\frac{\frac{5}{2}}{\frac{7}{9}} \times 9 = \frac{\frac{5 \times 9}{2}}{\frac{7 \times 9}{9}}$$

And, if these be again multiplied by 2 (the denominator of the numerator fraction), we shall have—

$$\frac{\frac{5 \times 9}{2}}{\frac{7 \times 9}{9}} \times 2 = \frac{\frac{5 \times 9 \times 2}{2}}{\frac{7 \times 9 \times 2}{9}}.$$

Like figures above and below in each fraction cancel each other (*Art.* 371), therefore, the result reduces to—

$$\frac{5 \times 9}{7 \times 2},$$

in which we find the factors of the two original fractions.

In one fraction $\frac{5}{7}$ we have the factors in position as given,

but in the other $\frac{2}{9}$ they are inverted. The fraction in which the factors are inverted is the divisor. Hence, for division of fractions, we have this—

RULE.—*Invert the factors of the divisor, and then, as in multiplication, multiply the numerators together for the numerator of the required fraction, and the denominators for the denominator of the required fraction.*

Thus, as before, if $\frac{5}{7}$ is required to be divided by $\frac{2}{9}$, we have—

$$\frac{5 \times 9}{7 \times 2} = \frac{45}{14}.$$

And, to divide $\frac{23}{47}$ by $\frac{7}{9}$, we have—

$$\frac{23 \times 9}{47 \times 7} = \frac{207}{329}.$$

Again, to divide $\frac{25}{45}$ by $\frac{8}{9}$, we have—

$$\frac{25 \times 9}{45 \times 8} = \frac{225}{360} = \frac{25}{40} = \frac{5}{8}.$$

This last example has two factors, 9 and 45, one of which measures the other ; also, the first fraction $\frac{25}{45}$ is not in its lowest terms ; when reduced it is $\frac{5}{9}$. The question, therefore, may be stated thus :

$$\frac{5}{9} \times \frac{9}{8} = \frac{5}{8} ;$$

for the two 9's cancel each other.

SECTION IX.—ALGEBRA.

396.—Algebra Defined.—It occurs sometimes that a student familiar only with computation by numerals is needlessly puzzled, in approaching the subject of Algebra, to comprehend how it is possible to multiply *letters* together, or to divide them. To remove this difficulty, it may be sufficient for them to learn that their perplexity arises from a misunderstanding in supposing the *letters* themselves are ever multiplied or divided. It is true that in treatises on the subject it is usual to speak as though these operations were actually performed upon the letters. It is always understood, however, that it is not the letters, but the *quantities* represented by the letters, which are to be multiplied or divided.

For example, in *Art.* 361 it is shown, in comparing similar sides of homologous triangles, that the bases of the two triangles are to each other as the corresponding sides, or, referring to *Fig.* 269, we have $CE : AE :: DE : BE$. Now, let the two bases CE and AE be represented respectively by a and b , and the two corresponding sides DE and BE by c and d respectively; or, for—

$$CE : AE :: DE : BE,$$

put—

$$a : b :: c : d;$$

and, by *Art.* 373, we have—

$$b \times c = a \times d,$$

which may be written—

$$bc = ad;$$

for \times , the sign for multiplication, is not needed between letters, as it is between numeral factors. The operation of

multiplication is always understood when letters are placed side by side.

Now, here we have an equation in which, as usually read, we have the product of b and c equal to the product of a and d . But the meaning is that the product of the *quantities* represented by b and c is equal to the product of the *quantities* represented by a and d , and that this equation is intended to represent the relation subsisting between the four proportionals, $C E$, $A E$, $D E$, and $B E$, of *Fig. 269*. In order to secure greater conciseness and clearness, the four small letters are substituted for the four pair of capital letters, which are used to indicate the lines of the figures referred to.

397.—Example : Application.—It was shown in the last article that the four letters a , b , c , and d represent the corresponding sides of the two triangles of *Fig. 269*, and that—

$$bc = ad.$$

Now, let each member of this equation be divided by a , then (*Art. 371*)—

$$\frac{bc}{a} = d.$$

If now the dimensions of the three sides represented by a , b , and c are known, and it is required to ascertain from these the length of the side represented by d , let the three given dimensions be severally substituted for the letters representing them. For example, let $a = 40$ feet; $b = 52$ feet, and $c = 45$ feet; then—

$$d = \frac{bc}{a} = \frac{52 \times 45}{40} = \frac{2340}{40} = 58.5 \text{ feet.}$$

The quantities being here substituted for the letters; we have but to perform the arithmetical processes indicated to obtain the arithmetical value of d . From this example it is seen that before any practical use can be made of an algebraical formula in computing dimensions, it is requisite to substitute numerals for the letters and actually perform arithmetically such operations as are only indicated by the letters.

398.—Algebra Useful in Constructing Rules.—In all problems to be solved there are certain conditions or quantities given, by means of which an unknown quantity is to be evolved. For example, in the problem in *Art.* 397, there were three certain lines given to find a fourth, based upon the condition that the four lines were four proportionals. Now, it has been found that the relation between quantities and the conditions of a question can better be stated by letters than by numerals; and it is the office of algebra to present by letters a concise statement of a question, and by certain processes of comparison, substitution and elimination, to condense the statement to its smallest compass, and at last to present it in a *formula* or rule, which exhibits the known quantities on one side as equal to the unknown on the other side. Here algebra ends, at the completion of the rule. To *use* the rule is the office of arithmetic. For, in using the rule, each quantity in numerals must be substituted for the letter representing it, and the arithmetical processes indicated performed, as was done in *Art.* 397.

399.—Algebraic Rules are General.—One advantage derived from algebra is that the rules made are general in their application. For example, the rule of *Art.* 397, $\frac{bc}{a} = d$, is applicable to all cases of homologous triangles, however they may differ in size or shape from those given in *Fig.* 269—and not only this, but it is also applicable in all cases where four quantities are in proportion so as to constitute four proportionals. For example, the case of the four proportionals constituting the arms of a lever and the weights attached (*Arts.* 375–378). For, taking the relation as expressed in *Art.* 377—

$$P \times CF = R \times EC,$$

we may substitute for CF the letter n , and for EC the letter m , then m will represent the arm of the lever EC (*Fig.* 262), and n the arm of the lever FC . Then we have—

$$Pn = Rm,$$

and from this, dividing by n (*Art.* 372), we have—

$$P = R \frac{m}{n}; \quad (110.)$$

or, dividing by m , we have—

$$R = \frac{Pn}{m}; \quad (111.)$$

which is a rule for computing the weight of R , when P and the two arms of leverage, m and n , are known. For example, let the weight represented by P be 1200 pounds, the length of the arm m be 4 feet, and that of n be 8 feet, then we have—

$$R = \frac{Pn}{m} = \frac{1200 \times 8}{4} = 2400 \text{ pounds.}$$

This rule, $R = \frac{Pn}{m}$, is precisely like that in *Art.* 397—

$\frac{bc}{a} = d$ —in which three quantities are given to find a fourth, the four constituting a set of four proportionals.

400.—Symbols Chosen at Pleasure.—The particular letter assigned to represent a particular quantity is a matter of no consequence. Any letter at will may be taken; but when taken, it must be firmly adhered to to represent that particular quantity, throughout all the modifications which may be requisite in condensing the statement into which it enters into a formula for use. For example, the two rules named in *Art.* 399 are precisely alike—three quantities given to find a fourth—yet they are represented by different letters. In one, R and P represent the two weights, and m and n the arms of leverage at which they act; while in the other the letters a , b , c , and d represent severally the four lines which constitute two similar sides of two homologous triangles. The two rules are alike in working, and they might have been constituted with the same letters. And instead of the letters chosen any others might have been taken, which convenience or mere caprice might have dictated. In some

questions it is usual to put the first letters, as a, b, c , etc., to represent known quantities, and the last letters, as x, y, z , for the quantities sought. In works on the strength of materials it is customary to represent weights by capital letters, as P, R, U, W , etc., and lines or linear dimensions by the small letters, as b, d, l , for the breadth, depth, and length, respectively, of a beam. Any other letters may be put to represent these quantities, although the initial letter of the word serves to assist the memory in recognizing the particular dimensions intended.

401.—Arithmetical Processes Indicated by Signs.—In algebra, the four processes of addition, subtraction, multiplication, and division, are frequently required; and when the required process cannot be actually performed upon the letters themselves, a certain method has been adopted by which the process is indicated. For example, in addition, when it is required to add a to b , the two letters cannot be intermingled as numerals may be, and their sum presented; but the process of addition is simply indicated by placing between the two letters this sign, $+$, which is called plus, meaning *added to*; therefore, to add a to b we have—

$$a + b,$$

which is read a plus b , or the sum of a and b . When the quantities represented by a and b are substituted for them—and not till then—they can be condensed into one sum. For example, let a equal 4 and b equal 3, then for—

$$a + b$$

we have—

$$4 + 3;$$

and we may at once write their sum 7, instead of $4 + 3$.

So, likewise, in the process of subtraction, one letter cannot be taken from another letter so as to show how much of this other letter there will be left as a remainder; but the process of subtraction can be indicated by a sign, as this, $-$, which is called minus, less, meaning *subtracted from*. For

le, let it be required to subtract b from a . To do
e have—

$$a - b;$$

is read a minus b , and when the values of a and b are
uted for them, we have, when a equals 4, and b
3—

$$a - b,$$

$$4 - 3;$$

ow, instead of $4 - 3$, we may put the value of the two,
is unity, or 1.

e algebraic signs most frequently used are as follows:

s, signifies addition, and that the two quantities be-
ween which it stands are to be added together; as
 $+ b$, read a added to b .

us, signifies subtraction, or that of the two quantities
etween which it occurs, the latter is to be subtracted
rom the former; as $a - b$, read a minus b .

ltiplied by, or the sign of multiplication. It denotes
hat the two quantities between which it occurs are to
e multiplied together; as $a \times b$, read a multiplied by b ,
r a times b . This sign is usually omitted between
ymbols or letters, and is then understood, as ab . This
as the same meaning as $a \times b$. It is never omitted
etween arithmetical numbers; as 9×5 , read nine
imes five.

ided by, or the sign of division, and denotes that of the
wo quantities between which it occurs, the former is
o be divided by the latter; as $a \div b$, read a divided by
. Division is also represented thus:

the form of a fraction. This signifies that a is to be
lided by b . When more than one symbol occurs

bove or below the line, or both, as $\frac{a n r}{c m}$, it denotes

hat the product of the symbols above the line is to be
lided by the product of those below the line.

$=$, *is equal to*, or sign of equality, and denotes that the quantity or quantities on its left are equal to those on its right; as $a - b = c$, read a minus b is equal to c , or equals c ; or, $9 - 5 = 4$, read nine minus five equals four. This sign, together with the symbols on each side of it, when spoken of as a whole, is called an *equation*.

a^2 denotes a squared, or a multiplied by a , or the second power of a , and

a^3 denotes a cubed, or a multiplied by a and again multiplied by a , or the third power of a . The small figure, 2, 3, or 4, etc., is termed the index or exponent of the power. It indicates how many times the symbol is to be taken. Thus, $a^2 = a a$, $a^3 = a a a$, $a^4 = a a a a$.

$\sqrt{}$ is the *radical* sign, and denotes that the *square* root of the quantity following it is to be extracted; and

$\sqrt[3]{}$ denotes that the *cube* root of the quantity following it is to be extracted. Thus, $\sqrt[4]{9} = 3$, and $\sqrt[3]{27} = 3$. The extraction of roots is also denoted by a fractional index or exponent, thus—

$a^{\frac{1}{2}}$ denotes the square root of a ,

$a^{\frac{1}{3}}$ denotes the cube root of a ,

$a^{\frac{1}{6}}$ denotes the cube root of the square of a , etc.

402.—Example in Addition and Subtraction: Cancel-ling.—Let there be some question which requires a statement to represent it, like this—

$$a + d = c - b,$$

which indicates that if the quantity represented by a be added to the quantity represented by d , the sum will be equal to the quantity represented by c , after there has been subtracted from it the quantity represented by b ; or, as it is usually read, a plus d equals c minus b ; or the sum of a and d equals the difference between c and b . For illustration, take in place of these four letters, in the order they stand, the numerals 4, 2, 9, 3, and we shall have by substitution—

$$a + d = c - b,$$

$$4 + 2 = 9 - 3,$$

and subtracting—

$$6 = 6.$$

or adding

If it be required to add to each member of the equation the quantity represented by b , this will not interfere with the equality of the members. For $a + d$ are equal to $c - d$, and if to each of these two equals a common quantity be added, the sums must be equal ; therefore—

$$a + d + b = c - b + b,$$

Or by numerals—

$$4 + 2 + 3 = 9 - 3 + 3,$$

or—

$$9 = 9.$$

It will be observed that the right hand member contains the quantity $-b$ and $+b$. This shows that the quantity b is to be subtracted and then added. Now, if 3 be subtracted from 9, the remainder will be 6, and then if 3 be added, the sum will be 9, the original quantity. Thus it is seen that *when in the same member of an equation a symbol appears as a minus quantity and also as a plus quantity, the two cancel each other, and may be omitted.* Therefore, the expression—

$$a + d + b = c - b + b$$

becomes—

$$a + d + b = c.$$

403.—Transferring a Symbol to the Opposite Member.

—In comparing, in the last article, the first equation with the last, it will be seen that the same symbols are contained in each, but differently arranged: that while in the first equation b appears in the right hand member and with a minus or *negative* sign, in the last equation it appears in the left hand member and with a plus or *positive* sign. Thus it is seen that in the operation performed b has been made to pass from one member to the other, but in its passage it has been changed. A similar change may be made with another of the symbols. For example, from the last equation, let d be subtracted, or this process indicated, thus—

$$a + d + b - d = c - d.$$

The plus and minus d , in the left hand member cancel *each* other, therefore—

$$a + b = c - d,$$

or, by numerals—

$$4 + 3 = 9 - 2.$$

Reducing—

$$7 = 7.$$

By this we learn that *any quantity* (connected by + or -) *may be passed from one member of the equation to the other, provided the sign be changed.*

404.—Signs of Symbols to be Changed when they are to be Subtracted.—As an example in subtraction, let the quantities represented by $+b - a - f + c$, be taken from the quantities represented by $+a + b - c - f$. This may be written—

$$(+a + b - c - f) - (+b - a - f + c),$$

an expression showing that the quantities enclosed within the second pair of parentheses are to be subtracted from those included within the first pair. Let the quantities represented in the first pair of parentheses for convenience be represented by A , or, $a + b - c - f = A$. Now, by the terms of the problem, we are required to subtract from A the quantities enclosed within the second pair of parentheses. To do this take first the positive quantity, b , and subtract it or indicate the subtraction, thus—

$$A - b;$$

we will then subtract the positive quantity c , or indicate the subtraction, thus—

$$A - b - c.$$

We have yet to subtract $-a$ and $-f$, two negative quantities.

The method by which this can be accomplished may be discovered by considering the requirements of the problem. The plus quantities b and c , before being subtracted from A , were required to have the two negative quantities a and f de-

ducted from them. It is evident, therefore, that in subtracting b and c , before this deduction was made, too much has been taken from A , and that the excess taken is equal to the sum of a and f . To correct the error, therefore, it is necessary to add just the amount of the excess, or to add the sum of a and f , or annex them by the plus sign, thus—

$$A - b - c + a + f.$$

To test the correctness of the operation as here performed, let numerals be substituted for the symbols; let $a = 2$, $b = 3$, $c = 1$, $f = \frac{1}{2}$; then the given quantities to be subtracted,—

$$(+b - a - f + c),$$

become—

$$(+3 - 2 - \frac{1}{2} + 1),$$

which reduces to—

$$(4 - 2\frac{1}{2}) = 1\frac{1}{2}.$$

Thus the quantity to be subtracted equals $1\frac{1}{2}$. Applying the numerals to the above expression—

$$A - b + a + f - c$$

becomes—

$$A - 3 + 2 + \frac{1}{2} - 1 = A - 4 + 2\frac{1}{2} = A - 1\frac{1}{2}.$$

A correct result; it is the same as before. Restoring now the symbols represented by A , we have for the whole expression—

$$+a + b - c - f - b + a + f - c,$$

which, by cancelling (*Art.* 403) and by adding like symbols with like signs, reduces to—

$$2a - 2c.$$

To test this result, let the quantity which was represented by A have the proper numerals substituted, thus :

$$+a + b - c - f,$$

$$+2 + 3 - 1 - \frac{1}{2} = 5 - 1\frac{1}{2} = 3\frac{1}{2}.$$

The sum of the given quantity required to be subtracted was before found to amount to $1\frac{1}{2}$, therefore—

$$A - 1\frac{1}{2}$$

becomes—

$$3\frac{1}{2} - 1\frac{1}{2} = 2.$$

And the result by the symbols as above was—

$$2a - 2c,$$

which becomes—

$$2 \times 2 - 2 \times 1,$$

or—

$$4 - 2 = 2;$$

a result the same as before, proving the work correct. An examination of the signs in the above expression, which denotes the problem performed, will show that the sign of each symbol which was required to be subtracted has been changed in the operation of subtraction. Before subtracting they were—

$$(+b - a - f + c);$$

after subtraction they are—

$$(-b + a + f - c).$$

By this result we learn, that *to subtract a quantity* we have but to *change its sign* and annex it to the quantity from which it was required to be subtracted.

Example: Subtract $a - b$ from $c + d$. Answer, $c + d - a + b$.

If numerals be substituted, say $a = 7$, $b = 4$, $c = 5$, and $d = 9$, then—

$$c + d \quad \text{becomes} \quad 5 + 9 = 14,$$

$$a - b \quad \quad \quad " \quad \quad 7 - 4 = \underline{3},$$

$$c + d - (a - b) = 14 - 3 = 11.$$

So, also,—

$$c + d - a + b$$

becomes—

$$5 + 9 - 7 + 4 = 11.$$

405.—Algebraic Fractions: Added and Subtracted.—

When algebraic fractions of like denominators are to be added or subtracted, the same rules (*Arts.* 385 and 386) are to be observed as in the addition or subtraction of numerical fractions—namely, add or subtract the numerators for a new numerator, and place beneath the sum or difference the common denominator.

For example, what is the sum of $\frac{a}{b}, \frac{c}{b}, \frac{d}{b}$?

For this we have—

$$\frac{a + c + d}{b}.$$

Subtract $\frac{c}{d}$ from $\frac{b}{d}$. For this we have—

$$\frac{b - c}{d}.$$

What is the algebraical sum of—

$$\frac{b}{d}, \frac{c}{d}, -\frac{n}{d}, \text{ and } -\frac{r}{d}?$$

For these we have—

$$\frac{b + c - n - r}{d}.$$

To exemplify this, let b represent 9, $c = 8$, $n = 2$, $r = 3$, and $d = 12$.

Then, for the algebraic sum, we have—

$$\frac{9 + 8 - 2 - 3}{12} = \frac{12}{12} = 1.$$

Now, taking the positive and negative fractions separately, we have—

$$\frac{9}{12} + \frac{8}{12} = \frac{17}{12};$$

and—

$$\frac{-2}{12} - \frac{3}{12} = \frac{-5}{12}.$$

Together—

$$\frac{17}{12} - \frac{5}{12} = \frac{12}{12} = 1,$$

as before.

406.—The Least Common Denominator.—When the denominators of algebraic fractions differ it is necessary before addition or subtraction can be performed to *harmonize* them, as in the reduction of the denominators of *numerical* fractions (*Arts.* 388–390). For example, add together the fractions $\frac{a}{bc}, \frac{e}{b}, \frac{r}{ac}$. In these denominators we perceive that they collectively contain the letters a, b and c , and no others. It will be requisite, therefore, that each of the fractions be modified so that its denominator shall have these three factors. To effect this it will be seen that it is necessary to multiply each fraction by that one of these letters which is lacking in its denominator. Thus, in the first, a is lacking, therefore (*Art.* 380) $\frac{a \times a}{bc \times a} = \frac{aa}{abc}$. In the second a and c are lacking, therefore $\frac{e \times ac}{b \times ac} = \frac{ace}{abc}$, and in the third b is lacking, therefore $\frac{r \times b}{ac \times b} = \frac{rb}{abc}$. Placing them now together we have—

$$\frac{aa + ace + br}{abc} = \frac{a}{bc} + \frac{e}{b} + \frac{r}{ac}.$$

The factor aa may be represented thus a^2 , which means that a occurs twice, the small figure at the top indicating the number of times the letter occurs; a^2 is called a squared, $aaa = a^3$, and is called a cubed.

In order to show that the above fraction, resulting as the sum of the three given fractions, is correct, let $a = 2, b = 3, c = 4, e = 5$, and $r = 6$. Then the three given fractions are—

$$\frac{2}{3 \times 4} + \frac{5}{3} + \frac{6}{2 \times 4} = \frac{1}{6} + \frac{5}{3} + \frac{3}{4}.$$

In equalizing these denominators we multiply the second fraction by 2, and the third by $1\frac{1}{2}$, which will give—

$$\frac{5 \times 2}{3 \times 2} = \frac{10}{6}, \quad \frac{3 \times 1\frac{1}{2}}{4 \times 1\frac{1}{2}} = \frac{4\frac{1}{2}}{6};$$

then—

$$\frac{1}{6} + \frac{10}{6} + \frac{4\frac{1}{2}}{6} = \frac{15\frac{1}{2}}{6} = 2\frac{3\frac{1}{2}}{6} = 2\frac{7}{12}.$$

Now the sum of the fractions is—

$$\frac{a^2 + ace + br}{abc};$$

or,

$$\frac{2^2 + 2 \times 4 \times 5 + 3 \times 6}{2 \times 3 \times 4};$$

or,

$$\frac{4 + 40 + 18}{24} = \frac{62}{24} = 2\frac{14}{24} = 2\frac{7}{12};$$

the same result as before, thus showing that the reduction was rightly made.

407.—Algebraic Fractions Subtracted.—To exemplify the subtraction of fractions, let it be required to find the algebraic sum of $\frac{a}{c} - \frac{b}{d} - \frac{c}{f}$. These denominators all differ. The fractions, therefore, require to be modified, so that each denominator shall contain them all. To accomplish this, the first fraction will need to be thus treated :

$$\frac{a \times df}{c \times df} = \frac{adf}{cdf};$$

the second—

$$-\frac{b \times cf}{d \times cf} = -\frac{bcf}{cdf};$$

the third—

$$-\frac{c \times cd}{f \times cd} = -\frac{cde}{cdf}.$$

The sum of these is—

$$\frac{adf - bcf - cde}{cdf}.$$

That this is a correct answer, let the result be proved by figures; thus, for a put 15; b , 2; c , 3; d , 4; e , 5; f , 6. Then we shall have—

$$\frac{a}{c} - \frac{b}{d} - \frac{e}{f} = \frac{15}{3} - \frac{2}{4} - \frac{5}{6}.$$

It will be observed that these denominators may be equalized by multiplying the first fraction by 2, and the second by $1\frac{1}{2}$, therefore we have—

$$\frac{30}{6} - \frac{3}{6} - \frac{5}{6}.$$

To make the required subtraction we are to deduct from 30 (the numerator of the positive fraction), first 3, then 5; or, the sum of the numerators of the negative fractions; or for the numerator of the new fraction we have $30 - 8 = 22$. The required result, therefore, is—

$$\frac{22}{6} = \frac{11}{3} = 3\frac{2}{3}.$$

To apply this test to the algebraic sum we have—

$$\frac{a d f - b c f - c d e}{c d f} = \frac{15 \times 4 \times 6 + 2 \times 3 \times 6 + 3 \times 4 \times 5}{3 \times 4 \times 6},$$

which by multiplication reduces to—

$$\frac{360 - 36 - 60}{72} = \frac{264}{72} = \frac{22}{6} = \frac{11}{3} = 3\frac{2}{3},$$

a result the same as before, proving the work correct. Another example :

$$\text{From } \frac{a}{n} - \frac{b}{m} \text{ take } \frac{c}{n}, \frac{d}{m} \text{ and } \frac{e}{n};$$

or, find the algebraic sum of—

$$\frac{a}{n} - \frac{b}{m} - \frac{c}{n} - \frac{d}{m} - \frac{e}{n}.$$

The fractions which have the same denominator may be grouped together thus:

$$\frac{a}{n} - \frac{c}{n} - \frac{e}{n} = \frac{a - c - e}{n};$$

and—

$$\frac{b}{m} - \frac{d}{m} = \frac{b - d}{m}.$$

To harmonize these two denominators, m and n , the first fraction must be multiplied by m and the last by n , or—

$$\frac{m(a - c - e)}{m n} + \frac{n(b - d)}{m n} = \frac{m(a - c - e) + n(b - d)}{m n}.$$

In the polynomial factor within the parentheses ($a - c - e$) we have the positive quantity a , from which is to be taken the two negatives c and e , or their sum is to be taken from a , or ($a - (c + e)$). With this modification we have for the algebraic sum of the five given fractions—

$$\frac{m(a - (c + e)) + n(b - d)}{m n}.$$

To test the accuracy of this result, let the value of the several letters respectively be as follows: $a = 11$, $b = 9$, $c = 3$, $d = 4$, $e = 5$, $m = 10$, and $n = 8$. Then the sum is—

$$\frac{10(11 - (3 + 5)) + 8(9 - 4)}{10 \times 8} = \frac{70}{80} = \frac{7}{8}.$$

Now, taking the fractions separately, we have—

$$\frac{a}{n} - \frac{c}{n} - \frac{e}{n} = \frac{11}{8} - \left(\frac{3}{8} + \frac{5}{8}\right) = \frac{11}{8} - \frac{8}{8} = \frac{3}{8};$$

$$\text{again,—} \quad \frac{b}{m} - \frac{d}{m} = \frac{9}{10} - \frac{4}{10} = \frac{5}{10};$$

or, together we have, as the sum of these two results—

$$\frac{3}{8} + \frac{5}{10}.$$

To harmonize these denominators we may multiply the first fraction by 5, and the second by 4, thus:

$$\frac{3 \times 5}{8 \times 5} = \frac{15}{40}, \quad \frac{5 \times 4}{10 \times 4} = \frac{20}{40},$$

and then the sum is—

$$\frac{15}{40} + \frac{20}{40} = \frac{35}{40} = \frac{7}{8};$$

the same result as before, thus the accuracy of the work is established.

408.—Graphical Representation of Multiplication.—

In *Fig. 278*, let $ABCD$, a rectangle, have its sides AB and

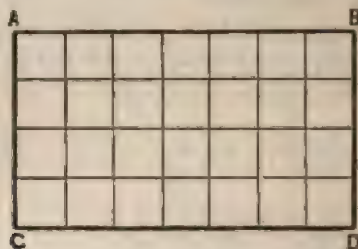


FIG. 278.

AC divided into equal parts. Then the area of the figure will be obtained by multiplying one side by the other, or putting a for the side AB , and b for the side AC , then the area will be $a \times b$, or ab . This will be the correct area of the figure, whatever the length of the sides may be. If, as shown, the area be divided into $4 \times 7 = 28$ equal rectangles, then a would equal 7, and b equal 4, and $ab = 7 \times 4 = 28$, the area. If AB equal 28 and AC equal 16, then will $a = 28$, and $b = 16$, and $ab = 28 \times 16 = 448$, the area.

409.—Graphical Multiplication: Three Factors.—

Let $ABCDEFGH$ (*Fig. 279*) represent a rectangular solid which may be supposed divided into numerous small cubes as shown. Now, if a be put for the edge AB , b for the edge AC , and c for the edge CD , then the cubical solidity of the

figure will be represented by $a \times b \times c = abc$. If the edge AB measures 6, the edge AC 3, and the edge CD 4, $abc = 6 \times 3 \times 4 = 72 =$ the cubic contents of the solid or the number of small cubes contained in it.

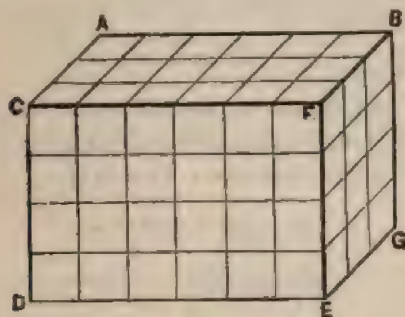


FIG. 279.

Graphic Representation: Two and Three Factors.—Figs. 278 and 279 serve to illustrate the algebraic expressions ab and abc . In the former it is shown that the multiplication of two lines produces a rectangular surface, and if a and b represent lines, then ab may represent a rectangular surface (Fig. 278) having sides respectively equal to a and b . And so if a , b , and c represent three severals, then abc may represent a rectangular solid (Fig. 279) having edges respectively equal to a , b , and c .

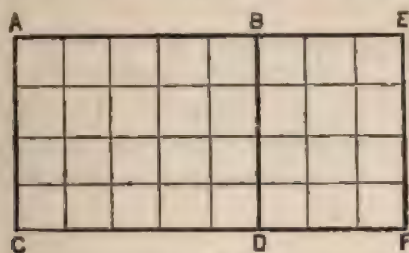


FIG. 280.

Graphical Multiplication of a Binomial.—Let $ABCD$ (Fig. 280) be a rectangular surface, and $BEDF$ another rectangular surface, adjoining the first. The area of the whole figure is evidently equal to—

$$(AB + BE) \times AC.$$

The area is also equal to—

$$\overline{AB \times AC} + \overline{BE \times BD};$$

or, since $AC = BD$, the area equals—

$$\overline{AB \times AC} + \overline{BE \times AC};$$

or, if symbols be put to represent the lines, say a for AB , b for BE , and c for AC , then the two representatives of the area, as above shown, become: The first—

$$(a + b) \times c = \text{area};$$

and the last—

$$(a \times c) + (b \times c) = \text{area}.$$

Hence we have—

$$(a + b) c = a c + b c.$$

This result exemplifies the algebraic multiplication of a binomial, which is performed thus: Let $a + b$ be multiplied by c .

The problem is stated thus:

$$(a + b) c.$$

To perform the multiplication indicated we proceed thus:

$$\begin{array}{r} a + b \\ c \\ \hline ac + bc \end{array}$$

multiplying each of the factors of the multiplicand separately and annexing them by the sign for addition. Putting the two together, or showing the problem and its answer in an equation, we have—

$$(a + b) c = a c + b c,$$

producing the same result, above shown, as derived from the graphic representation.

412.—Graphical Squaring of a Binomial.—Let $EGCF$ (Fig. 281) be a rectangle of equal sides, and within it draw

lines, AH and FD , parallel with the lines of the le, and at such a distance from them that the sides, AB and BD , of the rectangle, $ABCD$, shall be of equal

We then have in this figure the three squares, $ABCD$, and $FGBH$, also the two equal rectangles $EFA B$ and $BHD \mathcal{F}$.

EF be represented by a and FG by b , then the area CD will be $a \times a = a^2$; the area of $FGBH$ will be b^2 ; the area of $EFA B$ will be $a \times b = ab$, and that

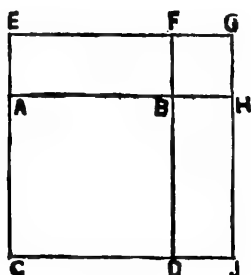


FIG. 281.

$D \mathcal{F}$ will be the same. Putting these areas together

$$a^2 + 2ab + b^2,$$

equals the area of the whole figure—equals the product $EG \times EC$ —equals the product—

$$(a + b) \times (a + b).$$

Therefore, we have—

$$(a + b)(a + b) = a^2 + 2ab + b^2; \quad (112.)$$

In general, the square of a binomial equals the square of the first term, plus twice the first by the second, plus the square of the second term. This result is obtained graphically. The same result may be obtained by algebraic multiplication, combining

each factor of the multiplier with each factor of the multiplicand and adding the products, thus—

$$\begin{array}{r}
 a + b \\
 a + b \\
 \hline
 a^2 + ab \\
 ab + b^2 \\
 \hline
 a^2 + 2ab + b^2.
 \end{array}$$

The same result as above shown by graphical representation.

413.—Graphical Squaring of the Difference of Two Factors.—Let the line EC (*Fig. 281*) be represented by c , and the line AE and AC as before respectively by b and a , then—

$$EC - AE = AC.$$

$$c - b = a.$$

From this, squaring both sides, we have—

$$(c - b)^2 = a^2.$$

The area of the square $ABCD$ may be obtained thus: From the square $EGC\mathcal{F}$ take the rectangle $EG \times EA$ and the rectangle $FG \times D\mathcal{F}$, minus the square $FGBH$, or from c^2 take the rectangle cb , and the rectangle cb , minus the square, b^2 , and the remainder will be the square, a^2 ; or, in proper form—

$$c^2 - cb - cb + b^2 = a^2$$

In deducting from c^2 the rectangle cb twice, we have taken away the small square twice; therefore, to correct this error, we have to add the small square, or b^2 . Then, when reduced, the expression becomes—

$$c^2 - 2cb + b^2 = a^2 = (c - b)^2.$$

This result is obtained graphically. The result by algebraic

Process will now be sought. The square of a quantity may be obtained by multiplying the quantity by itself, or—

$$\begin{array}{r}
 c + b \\
 c - b \\
 \hline
 c^2 - bc \\
 - bc + b^2 \\
 \hline
 (c - b)^2 = c^2 - 2bc + b^2.
 \end{array}
 \quad (113.)$$

In this process, as before, each factor of the multiplier is combined with each factor of the multiplicand and the several products annexed with their proper signs (*Art.* 415), and thus, by algebraic process, a result is obtained precisely like that obtained graphically. This result is the square of the difference of c and b ; and since c and b may represent any quantities whatever, we have this general—

RULE.—*The square of the difference of two quantities is equal to the sum of the squares of the two quantities, minus twice their product.*

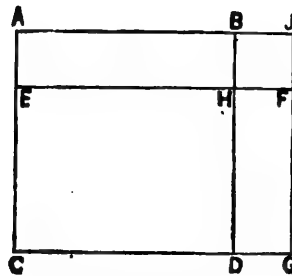


FIG. 282.

414.—Graphical Product of the Sum and Difference of Two Quantities.—Let the rectangle $A B C D$ (*Fig.* 282) have its sides each equal to a . Let the line $E F$ be parallel with $A B$ and at the distance b from it, also, the line $F G$ made parallel with $B D$, and at the distance b from it. Then the line $E F$ equals $a + b$, and the line $E C$ equals $a - b$. Therefore the area of the rectangle $E F C G$ equals $a + b$,

multiplied by $a - b$. From the figure, for the area of this rectangle, we have—

$$ABCD - AB EH + HF DG = EFCG;$$

or, by substitution of the symbols,

$$a^2 - ab + b(a - b).$$

Multiply the last quantity thus—

$$\begin{array}{r} a - b \\ b \\ \hline ab - b^2 = b(a - b). \end{array}$$

Substituting this in the above we have—

$$a^2 - ab + ab - b^2 = (a + b) \times (a - b).$$

Two of these like quantities, having contrary signs, cancel each other and disappear, reducing the expression to this—

$$a^2 - b^2 = (a + b) \times (a - b).$$

The correctness of this result is made manifest by an inspection of the figure, in which it is seen that the rectangle $EFCG$ is equal to the square $ABCD$ minus the square $B\mathcal{J}HF$. For $ABEH$ equals $B\mathcal{J}DG$. Now, if from the square $ABCD$ we take away $ABEH$, and place it so as to cover $B\mathcal{J}DG$, we shall have the rectangle $EFCG$ plus the square $B\mathcal{J}HF$; showing that the square $ABCD$ is equal to the rectangle $EFCG$ plus the square $B\mathcal{J}HF$; or—

$$a^2 = (a + b) \times (a - b) + b^2.$$

The last quantity may be transferred to the first member of the equation by changing its sign (*Art.* 403). Therefore—

$$a^2 - b^2 = (a + b) \times (a - b),$$

as was before shown.

The result here obtained is derived from the geometrical figure, or graphically. Precisely the same result may be obtained algebraically; thus—

$$\begin{array}{r}
 a + b \\
 a - b \\
 \hline
 a^2 + ab \\
 - ab - b^2 \\
 \hline
 (a + b) \times (a - b) = a^2 \dots - b^2
 \end{array}
 \quad (114.)$$

Here the two like quantities, having unlike signs, cancel each other and disappear, leaving as the result only the difference of the squares.

The result here obtained is general; hence we have this—

RULE.—*The product of the sum and difference of two quantities equals the difference of their squares.*

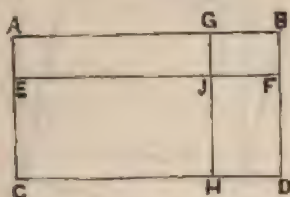


FIG. 283.

415.—Plus and Minus Signs in Multiplication.—In previous articles the signs in multiplication have been given to products in accordance with this rule, namely: *Like signs give plus; unlike signs, minus.* This rule may be illustrated graphically, thus: In the rectangular Fig. 283, let it be required to show the area of the rectangle $AGCH$, in terms of the several parts of the whole figure. Thus the area of $AGEJ$ equal $ABEF - GBJF$ and the area of $EJCH$ equals $EFCD - JFHD$. And the areas of $AGEJ + EJCH$ equals the area of $AGCH$. Therefore the sum of the two former expressions equals $AGCH$. Thus $ABEF - GBJF + EFCD - JFHD = AGCH$. Let the several lines now be represented by algebraic symbols; for example,

let $AB = EF = a$; let $GB = \mathcal{F}F = b$; let $AE = G\mathcal{F} = c$; and $EC = \mathcal{F}H = d$, and let these symbols be substituted for the lines they represent, thus $ABEF - GB\mathcal{F}F + EFCD - \mathcal{F}FHD = AGCH$.

$$ac - bc + ad - bd = (a - b) \times (c + d).$$

An inspection of the figure shows this to be a correct result. It will now be shown that an algebraical multiplication of the two binomials, allotting the signs in accordance with the rule given, will produce a like result. For example—

$$\begin{array}{r} a - b \\ c + d \\ \hline ac - bc + ad - bd. \end{array}$$

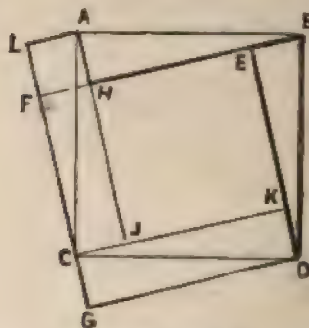


FIG. 284.

416.—Equality of Squares on Hypotenuse and Sides of Right-Angled Triangle.—The truth of this proposition has been proved geometrically in *Art.* 353. It will now be shown graphically and proved algebraically.

Let $ABCD$ (*Fig.* 284) be a rectangle of equal sides, and BED the right-angled triangle, the squares upon the sides of which, it is proposed to consider. Extend the side BE to F ; parallel with BF draw DG , CK , and AL . Parallel with ED draw $A\mathcal{F}$ and LG . These lines produce triangles, AHB , $AC\mathcal{F}$, ALC , CKD , and CGD , each equal to the given triangle BED (*Art.* 337). Now, if from the square

$ABCD$ we take ABH and place it at CDG ; and if we take BED and place it at ALC we will modify the square $ABCD$, so as to produce the figure $LGDEHAL$, which is made up of two squares, namely, the square $DEFG$ and the square $ALFH$, and these two squares are evidently equal to the square $ABCD$. Now, the square $DEFG$ is the square upon ED , the base of the given right-angled triangle, and the square $ALFH$ is the square upon $AH = BE$, the perpendicular of the given right-angled triangle, while the square $ABCD$ is the square upon BD , the hypotenuse of the given right-angled triangle. Thus, graphically, it is shown that *the square upon the hypotenuse of a right-angled triangle is equal to the sum of the squares upon the remaining two sides.*

To show this algebraically, let BE , the perpendicular of the given right-angled triangle, be represented by a ; ED , the base, by b , and BD , the hypotenuse, by c . Then it is required to show that—

$$c^2 = a^2 + b^2.$$

Now, since $DK = BE = a$, therefore, $EK = ED - DK = b - a$, and the square $EKFH$ equals $(b - a)^2$, which (*Art.* 413) equals

$$b^2 - 2ab + a^2.$$

This is the value of the square $EKFH$ which, with the four triangles surrounding it, make up the area of the square $ABCD$. Placing the triangle ABH of this square outside of it at CDG , and the triangle BED at ALC , we have the four triangles, grouped two and two, and thus forming the two rectangles $CGDK$ and $ALCF$. Each of these rectangles has its shorter side (AL , CG) equal to $BE = a$, and its longer side LC , GD , equal to $ED = b$; and the sum of the two rectangles is $ab + ab = 2ab$. This represents the area of the two rectangles, which are equal to the four triangles, which, together with the square $EKFH$, equal the square $ABCD$; or—

$$ABCD = EK\mathcal{F}H + CGDK + ALCF,$$

or—

$$c^2 = (b - a)^2 + a b + a b, \text{ or—}$$

$$c^2 = (b - a)^2 + 2 a b.$$

Then, substituting for $(b - a)^2$, its equivalent as above, we have—

$$c^2 = b^2 - 2 a b + a^2 + 2 a b.$$

Remove the two like quantities with unlike signs (*Art.* 402), and we have—

$$c^2 = b^2 + a^2; \quad (115.)$$

which was to be proved.

417.—Division the Reverse of Multiplication.—As division is the reverse of multiplication, so to divide one quantity by another is but to retrace the steps taken in multiplication. If we have the area ab (*Fig.* 278), and one of the factors a given to find the other, we have but to remove from ab the factor a , and write the answer b .

If we have the cubic contents of a solid abc (*Fig.* 279), and one of the factors a given to find the area represented by the other two, we have but to remove a , and write the others, bc , as the answer.

If there be given the area represented by $a(b+c)$ (see *Art.* 411), and one of the factors a to find the other, we have but to remove a and write the answer $b+c$. Sometimes, however, $a(b+c)$ is written $ab+ac$. Then the given factor is to be removed from each monomial and the answer written $b+c$.

If there be given the area represented by $a^2 + 2ab + b^2$ to find the factors, then we know by *Art.* 412 that this area is that of a square the sides of which measure $a+b$, and that the area is the product of $a+b$ by $a+b$; or, that $a+b$ is the square root of $a^2 + 2ab + b^2$.

If there be given the area $a^2 - 2ab + b^2$ to find its factors, then we know by *Art.* 413 that this area is that of a square whose sides measure $a-b$, or that it is the product of $a-b$ by $a-b$, or the square of $a-b$.

If there be given the difference of the squares of two quantities, or the area represented by $a^2 - b^2$, to find its factors, then we know by *Art.* 414 that this is the area produced by the multiplication of $a - b$ by $a + b$.

418.—Division : Statement of Quotient.—In any case of division the requirement may be represented as a fraction; thus: To divide $c + d - f$ by $a - b$ we write the quotient thus—

$$\frac{c + d - f}{a - b}.$$

For example, to illustrate by numerals, let $a = 7$, $b = 3$, $c = 4$, $d = 5$, and $f = 6$. Then the above becomes—

$$\frac{4 + 5 - 6}{7 - 3} = \frac{3}{4}.$$

419.—Division : Reduction.—When each monomial in either the numerator or denominator contains a common quantity, that quantity may be removed and placed outside of parentheses containing the monomials from which it was taken; thus, in—

$$\frac{2ab + 4ac - 8ad}{f},$$

we have 2 and a factors common to each monomial of the numerator. Therefore the expression may be reduced to

$$\frac{2a(b + 2c - 4d)}{f}.$$

To test this arithmetically we will put $a = 9$, $b = 7$, $c = 5$, $d = 4$, and $f = 6$. Then for the first expression we have—

$$\frac{2 \times 9 \times 7 + 4 \times 9 \times 5 - 8 \times 9 \times 4}{6},$$

which equals—

$$\frac{126 + 180 - 288}{6} = 3.$$

And for the second expression—

$$\frac{2 \times 9 (7 + 2 \times 5 - 4 \times 4)}{6},$$

which equals—

$$\frac{18 (17 - 16)}{6} = \frac{18}{6} = 3;$$

the same result as before. It will be observed that in this process of removing all common factors algebra furnishes the means of performing the work arithmetically with many less figures. The reduction is greater when the common factors are found in both numerator and denominator. For example, in the expression—

$$\frac{3 a n^3 + 9 b n - 15 c n}{12 d n - 18 f n}$$

we have $3 n$ a factor common to each monomial in the numerator and denominator; therefore the expression reduces to

$$\frac{3 n (a + 3 b - 5 c)}{3 n (4 d - 6 f)}.$$

And now, since $3 n$ is a factor common to both numerator and denominator, these cancel each other; therefore (Art. 371) the expression reduces to—

$$\frac{a + 3 b - 5 c}{4 d - 6 f}.$$

To test these reductions arithmetically, let $a = 9$, $b = 8$, $c = 4$, $d = 6$, $f = 3$, and $n = 5$. Then the first expression becomes—

$$\frac{3 \times 9 \times 5 + 9 \times 8 \times 5 - 15 \times 4 \times 5}{12 \times 6 \times 5 - 18 \times 3 \times 5}$$

which equals—

$$\frac{135 + 360 - 300}{360 - 270} = \frac{195}{90} = 2 \frac{1}{6};$$

and the second expression becomes—

$$\frac{9 + 3 \times 8 - 5 \times 4}{4 \times 6 - 6 \times 3};$$

which equals—

$$\frac{9 + 24 - 20}{24 - 18} = \frac{13}{6} = 2\frac{1}{6}.$$

The same result, but with many less figures.

420.—Proportionals: Analysis.—In the formula of the lever (*Art.* 377), $P \times CF = R \times EC$. Let n be put for the arm of leverage CF and m for EC . Then we have—

$$Pn = Rm,$$

from which by division (*Art.* 372) we have (*Art.* 399)—

$$P = R \frac{m}{n}, \quad (110.)$$

and—

$$R = P \frac{n}{m}, \quad (111.)$$

Suppose there be a case in which neither R nor P severally are known, but that their sum is known; and it is required from this and the m and n to find R and P . Let—

$$W = R + P,$$

then—

$$W - R = P. \quad (\text{See } \textit{Art. 403}.)$$

The value of P was above found to be—

$$P = R \frac{m}{n}.$$

Since $P = R \frac{m}{n}$ and also equals $W - R$, therefore—

$$W - R = R \frac{m}{n}.$$

Transferring R to the opposite member (*Art.* 403) we have—

$$W = R + R \frac{m}{n}.$$

Here R appears as a common factor and may be separated by division (*Art.* 419); thus—

$$W = R \left(1 + \frac{m}{n} \right).$$

By division the factor $\left(1 + \frac{m}{n} \right)$ may be transferred to the opposite member (*Art.* 371). Thus we have—

$$R = \frac{W}{1 + \frac{m}{n}}, \quad (116.)$$

by which we find the value of R developed. As an example, let $W = 1000$ pounds, $m = 3$ feet and $n = 7$ feet; then—

$$R = \frac{1000}{1 + \frac{3}{7}} = \frac{1000}{\frac{10}{7}}.$$

Multiplying the numerator and denominator by 7, we get—

$$R = \frac{7 \times 1000}{10} = 700.$$

Since—	$R + P = 1000,$
and—	$R = 700,$
then—	$P = 300.$

But a process similar to the above develops an expression for the value of P , which is—

$$P = \frac{W}{1 + \frac{n}{m}}. \quad (117.)$$

Putting this to the test of figures, we have—

$$P = \frac{1000}{1 + \frac{7}{3}} = \frac{1000}{\frac{10}{3}} = \frac{3000}{10} = 300.$$

421.—Raising a Quantity to any Power.—When a quantity is required to be multiplied by its equal, the product is called the square of the quantity. Thus $a \times a = a^2$ (*Art.* 412). If the square be multiplied by the original quantity the result is a cube; or, $a^2 \times a = a^3$; or, generally, for—

$$a, a a, a a a, a a a a, a a a a a,$$

we put—

$$a, a^2, a^3, a^4, a^5;$$

in which the small number at the upper right-hand corner indicates the number of times the quantity occurs in the expression. Thus, if $a = 2$, then $a^2 = 2 \times 2 = 4$, $a^3 = 4 \times 2 = 8$, $a^4 = 8 \times 2 = 16$, $a^5 = 16 \times 2 = 32$; any term in the series of powers may be found by multiplying the preceding one by a , or by dividing the succeeding one by a .

Thus $a^4 \times a = a^5$, and $\frac{a^5}{a} = a^4$.

422.—Quantities with Negative Exponents.—The series of powers, by division, may be extended backward. Thus, if we divide $\frac{a^5}{a} = a^4$; $\frac{a^4}{a} = a^3$; $\frac{a^3}{a} = a^2$; $\frac{a^2}{a} = a^1$; $\frac{a^1}{a} = a^0$; $\frac{a^0}{a} = a^{-1}$; $\frac{a^{-1}}{a} = a^{-2}$; $\frac{a^{-2}}{a} = a^{-3}$, etc.

In this series we have $\frac{a}{a} = a^0$. But a quantity divided by its equal gives unity for quotient, or $\frac{3}{3} = 1$. Therefore, $\frac{a}{a} = 1$, and $a^0 = 1$. This result is remarkable, and holds good regardless of the value of a .

From this and the preceding negative exponents we derive the following:

$$a^0 = \frac{a}{a} = 1,$$

$$a^{-1} = \frac{a^0}{a} = \frac{1}{a},$$

$$a^{-2} = \frac{a^{-1}}{a} = \frac{1}{a a} = \frac{1}{a^2},$$

$$a^{-3} = \frac{a^{-2}}{a} = \frac{1}{a^2 a} = \frac{1}{a^3}, \text{ etc.}$$

Showing that a quantity with a negative exponent may have substituted for it the same quantity with a positive exponent, but used as a denominator to a fraction having unity for the numerator.

423.—Addition and Subtraction of Exponential Quantities.—Equal quantities raised to the same power may be added or subtracted; as, $a^3 + 2a^3 = 3a^3$; but expressions in which the powers differ cannot be reduced; thus, $a^3 + a - a^2$ cannot be condensed.

424.—Multiplication of Exponential Quantities.—It will be observed in *Art.* 421 that in the series of powers, the index or exponent increases by unity; thus, a^1, a^2, a^3, a^4 , etc.; and that this increase is effected by multiplying by the root, or original quantity. From this we learn that *to multiply two quantities having equal roots we simply add their exponents.*

Thus the product of a, a^2 , and a^3 is $a^1 \times a^2 \times a^3 = a^6$.

The product of a^{-2}, a^3 , and a^5 is $a^{-2} \times a^3 \times a^5 = a^6$.

The exponents here, are: $-2 + 3 + 5 = 8 - 2 = 6$.

425.—Division of Exponential Quantities.—As division is the reverse of multiplication, *to divide equal quantities raised to various powers*, we need simply to *subtract the exponent of the divisor from that of the dividend*. Thus, to divide a^5 by a^3 we have $a^{5-3} = a^2$. That this is correct is manifest: for the two factors, $a^3 \times a^2$, in their product, a^5 , produce the dividend.

To divide a^3 by a^5 , we have $a^{3-5} = a^{-2}$, which is equal to $\frac{1}{a^2}$.

(see Art. 422). The same result may be had by stating the question in the usual form. Thus, to divide a^3 by a^2 we have

$\frac{a^3}{a^2}$, a fraction which is not in the lowest terms, for it may be

put thus, $\frac{a^3}{a^2 a^1} = \frac{a^3}{a^3}$, by which it is seen that it has in both its

numerator and denominator the quantity a^3 , which cancel

each other (Art. 371). Therefore, $\frac{a^3}{a^2} = \frac{1}{a^1}$; the same result

as before.

426.—Extraction of Radicals.—We have seen that the square of a is $a^1 \times a^1 = a^2$; of $2 a^1$ is $2 a^1 \times 2 a^1 = 4 a^2$; in each case the square is obtained by doubling the exponent.

To obtain the square root the converse follows, namely, take half of the exponent.

Thus the square root of a^2 is a^1 , of a^4 is a^2 , of a^6 is a^3 .

The same rule, when the exponent is an odd number, gives a fractional exponent, thus: the square root of a^3 is $a^{\frac{3}{2}}$; or, of a^5 , is $a^{\frac{5}{2}}$. So, also, the square root of a , or a^1 , is $a^{\frac{1}{2}}$.

Therefore, we have $a^{\frac{1}{2}} = \sqrt[2]{a}$, equals the square root of a , and the cube root of $a^1 = a^{\frac{1}{3}} = \sqrt[3]{a}$.

427.—Logarithms.—We have seen in the last article the nature of fractional exponents. Thus the square root of a^3 equals $a^{\frac{3}{2}}$, which may be put $a^{2\frac{1}{2}}$. In this way we may have an exponent of any fraction whatever, as $a^{\frac{1}{2}}$. Between the exponents 2 and 3, we may have any number of fractional exponents all less than 3 and more than 2. So, also, the same between 3 and 4, or any other two consecutive numbers.

The consideration of fractional exponents or indices has led to the making of a series of decimal numbers called *logarithms*, which are treated in the manner in which exponents are treated; namely—

To multiply numbers add their logarithms.

To divide numbers, subtract the logarithm of the divisor from the logarithm of the dividend.

To raise any number to a given power, multiply its logarithm by the exponent of that power.

To obtain the root of any power, divide the logarithm of the given number by the exponent of the given power.

As an example by which to exemplify the use of logarithms: What is the product of 25 by 375?

We first make this statement:

$$\text{Log. of } 25 = 1.$$

$$\text{" } 375 = 2.$$

Putting at the left of the decimal point the integer *characteristic*, or whole number of the logarithm at one less than the number of figures in the given number at the left of its decimal point.

To find the decimal part of the required logarithm we seek in a book of Logarithms (such as that of Law's, in Weale's Series, London) in the column of numbers for the given number 25, or 250 (which is the same as to the *mantissa*) and opposite to this and in the next column we find 7940 and a place for two other figures, which a few lines above are seen to be 39; annex these and the whole number is 0.397940. These we place as below:

$$\text{Log. of } 25 = 1.397940.$$

Now, to find the logarithm of 375, the other factor, we turn to 375 in the column of numbers and find the figures opposite to it, 4031, which are to be preceded by 57, the two figures found a few lines above, making the whole, .574031, which are placed as below, and added together.

$$\text{Log. of } 25 = 1.397940$$

$$\text{" } 375 = 2.574031$$

$$\text{The sum} = 3.971971$$

This sum is the logarithm of the product. To find the product, we seek in the column of logarithms, headed 0, for .971971, the decimal part. We find first 97, the first two

figures, and a little below seeking for 1971, the remaining four figures, we find 1740, those which are the next less, and opposite these, to the left, we find 7, and above 93, or together, 937; these are the first three figures of the required product.

For the fourth figure we seek in the horizontal column opposite 7 and 1740 for 1971, the remaining four figures of the logarithm, and find them in the column headed 5.

This figure 5 is the fourth of the product and completes it, as there are only four figures required when the integer number of the logarithm is 3. The completed statement therefore is—

$$\begin{array}{rcl} \text{Log. of } 25 \cdot & = & 1 \cdot 397940, \\ \text{“ “ } 375 \cdot & = & 2 \cdot 574031, \\ \text{“ “ } 9375 & = & 3 \cdot 971971. \end{array}$$

Another example in the use of logarithms. What is the product of 3957 by 94360?

The preliminary statement, as explained in last article, is—

$$\begin{array}{rcl} \text{Log. } 3957 & = & 3. \\ \text{“ } 94360 & = & 4. \end{array}$$

In the book of logarithms seek in the column of numbers for 3957. In the first column we find only 395, and opposite to this, in the next column, we find a blank for two figures, above which are found 59. Take these two figures as the first two of the *mantissa*, or decimal part of the required logarithm, thus, 0.59. Again, opposite 395 and in the column headed by 7 (the fourth figure of the given number), we have the four figures 7366. These are to be annexed to (0.59) the first two obtained. The decimal part of the logarithm, therefore, is 0.597366.

To obtain the logarithm for 94360, the other given number, we proceed in a similar manner, and, opposite 943, we find 0.97; then, opposite 943 and in column headed 6, we find 4788, or, together, the logarithm is 0.974788. The whole is now stated thus—

$$\begin{array}{rcl}
 \text{Log. of} & 3957 & = 3.597366 \\
 \text{" " } & 94360 & = 4.974788 \\
 \text{" " } & 373382000 & = 8.572154 = \text{sum of logs.}
 \end{array}$$

The two logarithms are here added together, and their sum is the logarithm of the product of the two given factors. The number corresponding to the above resultant logarithm may be found thus: Look in the column headed 0 for 57, the first two numbers of the mantissa, then in the same column, farther down, seek 2154, the other four figures of the mantissa; or, the four (1709) which are the next less than the four sought, and opposite these to the left, in the column of numbers, will be found 373, the first three figures of the product; opposite these, to the right, seek the four figures next less than 2154, the other four figures of the mantissa. These are found in the column headed 3 and are 2058. The 3 at the head of the column is the fourth figure in the product. From 2154, the last four figures of the mantissa, deduct the above 2058, or—

$$\begin{array}{r}
 2154, \\
 2058, \\
 \hline
 \text{Remainder,} \quad 96.
 \end{array}$$

At the bottom of the page, opposite the next less number (3727) to that contained in 3733, the answer already found, seek the number next less to the above remainder, 96. This is 92.8, and is in the column headed 8. Then 8 is the next number in the product. From 96 deduct 92.8, and multiply it by 10, or—

$$\begin{array}{r}
 96 \\
 92.8 \\
 \hline
 3.2 \times 10 = 32.
 \end{array}$$

Then, in the same horizontal column, seek for 32 or its next less number. This is 23.2, found in column 2. This 2 is the next figure in the product. Additional figures may be obtained by the table of proportional parts, but they cannot be

depended upon for accuracy beyond two or three figures. We therefore arrest the process here.

The product requires one more figure than the integer of the logarithm indicates; as the integer is 8, there must be nine figures in the product. We have already six; to make the requisite number nine we annex three ciphers, giving the completed product—

$$3957 \times 94360 = 373382000.$$

By actual multiplication we find that the true product in the last article is 373382520. In a book of logarithms, carried to seven places, the required result is found to be 373382500, which is more nearly exact.

The utility of logarithms is more apparent when there are more than two factors to be multiplied, as, in that case, the operation is performed all in one statement. Thus: What is the product of 3.75, 432.95, 1712, and 0.0327?

The statement is as follows:

$$\begin{array}{rcl} \text{Log.} & 3.75 & = 0.574031 \\ & 432.95 & = 2.636438 \\ & 1712. & = 3.233504 \\ & .0327 & = 8.514548 \\ \hline \text{Product} = 90891. & & = 4.958521 \\ & & \frac{16}{5.} \end{array}$$

Explanations of working are given more in detail in most of the books of logarithms.

428.—Completing the Square of a Binomial.—We have seen in *Art.* 412 that the square of a binomial $(a + b)$ equals $a^2 + 2ab + b^2$ —a trinomial—the first and last terms of which are each the square of one of the two quantities, while the second term contains the second quantity multiplied by twice the first quantity—

In analytical investigations it frequently occurs that an expression will be obtained which may be reduced to this form:

$$a^2 + m a b = f, \quad (118.)$$

in which m is the coefficient of the second term, and a and b are two quantities represented by a and b or any other two symbols.

A comparison of this expression with the square of a binomial (112.) contained in *Art.* 412, shows that the member at the left comprises two out of the three terms of the square of a binomial; as thus—

$$a^2 + 2 a b + b^2,$$

but with a coefficient m instead of 2. It is desirable, as will be seen, to ascertain a proper third term for the given expression; or, as it is termed, "to complete the square." The method by which this is done will now be shown.

A consideration of the above trinomial shows that the third term is equal to the square of the quotient obtained by dividing the second term by twice the square root of the first; or—

$$\left(\frac{2 a b}{2 a}\right)^2 = b^2.$$

Now a third term to the above binomial, equation (118.), may be obtained by this same rule. For example—

$$\left(\frac{m a b}{2 a}\right)^2 = \left(\frac{m b}{2}\right)^2.$$

The rule for the third term then is: *Divide the second term by twice the square root of the first, and square the quotient.*

As an example, let it be required to find the third term required to complete the square in the expression—

$$6 n x + 4 x^2 = f,$$

in which n and f are known quantities and x unknown. Putting it in this form—

$$4 x^2 + 6 n x = f,$$

and dividing by 4, we have—

$$x^2 + \frac{6}{4} nx = \frac{f}{4},$$

which reduces to—

$$x^2 + \frac{3}{2} nx = \frac{f}{4}$$

Now applying the above rule for finding the third term, we have—

$$\left(\frac{\frac{3}{2} nx}{2x}\right)^2 = \left(\frac{3}{4} n\right)^2,$$

which is the required third term. To complete the square we add this third term to both members of the above reduced expression, and have—

$$x^2 + \frac{3}{2} nx + \left(\frac{3}{4} n\right)^2 = \frac{f}{4} + \left(\frac{3}{4} n\right)^2.$$

The member of this expression at the left is the completed square of a binomial, the two quantities constituting which are the square roots of the first and third terms respectively; or x and $\frac{3}{4} n$, and we therefore have—

$$\sqrt{x^2 + \frac{3}{2} nx + \left(\frac{3}{4} n\right)^2} = x + \frac{3}{4} n,$$

and now taking the square root of both sides of the expression, we have—

$$x + \frac{3}{4} n = \sqrt{\frac{f}{4} + \left(\frac{3}{4} n\right)^2};$$

and, by transferring the second quantity to the right member, we have—

$$x = \sqrt{\frac{f}{4} + \left(\frac{3}{4} n\right)^2} - \frac{3}{4} n;$$

an expression in which x , the unknown quantity, is made to stand alone and equal to known quantities.

The process of completing the square is useful, as has been shown, in developing the value of an unknown quan-

tity where it enters into an expression in two forms, one as the square of the other.

As an example to test the above result, let $f = 256$ and $n = 8$. Then we have by the last expression for the value of x —

$$\begin{aligned} x &= \sqrt{\frac{256}{4} + \left(\frac{3}{4} \times 8\right)^2} - \frac{3}{4} \times 8, \\ &= \sqrt{64 + 36} - 6, \\ &= \sqrt{100} - 6, \\ x &= 10 - 6 = 4. \end{aligned}$$

Now this value of x may be tested in the original expression—

$$6nx + 4x^2 = f,$$

for which we have—

$$\begin{aligned} 6 \times 8 \times 4 + 4 \times 4^2 &= f, \\ 192 + 64 &= f, \\ 256 &= f; \end{aligned}$$

the correct value as above.

PROGRESSION.

429.—Arithmetical Progression.—In a series of numbers, as 1, 3, 5, 7, 9, etc., proceeding in regular order, increasing by a common difference, the series is called an arithmetical progression; the quantity by which one number is increased beyond the preceding one is termed the difference. If d represent the difference and a the first term, then the progression may be stated thus—

$$\begin{array}{cccccc} \text{Terms—} & 1, & 2, & 3, & 4, & 5, \\ & a, & a + d, & a + 2d, & a + 3d, & a + 4d, \text{ etc.} \end{array}$$

The coefficient of d is equal to the number of terms preceding the one in which it occupies a place. Thus the fifth term is $a + 4d$, in which the coefficient 4 equals the number of the preceding terms.

From this we learn the rule by which at once to desig-

nate any term without finding all the preceding terms. For the one hundredth term we should have $a + 99d$, or, if the number of terms be represented by n , then the last term would be represented by—

$$l = a + (n - 1) d. \quad (119.)$$

For example, in a progression where a , the first term, equals 1, d the difference, 2, and n , the number of terms, 90, the last term will be—

$$l = a + (n - 1) d = 1 + (90 - 1) 2 = 179.$$

Therefore, to find the last term :

To the first term add the product of the common difference into the number of terms less one.

By a transposition of the terms in the above expression, so as to give it this form—

$$a = l - (n - 1) d, \quad (120.)$$

we have a rule by which to find the first term, which, in words, is—

Multiply the number of terms less one by the common difference, and deduct the product from the last term; the remainder will be the first term.

By a transposition of the terms of the former expression to this form—

$$l - a = (n - 1) d,$$

and dividing both members by $(n - 1)$, we have—

$$d = \frac{l - a}{n - 1}; \quad (121.)$$

which is a rule for the common difference, and which, in words, is—

Subtract the first term from the last, and divide the remainder by the number of terms less one; the quotient will be the common difference.

Multiplying both members of the equation (121.) by $(n - 1)$ and dividing by d , we obtain—

$$n - 1 = \frac{l - a}{d}.$$

Transferring 1 to the second member, we have—

$$n = \frac{l - a}{d} + 1; \quad (122.)$$

which is a rule for finding the number of terms, and which, in words, is—

Divide the difference between the first and last terms by the common difference; to the quotient add unity, and the sum will be the number of terms.

Thus it has been shown, in equations (119), (120), (121), and (122), that when, of the four quantities in arithmetical progression, any three are given, the fourth may be found.

The *sum* of the terms of an arithmetical progression may be ascertained by adding them; but it may also be had by a shorter process. If the terms are written in order in a horizontal line, and then repeated in another horizontal line beneath the first, but in reversed order, as follows:

$$\begin{array}{cccccccc} 1, & 3, & 5, & 7, & 9, & 11, & 13, & 15, \\ 15, & 13, & 11, & 9, & 7, & 5, & 3, & 1, \\ \hline 16, & 16, & 16, & 16, & 16, & 16, & 16, & 16, \end{array}$$

and the vertical columns added, the sums will be equal. In this case the sum of each vertical couple is 16, and there are 8 couples; hence the sum of these 8 couples is $8 \times 16 = 128$. And in general the sum will be the product of one of the couples into the number of couples. It will be observed that the first couple contains the first and last terms, 1 and 15; therefore the sum of the double series is equal to the product of the sum of the first and last terms into the number of terms. Or if S be put to represent the sum of the series, we shall have—

$$2 S = (a + l) n,$$

and, dividing both sides by 2—

$$S = (a + l) \frac{n}{2}; \quad (123.)$$

Or, in words: *The sum of an arithmetical series equals the product of the sum of the first and last terms, into half the number of terms.*

430.—Geometrical Progression.—A series of numbers, such as 1, 2, 4, 8, 16, 32, 64, 128, 256, etc., in which any one of the terms is obtained by multiplying the preceding one by a constant quantity, is termed a *Geometrical Progression*.

The constant quantity is termed the common *Ratio*, and is equal to any term divided by the preceding one. Thus in the above example $\frac{16}{8}$ or $\frac{8}{4}$ or $\frac{4}{2} = 2$, equals the common ratio of the above series. In the series, 1, 3, 9, 27, etc., we have for the ratio—

$$\frac{27}{9} = \frac{9}{3} = \frac{3}{1} = 3;$$

which is the common ratio of this series.

A geometrical series may be put thus:

Terms:	1,	2,	3,	4;
Progress.:	1,	1×3 ,	$1 \times 3 \times 3$,	$1 \times 3 \times 3 \times 3$;

or thus—

Terms:	1,	2,	3,	4;
Progress.:	1,	1×3 ,	1×3^2 ,	1×3^3 ;

in which the common ratio, in this case 3, appears in each term and with an exponent which is equal to the number of terms preceding that in which it occupies a place.

If the first term be represented by a and the common ratio by r , then the following will represent any geometrical progression—

$$a, ar, ar^2, ar^3, ar^4, \text{etc.} \quad (124.)$$

For example, let $a = 2$ and $r = 4$; then the progression will be—

$$2, 8, 32, 128, 512, \text{etc.}$$

If $r = \text{unity}$, then when $a = 2$ the progression becomes—

$$2, 2, 2, 2, 2, \text{etc.}$$

If r be less than unity, then the progression will be a decreasing one.

For example, let $a = 2$ and $r = \frac{1}{2}$. Then we have for the progression—

$$2, 1, \frac{1}{2}, \frac{1}{4}, \frac{1}{8}, \frac{1}{16}, \text{etc.}$$

If the number of terms be represented by n , and the last by l , then the last term will be—

$$l = ar^{n-1}. \quad (125.)$$

For example, let n equal 6, then the progression will be—

$$\begin{array}{llllll} \text{Terms:} & 1, & 2, & 3, & 4, & 5, & 6; \\ \text{Progress.:} & a, & ar, & ar^2, & ar^3, & ar^4, & ar^5; \end{array}$$

in which the exponent of the last term equals $n - 1 = 6 - 1 = 5$.

If S be put for the sum of a geometrical progression, we will have—

$$S = a + ar + ar^2 + \dots + ar^{n-2} + ar^{n-1}.$$

Multiply each member by r , then—

$$Sr = ar + ar^2 + \dots + ar^{n-2} + ar^{n-1} + ar^n.$$

Subtract the upper line from the lower; then—

$$\begin{array}{rcl} Sr & = & ar + ar^2 + \dots + ar^{n-2} + ar^{n-1} + ar^n, \\ S & = & a + ar + ar^2 + \dots + ar^{n-2} + ar^{n-1} \\ \hline Sr - S & = & -a + ar^n, \\ S(r - 1) & = & -a + ar^n = ar^n - a, \\ S & = & \frac{ar^n - a}{r - 1}. \end{array}$$

The last term (equation (125.)) equals $l = ar^{n-1}$, and since $ar^n = r \times ar^{n-1} = rl$, therefore—

$$S = \frac{rl - a}{r - 1}. \quad (126.)$$

Thus, to find the sum of a geometrical progression: *Multiply the last term by the ratio; from the product deduct the first term, and divide the remainder by the ratio less unity.*

For example, the sum of the geometrical progression—

$$S = 1 + 3 + 9 + 27 + 81 + 243 + 729 = 1093$$

by actual addition.

To obtain it by the above rule—

$$S = \frac{rl - a}{r - 1} = \frac{3 \times 729 - 1}{3 - 1} = 1093,$$

the correct result.

If there be a decreasing geometrical progression, as 1, $\frac{1}{3}$, $\frac{1}{9}$, $\frac{1}{27}$, etc., in which the ratio equals $\frac{1}{3}$, the sum will be—

$$S = 1 + \frac{1}{3} + \frac{1}{9} + \frac{1}{27} + \frac{1}{81}, \text{ etc., to infinity.}$$

Multiply this by 3, and subtract the first from the last—

$$3S = 3 + 1 + \frac{1}{3} + \frac{1}{9} + \frac{1}{27} + \frac{1}{81} + \text{to infinity.}$$

$$S = 1 + \frac{1}{3} + \frac{1}{9} + \frac{1}{27} + \frac{1}{81} + \text{to infinity.}$$

$$2S = 3, \text{ or } S = 1\frac{1}{2}.$$

In a decreasing progression let r , the common ratio, be represented by $\frac{b}{c}$ (b less than c), and the first term by a , then the sum will be—

$$S = a + a \frac{b}{c} + a \frac{b^2}{c^2} + a \frac{b^3}{c^3} + \text{etc., to infinity.}$$

Multiply this by $\frac{b}{c}$, and subtract the product from the above—

$$\begin{array}{r}
 S \frac{b}{c} = a \frac{b}{c} + a \frac{b^2}{c^2} + a \frac{b^3}{c^3} + \text{etc., to infinity.} \\
 S = a + a \frac{b}{c} + a \frac{b^2}{c^2} + a \frac{b^3}{c^3} + \text{to infinity.} \\
 S \frac{b}{c} = a \frac{b}{c} + a \frac{b^2}{c^2} + a \frac{b^3}{c^3} + \text{to infinity.} \\
 \hline
 S - S \frac{b}{c} = a * * *
 \end{array}$$

Or— $S \left(1 - \frac{b}{c} \right) = a,$

$$S = \frac{a}{1 - \frac{b}{c}} \quad (127.)$$

For example, let the first term of a geometrical progression equal 2, and the ratio equal $\frac{1}{2}$, then the sum will be—

$$S = \frac{a}{1 - \frac{1}{2}} = \frac{2}{\frac{1}{2}} = \frac{4}{1} = 4.$$

From this, therefore, we have this rule for the sum of an infinite geometrical progression, namely: *Divide the first term by unity less the ratio.*

SECTION X.—POLYGONS.

431.—Relation of Sum and Difference of Two Lines.—

Let AB and CD (Fig. 285) be two given lines; make EH

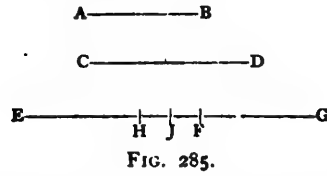


FIG. 285.

equal to AB , and HG equal to CD ; then EG equals the sum of the two lines.

Make FG equal to AB , which is equal to EH .

Bisect EG in \mathcal{J} ; then, also, \mathcal{J} bisects HF ; for—

$$E\mathcal{J} = \mathcal{J}G,$$

and—

$$EH = FG.$$

Subtract the latter from the former; then—

$$E\mathcal{J} - EH = \mathcal{J}G - FG;$$

but—

$$E\mathcal{J} - EH = H\mathcal{J},$$

and—

$$\mathcal{J}G - FG = \mathcal{J}F;$$

therefore—

$$H\mathcal{J} = \mathcal{J}F.$$

Now, $E\mathcal{J}$ is half the sum of the two lines, and $H\mathcal{J}$ is half the difference; and—

$$E\mathcal{J} - H\mathcal{J} = EH = AB.$$

Or: Half the sum of two quantities, minus half their difference, equals the smaller of the two quantities.

Let the shorter line be designated by a , and the longer by b ; then the proposition is expressed by—

$$a = \frac{a+b}{2} - \frac{b-a}{2} \quad (128.)$$

We also have $EF + FE = EF = CD$; or, *half the sum of two quantities, plus half their difference, equals the larger quantity.*

432.—Perpendicular, in Triangle of Known Sides.—

Let ABC (Fig. 286) be the given triangle, and CE a perpendicular let fall upon AB , the base. Let the several lines of

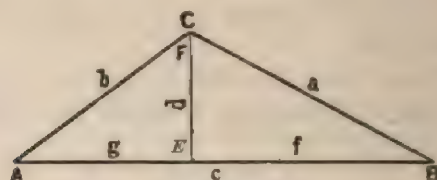


FIG. 286.

the figure be represented by the symbols a, b, c, d, g , and f , as shown. Then, since AEC and BEC are right-angled triangles, we have (Art. 416) the following two equations, and, by subtracting one from the other, the third—

$$\begin{aligned} f^2 + d^2 &= a^2, \\ g^2 + d^2 &= b^2, \\ \hline f^2 - g^2 &= a^2 - b^2. \end{aligned}$$

Then (Art. 414), by substitution, we have—

$$(f+g)(f-g) = (a+b)(a-b).$$

By division we obtain—

$$f-g = \frac{(a+b)(a-b)}{f+g}.$$

According to *Art.* 431, equation (128.), we have—

$$g = \frac{f+g}{2} - \frac{f-g}{2}.$$

In this expression let the value of $f - g$, as above, be substituted, then we will have—

$$g = \frac{f+g}{2} - \frac{(a+b)(a-b)}{2(f+g)}.$$

Multiply the first fraction by $(f+g)$, then join the two fractions, when we will have—

$$g = \frac{(f+g)^2 - (a+b)(a-b)}{2(f+g)}$$

The lines f and g , in the *figure*, together equal the line c ; therefore, by substitution—

$$g = \frac{c^2 - (a+b)(a-b)}{2c}. \quad (129.)$$

This is the value of the line g .

It may be expressed in words, thus: The shorter of the two parts into which the base of a triangle is divided by a perpendicular let fall from the apex upon the base, *equals the quotient arising from a division by twice the base, of the difference between the square of the base and the product of the sum and difference of the two inclined lines.*

As an example to show the application of this rule, let $a = 9$, $b = 6$, and $c = 12$; then equation (129.) becomes—

$$g = \frac{12^2 - (9+6)(9-6)}{2 \times 12},$$

$$g = \frac{144 - 15 \times 3}{24},$$

$$g = \frac{99}{24} = 4\frac{1}{8}.$$

Now, to obtain the length of d , the perpendicular, by the figure, we have—

$$d^2 = b^2 - g^2,$$

and, extracting the square root—

$$d = \sqrt{b^2 - g^2}, \quad (130.)$$

or, in words: The altitude of a triangle *equals the square root of the difference of the squares of one of the inclined sides and its base.*

As an example, take the same dimensions as before, then equation (130.) becomes—

$$d = \sqrt{6^2 - 4\frac{1}{8}^2}.$$

The square of	6 = 36.
“ “ “	4 $\frac{1}{8}$ = 17.015625
	6 ² - 4 $\frac{1}{8}$ ² = 18.984375,

the square root of which is 4.44234; therefore—

$$d = \sqrt{6^2 - 4\frac{1}{8}^2} = 4.44234.$$

This may be tested by applying the rule to the other inclined side and its base—

$c = 12$
$g = 4\frac{1}{8}$
$f = 7\frac{7}{8}$.

Then,

$d = \sqrt{9^2 - 7\frac{7}{8}^2},$
$9^2 = 81.$
$7\frac{7}{8}^2 = 62.015625$
$9^2 - 7\frac{7}{8}^2 = 18.984375.$

the same result as before, producing for its square root the same, 4.44234 , the value of d ; therefore—

$$d = \sqrt{9^2 - 7\frac{1}{8}^2} = 4.44234.$$

433.—Trigon: Radius of Circumscribed and Inscribed Circles: Area.—Let ABC (Fig. 287) be a given trigon or triangle with its circumscribed and inscribed circles. Draw the lines ADF , DB and DC .

The three triangles, ABD , ACD , and BDC , have their apexes converging at D , and form there the three angles, ADB , ADC , and BDC . These three angles together form

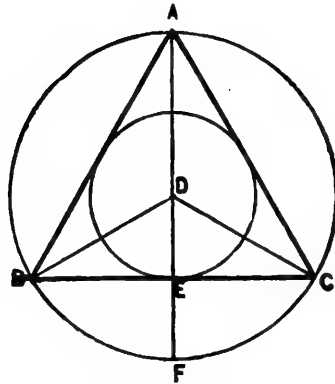


FIG. 287.

our right angles (Art. 335), and each of them, therefore, equals $\frac{1}{2}$ of a right angle.

The angles of the triangle BDC together equal two right angles (Art. 345). As above, the angle BDC equals $\frac{1}{2}$ of a right angle, hence $2 - \frac{1}{2} = \frac{3}{2} = \frac{3}{2}$ of a right angle, equals the sum of the two remaining angles at B and C . The triangle BDC is isosceles (Art. 338); for the two sides BD and DC , being radii, are equal; therefore the two angles at the base B and C are equal, and as their sum, as above, equals $\frac{3}{2}$ of a right angle, therefore each angle equals $\frac{1}{4}$ of a right angle. Draw the two lines FC and FB . Now, be-

cause DC and DF are radii, they are equal, hence DFC is an isosceles triangle.

It was before shown that the angle BDC equals $\frac{1}{3}$ of a right angle; now, since the diameter AF bisects the chord BC , the angles BDE and EDC are equal, and each equals the half of the angle BDC ; or, $\frac{1}{3}$ of $\frac{1}{2}$ of a right angle equals $\frac{1}{6}$ of a right angle. Deducting this from two right angles (the sum of the three angles of the triangle), or $2 - \frac{1}{3} = 1\frac{2}{3} = \frac{5}{3}$ of a right angle equals the sum of the angles at F and C ; hence each equals the half of $\frac{5}{3}$, or $\frac{5}{6}$ of a right angle; therefore the triangle DFC is equilateral. The triangles DBF and DFC are equal. The angles BDC and BFC are equal: the line BC is perpendicular to DF and bisects it, making DE and EF equal: hence DE equals half DF , or DB , radii of the circumscribing circle. Therefore, putting R to represent BD , the radius of the circumscribing circle, and $b = BC$, a side of the triangle ABC , by *Art.* 416, we have—

$$BD^2 = BE^2 + DE^2,$$

$$R^2 = \left(\frac{b}{2}\right)^2 + \left(\frac{R}{2}\right)^2.$$

Transferring and reducing—

$$R^2 - \left(\frac{R}{2}\right)^2 = \left(\frac{b}{2}\right)^2,$$

$$R^2 - \frac{R^2}{4} = \frac{b^2}{4},$$

$$R^2 \left(1 - \frac{1}{4}\right) = \frac{1}{4}b^2,$$

$$\frac{3}{4}R^2 = \frac{1}{4}b^2,$$

$$R^2 = \frac{4}{3} \times \frac{1}{4}b^2 = \frac{1}{3}b^2 = \frac{b^2}{3},$$

$$R = \frac{b}{\sqrt{3}}; \quad (131.)$$

Or, *The Radius of the circumscribing circle of a regular trigon or equilateral triangle, equals a side of the triangle divided by the square root of 3.*

By reference to *Fig. 287* it will be observed, as was above shown, that $DE = EF = \frac{DF}{2} = \frac{BD}{2}$; or, DE , the radius of the inscribed circle, equals half the radius of the circumscribed circle; or, again, dividing equation (131.) by 2, we have—

$$\frac{R}{2} = \frac{b}{2\sqrt{3}};$$

and, putting r for the radius of the inscribed circle, we have—

$$r = \frac{b}{2\sqrt{3}}. \quad (132.)$$

Or: *The radius of the inscribed circle of a regular trigon equals the half of a side of the trigon divided by the square root of 3.*

To obtain the area of a trigon or equilateral triangle; we have (*Art. 408*) the area of a parallelogram by multiplying its base into its height; and (*Arts. 341 and 342*) the area of a triangle is equal to half that of a parallelogram of equal base and height, therefore, the area of the triangle BDC (*Fig. 287*) is obtained by multiplying BC , the base, into the half of ED , its height. Or, when N is put for the area—

$$N = BC \times \frac{ED}{2},$$

or —
$$N = b \times \frac{R}{4};$$

substituting for R its value (131.)—

$$N = b \times \frac{b}{4\sqrt{3}},$$

$$N = \frac{b^2}{4\sqrt{3}}.$$

This is the area of the triangle BDC .

The triangle ABC is compounded of three equal triangles, one of which is the triangle BDC ; therefore the area of the triangle ABC equals three times the area of the triangle BDC ; or, when A represents the area—

$$A = \frac{3b^2}{4\sqrt{3}}; \quad (133.)$$

Or: The *area* of a regular *trigon* or equilateral *triangle* equals *three fourths of the square of a side of the triangle divided by the square root of 3.*

434.—Tetragon: Radius of Circumscribed and Inscribed Circles: Area.—Let $ABCD$ (Fig. 288) be a given tetragon or square, with its circumscribed and inscribed

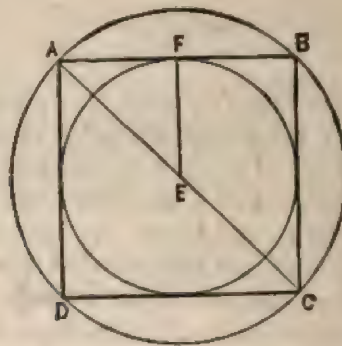


FIG. 288.

circles, of which AE is the radius of the former and EF that of the latter. The point F bisects AB , the side of the square. AF equals EF and equals half AB , a side of the square. Putting R for the radius of the circumscribed circle and b for AB , we have (Art. 416)—

$$AE^2 = AF^2 + EF^2,$$

$$R^2 = \left(\frac{b}{2}\right)^2 + \left(\frac{b}{2}\right)^2 = 2\left(\frac{b}{2}\right)^2 = \frac{2b^2}{4} = \frac{b^2}{2},$$

$$R = \frac{b}{\sqrt{2}}; \quad (134.)$$

Or: The *radius* of the *circumscribed* circle of a regular *tetragon* equals *a side of the square divided by the square root of 2.*

By referring to the figure it will be seen that the *radius* of the *inscribed* circle equals *half a side of the square*—

$$r = \frac{b}{2}. \quad (135.)$$

The *area* of the *square* equals *the square of a side*—

$$A = b^2. \quad (136.)$$

435. — Hexagon: Radius of Circumscribed and Inscribed Circles: Area.—Let $A B C D E F$ (Fig. 289) be an equilateral hexagon with its circumscribed and inscribed circles, of which $E G$ is the radius of the former, and $G H$ that of the latter. The three lines, $A D$, $B E$, and $C F$, divide the



FIG. 289.

hexagon into six equal triangles with their apexes converging at G . The six angles thus formed at G are equal, and since their sum about the point G amounts to four right angles (*Art.* 335), therefore each angle equals $\frac{1}{3}$ or $\frac{2}{3}$ of a right angle. The sides of the six triangles radiating from G are the radii of the circle, hence they are equal; therefore, each of the triangles is isosceles (*Art.* 338), having equal angles at the base. In the triangle $E G D$, the sum of the three angles being equal to two right angles (*Art.* 345), and the angle at G being, as above shown, equal to $\frac{2}{3}$ of a right angle, therefore the sum of the two angles at E and D equals $2 - \frac{2}{3} = \frac{4}{3}$ of a right angle; and, since they equal each other,

therefore each equals $\frac{1}{3}$ of a right angle and equals the angle at G ; therefore EGD is an equilateral triangle. Hence ED , a side of a hexagon, equals EG , the radius of the circumscribing circle—

$$R = b. \quad (137.)$$

As to the radius of the inscribed circle, represented by GH , a perpendicular from the centre upon ED , the base; the point H bisects ED . Therefore, EH equals half of a side of the hexagon, equals half the radius of the circumscribing circle. Let R = this radius, and r the radius of the inscribed circle, while b = a side of the hexagon; then we have (*Arts.* 353 and 416)—

$$GH^2 = EG^2 - EH^2,$$

$$r^2 = R^2 - \left(\frac{R}{2}\right)^2,$$

$$r^2 = R^2 - \frac{1}{4}R^2 = \frac{3}{4}R^2,$$

$$r = \sqrt{\frac{3}{4}R}.$$

Now, $R = b$, therefore—

$$r = \sqrt{\frac{3}{4}b} = \frac{\sqrt{3}}{\sqrt{4}}b = \frac{1}{2} \times \sqrt{3}b,$$

$$r = \sqrt{3} \frac{b}{2}. \quad (138.)$$

Or: The radius of the inscribed circle of a regular hexagon equals the half of a side of the hexagon, multiplied by the square root of 3.

As to the area of the hexagon, it will be observed that the six triangles, ABG , BGC , etc., converging at G , the centre, are together equal to the area of the hexagon. The area of EGD , one of these triangles, is equal to the product of ED , the base, into the half of GH , the perpendicular; or, when N is put to equal the area—

$$N = ED \times \frac{GH}{2},$$

$$N = b \times \frac{r}{2},$$

l, since r , as above, equals $\sqrt{3} \frac{b}{2}$,

$$N = b \times \frac{\sqrt{3} \frac{b}{2}}{2} = b \times \frac{\sqrt{3} b}{4},$$

$$N = \sqrt{3} \frac{b^2}{4}.$$

is is the area of one of the six equal triangles; therefore, when A is put to represent the area of the hexagon, we have—

$$A = 6 \times \sqrt{3} \frac{b^2}{4},$$

$$A = \sqrt{3} \frac{3b^2}{2}. \quad (139.)$$

: The area of a regular hexagon equals three halves of the area of a side multiplied by the square root of 3.

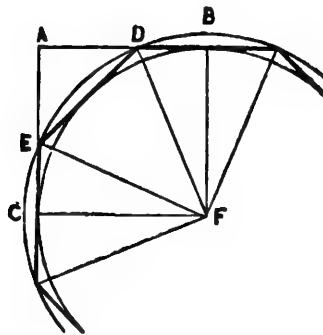


FIG. 290.

436.—Octagon: Radius of Circumscribed and Inscribed Circles: Area.—Let $CEDBF$ (Fig. 290) represent a quarter of a regular octagon, in which F is the centre, ED is a side, and CE and DB each half a side, while CF and DF are radii of the inscribed circle, and EF and DF are radii of the circumscribed circle.

Let R represent the latter, and r the former; also let b represent ED , one of the sides, and n be put for AD , and for AE . Then we have—

$$AD + DB = CF.$$

$$n + \frac{b}{2} = r,$$

or—

$$n = r - \frac{b}{2}.$$

Since ADE is a right-angled triangle (*Art.* 416), we have—

$$AE^2 + AD^2 = ED^2,$$

$$n^2 + n^2 = b^2,$$

$$2n^2 = b^2,$$

$$n^2 = \frac{b^2}{2}$$

$$n = \sqrt{\frac{b^2}{2}}.$$

Placing the value of n , equal to the value before found, we have—

$$r - \frac{b}{2} = \sqrt{\frac{b^2}{2}},$$

$$r = \sqrt{\frac{b^2}{2}} + \frac{b}{2} = \frac{\sqrt{b^2}}{\sqrt{2}} + \frac{b}{2},$$

$$r = \frac{b}{\sqrt{2}} + \frac{b}{2} = \left(\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} + \frac{1}{2} \right) b.$$

This coefficient may be reduced by multiplying the first fraction by $\sqrt{2}$, thus—

$$\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \times \frac{\sqrt{2}}{\sqrt{2}} = \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2},$$

therefore—

$$r = \left(\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2} + \frac{1}{2} \right) b = \frac{\sqrt{2} + 1}{2} b,$$

$$r = (\sqrt{2} + 1) \frac{b}{2}. \quad (140.)$$

Or: The *radius* of the *inscribed* circle of a regular *octagon* equals half a side of the octagon multiplied by the sum of unity plus the square root of 2. In regard to the radius of the circumscribed circle, by *Art.* 416 we have—

$$DF^2 = BF^2 + DB^2,$$

$$R^2 = r^2 + \left(\frac{b}{2} \right)^2.$$

In this expression substituting for r^2 , its value as above, we have—

$$R^2 = (\sqrt{2} + 1)^2 \left(\frac{b}{2} \right)^2 + \left(\frac{b}{2} \right)^2,$$

$$R^2 = [(\sqrt{2} + 1)^2 + 1] \left(\frac{b}{2} \right)^2.$$

The square of the coefficient $(\sqrt{2} + 1)$ by *Art.* 412 equals $2 + 2\sqrt{2} + 1 = 2\sqrt{2} + 3$, then—

$$R^2 = [(2\sqrt{2} + 3) + 1] \left(\frac{b}{2} \right)^2.$$

$$R^2 = (2\sqrt{2} + 4) \left(\frac{b}{2} \right)^2.$$

$$R = \sqrt{2\sqrt{2} + 4} \frac{b}{2}. \quad (141.)$$

Or: The *radius* of the *circumscribed* circle of a regular *octagon* equals half a side of the octagon multiplied by the square root of the sum of twice the square root of 2 plus 4.

In regard to the area of the octagon, the figure shows that one eighth of it is contained in the triangle DEF .

The area of DEF , putting it equal to N , is—

$$N = ED \times \frac{BF}{2},$$

$$N = b \times \frac{r}{2},$$

$$N = b \times \frac{(\sqrt{2} + 1) \frac{b}{2}}{2}$$

$$N = (\sqrt{2} + 1) \frac{b^2}{4}.$$

This is the area of one eighth of the octagon; the whole area, therefore, is—

$$A = (\sqrt{2} + 1) \frac{8b^2}{4},$$

$$A = (\sqrt{2} + 1) 2b^2. \quad (142.)$$

Or: The *area* of a regular octagon equals twice the square of a side, multiplied by the sum of the square root of 2 added to unity.

When a side of the enclosing square, or diameter of the inscribed circle, is given, a side of the octagon may be found; for from equation (140.), multiplying by two, we have—

$$2r = (\sqrt{2} + 1)b.$$

Dividing by $\sqrt{2} + 1$, gives—

$$b = \frac{2r}{\sqrt{2} + 1}. \quad (143.)$$

The numerator, $2r$, equals the diameter of the inscribed circle, or a side of the enclosing square; therefore:

The *side* of a regular octagon, equals a side of the enclosing square divided by the sum of the square root of 2 added to unity.

437.—Dodecagon: Radius of Circumscribed and Inscribed Circles: Area.—Let ABC (Fig. 291) be an equilat-

eral triangle. Bisect AB in F ; draw CFD ; with radius AC describe the arc ADB . Join A and D , also D and B ; bisect AD in E ; with the radius EC describe the arc EG . Then AD and DB are sides of a regular dodecagon, or twelve-sided polygon; of which AC , DC , and BC are radii of the circumscribing circle, while EC is a radius of the inscribed circle.

The line AB is the side of a regular hexagon (*Art.* 435). Putting R equal to AC the radius of the circumscribing circle; r , = EC , the radius of the inscribed circle; b , = AD , a side of the dodecagon, and n = DF . Then comparing the

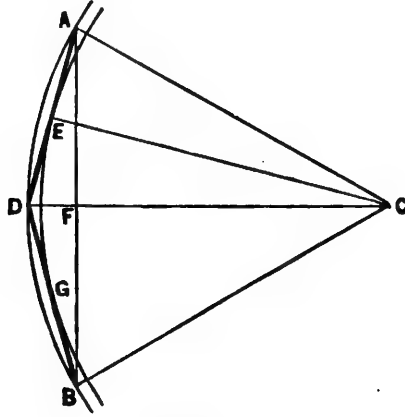


FIG. 291.

homologous triangles, ADF and AEC (the angle ADF equals the angle EAC , and the angles DFA and AEC are right angles); therefore, the two remaining angles DAF and ACE must be equal, and the two triangles homologous (*Art.* 345). Thus we have—

$$DF : DA :: AE : AC,$$

$$n : b :: \frac{b}{2} : R,$$

$$R = \frac{b^2}{2n}.$$

In *Art.* 435 it was shown that FC (*Fig.* 291), or GH of *Fig.* 289, the radius of the inscribed hexagon, equals $\sqrt{3}\frac{b}{2}$, and in which its $b = R$; $FC = \sqrt{3}\frac{R}{2}$.

Now (*Fig.* 291)—

$$DF = DC - FC,$$

or—

$$n = R - \sqrt{3}\frac{R}{2} = R(1 - \frac{1}{2}\sqrt{3}).$$

Substituting this value of n , in the above expression, we have—

$$R = \frac{b^2}{2R(1 - \frac{1}{2}\sqrt{3})}.$$

Multiplying by R and reducing, we have—

$$R^2 = \frac{b^2}{2 - \sqrt{3}},$$

$$R = \sqrt{\frac{1}{2 - \sqrt{3}}} b. \quad (144.)$$

Or: The *radius* of the *circumscribed* circle of a regular *dodecagon*, equals a *side* of the *dodecagon* multiplied by the *square root* of a *fraction*, having *unity* for its *numerator* and for its *denominator* 2 minus the *square root* of 3.

Comparing the same triangles, as above, we have—

$$FD : FA :: EA : EC,$$

or—

$$n : \frac{R}{2} :: \frac{b}{2} : r,$$

$$r = \frac{Rb}{4n} = \frac{Rb}{4R(1 - \frac{1}{2}\sqrt{3})}.$$

$$r = \frac{b}{4 - 2\sqrt{3}}. \quad (145.)$$

Or: The *radius* of the *inscribed* circle of a regular *dodecagon* equals a side of the dodecagon divided by the difference between 4 and the square root of 3.

The area of a dodecagon is equal to twelve times the area of the triangle ADC (Fig. 291). The area of this triangle is equal to half the base by its perpendicular; or, $AE \times EC$; or—

$$\frac{b}{2} \times r,$$

or, where N equals the area—

$$N = \frac{1}{2} b r.$$

Or, for the area of the whole dodecagon—

$$12 N = 6 b r,$$

$$A = 6 b r.$$

Substituting for r its value as above, we have—

$$A = \frac{6}{4 - 2\sqrt{3}} b^2. \quad (146.)$$

Or: The *area* of a regular *dodecagon* equals the square of a side of the dodecagon, multiplied by a fraction having 6 for its numerator, and for its denominator, 4 minus twice the square root of 3.

438.—Hecadecagon: Radius of Circumscribed and Inscribed Circles: Area.—Let $ABCD$ (Fig. 292) be a square

enclosing a quarter of a regular octagon $CEFB$, EF being one of its sides, and CE and FB each half a side, while FD is the radius of the circumscribed circle, and FD the radius of the inscribed circle of the octagon. Draw the diagonal AD ; with DF for radius, describe the circumscribed circle EGF ; join G with F and with E ; then EG and GF will each be a side of a regular hecadecagon, or polygon of sixteen sides.

An expression for FD , the radius of the circumscribed

in which b represents a side of the octagon, or EF , for which we have put s . Substituting s for b and putting the numerical coefficient under the radical, equal to B , we have—

$$R = \sqrt{B} \frac{s}{2}.$$

Squaring each member gives—

$$R^2 = B \left(\frac{s}{2} \right)^2.$$

From which, by transposition, we have—

$$\frac{R^2}{B} = \left(\frac{s}{2} \right)^2.$$

Substituting in the above expression for $\left(\frac{s}{2} \right)^2$, this value of it, gives—

$$\frac{b^4}{4R^2} = b^2 - \frac{R^2}{B}.$$

Transposing, we have—

$$\frac{b^4}{4R^2} + \frac{R^2}{B} = b^2.$$

Multiplying the first term by B , and the second by $4R^2$, we have—

$$\frac{Bb^4}{4BR^2} + \frac{4R^4}{4BR^2} = b^2,$$

$$\frac{Bb^4 + 4R^4}{4BR^2} = b^2,$$

$$Bb^4 + 4R^4 = 4BR^2b^2.$$

Transposing, we have—

$$4R^4 - 4BR^2b^2 = -Bb^4.$$

POLYGONS.

To complete the square (*Art.* 428) we proceed thus—

$$R^2 - BR^2b^2 = -\frac{1}{4}Bb^4,$$

$$R^2 - BR^2b^2 + (\frac{1}{4}Bb^2)^2 = (\frac{1}{4}Bb^2)^2 - \frac{1}{4}Bb^4.$$

Taking the square root, we have—

$$R^2 - \frac{1}{4}Bb^2 = \sqrt{\frac{1}{4}B^2b^4 - \frac{1}{4}Bb^4},$$

$$R^2 = \sqrt{\frac{1}{4}B^2b^4 - \frac{1}{4}Bb^4} + \frac{1}{4}Bb^2,$$

$$R^2 = b^2 \sqrt{\frac{1}{4}B^2 - \frac{1}{4}B} + \frac{1}{4}Bb^2,$$

$$R^2 = b^2 (\sqrt{\frac{1}{4}B^2 - \frac{1}{4}B} + \frac{1}{4}B),$$

$$R^2 = b^2 (\sqrt{\frac{1}{4}B(B-1)} + \frac{1}{4}B).$$

Restoring B to its value, $2\sqrt{2} + 4$ as above, we have—

$$\frac{1}{4}B = \frac{1}{4}\sqrt{2} + 1,$$

$$B - 1 = \underline{2\sqrt{2} + 3};$$

multiply these—

$$2 + 2\sqrt{2},$$

$$\underline{3 + \frac{1}{2}\sqrt{2}},$$

$$\frac{1}{4}B(B-1) = 5 + \frac{5}{4}\sqrt{2},$$

$$\frac{1}{4}B = \sqrt{2} + 2.$$

Therefore—

$$R^2 = b^2 (\sqrt{5 + \frac{5}{4}\sqrt{2}} + \sqrt{2} + 2),$$

$$R = b\sqrt{\sqrt{5 + \frac{5}{4}\sqrt{2}} + \sqrt{2} + 2}. \quad (147.)$$

Or: The radius of the circumscribed circle of a regular hecadecagon equals a side of the hecadecagon multiplied by the square root of the sum of two quantities, one of which is the square root of 2 added to 2, and the other is the square root of the sum of seven halves of the square root of 2 added to 5.

To obtain the radius of the inscribed circle we have (Fig. 292)—

$$HD^2 = FD^2 - HF^2,$$

$$r^2 = R^2 - \left(\frac{b}{2}\right)^2.$$

Substituting for R^2 its value as above, we have—

$$r^2 = b^2 \left(\sqrt{\frac{1}{4} B (B - 1)} + \frac{1}{2} B \right) - \left(\frac{b}{2}\right)^2,$$

$$r^2 = b^2 \left[\left(\sqrt{\frac{1}{4} B (B - 1)} + \frac{1}{2} B \right) - \left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^2 \right],$$

$$r = b \sqrt{\sqrt{\frac{1}{4} B (B - 1)} + \frac{1}{2} B - \frac{1}{4}}.$$

The coefficient of b is the same as in the case above, except the $-\frac{1}{4}$; therefore its numerical value will be $\frac{1}{4}$ less, or—

$$r = b \sqrt{\sqrt{5 + \frac{1}{2}} \sqrt{2} + \sqrt{2} + 1\frac{3}{4}}. \quad (148).$$

Or: The radius of the inscribed circle of a regular hecadecagon equals a side of the hecadecagon multiplied by the square root of two quantities, one of which is the square root of 2 added to $1\frac{3}{4}$, and the other is the square root of the sum of seven halves of the square root of 2 added to 5.

To obtain the area of the hecadecagon it will be observed that the area of the triangle GFD (Fig. 292) equals $HD \times HF$, and that this is the $\frac{1}{16}$ part of the polygon; we therefore have—

$$A = 16 HD \times HF,$$

$$A = 16 r \frac{b}{2} = 8 r b.$$

The value of r is shown in (148.); therefore we have—

$$A = 8b^2 \sqrt{\sqrt{5 + \frac{1}{2}} \sqrt{2} + \sqrt{2} + \frac{1}{2}}. \quad (149.)$$

Or: The area of a regular *hecadecagon* equals eight times the square of its side, multiplied by the square root of two quantities, one of which is the square root of 2 added to $\frac{1}{2}$, and the other is the square root of the sum of seven halves of the square root of 2 added to 5.

439.—Polygons: Radius of Circumscribed and Inscribed Circles: Area.—In *Arts.* 433 to 438 the relation of the radii to a side in a trigon, tetragon, hexagon, octagon, dodecagon and hecadecagon have been shown by methods based

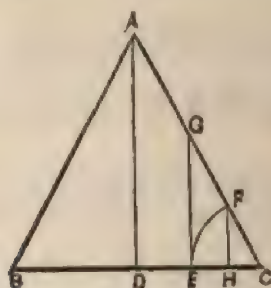


FIG. 293.

upon geometrical proportions. This relation in polygons of seven, nine, ten, eleven, thirteen, fourteen and fifteen sides, cannot be so readily shown by geometry, but can be easily obtained by trigonometry—as also said relation of the parts in a regular polygon of any number of sides. The nature of trigonometrical tables is discussed in *Arts.* 473 and 474. So much as is required for the present purpose will here be stated.

Let ABC (*Fig.* 293) represent one of the triangles into which any polygon may be divided, in which $BC = b =$ a side of the polygon; $AC = R =$ the radius of the circumscribed circle; and $AD = r =$ the radius of the inscribed circle.

Make EC equal unity; on C as a centre describe the arc EF ; draw FH and EG perpendicular to BC , or parallel to AD ; then for the uses of trigonometry EG is called the *tangent* of c , or of the angle ACB , and FH is the *sine*, and HC the *cosine* of the same angle.

These trigonometrical quantities for angles varying from zero up to ninety degrees have been computed and are to be found in trigonometrical tables.

Referring now to *Fig. 293* we have—

$$HC : FC :: DC : AC,$$

$$\cos. c : 1 :: \frac{b}{2} : R,$$

$$R = \frac{b}{2 \cos. c}. \quad (150.)$$

Again—

$$EC : EG :: DC : AD,$$

$$1 : \tan. c :: \frac{b}{2} : r,$$

$$r = \frac{b}{2} \tan. c. \quad (151.)$$

These two equations give the required radii of the circumscribed and inscribed circles. They may be stated thus:

The *radius* of the *circumscribed* circle of any regular polygon equals a side of the polygon divided by twice the cosine of the angle formed by a side of the polygon and a radius from one end of the side.

The *radius* of the *inscribed* circle of any regular polygon equals half of a side of the polygon multiplied by the tangent of the angle formed by a side of the polygon and a radius from one end of the side.

The area of a polygon equals the area of the triangle ABC (*Fig. 293*), (of which BC is one side of the polygon and A is the centre), multiplied by the number of sides in the polygon; or, if n be put to represent the number of the sides and A the area, then we have—

$$A = B n,$$

in which B equals the area of the triangle. The area of $\triangle ABC$ (Fig. 293) is equal to $AD \times BD$, or—

$$B = r \times \frac{b}{2}.$$

For r substituting its value, as in equation (151.), we have—

$$B = \frac{b}{2} \tan. c \frac{b}{2} = \frac{1}{4} b^2 \tan. c.$$

Therefore, by substitution—

$$A = \frac{1}{4} b^2 n \tan. c. \quad (152.)$$

Or: The area of a regular polygon equals the square of a side of the polygon, multiplied by one fourth of the number of its sides, and by the tangent of the angle formed by a side of the polygon, and a radius from one end of the sides.

440.—Polygons: Their Angles.—Let a line be drawn from each angle of a regular polygon to its centre, then these lines form with each other angles at the centre, which taken together amount to four right angles, or to 360 degrees (Arts. 327, 335).

If this 360 degrees be divided by the number of the sides of the polygon, the quotient will equal the angle at the centre of the polygon, of each triangle formed by a side and two radii drawn from the ends of the side. For example: if $\triangle ABC$ (Fig. 293) be one of the triangles referred to, having BC one of the sides of the polygon and the point A the centre of the polygon, then the angle BAC will be equal to 360 degrees divided by the number of the sides of the polygon. If the polygon has six sides, then the angle BAC will contain $\frac{360}{6} = 60$ degrees; or if there be 10 sides, then the angle at A , the centre, will contain $\frac{360}{10} = 36$ degrees. The angle

BAD equals half the angle BAC , or, when n equals the number of sides, the angle BAC equals—

$$\frac{360}{n},$$

and the triangle $BAD = \frac{BAC}{2}$, equals—

$$\frac{360}{2n}.$$

Now the angles $BAD + DBA$ equal one right angle (*Art.* 346), or 90 degrees. Hence the angle $DBA = 90^\circ - BAD$, or the angle c equals—

$$c^\circ = 90^\circ - \frac{360^\circ}{2n}. \quad (153.)$$

For example, if n equal 6, or the polygon have six sides, then—

$$c^\circ = 90^\circ - \frac{360^\circ}{12} = 90 - 30 = 60^\circ.$$

Therefore, the angle c , contained in equations (150.), (151.), and (152.), equals 90 degrees, less the quotient derived from a division of 360 by twice the number of sides to the polygon.

441.—Pentagon: Radius of the Circumscribed and Inscribed Circles: Area.—The rules for polygons developed in the two former articles will here be exemplified in their application to the case of a regular pentagon, or polygon of five sides.

To obtain the angle c° (153.), we have $n = 5$, and—

$$c^\circ = 90^\circ - \frac{360}{10} = 90 - 36 = 54^\circ.$$

For the radius of the circumscribed circle, we have (150.)—

$$R = \frac{b}{2 \cos. c},$$

$$R = \frac{b}{2 \cos. 54^\circ}$$

$$R = b \frac{1}{2 \cos. 54^\circ}$$

Using a table of logarithmic sines and tangents (*Art.* 427), we have—

$$\begin{array}{r} \text{Log. } 2 = 0.3010300 \\ \text{Cos. } 54^\circ = 9.7692187 \\ \hline \text{Their sum} = 0.0702487 \text{ — subtracted from} \\ \text{Log. } 1 = 0.0000000 \\ \hline 0.85065 = 9.9297513 \end{array}$$

Therefore—

$$R = 0.85065 b.$$

Or: The *radius* of the *circumscribed* circle of a regular *pentagon* equals a *side* of the *pentagon* multiplied by the *decimal* 0.85065.

For the radius of the inscribed circle, we have (151.)—

$$\begin{aligned} r &= \frac{b}{2} \tan. c, \\ r &= b \frac{\tan. 54^\circ}{2}. \end{aligned}$$

For this we have—

$$\begin{array}{r} \text{Log. tan. } 54^\circ = 0.1387390 \\ \text{Log. } 2 = 0.3010300 \\ \hline 0.68819 = 9.8377090. \end{array}$$

Therefore—

$$r = 0.68819 b.$$

Or: The *radius* of the *inscribed* circle of a regular *pentagon* equals a *side* of the *pentagon* multiplied by the *decimal* 0.68819.

For the area we have (152.)—

$$\begin{aligned} A &= \frac{1}{4} b^2 n \tan. c, \\ A &= \frac{1}{4} \times 5 \tan. 54^\circ b^2, \\ A &= \frac{5}{4} \tan. 54^\circ b^2. \end{aligned}$$

For this we have—

$$\text{Log. } 5. = 0.6989700$$

$$\text{Log. tan. } 54^\circ = 0.1387390$$

$$0.8377090$$

$$\text{Log. } 4 = 0.6020600$$

$$1.72048 = 0.2356490$$

Therefore—

$$A = 1.72048 b^2.$$

Or: The area of a regular pentagon equals the square of its side multiplied by 1.72048.

442.—Polygons: Table of Constant Multipliers.—To obtain expressions for the radii of the circumscribed and inscribed circles, and for the area for polygons of 7, 9, 10, 11, 13, 14, and 15 sides, a process would be needed such precisely as that just shown in the last article for a pentagon, except in the value of n and r , which are the only factors which require change for each individual case.

No useful purpose, therefore, can be subserved by exhibiting the details of the process required for these several polygons. The values of the constants required for the radii and for the areas of these polygons have been computed, and the results, together with those for the polygons treated in former articles, gathered in the annexed Table of Regular Polygons.

REGULAR POLYGONS.

SIDES.	$R =$ $\frac{a}{2\delta}$	$r =$ $\frac{a}{2\delta'}$	$A =$ $\frac{a^2}{4\delta'}$
3. Trigon.....	.57735	.28868	.43301
4. Tetragon.....	.70711	.50000	1.00000
5. Pentagon.....	.85065	.68819	1.72048
6. Hexagon.....	1.00000	.86603	2.59808
7. Heptagon.....	1.15238	1.03526	3.63391
8. Octagon.....	1.30656	1.20711	4.82843
9. Nonagon.....	1.46190	1.37374	6.18182
10. Decagon.....	1.61803	1.55584	7.69421
11. Undecagon.....	1.77473	1.70284	9.36864
12. Dodecagon.....	1.93185	1.86603	11.19615
13. Tridecagon.....	2.08920	2.02858	13.18577
14. Tetradecegon.....	2.24698	2.19064	15.33451
15. Pentadecegon.....	2.40487	2.35231	17.64236
16. Hecadecegon.....	2.56292	2.51367	20.10936

In this table R represents the radius of the circumscribed circle; r the radius of the inscribed circle; b one of the sides, and A the area of the polygon. By the aid of the constants of this table, R , the radius of the circumscribed circle of any of the polygons named, may be found when a side of the polygon is given. For this purpose, putting m for any constant of the table, we have—

$$R = b m. \quad (154.)$$

As an example: let it be required to find R , for a pentagon having each side equal to 5 feet; then the above expression becomes—

$$\begin{aligned} R &= 5 \times 0.85065, \\ R &= 4.25325. \end{aligned}$$

The radius will be 4 feet 3 inches and a small fraction. In like manner the radius of the inscribed circle will be—

$$r = b m; \quad (155.)$$

and for a pentagon with sides of 5 feet, we have—

$$\begin{aligned} r &= 5 \times 0.68819, \\ r &= 3.44095. \end{aligned}$$

Or, the radius of the inscribed circle will be 3 ft. $\frac{44}{100}$ and a small fraction. Or, multiplying the decimal by 12, 3 ft. 5 in. $\frac{29}{100}$ and a small fraction.

The area of any polygon of the table may be obtained by this expression—

$$A = b^2 m; \quad (156.)$$

and, applying this to the pentagon as before, we have—

$$\begin{aligned} A &= 5^2 \times 1.72048, \\ A &= 43.012. \end{aligned}$$

or, the area of a pentagon having its sides equal to 5 feet, 43 feet and $\frac{11}{1000}$ of a foot.

By the constants of the table a side of any of its polygons may be found, when either of the radii, or the area, are known.

When R is known, we have—

$$b = \frac{R}{m}. \quad (157.)$$

When r is known, we have—

$$b = \frac{r}{m}. \quad (158.)$$

When the area is known, we have—

$$b = \sqrt{\frac{A}{m}}. \quad (159.)$$

SECTION XI.—THE CIRCLE.

443.—Circles: Diameter and Perpendicular: Mean Proportional.—Let ABC (*Fig. 294*) be a semicircle. From C , any point in the curve, draw a line to A and another to B ; then ABC will be a right-angled triangle (*Art. 352*). Draw the line CD perpendicular to the diameter AB ; then CD will divide the triangle ABC into two triangles, ACD and CBD , which are homologous. For, let the triangle CBD be revolved on D as a centre until its line CD shall come to the position ED , and the line DB occupy the position DF , each in a position at right angles

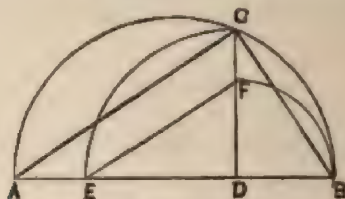


FIG 294.

to its former position, the point B describing the curve BF , and the point C the curve CE , and each forming a quadrant or angle of ninety degrees. Since these points have revolved ninety degrees, therefore the three lines of the triangle CBD have revolved into a position at right angles to that which they before occupied; hence the line EF is at right angles to CB , and (from the fact that ACB is a right angle) parallel with AC . Since the triangle EFD equals the triangle CBD , and since the lines of EFD are parallel respectively to the corresponding lines of ACD , therefore the triangles ACD and CBD are homologous.

Comparing the lines of these triangles and putting $a = AB$, $y = CD$, and $x = DB$, we have—

$$DB : DC :: DC : AD,$$

$$x : y :: y : a - x,$$

$$y^2 = x(a - x). \quad (160.)$$

Or, in a semicircle, a *perpendicular* to the *diameter* terminated by the diameter and the curve is a *geometric mean*, or *mean proportional*, between the two parts into which the perpendicular divides the diameter.

444.—Circle: Radius from Given Chord and Versed Sine.—Let AB (Fig. 295) be a given chord line and CD a versed sine. Extend CD to the opposite side of the circle; it will pass through F , the centre. Join A and C , also E and

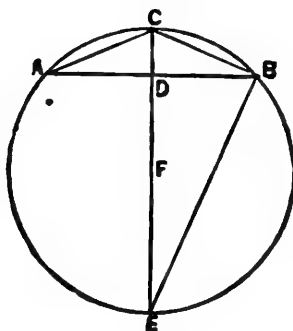


FIG. 295.

B . The line AD , perpendicular to the diameter CE , is a mean proportional between the two parts CD and DE (Art. 443); or, putting $a = AD$, $b = CD$, and r equal the radius FE , we have—

$$CD : AD :: AD : DE;$$

$$b : a :: a : 2r - b,$$

$$a^2 = b(2r - b),$$

$$a^2 = 2rb - b^2;$$

$$a^2 + b^2 = 2rb,$$

$$r = \frac{a^2 + b^2}{2b}. \quad (161.)$$

Or: *The radius of a circle equals the sum of the squares of half the chord and the versed sine, divided by twice the versed sine.*

Another expression for the radius may be obtained: for the two triangles $CB'D$ and CEB (Fig. 295) are homologous (Art. 443) and their corresponding lines in proportion. Putting f for CB , we have—

$$CD : CB :: CB : CE,$$

or— $v : f :: f : 2r,$

or— $f^2 = 2rv,$

and— $r = \frac{f^2}{2v}. \quad (162.)$

Or: *The radius of a circle equals the square of the chord of half the arc divided by twice the versed sine.*

445.—Circle: Segment from Ordinates.—When the curve of a segment of a circle is required for which the radius cannot be used, either by reason of its extreme length, or be-

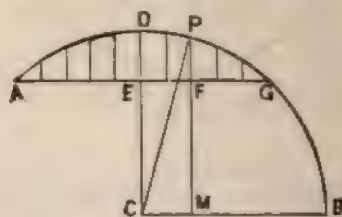


FIG. 296.

cause the centre of the circle is inaccessible, it is desirable to obtain the curve without the use of the radius. This may be done by calculating ordinates, a rule for which will now be developed.

Let DCB (Fig. 296) be a right angle, and ADB a circular arc described from C as a centre, with the radius $BC = CD = CP$. Draw PM parallel with DC , and AG parallel with CB . Now, in the segment ADG , we have given AG , its chord, and DE , its versed sine, and it is re-

quired to find an expression by which its ordinates, as PF , may be computed. From *Art.* 416, we have—

$$PM^2 = \overline{CP^2} - \overline{CM^2};$$

or, putting for these lines their usual symbols—

$$y^2 = r^2 - x^2,$$

$$y = \sqrt{r^2 - x^2},$$

now we have—

$$EC = DC - DE,$$

$$EC = FM,$$

$$FM = DC - DE,$$

$$FM = r - b.$$

Then we have—

$$PF = PM - FM;$$

or, putting t for PF and substituting for PM and FM their values as above, we have—

$$t = y - (r - b),$$

and for y , substituting its value as above, we have—

$$t = \sqrt{r^2 - x^2} - (r - b). \quad (163.)$$

Or: The *ordinate* in the *segment* equals the *square root* of the *difference* of the *squares* of the *radius* and the *abscissa* minus the *difference* of the *radius* and the *versed sine*.

For example: let the chord AG (*Fig.* 296) in a given case equal 20 feet, and the versed sine, b , or the rise DE , equal 4 feet; and let the ordinates be located at every 2 feet along the chord line, AG .

In solving this problem we require first to find the radius. This is obtained by means of equation (161).—

$$r = \frac{a^2 + b^2}{2b}.$$

For a , half the chord, we have 10 feet; for b , the versed sine, we have 4 feet; and, substituting these values, we have—

$$r = \frac{10^2 + 4^2}{2 \times 4} = \frac{116}{8} = 14.5$$

The radius equals— 14.5

The versed sine equals— 4.0

$$(r - b) = 10.5$$

The square of 14.5, the radius, equals 210.25. Now we have, substituting these values in equation (163.)—

$$t = \sqrt{210.25 - x^2} - 10.5.$$

The respective values of x , as above required, are 0, 2, 4, 6, 8 and 10. Substituting successively for x one of these values, we shall have, when—

$$x = 0; t = \sqrt{210.25 - 0^2} - 10.5 = 4.$$

$$x = 2; t = \sqrt{210.25 - 2^2} - 10.5 = 3.8614$$

$$x = 4; t = \sqrt{210.25 - 4^2} - 10.5 = 3.4374$$

$$x = 6; t = \sqrt{210.25 - 6^2} - 10.5 = 2.7004$$

$$x = 8; t = \sqrt{210.25 - 8^2} - 10.5 = 1.5934$$

$$x = 10; t = \sqrt{210.25 - 10^2} - 10.5 = 0.0$$

Values for t may be taken at points as numerous as desirable for accuracy.

In ordinary cases, however, they need not be nearer than in this example.

After the points are secured, let a flexible piece of wood be bent so as to coincide with at least four of the points at a time, and then draw the curve against the strip.

446.—Circle: Relation of Diameter to Circumference.

—In *Art.* 439 it is shown that the area of a polygon equals the radius of the inscribed circle multiplied by half of a side of the polygon and by the number of the sides; or,

$A = r \times \frac{b}{2} n = \frac{r}{2} b n$; or, the area equals half the radius by a side into the number of sides; or, half the radius into the periphery of the polygon. Now, if a polygon have very small sides and many of them, its periphery will approximate the circumference of the circle inscribed within it; indeed when the number of sides becomes infinite, and consequently infinitely small, the periphery and circumference become equal. Consequently, for the area of the circle, we have—

$$A = \frac{r}{2} c, \quad (164.)$$

where c represents the circumference.

By computing the area of a polygon inscribed within a given circle, and that of one circumscribed about the circle, the area of one will approximate the area of the other in proportion as the number of the sides of the polygon are increased.

For example: if polygons of 4 sides be inscribed within and circumscribed about a circle, the radius of which is 1, the areas will be respectively 2 and 4. If the polygons have 16 sides, the areas are each 3 and a fraction, the fractions being unlike; when they have 128 sides the areas are each 3.14 and with unlike fractions; when the sides are increased to 2048, the areas each equal 3.1415 and unlike fractions, and when the sides reach 32768 in number the areas are equal each to 3.1415926, having like decimals to seven places. The computations have been continued to 127 places (Gregory's "Math. for Practical Men"), but for all possible uses in building operations seven places will be found to be sufficient. From this result we have the diameter in proportion to the circumference as 1 : 3.1415926, or as—

$$1 : 3.141594.$$

$$1 : 3.14159.$$

$$1 : 3.1416.$$

Of these proportions, that one may be used which will give

a result most nearly approximating the degree of accuracy required. For many purposes the last proportion will be sufficiently near the truth.

For ordinary purposes the proportion $7 : 22$ is very useful, and is correct for two places of decimals; it fails in the third place.

The proportion $113 : 355$ is correct to six places of decimals.

For the quantity 3.1415926 putting the Greek letter π (called *py*), and $2r = d$ for the diameter, we have—

$$c = \pi d. \quad (165.)$$

To apply this: in a circle of 50 feet diameter, what is the circumference?

$$\begin{aligned} c &= 3.1416 \times 50 \\ c &= 157.08 \text{ ft.} \end{aligned}$$

If the more accurate value of π be used, we have—

$$\begin{aligned} c &= 3.1415926 \times 50, \\ c &= 157.07963. \end{aligned}$$

The difference between the two results is 0.00037 , which for all ordinary purposes, would be inappreciable.

By the rule of $7 : 22$, we have—

$$c = 50 \times \frac{22}{7} = 157.1428571,$$

an excess over the more accurate result above, of 0.0632271 , which is about $\frac{3}{4}$ of an inch.

By the rule of $113 : 355$, we have—

$$c = 50 \times \frac{22}{7} = 157.079646.$$

This result gives an excess of only 0.000016 ; it is sufficiently near for any use required in building.

From these results we have these rules, namely: To obtain the *circumference* of a circle, *multiply its diameter by*

22, and divide the product by 7; or, more accurately, multiply the diameter by 355 and divide the product by 113; or, by multiplication only, multiply the diameter by 3.1416; or, by 3.141594; or, by 3.1415926; according to the degree of accuracy required.

And conversely: To obtain the diameter from the circumference, multiply the circumference by 7 and divide the product by 22; or, multiply by 113 and divide by 355; or, divide the circumference by 3.1416; or, by 3.141594; or, by 3.1415926.

447.—Circle: Length of an Arc.—Considering the circle divided into 360° , the length of an arc of one degree in a circle the diameter of which is unity may be thus found.

The circumference for 360° is 3.14159265;

$$\frac{3.14159265}{360} = 0.00872664625;$$

which equals an arc of one degree in a circle having unity as its diameter; or, for ordinary use the decimal 0.008727 or 0.00874 may be taken; or putting a for the arc and g for the number of degrees, we have—

$$a = 0.00872665 dg. \quad (166.)$$

Wherefore: To obtain the length of an arc of a circle, multiply the diameter of the circle by the number of degrees in the arc, and by the decimal 0.00874, or, instead thereof, by 0.008727.

448.—Circle: Area.—The area of a circle may be obtained in a manner similar to that for the area of polygons (*Art.* 439), in which $A = Bn$; $B = r \frac{b}{2}$, or—

$$A = \frac{1}{2} b n r,$$

where b equals a side of the polygon and n the number of sides; so that $b n$ equals the perimeter of the polygon.

Now, if for the perimeter of the polygon there be sub-

stituted the circumference of the circle, we shall have, putting for the circumference $3 \cdot 1416 d$, or, πd (Art. 446)—

$$A = \frac{1}{2} \pi d r,$$

in which r is the radius. Since $2 r = d$, the diameter, and $r = \frac{d}{2}$, we have—

$$A = \frac{1}{2} \pi d \frac{d}{2},$$

$$A = \frac{1}{4} \pi d^2.$$

And since—

$$\pi = 3 \cdot 14159265,$$

$$\frac{1}{4} \pi = 0 \cdot 78539816,$$

or—

$$\frac{1}{4} \pi = 0 \cdot 7854, \text{ nearly.}$$

Therefore—

$$A = 0 \cdot 7854 d^2. \quad (167.)$$

Or: The *area of a circle equals the square of the diameter multiplied by 0.7854.*

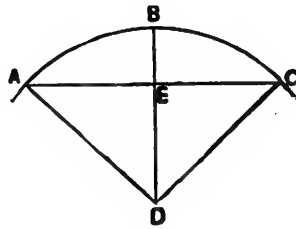


FIG. 297.

As an example, the area of a circle 10 feet in diameter is found thus—

$$10 \times 10 = 100.$$

$$100 \times 0 \cdot 7854 = 78 \cdot 54 \text{ feet.}$$

449.—Circle: Area of a Sector.—The area of $ABCD$ (Fig. 297), a sector of a circle, is proportionate to that of the whole circle. For, as the circumference of the whole circle is to its area, so is the arc ABC to the area of $ABCD$.

The circumference of a circle is (165.) $C = \pi d$. The area of a circle is (167.) $A = .7854 d^2$. For the arc ABC put a , and for the area of $ABCD$ put s . Then we have from the above-named proportion—

$$\pi d : .7854 d^2 :: a : s,$$

$$s = \frac{.7854 d^2}{\pi d} a.$$

The coefficient 0.7854 is $\frac{\pi}{4}$ (Art. 448).

Therefore, multiplying the fraction by 4, we have—

$$S = \frac{\pi d^2}{4 \pi d} a;$$

or— $S = \frac{1}{4} d a = \frac{1}{4} r a.$ (168.)

Wherefore: To obtain the area of a sector of a circle, multiply a quarter of the diameter by the length of the arc.

Thus: let AD equal 10; also let $ABC = a$, equal 12. Then the area of $ABCD$ is—

$$S = \frac{1}{4} \times 10 \times 12,$$

$$S = 60.$$

The length of the arc may be had by the rule in Art. 447.

450. —Circle: Area of a Segment.—In the last article, $ABCD$ (Fig. 297) is called the sector of a circle. Of this the portion included within $AECB$ is a *segment* of a circle. The area of this equals the area of the sector minus the area of the triangle ADC ; or, putting M for the area of the segment, S for the area of the sector, and T for the area of the triangle, then—

$$M = S - T.$$

Putting c for AC (Fig. 297) and h for DE , then $T = \frac{c}{2} h$.

In the last article, $s = \frac{1}{4} r a$, in which a = the length of the

arc ABC . Substituting this value of s in the above, we have—

$$M = \frac{a}{2} r - \frac{c}{2} h = \frac{ar - ch}{2}; \quad (169.)$$

Or: When the length of the arc is known, also that of the chord and the perpendicular from the centre of the circle, then the *area of the segment equals the difference between the product of half the arc into the radius, and half the chord into its perpendicular to the centre of the circle.*

But ordinarily the length of the arc and of the chord are unknown. If in this case the number of degrees contained between the two radii, DA, DC , are known, then the area of

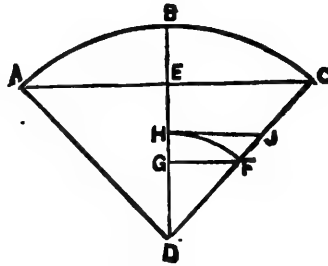


FIG. 298.

the segment may be found by a rule which will now be developed.

In *Fig. 298* (a repetition of *Fig. 297*) upon D as a centre, and with $DF = \text{unity}$ for a radius, describe the arc HF . Then GF is the *sine* of the angle CDB , and DG is the *co-sine*; and we have—

$$DF : GF :: DC : EC,$$

or—

$$1 : \sin :: r : \frac{c}{2} = r \sin.$$

Again—

$$DF : DG :: DC : DE,$$

or—

$$1 : \cos :: r : h = r \cos.$$

By equation (166.) we have—

$$a = 0.00872665 dg,$$

in which a is the length of the arc; g the number of degrees contained in the arc; and d is the diameter of the circle. Since $d = 2r$, therefore—

$$a = 0.0174533 rg.$$

Putting B for the decimal coefficient, we have—

$$a = Brg.$$

The expression (169.), by substitution of values as above, becomes—

$$M = \frac{a}{2}r - \frac{c}{2}h,$$

$$M = \frac{Br g}{2}r - r \sin. \times r \cos.$$

$$M = \frac{1}{2} B g r^2 - \sin. \cos. r^2$$

$$M = r^2 (\frac{1}{2} B g - \sin. \cos.)$$

$$M = r^2 (0.00872665 g - \sin. \cos.) \quad (170.)$$

Or: The area of a segment of a circle equals the square of the radius into the difference between 0.00872665 times the number of degrees contained in the arc of the circle, and the product of the sine and cosine of half the arc.

When the number of degrees subtended by the arc is unknown, or tables of sines and cosines are not accessible, then the area may be obtained by equation (169.), provided the chord and versed sine are known; but before this equation can be used for this purpose, expressions giving their values in terms of the chord and versed sine must be obtained, for a , the arc, r , the radius, and h , the perpendicular to the chord from the centre of the circle.

For the value of the arc we have (from "Penny Cycl.," Art. *Segment*) as a close approximation—

$$a = \frac{1}{3} (8f - c).$$

By equation (162.) we have—

$$r = \frac{f^2}{2v};$$

Then—

$$h = r - v,$$

or—

$$h = \frac{f^2}{2v} - v.$$

Substituting these values in equation (169.) we have—

$$M = \frac{1}{2} \left[\frac{1}{3} (8f - c) \frac{f^2}{2v} - c \left(\frac{f^2}{2v} - v \right) \right]. \quad (171.)$$

This rule is the rule (169.) expanded.

The written rule for equation (169.) may be used, substituting for "*half the arc,*" *one sixth of the difference between eight times the chord of half the arc and the chord* (or $\frac{1}{6}$ of 8 times AB , Fig. 298, minus AC , the chord). Also substitute for "*the radius,*" *the square of the chord of half the arc divided by twice the versed sine*. Also, for "*its perpendicular to the centre of the circle,*" substitute, *the quotient of the square of the chord of half the arc divided by twice the versed sine, minus the versed sine*.

When the arc is small the curve approximates that of a parabola. In this case the equation for the area of the parabola, which is quite simple, may be used. It is this—

$$M = \frac{2}{3} c v. \quad (172.)$$

Or, in *segments* of circles where the *versed sine* is *small* in comparison with the chord, *the area equals approximately two thirds of the chord into the versed sine*.

SECTION XII.—THE ELLIPSE.

451.—Ellipse : Definitions.—Let two lines, PF, PF' (*Fig. 299*), be drawn from any point P to any two fixed points F, F' , and let the point P move in such a manner that the sum of the two lines, PF, PF' , shall remain a constant quantity ; then the curve $PMKOGADB$, traced by P , will be an Ellipse ; the two fixed points F, F' , the Foci ; the point C at

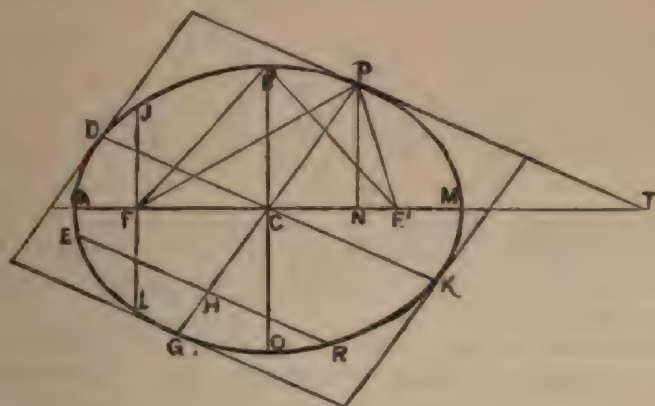


FIG. 299.

the middle of FF' , the centre ; the line AM drawn through FF' and terminated by the curve, the Major or Transverse Axis ; the line BO , drawn through C and at right angles to AM , the Minor or Conjugate Axis ; the line GP , drawn through P and C and terminated by the curve, the Diameter to the point P ; the line DK drawn through C , parallel with the tangent PT , and terminated by the curve, the diameter Conjugate to PG ; the line EHR drawn parallel with DK is a double ordinate to the abscissas GH and HP of the diameter GP ($EH = HR$) ; the line JL drawn through F at a

right angle to AM and terminated by the curve, the Parameter, or Latus Rectum.

When the point P reaches and coincides with B , the two lines PF and PF' become equal.

The proportion between the major and minor axes depends upon the relative position of F, F' , the foci: the nearer these are placed to the extremities of the major axis the smaller will the minor axis be in comparison with the major axis. The nearer F, F' approach C , the centre, the nearer will the minor axis approach the length of the major axis. When F, F' reach and coincide with the centre, the minor axis will equal the major axis, and the ellipse will become a

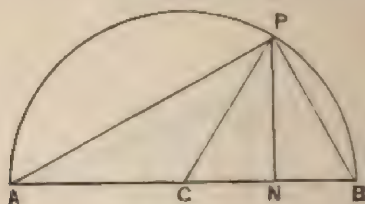


FIG. 300.

circle. Then we have $PF = PF' = BC = AC$. From this we learn $PF + PF' = 2AC = AM$; also, when $PF = PF'$, then $PF = BF = AC$.

From this we may, with given major and minor axes, find the position of F and F' . To do this, on B , as a centre, with AC for radius, mark the major axis at F and F' .

452.—Ellipse: Equations to the Curve.—An equation to a curve is an expression containing factors two of which, called co-ordinates, measure the distance to any point in the curve. For example: in a circle it has been shown (Art. 443) that PN is a mean proportional to AN and NB . Or, putting $x = AN$, $y = PN$, and $a = AB$, we have—

$$AN : PN :: PN : NB,$$

or— $x : y :: y : a - x,$

or— $y^2 = x(a - x).$

This is the equation to the circle having the origin of x and y , the co-ordinates at A , the vertex of the curve. It will be observed that the factors are of such nature in this equation, that it may be employed to measure the distance, rectangularly, to P , wherever in the curve the point P may be located. By this equation the rectangular distance to any and *every* point in the curve may be measured; or, having the curve and one of the lines x or y , the other may be computed.

From this example, the nature and utility of an equation to any curve may be understood. The equation to the ellipse having the origin of co-ordinates at the vertex, is similar to that for the circle. In the form usually given by writers on Conic Sections, it is—

$$y^2 = \frac{b^2}{a^2} (2ax - x^2), \quad (173.)$$

in which $a = AC$ (*Fig. 299*); $b = BC$; x equals AN , and $y = PN$.

If, as before suggested, the foci be drawn towards the centre and finally made to coincide with it, the minor axis would then become equal to the major axis, changing the ellipse into a circle. In this case, the factors a and b in the equation would become equal; and the fraction $\frac{b^2}{a^2}$ would equal $\frac{a^2}{a^2} = 1$, and hence the equation would become—

$$y^2 = 2ax - x^2,$$

or— $y^2 = x(2a - x);$

precisely the same as in the equation to the circle above shown. The $2a$ of this equation is equivalent to a of the circle; for a in the ellipse represents only half the major axis; while in the equation to the circle a represents the diameter. The relation between the ellipse and the circle is thus shown; indeed, the circle has been said to be an ellipse in its extreme conditions.

Or : The *ordinate* in the *circle* is in *proportion* to its *corresponding ordinate* in the *ellipse*, as the *semi-axis major* is to the *semi-axis minor*, or as the *axis major* is to the *axis minor*.

454.—Ellipse: Relation of Parameter and Axes.—The equation to the ellipse when the origin of the co-ordinates is at the centre is, as shown by writers on Conic Sections, thus—

$$a^2 y^2 = a^2 b^2 - b^2 x'^2, \quad (174.)$$

or—

$$a^2 y^2 = b^2 (a^2 - x'^2).$$

If x' equal CF (Fig. 299) then the ordinate will be located at $F\mathcal{Y}$, and—

$$\overline{CF}^2 = \overline{BF}^2 - \overline{BC}^2,$$

$$x'^2 = a^2 - b^2.$$

Then—

$$a^2 - x'^2 = a^2 - (a^2 - b^2),$$

$$= a^2 - a^2 + b^2,$$

$$a^2 - x'^2 = b^2.$$

This is shown also by the figure.

Substituting in the above this value of $a^2 - x'^2$, we have—

$$a^2 y^2 = b^2 b^2 = b^4.$$

From which, taking the square root—

$$ay = b^2,$$

or—

$$a : b :: b : y.$$

Now y , located at $F\mathcal{Y}$, is the semi-parameter; hence we have the semi-minor axis a third proportional to the semi-major axis and the semi-parameter. Or: *The parameter is a third proportional to the two axes of an ellipse.*

455.—Ellipse: Relation of Tangent to the Axes.—Let TT' (Fig. 301) be a tangent to P , a point in the ellipse; then, as has been shown by writers on Conic Sections—

$$CN \times CT = \overline{CM}^2,$$

or—

$$CM : CT :: CN : CM.$$

Or: *The semi-major axis is a mean proportional between the abscissa CN and CT , the part of the axis intercepted between the centre and the tangent.*

This relation is found also to subsist between the similar parts of the minor axis; for—

$$CN' \times CT' = \overline{CB}^2.$$

This relation affords an easy rule for finding the point T or T' ; for from the above we have—

$$CT = \frac{\overline{CM}^2}{CN};$$

or, putting t for CT , we have—

$$t = \frac{a^2}{x'} \quad (175.)$$

or—

$$t' = \frac{b^2}{y}. \quad (176.)$$

Since the value of t is not dependent upon y nor upon b , therefore t is constant for all ellipses which may be described upon the same major axis AM ; and since the circle is an ellipse (*Art.* 452) with equal major and minor axes, therefore rule (175.) is applicable also to a circle, as shown in *Fig.* 301.

The equation (175.) gives the value of $t = CT$. From this deducting $CN = x'$, we have NT , the *subtangent*, or—

$$CT - CN = NT,$$

$$t - x' = s;$$

or, substituting for t its value in (175.), we have—

$$s = \frac{a^2}{x'} - x'; \quad (177.)$$

Or: *The subtangent to an ellipse equals the difference between the quotient of the square of the semi-major axis divided by the abscissa, and the abscissa; the origin of the co-ordinates being at C , the centre.*

456.—Ellipse : Relation of Tangent with the Foci.—Let the two lines from the foci to P (Fig. 302), any point in the ellipse, be extended beyond P . With the radius PF' de-

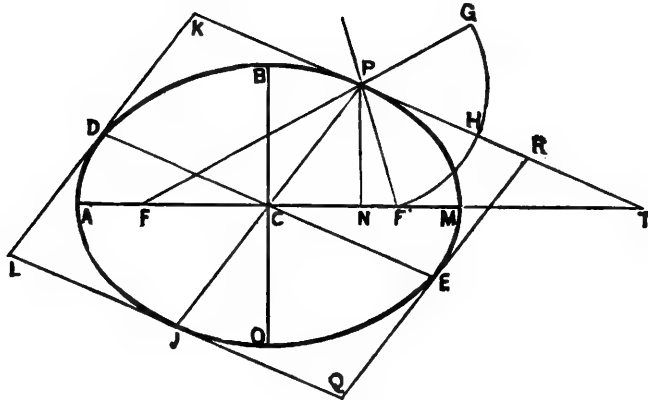


FIG. 302.

scribe from P the arc $F'G$, and bisect it in H . Then the line PT , drawn through H , will be a tangent to the ellipse at P .

This has been shown by writers on Conic Sections. The construction here shown affords a ready method of drawing a tangent. And from the principle here given we learn that a tangent makes equal angles with the lines from the tangential point to the two foci.

For, because $GH = HF'$, we have the angle $F'PH = HPG$. The angles HPG and KPF are opposite, and hence (Art. 344) are equal; and since the two triangles $F'PH$ and KPF are each equal to HPG , therefore $F'PH$ and KPF are equal to each other. Or: A tangent to an ellipse makes equal angles with the two lines drawn from the point of tangency to the two foci.

Experience shows that light shining from one focus is reflected from the ellipse into the other focus. It is for this reason that the two points F and F' are called *foci*, the plural of *focus*, a fireplace.

457.—Ellipse : Relation of Axes to Conjugate Diameters.—Parallel with KT (Fig. 302) let DE be drawn through

C , the centre, and LQ through \mathcal{F} , one end of the diameter from the point P . Parallel with this diameter $P\mathcal{F}$ draw LK and QR through the extremities of the diameter DE . Then DE is a diameter conjugate to the diameter $P\mathcal{F}$, and KR , RQ , QL , and LK are tangents at the extremities of these conjugate diameters.

Now it is shown by writers on Conic Sections (*Fig. 302*) that—

$$\overline{AC}^2 + \overline{BC}^2 = \overline{DC}^2 + \overline{PC}^2,$$

or—

$$a^2 + b^2 = a'^2 + b'^2;$$

Or: The *sum* of the *squares* of the two *axes* equals the *sum* of the *squares* of any two *conjugate diameters*.

From this it is also shown that the area of the parallelogram KC equals the rectangle $AC \times BC$; or, that a *parallelogram* formed by *tangents* at the extremities of *any two conjugate diameters* is equal to the *rectangle of the axes*.

458.—Ellipse; Area.—Let E equal the area of an ellipse; A the area of a circle, of which the radius a equals the semi-major axis of the ellipse, and let b equal the semi-minor axis. Then it has been shown that—

$$E : A :: b : a,$$

or—

$$E = A \frac{b}{a}.$$

The area of a circle (*Art. 448*) is—

$$A = \frac{1}{2} \pi d r = \pi r^2,$$

and when the radius equals a —

$$A = \pi a^2,$$

This value of A , substituted in the above equation, gives—

$$E = \pi a^2 \frac{b}{a},$$

$$E = \pi a b. \quad (178.)$$

Or: The *area* of an *ellipse* equals $3.14159\frac{1}{2}$ times the *product* of the *semi-axes*; or 0.7854 times the *product* of the *axes*.

459.—Ellipse: Practical Suggestions.—In order to describe the curve of an ellipse, it is essential to have the two axes; or, the major axis and the parameter; or, the major axis and the focal distance.

If the two axes are given, then with the semi-major axis for radius, from *B* (*Fig. 299*) as centre an arc may be made at *F* and *F'*, the foci; and then the curve may be described by any of the various methods given at *Arts. 548* to *552*.

If the major axis only and the parameter are given, then (*Art. 454*) since—

$$b^2 = ay,$$

we have—

$$b = \sqrt{ay}. \quad (179.)$$

Or: The *semi-minor axis* of an *ellipse* equals the *square root* of the *product* of the *semi-major axis* into the *semi-parameter*. Then, having both of the axes, proceed as before.

If the major axis and the focal distance are given, or the location of the foci; then with the semi-major axis for ra-

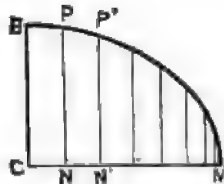


FIG. 303.

dus and from the focal points as centres, describe arcs cutting each other at *B* and *O* (*Fig. 299*). The intersection of the arcs gives the limit to *BO*, the minor axis. With the two axes proceed as before. Points in the curve may be found by computing the length of the ordinates, and then the curve drawn by the side of a flexible rod bent to coincide with the several points.

For example, let it be required to find points in the curve of an ellipse, the axes of which are 12 and 20 feet; or

the semi-axes 6 and 10 feet, or $6 \times 12 = 72$ inches, and $10 \times 12 = 120$ inches.

Fix the positions of the points NN' , etc., along the semi-major axis CM (*Fig. 303*) at any distances apart desirable. It is better to so place them that the ordinates when drawn shall divide the curve BPM into parts approximately equal. If CM be divided into eight parts as shown, these parts measured from C will be well graded if made equal severally to the following decimals multiplied by CM . In this case $CM = 120$; therefore—

$$\begin{aligned} CN &= 120 \times 0.3 &= 36. &= x' \\ CN' &= 120 \times 0.475 &= 57. &= x' \\ CN'' &= 120 \times 0.625 &= 75. &= x' \\ \text{Etc.,} &= 120 \times 0.75 &= 90. &= x' \\ &120 \times 0.85 &= 102. &= x' \\ &120 \times 0.925 &= 111. &= x' \\ &120 \times 0.975 &= 117. &= x' \\ &120 \times 1.0 &= 120. &= x'. \end{aligned}$$

The equation of the ellipse having the origin of co-ordinates at the centre (*Art. 454*) is—

$$a^2 y^2 = b^2 (a^2 - x'^2),$$

or, dividing by a^2 —

$$y^2 = \frac{b^2}{a^2} (a^2 - x'^2),$$

or—
$$y = \sqrt{\frac{b^2}{a^2} (a^2 - x'^2)},$$

or—
$$y = \frac{b}{a} \sqrt{a^2 - x'^2}; \quad (180.)$$

in which a and b represent the semi-axes. Substituting for these their values in this case, we have—

$$\begin{aligned} y &= \frac{72}{120} \sqrt{120^2 - x'^2}, \\ y &= 0.6 \sqrt{14400 - x'^2}. \end{aligned}$$

Now, substituting in this equation the several values of x' successively, the values of the corresponding ordinates will be obtained. For example, taking 36, the first value of x' , as above, we have—

$$y = 0.6 \sqrt{14400 - 36^2}$$

$$y = 68.684;$$

$$y = 0.6 \sqrt{14400 - 57^2}$$

$$y = 63.359;$$

and so in like manner compute the others.

The ordinates for this case are as follows, viz. :

When $x' =$	0, $y = 72.0$
" $x' =$	36, $y = 68.684$
" $x' =$	57, $y = 63.359$
" $x' =$	75, $y = 56.205$
" $x' =$	90, $y = 47.624$
" $x' =$	102, $y = 37.928$
" $x' =$	111, $y = 27.358$
" $x' =$	117, $y = 15.999$
" $x' =$	120, $y = 0.0$.

The computation of these ordinates is accomplished easily by the help of a table of square roots and of logarithms.

For example, the work for one ordinate is all comprised within the following, viz. :

$$\begin{aligned}
 y &= 0.6 \sqrt{14400 - 36^2} = 68.684. \\
 120^2 &= 14400 \\
 36^2 &= 1296 \\
 13104 &= 4.1174039 \\
 \text{Half} &= 2.0587020 \\
 0.6 &= 9.7781513 \\
 68.684 &= 1.8368533.
 \end{aligned}$$

The logarithm of 13104 = 4.1174039. The half of this is the logarithm of the square root of 13104. To the half logarithm add the logarithm of 0.6; the sum is the logarithm of 68.684 found in the table (see *Art.* 427).

SECTION XIII.—THE PARABOLA.

460.—Parabola : Definitions.—The parabola is one of the most interesting of the curves derived from the sections of a cone. The several curves thus produced are as follows: When cut parallel with its base the outline is a *circle*; when the plane passes obliquely through the cone, it is an *ellipse*; when the plane is parallel with the axis, but not in the axis, it is a *hyperbola*; while that which is produced by

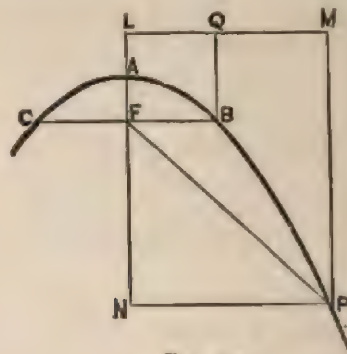


FIG. 304.

a plane cutting it parallel with one side of the cone is a *parabola*.

Let the lines LM and LN (Fig. 304) be at right angles; draw CFB parallel with LM ; make $LQ = LF$; draw QB parallel with LF ; then $FB = BQ$. Now let the line AL move from FL , but remain parallel with it, and as it moves let it gradually increase in length in such manner that the point A shall constantly be equally distant from the line LM and from the point F . Then ABP , the curve described by the point A , will be a semi-parabola. For example, the lines FB and BQ are equal; the lines FP and PM are equal, and so of lines similarly drawn from any point in the curve ABP . Let PN be drawn parallel with LM ; then for the

point P , AN is the *abscissa* and NP its *ordinate* (see *Art.* 452).

The double ordinate CB drawn through F , the focus, is the *parameter*. AF is the focal distance. A is the vertex of the curve. The line LM is the *directrix*.

461.—Parabola : Equation to the Curve.—In *Fig.* 304 FPN is a right-angled triangle, therefore—

$$\overline{NP}^2 = \overline{FP}^2 - \overline{FN}^2;$$

but— $FP = MP = LN = AN + AL;$

and— $FN = AN - AF.$

Therefore—

$$\overline{NP}^2 = \overline{AN + AL}^2 - \overline{AN - AF}^2;$$

or— $y^2 = (x + \frac{1}{2}p)^2 - (x - \frac{1}{2}p)^2,$

p being put for the distance $LF = FB$ (see *Art.* 452). As in *Arts.* 412 and 413, we have—

$$\begin{aligned} (x + \tfrac{1}{2}p)^2 &= x^2 + px + \tfrac{1}{4}p^2 \\ (x - \tfrac{1}{2}p)^2 &= x^2 - px + \tfrac{1}{4}p^2 \\ \hline y^2 &= 2px \end{aligned} \quad (181.)$$

by subtraction. This is the usual equation to the parabola, in which we have the rule: The *square* of the *ordinate* equals the *rectangle* of the corresponding *abscissa* with the *parameter*.

From (181.) we have—

$$x : y :: y : 2p,$$

or: The *parameter* is a *third proportional* to the *abscissa* and its corresponding ordinate.

462.—Parabola : Tangent.—From M , any point in the directrix, draw a line to F , the focus (*Fig.* 305); bisect MF in R , and through R draw UT perpendicular to MF , then the line TU will be a tangent to the curve. For, draw MD

point P . Therefore the line TP touches the curve in only one point, P ; hence it is a tangent.

Parallel with LV , from A , draw AS , the *vertical tangent*. Now AS bisects MF or intersects it in the point R . For the two right-angled triangles FLM and FAK are homologous; and because $FA = AL$, by construction, therefore $FR = RM$.

Or: The *vertical tangent bisects all lines which can be drawn from the focus to the directrix*.

The lines PF and FT are equal; for the lines MP and NT being parallel, therefore the alternate angles MPT and NTP are equal (*Art.* 345); and because the line PT bisects MF , the base of an isosceles triangle, therefore the angles MPT and FPT are equal. We thus have the two angles NTP and FPT each equal to the angle MPT ; therefore the two angles NTP and FPT are equal to each other; hence the triangle PFT is an isosceles triangle, having the points T and P equidistant from F , the focus.

Also because the line MF is perpendicular to PT , therefore the line MF bisects the tangent PT in the point R . And because $TR = RP$, therefore, comparing triangles TRF and TPO , $TF = FO$.

The opposite angles MPT and UPD made by the two intersecting lines UT and MD (*Art.* 344) are equal, and since the angles MPT and FPT are equal, as before shown, therefore the angles FPT and UPD are equal.

It is because these two angles are equal, that, in reflectors, rays of light and heat proceeding from F , the focus, are reflected from the parabolic surface in lines parallel with the axis.

For an equation expressing the value of the tangent, we have—

$$\begin{aligned} TP^2 &= TN^2 + NP^2, \\ t^2 &= (2x)^2 + y^2, \\ t &= \sqrt{4x^2 + y^2}. \end{aligned} \quad (182.)$$

Or: The *tangent to a parabola equals the square root of the sum of four times the square of the abscissa added to the square of the ordinate*.

463.—Parabola: Subtangent.—The line TN (*Fig. 305*), the portion of the axis intercepted between T , the point of intersection of the tangent, and N , the foot of a perpendicular to the axis from P , the point of contact, is the *subtangent*. The subtangent is bisected by the vertex, or $TA = AN$. For, the two triangles TRA and TPN are homologous; and, as shown in the last article, the line MF bisects PT in R ; or $TR = RP$.

Therefore, we have—

$$TR : TA :: TP : TN,$$

$$TR \times TN = TA \times TP,$$

but—

$$TR = \frac{1}{2} TP;$$

therefore—

$$\frac{1}{2} TP \times TN = TA \times TP,$$

$$\frac{1}{2} TN = TA.$$

Or: The *subtangent* of a *parabola* is *bisected* by the *vertex*; or is equal to *twice* the *abscissa*.

And because of the similarity of the two triangles TRA and TPN , as above shown, we have—

$$NP = 2 AR,$$

$$y = 2 AR.$$

Or: The *ordinate* equals *twice* the *vertical tangent*.

464.—Parabola: Normal and Subnormal.—The line PO (*Fig. 305*) perpendicular to PT , is the *normal* and NO , the part of the axis intercepted between the normal and the ordinate, is the *subnormal*. For the normal, from similar triangles, we have—

$$TN : NP :: TP : PO,$$

$$PO = \frac{NP \times TP}{TN},$$

$$PO = \frac{yt}{2x}.$$

Or: The *normal* equals the *rectangle* of the *ordinate* and *tangent*, divided by *twice* the *abscissa*.

The subnormal equals half the parameter. For (181.)—

$$y^2 = 2 p x,$$

or—

$$NP^2 = 2 \overline{FB} \cdot \overline{AN}.$$

Dividing by $2 \overline{AN}$ gives—

$$FB = \frac{\overline{NP}^2}{2 \overline{AN}}. \quad (\text{A.})$$

In the similar triangles (*Art.* 443) OPN and PTN , we have—

$$NO : NP :: NP : NT,$$

$$NO = \frac{\overline{NP}^2}{\overline{NT}}.$$

As shown in the previous article, $NT = 2 AN$; therefore—

$$NO = \frac{\overline{NP}^2}{2 \overline{AN}}. \quad (\text{B.})$$

Comparing equations (A.) and (B.), we have—

$$NO = FB.$$

Or: The *subnormal* of a *parabola* equals *half the parameter*, a constant quantity for the subnormal to all points of the curve.

465.—Parabola: Diameters.—In the parabola BAC (*Fig.* 306), PD , a diameter (a line parallel with the axis) to the point P , is in proportion to $BD \times DC$, the rectangle of the two parts into which the base of the parabola is divided by the diameter.

This may be shown in the following manner:

$$DP = EN = EA - NA. \quad (\text{A.})$$

For EA we have, taking the co-ordinates, for the point C , (181.)—

$$y^2 = 2px,$$

or—

$$\frac{y^2}{2p} = x$$

or—

$$\frac{\overline{EC}^2}{2p} = EA. \quad (B.)$$

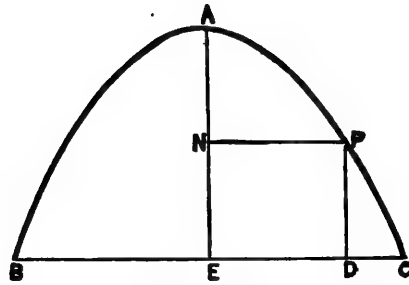


FIG. 306.

For NA we have, taking the co-ordinates to the point P , (181.)—

$$y^2 = 2px,$$

or—

$$\frac{y^2}{2p} = x,$$

or—

$$\frac{\overline{NP}^2}{2p} = NA. \quad (C.)$$

Using these values (B.) and (C.) in (A.), we have—

$$DP = EA - NA,$$

$$DP = \frac{\overline{EC}^2}{2p} - \frac{\overline{NP}^2}{2p} = \frac{\overline{EC}^2 - \overline{NP}^2}{2p}.$$

If l be put for BC and n for DC , then—

$$NP = EC - DC = \frac{1}{2}l - n,$$

and— $DP = \frac{(\frac{1}{2}l)^2 - (\frac{1}{2}l - n)^2}{2p},$

then (Art. 413)—

$$DP = \frac{\frac{1}{4}l^2 - (\frac{1}{4}l^2 - ln + n^2)}{2p},$$

or (Art. 415)—

$$DP = \frac{\frac{1}{4}l^2 - \frac{1}{4}l^2 + ln - n^2}{2p},$$

$$DP = \frac{ln - n^2}{2p},$$

$$DP = \frac{n(l - n)}{2p},$$

$$DP = \frac{DC \times BD}{2p}.$$

Now, since $2p$, the parameter, is constant, we have DP , the diameter, in proportion to $DC \times BD$, the two parts of the base.

Putting d for the diameter, we have—

$$d = \frac{n(l - n)}{2p}. \quad (183.)$$

Or: The *diameter* of a *parabola* equals the *quotient* obtained by dividing the *rectangle*—formed by the two parts into which the diameter divides the base—by the *parameter*.

It has been shown by writers on Conic Sections that a diameter, $P\mathcal{F}$ (Fig. 307), to any point P in a parabola bisects all chord lines, SG , DE , etc., drawn parallel with the tangent to the point P ; the diameter being parallel with the axis of the parabola.

466.—Parabola : Elements.—From any given parabola, to find the axis, tangent, directrix, parameter and focus, draw any two parallel lines or chords, SG and DE (Fig. 307), and bisect them in H and \mathcal{F} ; through these points draw $\mathcal{F}P$; then $\mathcal{F}P$ will be a diameter of the parabola—a

dicularly to the base, extend NA beyond A , and make AT equal to NA ; join T and P ; from P perpendicularly to TP draw PO ; bisect ON in R ; make AL and AF each equal to NR ; through L , perpendicular to LO , draw DE , the directrix.

Let the ruler $CDES$ be laid to the line DE , then with $\mathcal{J}GH$, a set-square, the curve may be described in the following manner:

Placing the square against the ruler and with its edge

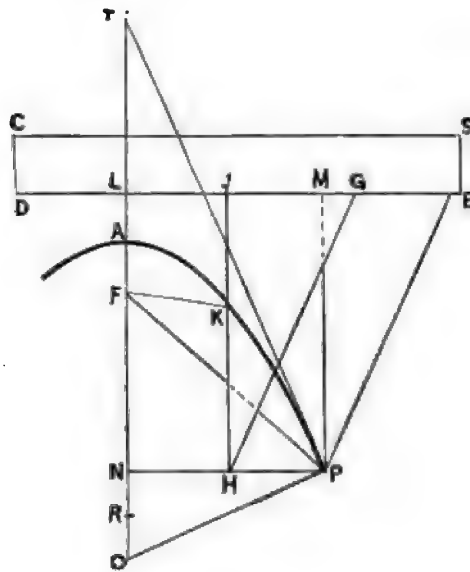


FIG. 308.

$\mathcal{J}H$ coincident with the line MP , fasten to it a fine cord on the edge PE , and extend it from P to F , the focus, and secure it to a pin fixed in F . The cord FP will equal the edge MP . To describe the curve set the triangle $\mathcal{J}GH$ at MPE , slide it gently along the ruler towards D , keeping the edge $\mathcal{J}G$ in contact with the ruler, and, as the square is moved, keep the cord stretched tight, holding for this purpose a pencil, as at K , against the cord. Thus held, as the square is moved the pencil will describe the curve. That this operation will produce the true curve we have but to

consider that at all points the line FK will equal KJ , which is the law of the curve (*Art.* 460).

468.—Parabola: Described from Points.—With given base, NP (*Fig.* 309), and given height, AN , to find the points D, F, M , etc., and describe the curve. Make AT equal to AN (*Art.* 462); join T and P ; perpendicular to TP draw

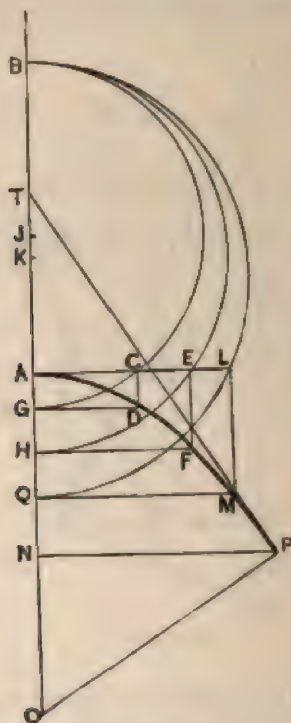


FIG. 309.

PO ; make AB equal to twice NO ; take G , any point in the axis AO , and bisect BG in J ; on J as a centre describe the semi-circle BCG cutting AL , a perpendicular to BO in C ; on AC and AG complete the rectangle $ACDG$. Then D is a point in the curve. Take H , another point in the axis; bisect BH in K ; on K as a centre describe the semi-circle BEH cutting AL in E ; this by EF and HF , gives F , an-

other point in the curve; in like manner procure M , and as many other points as may be desired. This simple and accurate method of obtaining points in the curve depends upon two well-established equations; one, the equation to the parabola, and the other, the equation to the circle. The line GD , an ordinate in the parabola, is equal to AC , an ordinate in the circle BCG ; AG , the abscissa of the parabola, is also the abscissa of the circle; in which we have (*Art.* 443)—

$$AG : AC :: AC : AB,$$

$$x : y :: y : a - x,$$

$$y^2 = x(a - x).$$

For the parabola, we have (181.)—

$$y^2 = 2px.$$

Comparing these two equations, we have—

$$x(a - x) = 2px,$$

$$a - x = 2p,$$

or—

$$BG - AG = 2p.$$

By construction AB equals $2NO$, or twice the subnormal; the subnormal (*Art.* 464) equals half the parameter. Hence, twice the subnormal equals the parameter—equals $2p$. Therefore, the method shown in *Fig.* 309 is correct.

469.—Parabola: Described from Arcs.—Let NP (*Fig.* 310) be the given base and AN the given height of the parabola. Make AT (*Art.* 462) equal AN . Join T to P ; draw PO perpendicular to PT ; bisect NO in R ; make AL and AF each equal to NR ; then LM , drawn perpendicular to TO , will be the directrix. Parallel to LM draw the lines BD , CE , etc., at discretion. Then with the distance BL for

radius, and on F as a centre, mark the line BD with an arc; the intersection of the arc and the line will be a point in the curve (*Art.* 460). Again, with CL for radius and on F as a centre, mark the line CE with an arc; this gives another point in the curve. In like manner, mark each horizontal

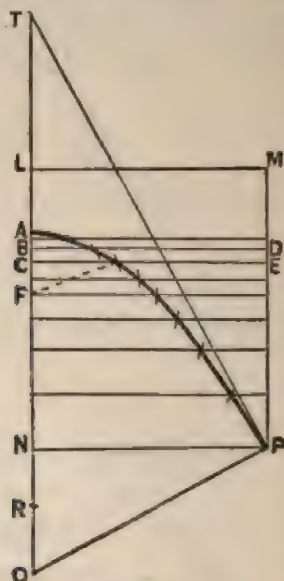


FIG. 310.

line from F as a centre by a radius equal to the perpendicular distance between that line and LM , the directrix. Then a curve traced through the points of intersection thus obtained will be the required parabola.

470.—Parabola: Described from Ordinates.—With a given base, NP (*Fig.* 311), and height, AN , a parabola may be drawn through points F, H, G , etc., which are the extremities of the ordinates BF, CH, DG , etc.; the lengths of the ordinates being computed from the equation to the curve, (181.)—

$$y^2 = 2px.$$

For any given parabola, in base and height, the value of

p may be had by dividing both members of the equation by $2x$; by which we have—

$$p = \frac{y^2}{2x} = \frac{NP^2}{2AN}. \quad (\text{A.})$$

from which, NP and AN being known, p may be computed.

With the value of p , a constant quantity, determined, the equation is rendered practicable. For, taking the square root of each member of equation (181.), we have—

$$y = \sqrt{2px}. \quad (\text{B.})$$

which by computation will produce the value of y , for every assigned value of x , as AB , AC , AD , etc.

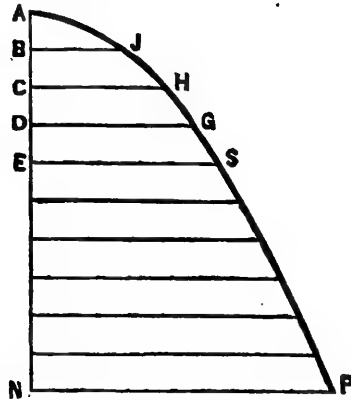


FIG. 311.

As an example: let it be required to compute the ordinates in a parabola in which the base, NP , equals 8 feet, and the height, AN , equals 10 feet. With these values equation (A.) as above becomes—

$$p = \frac{NP^2}{2AN} = \frac{8^2}{2 \times 10} = \frac{64}{20} = 3.2;$$

$$2p = 6.4.$$

Then, with this value in (B.) as above, we have, for each ordinate—

$$y = \sqrt{6.4x}.$$

In order to assign values to x , let AN be divided into any number of parts at B, C, D , etc., say, for convenience in this example, in ten equal parts: then each part will equal one foot, and we shall have the consecutive values of $x = 1, 2, 3, 4$, etc., to 10, and the corresponding values of y will be as follows. When—

$$x = 1, y = \sqrt{6.4 \times 1} = \sqrt{6.4} = 2.5297 = B\mathcal{F},$$

$$x = 2, y = \sqrt{6.4 \times 2} = \sqrt{12.8} = 3.5777 = CH,$$

$$x = 3, y = \sqrt{6.4 \times 3} = \sqrt{19.2} = 4.3818 = DG,$$

$$x = 4, y = \sqrt{6.4 \times 4} = \sqrt{25.6} = 5.0596 = ES,$$

$$x = 5, y = \sqrt{6.4 \times 5} = \sqrt{32} = 5.6569 = (\text{etc.}),$$

$$x = 6, y = \sqrt{6.4 \times 6} = \sqrt{38.4} = 6.1968 =$$

$$x = 7, y = \sqrt{6.4 \times 7} = \sqrt{44.8} = 6.6933 =$$

$$x = 8, y = \sqrt{6.4 \times 8} = \sqrt{51.2} = 7.1554 =$$

$$x = 9, y = \sqrt{6.4 \times 9} = \sqrt{57.6} = 7.5895 =$$

$$x = 10, y = \sqrt{6.4 \times 10} = \sqrt{64} = 8.0 = NP.$$

With these values of y , respectively, set on the corresponding horizontal lines $B\mathcal{F}, CH, DG, ES$, etc., points in the curve \mathcal{F}, H, G, S , etc., are obtained, through which the curve may be drawn. The decimals above shown are the decimals of a foot: they may be changed to inches and decimals of an inch by multiplying each by 12. For example: $12 \times 0.5297 = 6.3564$ equals 6 inches and the decimal 0.3564 of an inch, which equals nearly $\frac{3}{8}$ of an inch.

Near the top of the curve, owing to its rapid change in direction and to the approximation of the direction of the curve to a parallel with the direction of the ordinates, it is

desirable to obtain points in the curve more frequent than those obtained by dividing the axis into *equal* parts.

Instead, therefore, of dividing the axis into equal parts, it is better to divide it into parts made gradually smaller toward the apex of the curve—or, to obtain points for this part of the curve as shown in the following article.

471.—Parabola: Described from Diameters.—Let EC (*Fig. 312*) be the given base and AE the given height, placed perpendicularly to EC . Divide EC in several parts at pleasure, and from the points of division erect perpendiculars to EC . The problem is to compute the length of these diameters, as DP , and thereby obtain points in the curve, as at P . For this purpose we have equation (183.), which gives

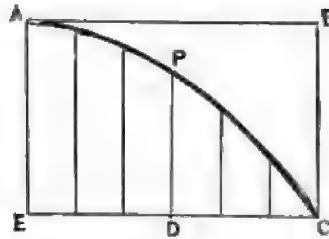


FIG. 312.

the length of the diameters, and in which n equals DC (*Fig. 312*), l equals twice EC , and p equals half the parameter of the curve. The value of p is given in equation (A.), (*Art. 470*), in which y equals EC (*Fig. 312*), and x equals AE . Substituting these symbols in equation (A.), we have—

$$p = \frac{y^2}{2x} = \frac{EC^2}{2 \times AE} = \frac{b^2}{2h},$$

where $b = EC$, the base, and $h = AE$, the height. For p , substituting this, its value, in equation (183.), we have—

$$d = \frac{n(l-n)}{2p} = \frac{n(l-n)}{2 \cdot \frac{b^2}{2h}}$$

$$d = \frac{hn(2b-n)}{b^2}. \quad (184.)$$

As an example: let it be required in a parabola in which the base equals 12 feet and the height 8 feet, to compute the length of several diameters, and through their extremities describe the curve. Then h will equal 8, and b 12.

If the base be divided into 6 equal parts, as in *Fig. 312*, each part will equal 2 feet. Then we have—

$$\frac{h}{b^3} = \frac{8}{12^3} = \frac{8}{144} = \frac{1}{18},$$

and—

$$d = \frac{h}{b^3} n (2b - n),$$

$$d = \frac{n (24 - n)}{18}.$$

In this equation, substituting the consecutive values of n , we have, when—

$$n = 0, \quad d = \frac{0 \times 24}{18} = 0$$

$$n = 2, \quad d = \frac{2 \times 22}{18} = 2.444$$

$$n = 4, \quad d = \frac{4 \times 20}{18} = 4.444$$

$$n = 6, \quad d = \frac{6 \times 18}{18} = 6.$$

$$n = 8, \quad d = \frac{8 \times 16}{18} = 7.111$$

$$n = 10, \quad d = \frac{10 \times 14}{18} = 7.777$$

$$n = 12, \quad d = \frac{12 \times 12}{18} = 8.0$$

The several diameters, as PD , in *Fig. 312*, may now be made equal respectively to these computed values of d , and the curve traced through their extremities.

472.—Parabola : Area.—From (181.), the equation to the parabola, and by the aid of the calculus, it has been shown that the area of a parabola is equal to two thirds of the circumscribing rectangle. For example: if the height, AE (*Fig. 312*), equals 8 feet, and EC , the base, equals 12 feet, then the area of the part included within the figure $APCEA$ equals $\frac{2}{3}$ of $8 \times 12 = \frac{2}{3} \times 96 = 64$ feet; or, it is equal to $\frac{2}{3}$ of the rectangle $ABCE$.

SECTION XIV.—TRIGONOMETRY.

473.—Right-Angled Triangles: The Sides.—In right-angled triangles, when two sides are given, the third side may be found by the relation of equality which exists of the squares of the sides (*Arts.* 353 and 416). For example,

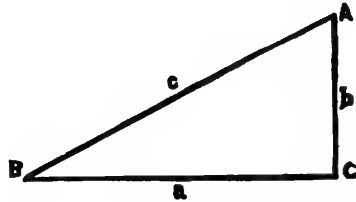


FIG. 313.

if the sides a and b (*Fig.* 313) are given, c , the third side, may be computed from equation (115).—

$$c^2 = b^2 + a^2.$$

Extracting the square root, we have—

$$c = \sqrt{b^2 + a^2}.$$

When the hypotenuse and one side are given, by transposition of the factors in (115.), we have—

$$a^2 = c^2 - b^2;$$

$$a = \sqrt{c^2 - b^2}; \quad (\text{A.})$$

or—

$$b^2 = c^2 - a^2;$$

$$b = \sqrt{c^2 - a^2}. \quad (\text{B.})$$

Owing to the factors being involved to the second power in this expression, the labor of computation is greater than that in a more simple method, which will now be shown.

In equation (A.) or (B.) the factors under the *radical* may be simplified. By equation (114.) we have—

$$c^2 - b^2 = (c + b)(c - b).$$

Therefore, equation (A.) becomes—

$$a = \sqrt{(c + b)(c - b)},$$

a form easy of solution.

For example: let c equal 29.732 and b equal 13.216, then we have—

$$\begin{array}{r} 29.732 \\ 13.216 \\ \hline \text{The sum} = 42.948 \\ \text{The difference} = 16.516 \end{array}$$

By the use of a table of logarithms (*Art.* 427) the problem may be easily solved; thus—

$$\begin{array}{r} \text{Log. } 42.948 = 1.6329429 \\ 16.516 = 1.2179049 \\ \hline \text{To get the square root—} \quad 2) 2.8508478 \\ a = 26.6332 = 1.4254239 \end{array}$$

This method is applicable to the sides of a triangle, only; for the hypotenuse it will not serve. The length of the hypotenuse as well as that of either side may, however, be obtained by proportion; provided a triangle of known dimensions and with like angles be also given.

For example: in *Fig.* 314, in which the two sides a and b are known, let it be required to find c , the hypotenuse.

Draw the line DE parallel with AC , then the two triangles BDE and BAC are homologous; consequently their

corresponding sides are in proportion (*Art.* 361). Hence, if d equals unity, we have—

$$\begin{aligned} d : f :: a : c, \\ = af, \end{aligned}$$

from which, when a and f are known, c is obtained by simple multiplication.

474.—Right-Angled Triangles: Trigonometrical Tables.—To render the simple method last named available, the lengths of d , c and f (*Fig.* 314) have been computed for triangles of all possible angles, and the results arranged in

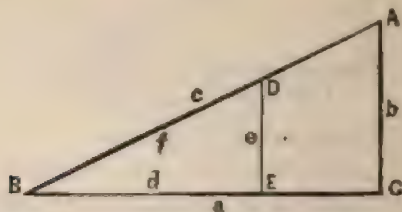


FIG. 314.

tables, termed Trigonometrical Tables. The lines d , c , and f , are known as *sines*, *cosines*, *tangents*, *cotangents*, etc., as shown in *Fig.* 315—where AB is the radius of the circle BCH . Draw a line AF , from A , through any point, C , of the arc BG . From C draw CD perpendicular to AB ; from B draw BE perpendicular to AF ; and from G draw GF perpendicular to AF .

Then, for the angle FAB , when the radius AC equals unity, CD is the *sine*; AD the *cosine*; DB the *versed sine*; BE the *tangent*; GF the *cotangent*; AE the *secant*; and AF the *cosecant*.

But if the angle be larger than one right angle, yet less than two right angles, as BAH , extend HA to K and EB to K , and from H draw HJ perpendicular to AK .

Then, for the angle BAH , when the radius AH equals unity, HJ is the *sine*; AJ the *cosine*; BJ the *versed sine*; BK the *tangent*; and AK the *secant*.

When the number of degrees contained in a given angle is known, the value of the *sine*, *cosine*, etc., corresponding to that angle, may be found in a table of Natural Sines, Co-

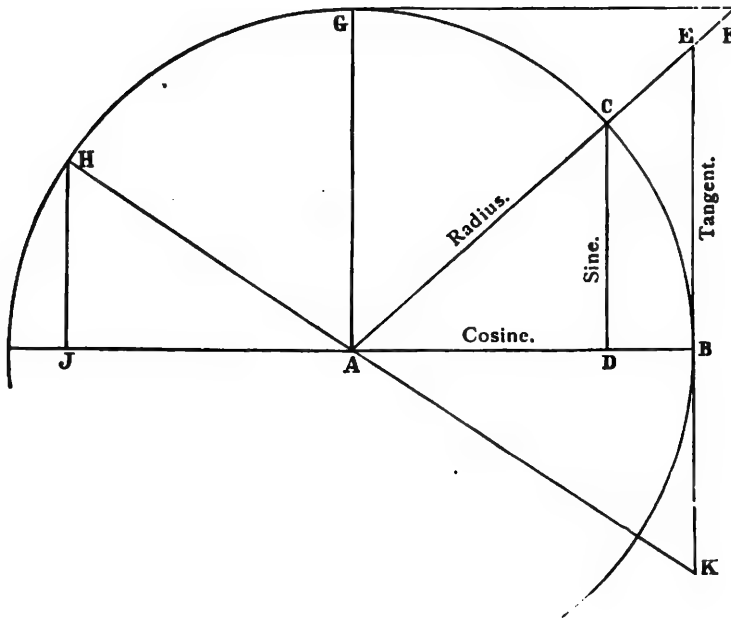


FIG. 315.

sines, etc. Or, the logarithms of the sines, cosines, etc., may be found in logarithmic tables.

In the absence of such a table, and when the degrees contained in the given angle are unknown, the values of the sine, cosine, etc., may be found by computation, as follows:—Let ABC (Fig. 316) be the given angle. At any distance from B draw b perpendicular to BC . By any scale of equal parts obtain the length of each of the three lines a , b , c . Then for the angle at B we have, by proportion—

$$c : b :: 1.0 : \sin. \quad B = \frac{b}{c}.$$

$$c : a :: 1.0 : \cos. \quad B = \frac{a}{c}.$$

$$a : b :: 1.0 : \tan. \quad B = \frac{b}{a}.$$

$$b : a :: 1.0 : \cot. \quad B = \frac{a}{b}.$$

$$a : c :: 1.0 : \sec. \quad B = \frac{c}{a}.$$

$$b : c :: 1.0 : \operatorname{cosec}. \quad B = \frac{c}{b}.$$

Or, in any right-angled triangle, for the angle contained between the base and hypotenuse—

When perp. divided by hyp., the quotient equals the *sine*.

"	base	"	"	hyp.,	"	"	"	<i>cosine.</i>
"	perp.	"	"	base,	"	"	"	<i>tangent.</i>
"	base	"	"	perp.,	"	"	"	<i>cotangent.</i>
"	hyp.	"	"	base,	"	"	"	<i>secant.</i>
"	hyp.	"	"	perp.,	"	"	"	<i>cosecant.</i>

To designate the angle to which a trigonometrical term applies, the letter at the intended angle is annexed to the

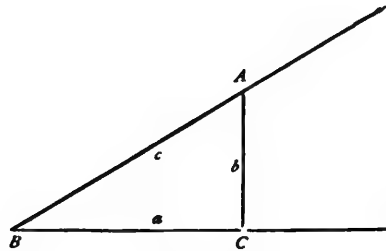


FIG. 316.

name of the trigonometrical term; thus, in the above example, for the sine of ABC we write $\sin. B$; for the cosine, $\cos. B$, etc.

By these proportions the two acute angles of a right-angled triangle may be computed, provided two of the sides are known. For when the perpendicular and hypotenuse are known, the sine and cosecant may be obtained. When the base and hypotenuse are known, the cosine and secant may be computed. And when the base and perpendicular are known, the tangent and cotangent may be computed.

Either one of these, thus obtained, shows by the trigonometrical tables the number of degrees in the angle; and, deducting the angle thus found from 90° , the remainder will be the angle of the other acute angle of the triangle. For

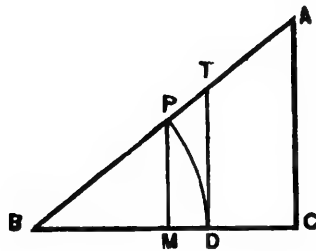


FIG. 317.

example: in a right-angled triangle, of which the base is 8 feet and the perpendicular 6 feet, how many degrees are contained in each of the acute angles?

Having, in this case, the base and perpendicular known, by referring to the above proportions we find that with these two sides we may obtain the tangent; therefore—

$$\text{Tan. } B = \frac{b}{a} = \frac{6}{8} = 0.75.$$

Referring to the trigonometrical tables, we find that 0.75 is the tangent of $36^\circ 52' 12''$, nearly; therefore—

The quadrant equals $90 \cdot 0 \cdot 0$
 The angle B equals $36 \cdot 52 \cdot 12$
 The angle A equals $53 \cdot 07 \cdot 48$

475.—Right-Angled Triangles: Trigonometrical Value of Sides.—In the triangle ABC (*Fig. 317*), with $BP = 1$ for radius, and on B as a centre, describe the arc PD , and from its intersection with the lines AB and BC , draw PM and TD perpendicular to the line BC . Then from homologous triangles we have these proportions for the perpendicular—

$$BD : DT :: BC : CA,$$

$$r : \tan. B :: \text{base} : \text{perp.},$$

$$1 : \tan. B :: a : b = a \tan. B. \quad (185.)$$

Also—

$$BP : PM :: BA : AC,$$

$$r : \sin. B :: \text{hyp.} : \text{perp.},$$

$$1 : \sin. B :: c : b = c \sin. B. \quad (186.)$$

For the base, we have—

$$BP : BM :: BA : BC,$$

$$r : \cos. B :: \text{hyp.} : \text{base},$$

$$1 : \cos. B :: c : a = c \cos. B. \quad (187.)$$

Again—

$$TD : BD :: AC : BC,$$

$$\tan. B : r :: \text{perp.} : \text{base},$$

$$\tan. B : 1 :: b : a = \frac{b}{\tan. B}. \quad (188.)$$

For the hypotenuse, we have—

$$PM : PB :: AC :: AB,$$

$$\sin. B : r :: \text{perp.} : \text{hyp.},$$

$$\sin. B : 1 :: b : c = \frac{b}{\sin. B}. \quad (189.)$$

Again—

$$BD : BT :: BC : BA,$$

$$r : \sec. B :: \text{base} : \text{hyp.},$$

$$1 : \sec. B :: a : c = a \sec. B = \frac{a}{\cos. B}. \quad (190.)$$

This substitution of the cos. for the sec. is needed because tables of secants are not always accessible. That it is an equivalent is clear; for we have—

$$BM : BP :: BD : BT,$$

$$\cos. : r :: r : \sec. = \frac{1}{\cos.}.$$

By these equations either side of a right-angled triangle may be computed, provided there are certain parts of the triangle given. As, for example: of the six parts of a triangle (the three sides and the three angles), *three* must be given, and at least one of these must be a side.

As an example: let it be required to find two sides of a right-angled triangle of which the base is 100 feet, and the acute angle at the base is 35 degrees. Here we have given one side and two angles (the base, acute angle, and the right angle) to find the other two sides, the perpendicular and the hypotenuse.

Among the above rules we have, in equation (185.), for the perpendicular—

$$b = a \tan. B.$$

Or: The *perpendicular* equals the *product* of the *base* into the *tangent* of the *acute* angle at the *base*.

Then (*Art.* 427)—

The logarithmic tangent of $B (= 35^\circ)$ is $\overline{9.8452268}$

Log. of $a (= 100)$ is 2.0000000

Perpendicular, $b (= 70.02075) = \overline{1.8452268}$

And for the hypotenuse, taking equation (190.), we have—

$$c = \frac{a}{\cos. B}.$$

Or: The *hypotenuse* equals the *quotient* of the *base* divided by the *cosine* of the *acute* angle at the *base*.

For this we have—

Log. of $a (= 100)$ is 2.0000000

" $\cos. B (= 35^\circ)$ is $\overline{9.9133645}$

Hypotenuse $c (= 122.0775) = 2.0866355$

We thus find that a right-angled triangle, having an angle of 35 degrees at the base, has its three sides, the perpendicular,

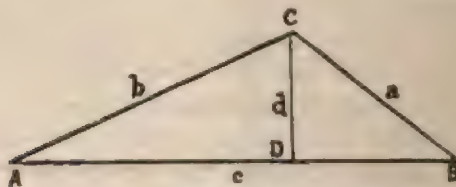


FIG. 318.

ular, base, and hypotenuse, respectively equal to 70.02075 , 100 , and 122.0775 .

N.B.—The angle at A (*Fig.* 317) is obtained by deducting the angle at B from 90° (*Art.* 346). Thus, $90 - 35 = 55$; this is the angle at A , in the above case.

If the perpendicular be given, then for the base use equation (188.), and for the hypotenuse use equation (189.). If the hypotenuse be given, then for the base use equation (187.) and for the perpendicular use equation (186.).

476.—Oblique-Angled Triangles: Sines and Sides.—In the oblique-angled triangle ABC (*Fig. 318*) from C and perpendicular to AB draw CD . This line divides the oblique-angled triangle into two right-angled triangles, the lines and angles of which may be treated by the rules already given; but there is a still more simple method, as will now be shown.

As shown in *Art. 474*: “When the perpendicular is divided by the hypotenuse the quotient equals the sine.” Applying this to *Fig. 318*, we have—

$$\sin. A = \frac{d}{b};$$

$$\sin. B = \frac{d}{a}.$$

Let the former be divided by the latter; then—

$$\frac{\sin. A}{\sin. B} = \frac{\frac{d}{b}}{\frac{d}{a}},$$

or, reducing, we have—

$$\frac{\sin. A}{\sin. B} = \frac{a}{b};$$

or, putting the equation in the form of a proportion—

$$\sin. B : \sin. A :: b : a;$$

or; the *sines* are in proportion as the *sides*, respectively *opposite*. Or, as commonly stated, the *sines* are in proportion as the *sides* which *subtend* them.

This is a rule of great utility; by it we obtain the following:

Referring to *Fig. 318*, we have—

$$\sin. B : \sin. A :: b : a = b \frac{\sin. A}{\sin. B}. \quad (191.)$$

$$\sin. C : \sin. A :: c : a = c \frac{\sin. A}{\sin. C}. \quad (192.)$$

$$\sin. A : \sin. B :: a : b = a \frac{\sin. B}{\sin. A}. \quad (193.)$$

$$\sin. C : \sin. B :: c : b = c \frac{\sin. B}{\sin. C}. \quad (194.)$$

$$\sin. A : \sin. C :: a : c = a \frac{\sin. C}{\sin. A}. \quad (195.)$$

$$\sin. B : \sin. C :: b : c = b \frac{\sin. C}{\sin. B}. \quad (196.)$$

These expressions give the values of the three sides respectively; two expressions for each, one for each of the two remaining sides; that is to be used which contains the *given* side.

From these expressions we derive the values of the *sines*; thus—

$$\sin. A = \sin. B \frac{a}{b}. \quad (197.)$$

$$\sin. A = \sin. C \frac{a}{c}. \quad (198.)$$

$$\sin. B = \sin. A \frac{b}{a}. \quad (199.)$$

$$\sin. B = \sin. C \frac{b}{c}. \quad (200.)$$

$$\sin. C = \sin. A \frac{c}{a}. \quad (201.)$$

$$\sin. C = \sin. B \frac{c}{b}. \quad (202.)$$

477. — Oblique-Angled Triangles: First Class.—The problems arising in the treatment of oblique-angled triangles have been divided into four classes, one of which, the

first, will here be referred to. The problems of the *first* class are those in which *a side* and *two angles* are given, to find the remaining angle and sides.

As to the required angle, since the three angles of every triangle amount to just two right angles (*Art.* 345), or 180° , the third angle may be found simply by deducting the sum of the two given angles from 180° .

For example: referring to *Fig.* 318, if angle $A = 18^\circ$ and angle $B = 42^\circ$, then their sum is $18 + 42 = 60$, and $180 - 60 = 120^\circ =$ the angle ACB .

To find the two sides: if a be the given side, then to find the side b we have, equation (193.)—

$$b = a \frac{\sin. B}{\sin. A};$$

or, the side b equals the product of the side a into the quotient obtained by a division of the sine of the angle opposite b by the sine of the angle opposite a .

For example: in a triangle (*Fig.* 318) in which the angle $A = 18^\circ$, the angle $B = 42^\circ$ (and, consequently (*Art.* 345) the angle $C = 120^\circ$), and the given side a equals 43 feet; what are the lengths of the sides b and c ? Equation (193.) gives—

$$b = a \frac{\sin. B}{\sin. A}.$$

Performing the problem by logarithms (*Art.* 427), we have—

$$\begin{array}{r} \text{Log. } a (= 43) = 1.6334685 \\ \text{Sin. } B (= 42^\circ) = 9.8255109 \\ \hline \phantom{\text{Sin. } A (= 18^\circ)} = 1.4589794 \\ \text{Sin. } A (= 18^\circ) = 9.4899824 \\ \hline \text{Log. } b (= 93.1102) = 1.9689970. \end{array}$$

Thus the side b equals 93.1102 feet, or 93 feet 1 inch and nearly one third of an inch.

For the side c , we have, equation (195.)—

$$c = a \frac{\sin. C}{\sin. A};$$

or—

$$\text{Log. } a (= 43) = 1.6334685$$

$$\text{Sin. } C (= 120^\circ) = 9.9375306$$

$$\underline{1.5709991}$$

$$\text{Sin. } A (= 18^\circ) = 9.4899824$$

$$\text{Log. } c (= 120.508) = 2.0810167$$

or, the base c equals 120 feet 6 inches and one tenth of an inch, nearly. But if instead of a the side b be given, then for a use equation (191.), and for c use equation (196.).

And, lastly, if c be the given side, then for a use equation (192.), and for b use equation (194.).

478.—Oblique-Angled Triangles: Second Class.—The problems which comprise the *second* class are those in which *two sides* and an *angle opposite* to one of them are given, to find the two remaining angles and the third side.

The only requirement really needed here is to find a second angle; for, with this second angle found, the problem is reduced to one of the first class; and the third side may then be found under rules given in *Art.* 477.

To find a second angle, use one of the equations (197.) to (202.).

For example: in the triangle ABC (*Fig.* 318), let $a (= 43)$ and $b (= 93.11)$ be the two given sides, and A , the angle opposite a , be the given angle ($= 18^\circ$). Then to find the angle B , we have equation (199.)—(selecting that which in the right hand member contains the given angle and sides)—

$$\begin{aligned} \sin. B &= \sin. A \frac{b}{a} \\ &= \sin. A \frac{93.11}{43}. \end{aligned}$$

By logarithms (*Art.* 427), we have—

$$\begin{array}{rcl}
 \text{Log. sin. } A (= 18^\circ) & = & \bar{9}.4899824 \\
 \text{" } 93.11 & = & \bar{1}.9689970 \\
 & & \hline
 & & 1.4589794 \\
 \text{" } 43 & = & \bar{1}.6334685 \\
 \text{" sin. } B (= 42^\circ) & = & \bar{9}.8255109
 \end{array}$$

By reference to the log. tables, the last line of figures, as above, is found to be the sine of 42° ; therefore, the required angle B is 42° . Then $180^\circ - (18^\circ + 42^\circ) = 120^\circ =$ the angle C .

With these angles, or with any two of them, the third side c may be found by rules given in *Art.* 477.

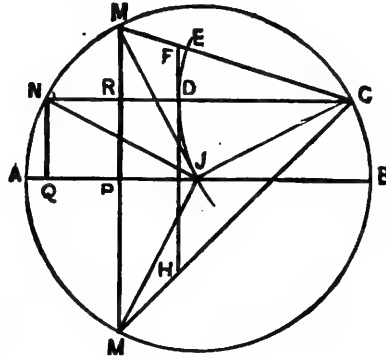


FIG. 319.

479.—Oblique-Angled Triangles: Sum and Difference of Two Angles.—Preliminary to a consideration of problems in the third class of triangles, it is requisite to show the relation between the *sum* and *difference* of two angles.

In *Fig.* 319, let the angle $A \angle M$ and the angle $A \angle N$ be the two given angles; and let $A \angle M$ be called angle A , and $A \angle N$, angle B . Now the sum and difference of the angles may be ascertained by the use of the sum and difference of the *sines* of the angles, and by the sum and difference of the *tangents*. In the diagram, in which the radius $A \angle$ equals

unity, we have MP , the sine of angle A ($= A \text{ } \mathcal{J} M$), and $NQ = RP$, the sine of angle B ($= A \text{ } \mathcal{J} N$). Then—

$$MP - RP = MR$$

equals the *difference* of the *sines* of the angles; and since $PM' = PM$ —

$$PM' + RP = RM',$$

equals the *sum* of the *sines* of the angles.

With the radius $\mathcal{J}C$ describe the arc $\mathcal{J}DE$, and tangent to this arc draw FH parallel with MM' , or perpendicular to AB .

Then FD is the tangent of the angle MCN , and DH is the tangent of the angle NCM' .

Now since an angle at the circumference is equal to half the angle at the centre standing on the same arc (*Art.* 355), therefore the measure of the angle MCN is the half of AN , equals—

$$\frac{1}{2}(AM - AN) = \frac{1}{2}(A - B).$$

Similarly, we have—

$$\frac{1}{2}(AM' + AN) = \frac{1}{2}(A + B),$$

for the angle NCM' .

Therefore we have for the tangent of the angle MCN —

$$FD = \tan. \frac{1}{2}(A - B),$$

and, for the tangent of the angle NCM' —

$$DH = \tan. \frac{1}{2}(A + B).$$

And, because FCD and MCR are homologous triangles, as also, DCH and RCM' , therefore—

$$M'R : MR :: DH : DF,$$

$$\sin. A + \sin. B : \sin. A - \sin. B :: \tan. \frac{1}{2}(A + B) : \tan. \frac{1}{2}(A - B),$$

from which we have—

$$\frac{\sin. A - \sin. B}{\sin. A + \sin. B} = \frac{\tan. \frac{1}{2}(A - B)}{\tan. \frac{1}{2}(A + B)}. \quad (D.)$$

To obtain a proper substitute for the first member of this expression we have, equation (195.)—

$$c = a \frac{\sin. C}{\sin. A},$$

or—

$$c \sin. A = a \sin. C. \quad (M.)$$

We also have, equation (196.)—

$$c = b \frac{\sin. C}{\sin. B},$$

or—

$$c \sin. B = b \sin. C. \quad (N.)$$

These two equations, (M.) and (N.), added, give—

$$c \sin. A + c \sin. B = a \sin. C + b \sin. C.$$

or—

$$c (\sin. A + \sin. B) = \sin. C (a + b). \quad (P.)$$

But, if equation (N.) be subtracted from equation (M.), we have—

$$c \sin. A - c \sin. B = a \sin. C - b \sin. C,$$

or—

$$c (\sin. A - \sin. B) = \sin. C (a - b). \quad (R.)$$

If equation (R.) be divided by equation (P.), we have—

$$\frac{c (\sin. A - \sin. B)}{c (\sin. A + \sin. B)} = \frac{\sin. C (a - b)}{\sin. C (a + b)},$$

which reduces to—

$$\frac{\sin. A - \sin. B}{\sin. A + \sin. B} = \frac{a - b}{a + b}.$$

The first member of this equation is identical with the first member of the above equation (D.), and therefore its equal, the second member, may be substituted for it; thus—

$$\frac{a - b}{a + b} = \frac{\tan. \frac{1}{2}(A - B)}{\tan. \frac{1}{2}(A + B)}.$$

From which we have—

$$\tan. \frac{1}{2}(A - B) = \tan. \frac{1}{2}(A + B) \frac{a - b}{a + b}. \quad (203.)$$

We have (*Art.* 431) the proposition, that if half the difference of two quantities be subtracted from half their sum, the remainder will equal the smaller quantity. For example: if A represent the larger quantity and B the smaller, then—

$$\frac{1}{2}(A + B) - \frac{1}{2}(A - B) = B; \quad (204.)$$

and, again, we also have (*Art.* 431)—

$$\frac{1}{2}(A + B) + \frac{1}{2}(A - B) = A. \quad (205.)$$

480.—Oblique-Angled Triangles: Third Class.—The *third* class of problems comprises all those cases in which two sides of a triangle and their included angle are given, to find the other side and angles.

In this case, as in the problems of the second class, the only requirement here is to find a second angle; for then the problem becomes one belonging to the first class. But the finding of the second angle, in problems of the third class, is attended with more computation than it is in problems of the second class. The process is as follows: Having one angle of a triangle, the *sum* of the two remaining

angle is obtained by subtracting the given angle from 80° — the sum of the three angles.

Then with equation (203.) the *difference* of the two angles is obtained. And then, having the *sum* and *difference* of the two angles, either may be found by one of the equations (204.) and (205.).

For example: let *Fig. 320* represent the triangle in which a ($= 36$ feet) and b ($= 27$ feet) are the given sides; and

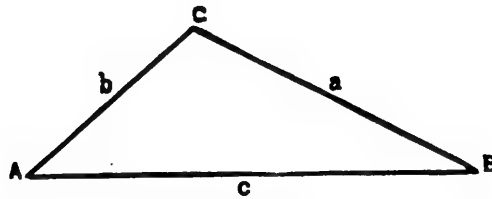


FIG. 320.

C ($= 105^\circ$) the angle included between the given sides, a and

b . The sum of the two angles A and B , therefore, will be—

$$(A + B) = 180 - 105 = 75^\circ,$$

and the half of the sum of A and B is $\frac{75}{2} = 37^\circ 30'$.

The sum of the given sides is $36 + 27 = 63$, and their difference is $36 - 27 = 9$.

Then from equation (203.) we have—

$$\tan. \frac{1}{2}(A - B) = \tan. 37^\circ 30' \frac{9}{63}.$$

Solving this by logs. (*Art. 427*), we have—

$$\begin{array}{r} \text{Log. tan. } 37^\circ 30' = \overline{9}.8849805 \\ 9 = 0.9542425 \\ \hline 0.8392230 \\ 63 = 1.7993405 \\ \hline \tan. \frac{1}{2}(A - B) (= 6^\circ 15' 20.5'') = \overline{9}.0398825 \end{array}$$

Thus half the difference of A and B is $6^\circ 15' 20.5''$, nearly.

By equation (204.)—

$$\begin{array}{r} 37^{\circ} 30' \\ 6^{\circ} 15' 20.5'' \end{array}$$

The difference, $31^{\circ} 14' 39.5'' = B$,

and by equation (205.)—

$$\begin{array}{r} 37.30 \\ 6.15.20.5 \end{array}$$

The sum, $43.45.20.5 = A$

From above, $31.14.39.5 = B$

The given angle, $105. 0. 0 = C$

The three angles, $180. 0. 0$

Thus, by adding together the three angles, the work is tested and proved.

Having the three angles, the third side may now be found by the rule for problems of the first class.

481.—Oblique-Angled Triangles: Fourth Class.—The fourth class comprises those problems in which the three sides of the triangle are given, to find the three angles.

The method by which the problems of the fourth class are solved is to divide the triangle into two right-angled triangles; then, by the use of equation (129.), to find one side of one of these triangles, and then with this side to find one of the angles, then by rules for the second class problems, obtain the second and third angles.

Thus, from equation (129.), we have—

$$g = \frac{c^2 - (a+b)(a-b)}{2c}.$$

By the relation of sines to sides (*Art.* 476), we have (*Fig.* 321)—

$$b : g :: \sin. E : \sin. F.$$

But the angle E is a right angle, of which the sine is unity, therefore—

$$b : g :: 1 : \sin. F = \frac{g}{b}.$$

Substituting for g its value as above, we have—

$$\sin. F = \frac{c^2 - (a + b)(a - b)}{2bc}. \quad (206.)$$

To illustrate: let a, b, c (*Fig. 321*) be the three given sides

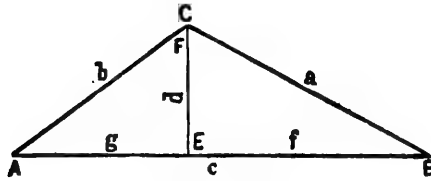


FIG. 321.

of the triangle ABC , respectively equal to 12, 8 and 16 feet. With these, equation (206.) becomes—

$$\sin. F = \frac{16^2 - (12 + 8)(12 - 8)}{2 \times 8 \times 16},$$

$$\sin. F = \frac{256 - (20 \times 4)}{256},$$

$$\sin. F = \frac{176}{256}.$$

Solving this by logarithms (*Art. 427*), we have—

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Log. } 176 &= 2.2455127 \\ \text{" } 256 &= 2.4082400 \\ \hline \text{Log. sin. } 43^\circ 26' &= \overline{9.8372727} \end{aligned}$$

or, the angle at F equals $43^\circ 26'$, nearly. Of the triangle

ACE (Fig. 321), E is a right angle, therefore the sum of F and A , the two remaining angles, equals 90° (Art. 346).

Hence, for the angle at A , we have—

$$A = 90^\circ - 43^\circ 26' = 46^\circ 34'.$$

We now have two sides a and b and A , an angle opposite to one of them, to find B , a second angle. For this, equation (199.) is appropriate. Thus—

$$\sin. B = \sin. A \frac{b}{a}.$$

This may be solved as shown in Art. 478.

And, when the second angle is obtained, the third angle is found by subtracting the sum of the first and second angles from 180° .

But to test the accuracy of the work, it is well to compute the angle C from the angle A , and the sides a and c . For this, equation (201.) will be appropriate.

482.—Trigonometric Formulae: Right-Angled Triangles.—For facility of reference the formulæ of previous

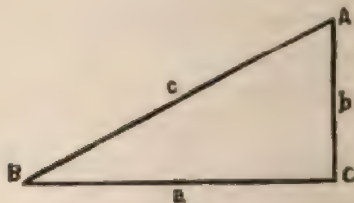


FIG. 322.

articles are here presented in tabular form. The symbols referred to are those of Fig. 322.

RIGHT-ANGLED TRIANGLES.

GIVEN.	REQUIRED.	FORMULÆ.
$a, b,$ $a, c,$ $b, c,$	$c,$ $b,$ $a,$	$c = \sqrt{a^2 + b^2}.$ $b = \sqrt{(c+a)(c-a)}.$ $a = \sqrt{(c+b)(c-b)}.$
$A,$ $B,$	$B,$ $A,$	$B = 90^\circ - A.$ $A = 90^\circ - B.$
$B, a,$	$b,$ $c,$	$b = a \tan. B.$ $c = \frac{a}{\cos. B}.$
$B, b,$	$a,$ $c,$	$a = \frac{b}{\tan. B}.$ $c = \frac{b}{\sin. B}.$
$B, c,$	$a,$ $b,$	$a = c \cos. B.$ $b = c \sin. B.$

483.—Trigonometrical Formulæ : First Class, Oblique.

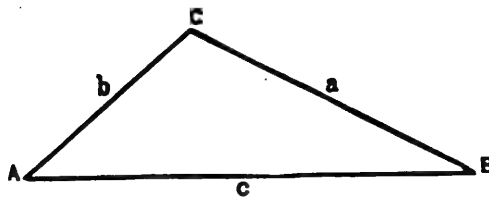


FIG. 323.

—The symbols of the formulæ of the following table indicate quantities represented in *Fig. 323* by like symbols.

OBLIQUE-ANGLED TRIANGLES: FIRST CLASS.

GIVEN.	REQUIRED.	FORMULÆ.
$A, B,$	$C,$	$C = 180 - \overline{A + B}.$
$A, C,$	$B,$	$B = 180 - \overline{A + C}.$
$B, C,$	$A,$	$A = 180 - \overline{B + C}.$
$A, B, b,$	$a,$	$a = b \frac{\sin. A}{\sin. B}.$
$A, C, c,$	$a,$	$a = c \frac{\sin. A}{\sin. C}.$
$A, B, a,$	$b,$	$b = a \frac{\sin. B}{\sin. A}.$
$B, C, c,$	$b,$	$b = c \frac{\sin. B}{\sin. C}.$
$A, C, a,$	$c,$	$c = a \frac{\sin. C}{\sin. A}.$
$B, C, b,$	$c,$	$c = b \frac{\sin. C}{\sin. B}.$

484.—Trigonometrical Formulæ: Second Class, Oblique.
 —The symbols in the formulæ of the following table refer to quantities represented in *Fig. 323*, by like symbols.

OBLIQUE-ANGLED TRIANGLES: SECOND CLASS.

GIVEN.	REQUIRED.	FORMULÆ.
$B, a, b,$	$A,$	$\sin. A = \sin. B \frac{a}{b}.$
$C, a, c,$	$A,$	$\sin. A = \sin. C \frac{a}{c}.$
$A, a, b,$	$B,$	$\sin. B = \sin. A \frac{b}{a}.$
$C, b, c,$	$B,$	$\sin. B = \sin. C \frac{b}{c}.$
$A, a, c,$	$C,$	$\sin. C = \sin. A \frac{c}{a}.$
$B, b, c,$	$C,$	$\sin. C = \sin. B \frac{c}{b}.$
$B, C,$	$A,$	$A = 180 - B + C.$
$A, C,$	$B,$	$B = 180 - A + C.$
$A, B,$	$C,$	$C = 180 - A + B.$
For—	$a,$ $b,$ $c,$	See Formulæ, First Class.

TRIGONOMETRY.

485.—Trigonometrical Formulæ: Third Class, Oblique.

—The symbols in the formulæ of the following table refer to quantities shown by like symbols in *Fig. 323*.

OBLIQUE-ANGLED TRIANGLES: THIRD CLASS.

GIVEN.	REQUIRED.	FORMULÆ.
$C, a, b,$	$A + B,$	$A + B = 180 - C.$
	$A - B,$	$\tan. \frac{1}{2}(A - B) = \tan. \frac{1}{2}(A + B) \frac{a - b}{a + b}.$
	$A,$	$A = \frac{1}{2}(A + B) + \frac{1}{2}(A - B).$
	$B,$	$B = \frac{1}{2}(A + B) - \frac{1}{2}(A - B).$
$A, b, c,$	$C + B,$	$C + B = 180 - A.$
	$C - B,$	$\tan. \frac{1}{2}(C - B) = \tan. \frac{1}{2}(C + B) \frac{c - b}{c + b}.$
	$C,$	$C = \frac{1}{2}(C + B) + \frac{1}{2}(C - B).$
	$B,$	$B = \frac{1}{2}(C + B) - \frac{1}{2}(C - B).$
$B, a, c,$	$C + A,$	$C + A = 180 - B.$
	$C - A,$	$\tan. \frac{1}{2}(C - A) = \tan. \frac{1}{2}(C + A) \frac{c - a}{c + a}.$
	$C,$	$C = \frac{1}{2}(C + A) + \frac{1}{2}(C - A).$
	$A,$	$A = \frac{1}{2}(C + A) - \frac{1}{2}(C - A).$

For the remaining side consult formulæ for the *first* class.

486. — Trigonometrical Formulæ: Fourth Class, Oblique.—The symbols in the formulæ of the following table refer to quantities shown by like symbols in *Fig. 321*.

OBLIQUE-ANGLED TRIANGLES: FOURTH CLASS.

Given a, b, c , to find A, B, C .

$$\sin. F = \frac{c^2 - (a + b)(a - b)}{2bc}.$$

$$A = 90 - F.$$

$$\sin. B = \sin. A \frac{b}{a}.$$

$$\sin. C = \sin. A \frac{c}{a}.$$

$$C = 180 - (A + B).$$

SECTION XV.—DRAWING.

487.—General Remarks.—A knowledge of the properties and principles of *lines* can best be acquired by practice. Although the various diagrams throughout this work may be understood by inspection, yet they will be impressed upon the mind with much greater force, if they are actually drawn out with pencil and paper by the student. Science is acquired by study—art by practice; he, therefore, who would have anything more than a theoretical (which must of necessity be a superficial) knowledge of carpentry and geometry, will provide himself with the articles here specified, and perform all the operations described in the foregoing and following pages. Many of the problems may appear, at the first reading, somewhat confused and intricate; but by making one line at a time, according to the explanations, the student will not only succeed in copying the figures correctly, but by ordinary attention will learn the principles upon which they are based, and thus be able to make them available in any unexpected case to which they may apply.

488.—Articles Required.—The following articles are necessary for drawing, viz.: a drawing-board, paper, drawing-pins or mouth-glue, a sponge, a T-square, a set-square, two straight-edges, or flat rulers, a lead pencil, a piece of india-rubber, a cake of india-ink, a set of drawing-instruments, and a scale of equal parts.

489.—The Drawing-Board.—The size of the *drawing-board* must be regulated according to the size of the drawings which are to be made upon it. Yet for ordinary practice, in learning to draw, a board about fifteen by twenty inches, and one inch thick, will be found large enough, and

more convenient than a larger one. This board should be well seasoned, perfectly square at the corners, and without clamps on the ends. A board is better without clamps, because the little service they are supposed to render by preventing the board from warping is overbalanced by the consideration that the shrinking of the panel leaves the ends of the clamps projecting beyond the edge of the board, and thus interfering with the proper working of the stock of the T-square. When the stuff is well-seasoned, the warping of the board will be but trifling; and by exposing the rounding side to the fire, or to the sun, it may be brought back to its proper shape.

490.—Drawing-Paper.—For mere line drawings, it is unnecessary to use the *best* drawing-paper; and since, where much is used, the expense will be considerable, it is desirable for economy to procure a paper of as low a price as will be suitable for the purpose. The best paper is made in England and water-marked "Whatman." This is a hand-made paper. There is also a machine-made paper at about half-price, and the manilla paper, of various tints of russet color, is still less in price. These papers are of the various sizes needed, and are quite sufficient for ordinary drawings.

491.—To Secure the Paper to the Board.—A *drawing-pin* is a small brass button, having a steel pin projecting from the underside. By having one of these at each corner, the paper can be fixed to the board; but this can be done in a better manner with *mouth-glue*. The pins will prevent the paper from changing its position on the board; but, more than this, the glue keeps the paper perfectly tight and smooth, thus making it so much the more pleasant to work on.

To attach the paper with mouth-glue, lay it with the bottom side up, on the board; and with a straight-edge and penknife cut off the rough and uneven edge. With a sponge moderately wet rub all the surface of the paper, except a strip around the edge about half an inch wide. As soon as the glistening of the water disappears turn the sheet

over and place it upon the board just where you wish it glued. Commence upon one of the longest sides, and proceed thus: lay a flat ruler upon the paper, parallel to the edge, and within a quarter of an inch of it. With a knife, or anything similar, turn up the edge of the paper against the edge of the ruler, and put one end of the cake of mouth-glue between your lips to dampen it. Then holding it upright, rub it against and along the entire edge of the paper that is turned up against the ruler, bearing moderately against the edge of the ruler, which must be held firmly with the left hand. Moisten the glue as often as it becomes dry, until a sufficiency of it is rubbed on the edge of the paper. Take away the ruler, restore the turned-up edge to the level of the board, and lay upon it a strip of pretty stiff paper. By rubbing upon this, not very hard but pretty rapidly, with the thumb-nail of the right hand, so as to cause a gentle friction and heat to be imparted to the glue that is on the edge of the paper, you will make it adhere to the board. The other edges in succession must be treated in the same manner.

Some short distances along one or more of the edges may afterward be found loose; if so, the glue must again be applied, and the paper rubbed until it adheres. The board must then be laid away in a warm or dry place; and in a short time the surface of the paper will be drawn out, perfectly tight and smooth, and ready for use. The paper dries best when the board is laid level. When the drawing is finished lay a straight-edge upon the paper and cut it from the board, leaving the glued strip still attached. This may afterward be taken off by wetting it freely with the sponge, which will soak the glue and loosen the paper. Do this as soon as the drawing is taken off, in order that the board may be dry when it is wanted for use again. Care must be taken that, in applying the glue, the edge of the paper does not become damper than the rest; if it should, the paper must be laid aside to dry (to use at another time) and another sheet be used in its place.

Sometimes, especially when the drawing-board is new, the paper will not stick very readily; but by persevering

this difficulty may be overcome. In the place of the mouth-glue a strong solution of gum-arabic may be used, and on some accounts is to be preferred; for the edges of the paper need not be kept dry, and it adheres more readily. Dissolve the gum in a sufficiency of warm water to make it of the consistency of linseed-oil. It must be applied to the paper with a brush, when the edge is turned up against the ruler, as was described for the mouth-glue. If two drawing-boards are used, one may be in use while the other is laid away to dry; and as they may be cheaply made, it is advisable to have two. The drawing-board having a frame around it, commonly called a panel board, may afford rather more facility in attaching the paper when this is of the size to

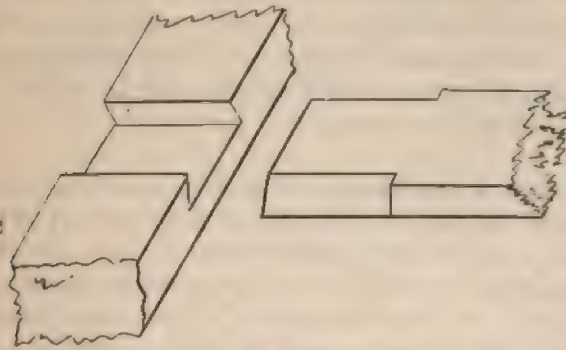


FIG. 324.

suit; yet it has objections which overbalance that consideration.

492.—The T-Square.—A *T-square* of mahogany, at once simple in its construction and affording all necessary service, may be thus made: let the stock or handle be seven inches long, two and a quarter inches wide, and three eighths of an inch thick; the blade, twenty inches long (exclusive of the stock), two inches wide, and one eighth of an inch thick. In joining the blade to the stock, a very firm and simple joint may be made by dovetailing it—as shown at *Fig. 324*.

493.—The Set-Square.—The *set-square* is in the form of a right-angled triangle; and is commonly made of mahogany,

one eighth of an inch in thickness. The size that is most convenient for general use is six inches and three inches respectively for the sides which contain the right angle, although a particular length for the sides is by no means necessary. Care should be taken to have the square corner exactly true. This, as also the T-square and rulers, should have a hole bored through them, by which to hang them upon a nail when not in use.

494.—The Rulers.—One of the *rulers* may be about twenty inches long, and the other six inches. The *pencil* ought to be hard enough to retain a fine point, and yet not so hard as to leave ineffaceable marks. It should be used lightly, so that the extra marks that are not needed when the drawing is inked, may be easily rubbed off with the rubber. The best kind of *india-ink* is that which will easily rub off upon the plate; and, when the cake is rubbed against the teeth, will be free from grit.

495.—The Instruments.—The *drawing-instruments* may be purchased of mathematical instrument makers at various prices; from one to one hundred dollars a set. In choosing a set, remember that the lowest price articles are not always the cheapest. A set, comprising a sufficient number of instruments for ordinary use, well made and fitted in a mahogany box, may be purchased of the mathematical instrument makers in New York for four or five dollars. But for permanent use those which come at ten or twelve dollars will be found to be better.

496.—The Scale of Equal Parts.—The best *scale of equal parts* for carpenters' use, is one that has one eighth, three sixteenths, one fourth, three eighths, one half, five eighths, three fourths, and seven eighths of an inch, and one inch, severally divided into *twelfths*, instead of being divided, as they usually are, into tenths. By this, if it be required to proportion a drawing so that every foot of the object represented will upon the paper measure one fourth of an inch, use that part of the scale which is divided into one

fourths of an inch, taking for every foot one of those divisions, and for every inch one of the subdivisions into twelfths; and proceed in like manner in proportioning a drawing to any of the other divisions of the scale. An instrument in the form of a semi-circle, called a *protractor*, and used for laying down and measuring angles, is of much service to surveyors, and occasionally to carpenters.

497.—The Use of the Set-Square.—In drawing parallel lines, when they are to be parallel to either side of the board, use the T-square; but when it is required to draw lines parallel to a line which is drawn in a direction oblique

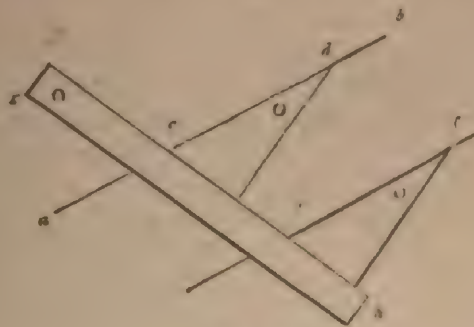


FIG. 325.

To either side of the board, the set-square must be used. Let ab (Fig. 325) be a line, parallel to which it is desired to draw one or more lines. Place any edge, as cd , of the set-square even with said line; then place the ruler gh against one of the other sides, as ce , and hold it firmly; slide the set-square along the edge of the ruler as far as it is desired, as at f ; and a line drawn by the edge if will be parallel to ab .

To draw a line, as kl (Fig. 326), perpendicular to another, as ab , set the shortest edge of the set-square at the line ab ; place the ruler against the longest side (the hypotenuse of the right-angled triangle); hold the ruler firmly, and slide the set-square along until the side ed touches the point k ; then the line kl , drawn by it, will be perpendicular to ab .

In like manner, the drawing of other problems may be facilitated, as will be discovered in using the instruments.

498.—Directions for Drawing.—In drawing a problem, proceed, with the pencil sharpened to a point, to lay down the several lines until the whole figure is completed, observing to let the lines cross each other at the several angles, instead of merely meeting. By this, the length of every line will be clearly defined. With a drop or two of water, rub one end of the cake of ink upon a plate or saucer, until a sufficiency adheres to it. Be careful to dry the cake of

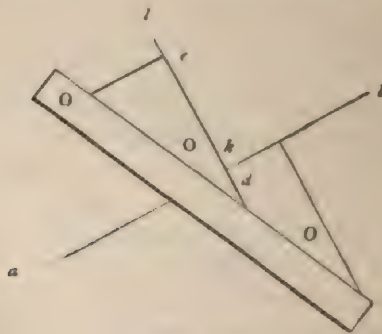


FIG 326.

ink; because if it is left wet it will crack and crumble in pieces. With an inferior camel's-hair pencil add a little water to the ink that was rubbed on the plate, and mix it well. It should be diluted sufficiently to flow freely from the pen, and yet be thick enough to make a *black* line. With the hair pencil place a little of the ink between the nibs of the drawing-pen, and screw the nibs together until the pen makes a fine line. Beginning with the curved lines, proceed to ink *all* the lines of the figure, being careful now to make every line of its requisite length. If they are a trifle too short or too long the drawing will have a ragged appearance; and this is opposed to that neatness and accuracy which is indispensable to a good drawing. When the ink is dry efface the pencil-marks with the india-rubber. If the

pencil is used lightly they will all rub off, leaving those lines only that were inked.

In problems all auxiliary lines are drawn light : while the lines given and those sought, in order to be distinguished at a glance, are made much heavier. The heavy lines are made so by passing over them a second time, having the nibs of the pen separated far enough to make the lines as heavy as desired. If the heavy lines are made before the drawing is cleaned with the rubber they will not appear so black and neat, because the india-rubber takes away part of the ink. If the drawing is a ground-plan or elevation of a house, the shade-lines, as they are termed, should not be put in until the drawing is shaded ; as there is danger of the heavy lines spreading when the brush, in shading or coloring, passes over them. If the lines are inked with common writing-ink they will, however fine they may be made, be subject to the same evil ; for which reason india-ink is the only kind to be used.

SECTION XVI.—PRACTICAL GEOMETRY.

499.—Definitions.—*Geometry* treats of the properties of magnitudes.

A *point* has neither length, breadth, nor thickness.

A *line* has length only.

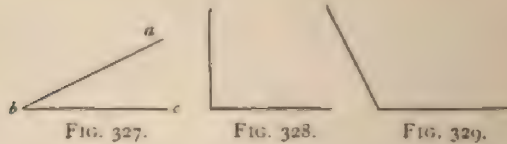
Superficies has length and breadth only.

A *plane* is a surface, perfectly straight and even in every direction; as the face of a panel when not warped nor winding.

A *solid* has length, breadth, and thickness.

A *right*, or *straight*, line is the shortest that can be drawn between two points.

Parallel lines are equidistant throughout their length.



An *angle* is the inclination of two lines towards one another (*Fig. 327*).

A *right angle* has one line perpendicular to the other (*Fig. 328*).

An *oblique angle* is either greater or less than a right angle (*Figs. 327 and 329*).

An *acute angle* is less than a right angle (*Fig. 327*).

An *obtuse angle* is greater than a right angle (*Fig. 329*).

When an angle is denoted by three letters, the middle one, in the order they stand, denotes the angular point, and the other two the sides containing the angle; thus, let *a, b, c* (*Fig. 327*) be the angle, then *b* will be the angular point, and *ab* and *bc* will be the two sides containing that angle.

A *triangle* is a superficies having three sides and angles (*Figs. 330, 331, 332, and 333*).

An *equilateral triangle* has its three sides equal (*Fig. 330*).

An *isosceles triangle* has only two sides equal (*Fig. 331*).

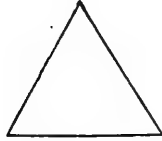


FIG. 330.



FIG. 331.

A *scalene triangle* has all its sides unequal (*Fig. 332*).

A *right-angled triangle* has one right angle (*Fig. 333*).

An *acute-angled triangle* has all its angles acute (*Figs. 330 and 331*).



FIG. 332.



FIG. 333.

An *obtuse-angled triangle* has one obtuse angle (*Fig. 332*).

A *quadrangle* has four sides and four angles (*Figs. 334 to 339*).

A *parallelogram* is a quadrangle having its opposite sides parallel (*Figs. 334 to 337*).



FIG. 334.



FIG. 335.

A *rectangle* is a parallelogram, its angles being right angles (*Figs. 334 and 335*).

A *square* is a rectangle having equal sides (*Fig. 334*).

A *rhombus* is an equilateral parallelogram having oblique angles (*Fig. 336*).

A *rhomboid* is a parallelogram having oblique angles (*Fig. 337*).

A *trapezoid* is a quadrangle having only two of its sides parallel (*Fig. 338*).



FIG. 336.

FIG. 337.

A *trapezium* is a quadrangle which has no two of its sides parallel (*Fig. 339*).

A *polygon* is a figure bounded by right lines.

A *regular polygon* has its sides and angles equal.

An *irregular polygon* has its sides and angles unequal.



FIG. 338.

FIG. 339.

A *trigon* is a polygon of three sides (*Figs. 330 to 333*); a *tetragon* has four sides (*Figs. 334 to 339*); a *pentagon* has five (*Fig. 340*); a *hexagon* six (*Fig. 341*); a *heptagon* seven (*Fig. 342*); an *octagon* eight (*Fig. 343*); a *nonagon* nine; a *decagon* ten; an *undecagon* eleven; and a *dodecagon* twelve sides.

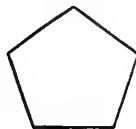


FIG. 340.



FIG. 341.



FIG. 342.



FIG. 343.

A *circle* is a figure bounded by a curved line, called the *circumference*, which is everywhere equidistant from a certain point within, called its *centre*.

The circumference is also called the *periphery*, and sometimes the *circle*.

The *radius* of a circle is a right line drawn from the centre to any point in the circumference (*ab*, Fig. 334).

All the *radii* of a circle are equal.

The *diameter* is a right line passing through the centre, and terminating at two opposite points in the circumference. Hence it is twice the length of the radius (*cd*, Fig. 344.)

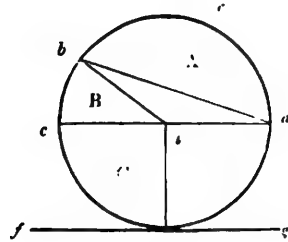


FIG. 344.

An *arc* of a circle is a part of the circumference (*cb*, or *bed*, Fig. 344).

A *chord* is a right line joining the extremities of an arc (*bd*, Fig. 344).

A *segment* is any part of a circle bounded by an arc and its chord (*A*, Fig. 344).



FIG. 345.

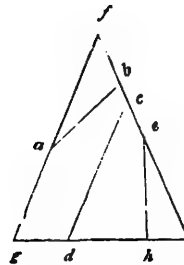


FIG. 346.

A *sector* is any part of a circle bounded by an arc and two radii, drawn to its extremities (*B*, Fig. 344).

A *quadrant*, or quarter of a circle, is a sector having a quarter of the circumference for its arc (*C*, Fig. 344).

A *tangent* is a right line which, in passing a curve, touches, without cutting it (*fg*, Fig. 344).

A *cone* is a solid figure standing upon a circular base diminishing in straight lines to a point at the top, called its vertex (*Fig. 345*).

The *axis* of a cone is a right line passing through it, from the vertex to the centre of the circle at the base.

An *ellipsis* is described if a cone be cut by a plane, not parallel to its base, passing quite through the curved surface (*ab, Fig. 346*).

A *parabola* is described if a cone be cut by a plane, parallel to a plane touching the curved surface (*cd, Fig. 346—cd* being parallel to *fg*).

An *hyperbola* is described if a cone be cut by a plane,

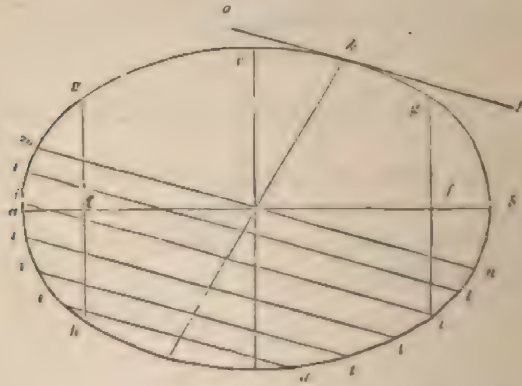


FIG. 347.

parallel to any plane within the cone that passes through its vertex (*eh, Fig. 346*).

Foci are the points at which the pins are placed in describing an ellipse (see *Art. 548*, and *f, f, Fig. 347*).

The *transverse axis* is the longest diameter of the ellipsis (*ab, Fig. 347*).

The *conjugate axis* is the shortest diameter of the ellipsis: and is, therefore, at right angles to the transverse axis (*cd, Fig. 347*).

The *parameter* is a right line passing through the focus of an ellipsis, at right angles to the transverse axis, and terminated by the curve (*gh* and *gt, Fig. 347*).

A *diameter of an ellipse* is any right line passing through the centre, and terminated by the curve (kl , or mn , *Fig. 347*).

A diameter is *conjugate* to another when it is parallel to a tangent drawn at the extremity of that other—thus, the diameter mn (*Fig. 347*) being parallel to the tangent op , is therefore conjugate to the diameter kl .

A *double ordinate* is any right line, crossing a diameter of an ellipse, and drawn parallel to a tangent at the extremity of that diameter (it , *Fig. 347*).

A *cylinder* is a solid generated by the revolution of a right-angled parallelogram, or rectangle, about one of its

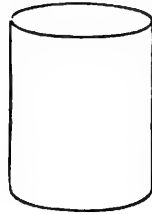


FIG. 348.

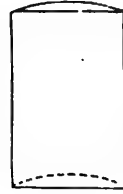


FIG. 349.

sides; and consequently the ends of the cylinder are equal circles (*Fig. 348*).

The *axis* of a cylinder is a right line passing through it from the centres of the two circles which form the ends.

A *segment* of a cylinder is comprehended under three planes, and the curved surface of the cylinder. Two of these are segments of circles; the other plane is a parallelogram, called by way of distinction, the *plane of the segment*. The circular segments are called the ends of the cylinder (*Fig. 349*).

PROBLEMS.

RIGHT LINES AND ANGLES.

500.—To Bisect a Line.—Upon the ends of the line ab (*Fig. 350*) as centres, with any distance for radius greater than half ab , describe arcs cutting each other in c and d ;

draw the line cd , and the point c , where it cuts ab , will be the middle of the line ab .

In practice, a line is generally divided with the compasses, or dividers; but this problem is useful where it is

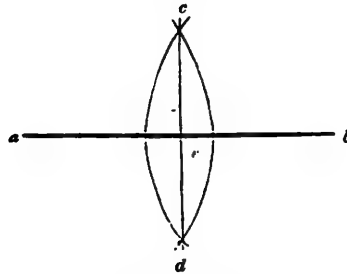


FIG. 350.

desired to draw, at the middle of another line, one at right angles to it. (See *Art.* 514.)

501.—To Erect a Perpendicular.—From the point a (*Fig.* 351) set off any distance, as ab , and the same distance from a to c ; upon c , as a centre, with any distance for radius greater than ca , describe an arc at d ; upon b , with the same

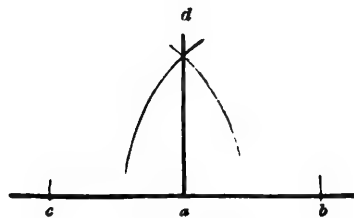


FIG. 351.

radius, describe another at d ; join d and a , and the line da will be the perpendicular required.

This, and the three following problems, are more easily performed by the use of the set-square (see *Art.* 493). Yet they are useful when the operation is so large that a set-square cannot be used.

502.—To let Fall a Perpendicular.—Let a (*Fig. 352*) be the point above the line bc from which the perpendicular is required to fall. Upon a , with any radius greater than ad , describe an arc, cutting bc at e and f ; upon the points e and f , with any radius greater than ed , describe arcs, cutting

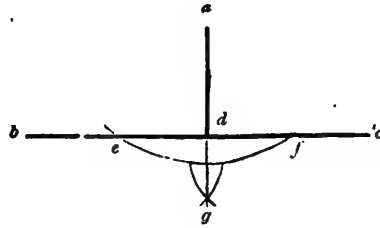


FIG. 352.

each other at g ; join a and g , and the line ad will be the perpendicular required.

503.—To Erect a Perpendicular at the End of a Line.—Let a (*Fig. 353*), at the end of the line ca , be the point at which the perpendicular is to be erected. Take any point, as b , above the line ca , and with the radius ba describe the arc $d a e$; through d and b draw the line de ; join e and a , then ea will be the perpendicular required.

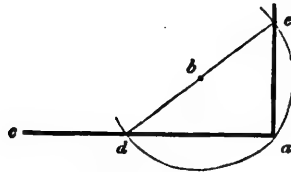


FIG. 353.

The principle here made use of is a very important one, and is applied in many other cases (see *Art. 510*, 3d, and *Art. 513*. For proof of its correctness, see *Art. 352*).

A second method. Let b (*Fig. 354*), at the end of the line ab , be the point at which it is required to erect a perpendicular. Upon b , with any radius less than ba , describe the arc ced ; upon c , with the same radius, describe the small arc at e ,

and upon c , another at d ; upon c and d , with the same or any other radius greater than half cd , describe arcs intersecting at f ; join f and b , and the line fb will be the perpendicular required. This method of erecting a perpendicular, and that of the following article, depend for accuracy upon the

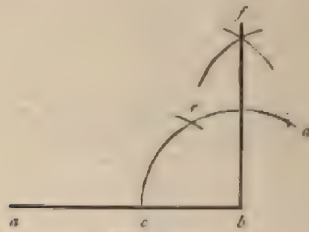


FIG. 354.

fact that the side of a hexagon is equal to the radius of the circumscribing circle.

A third method. Let b (Fig. 355) be the given point at which it is required to erect a perpendicular. Upon b , with any radius less than ba , describe the quadrant dcf ; upon d , with the same radius, describe an arc at e , and upon e another at c ; through d and c draw dc , cutting the arc in e ; join c and b , then cb will be the perpendicular required.

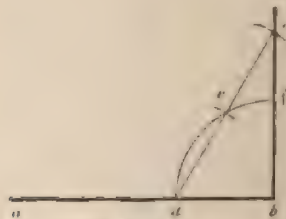


FIG. 355.

This problem can be solved by the *six, eight and ten* rule, as it is called, which is founded upon the same principle as the problems at *Arts.* 536, 537, and is applied as follows: let ad (Fig. 353) equal eight, and ac , six; then, if dc equals ten, the angle cad is a right angle. Because the square of six and that of eight, added together, equal the square of

ten, thus: $6 \times 6 = 36$, and $8 \times 8 = 64$; $36 + 64 = 100$, and $10 \times 10 = 100$. Any sizes, taken in the same proportion, as six, eight and ten, will produce the same effect; as 3, 4 and 5, or 12, 16 and 20. (See *Art.* 536.)

By the process shown at *Fig.* 353, the end of a board may be squared without a carpenters'-square. All that is necessary is a pair of compasses and a ruler. Let ca be the edge of the board, and a the point at which it is required to be squared. Take the point b as near as possible at an angle of forty-five degrees, or on a *mitre*-line from a , and at about the middle of the board. This is not necessary to the working of the problem, nor does it affect its accuracy, but the result is more easily obtained. Stretch the compasses from b to a , and then bring the leg at a around to d ; draw a line from d , through b , out indefinitely; take the distance db and place it from b to e ; join e and a ; then ea will be at right angles to ca . In squaring the foundation of a building, or laying out a garden, a rod and chalk-line may be used instead of compasses and ruler.

504.—To let Fall a Perpendicular near the End of a Line.—Let e (*Fig.* 353) be the point above the line ca , from which the perpendicular is required to fall. From e draw any line, as ed , obliquely to the line ca ; bisect ed at b ; upon b , with the radius be , describe the arc ead ; join e and a ; then ea will be the perpendicular required.

505.—To Make an Angle (as $e d f$, *Fig.* 356) Equal to a Given Angle (as $b a c$).—From the angular point a , with any

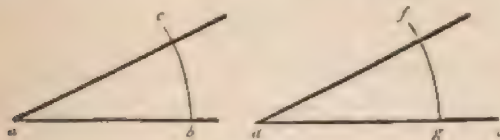


FIG. 356.

radius, describe the arc bc ; and with the same radius, on the line de , and from the point d , describe the arc fg ; take the distance bc , and upon g , describe the small arc at f ;

join f and d ; and the angle edf will be equal to the angle bac .

If the given line upon which the angle is to be made is situated parallel to the similar line of the given angle, this may be performed more readily with the set-square. (See *Art.* 497.)

506.—To Bisect an Angle.—Let abc (*Fig.* 357) be the angle to be bisected. Upon b , with any radius, describe the

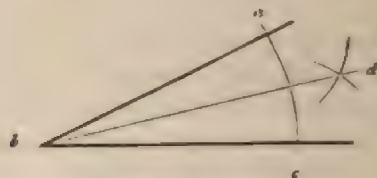


FIG. 357.

arc ac ; upon a and c , with a radius greater than half ac , describe arcs cutting each other at d ; join b and d ; and bd will bisect the angle abc , as was required.

This problem is frequently made use of in solving other problems; it should therefore be well impressed upon the memory.

507.—To Trisect a Right Angle.—Upon a (*Fig.* 358), with any radius, describe the arc bc ; upon b and c , with the

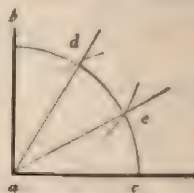


FIG. 358.

same radius, describe arcs cutting the arc bc at d and e ; from d and e draw lines to a , and they will trisect the angle, as was required.

The truth of this is made evident by the following operation: divide a circle into quadrants; also, take the radius in the dividers, and space off the circumference. This will divide the circumference into just six parts. A semi-circumference, therefore, is equal to three, and a quadrant to one and a half of those parts. The radius, therefore, is equal to two thirds of a quadrant; and this is equal to a right angle.

508.—Through a Given Point, to Draw a Line Parallel to a Given Line.—Let a (*Fig. 359*) be the given point, and

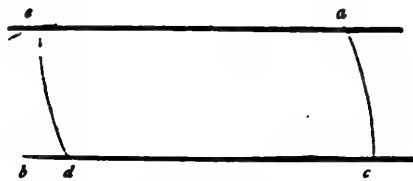


FIG. 359.

bc the given line. Upon any point, as d , in the line bc , with the radius da , describe the arc ac ; upon a , with the same radius, describe the arc de ; make de equal to ac ; through e and a draw the line ea , which will be the line required.

This is upon the same principle as *Art. 505*.

509. — To Divide a Given Line into any Number of Equal Parts.—Let ab (*Fig. 360*) be the given line, and 5 the number of parts. Draw ac at any angle to ab ; on ac , from

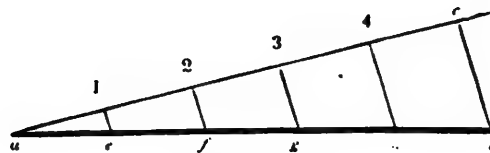


FIG. 360.

a , set off five equal parts of any length, as at 1, 2, 3, 4 and c ; join c and b ; through the points 1, 2, 3, and 4, draw $1e$, $2f$, $3g$ and $4h$, parallel to cb ; which will divide the line ab , as was required.

The lines ab and ac are divided in the same proportion.
(See *Art.* 542.)

THE CIRCLE.

510.—To Find the Centre of a Circle.—Draw any chord, as ab (*Fig.* 361), and bisect it with the perpendicular cd ; bi-

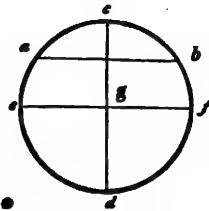


FIG. 361.

sect cd with the line ef , as at g ; then g is the centre, as was required.

A second method. Upon any two points in the circumference nearly opposite, as a and b (*Fig.* 362), describe arcs cut-

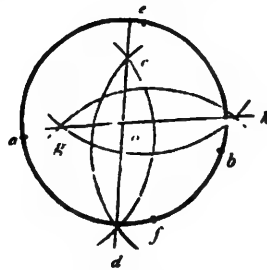


FIG. 362.

ting each other at c and d ; take any other two points, as e and f , and describe arcs intersecting, as at g and h ; join g and h and c and d ; the intersection o is the centre.

This is upon the same principle as *Art.* 514.

A third method. Draw any chord, as ab (*Fig.* 363), and from the point a draw ac at right angles to ab ; join c and b ; bisect cb at d —which will be the centre of the circle.

If a circle be not too large for the purpose, its centre may very readily be ascertained by the help of a carpenter's-square, thus: apply the corner of the square to any point in the circumference, as at a ; by the edges of the square (which the lines ab and ac represent) draw lines cutting the

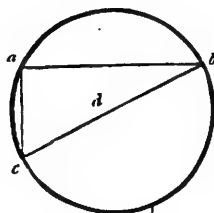


FIG. 363.

circle, as at b and c ; join b and c ; then, if bc is bisected, as at d , the point d will be the centre. (See *Art.* 352.)

511.—At a Given Point in a Circle to Draw a Tangent thereto.—Let a (*Fig.* 364) be the given point, and b the cen-

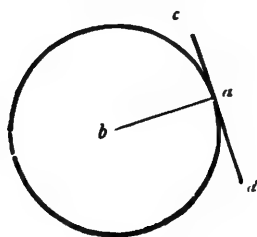


FIG. 364.

tre of the circle. Join a and b ; through the point a , and at right angles to ab , draw cd ; then cd is the tangent required.

512.—The Same, without making use of the Centre of the Circle.—Let a (*Fig.* 365) be the given point. From a set off any distance to b , and the same from b to c ; join a and c ; upon a , with ab for radius, describe the arc $d b e$; make db equal to be ; through a and d draw a line; this will be the tangent required.

The correctness of this method depends upon the fact that the angle formed by a chord and tangent is equal to any inscribed angle in the opposite segment of the circle (*Art.* 358); ab being the chord, and bca the angle in the opposite segment of the circle. Now, the angles dab and bca are equal, because the angles dab and bac are, by construction,

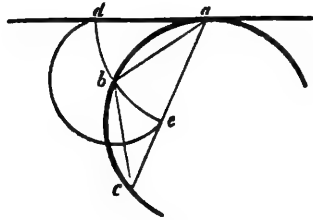


FIG. 365.

equal; and the angles bac and bca are equal, because the triangle abc is an isosceles triangle, having its two sides, ab and bc , by construction equal; therefore the angles dab and bca are equal.

513.—A Circle and a Tangent Given, to Find the Point of Contact.—From any point, as a (*Fig.* 366), in the tangent

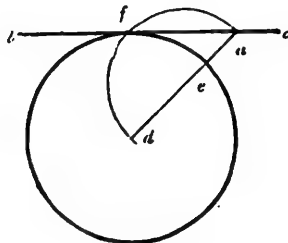


FIG. 366.

bc , draw a line to the centre d ; bisect ad at e ; upon e , with the radius ea , describe the arc afd ; f is the point of contact required.

If f and d were joined, the line would form right angles with the tangent bc . (See *Art.* 352.)

514.—Through any Three Points not in a Straight Line, to Draw a Circle.—Let a, b and c (Fig. 367) be the three given points. Upon a and b , with any radius greater than half ab , describe arcs intersecting at d and e ; upon b and c , with any radius greater than half bc , describe arcs intersecting at f and g ; through d and e draw a right line, also

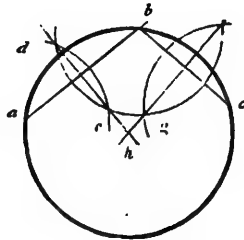


FIG. 367.

another through f and g ; upon the intersection h , with the radius ha , describe the circle abc , and it will be the one required.

515.—Three Points not in a Straight Line being Given, to Find a Fourth that shall, with the Three, Lie in the Circumference of a Circle.—Let abc (Fig. 368) be the given points. Connect them with right lines, forming the triangle

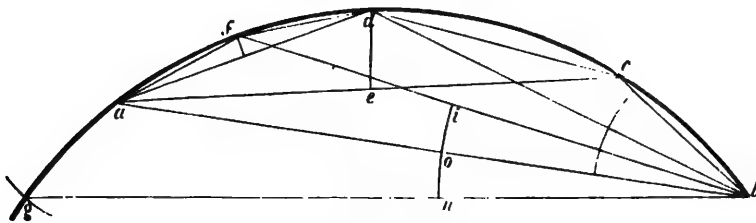


FIG. 368.

acb ; bisect the angle cba (Art. 506) with the line bd ; also bisect ca in e , and erect ed perpendicular to ac , cutting bd in d ; then d is the *fourth* point required.

A fifth point may be found, as at f , by assuming a, d and b , as the three given points, and proceeding as before. So,

also, any number of points may be found simply by using any three already found. This problem will be serviceable in obtaining short pieces of very flat sweeps. (See *Art.* 240.)

The proof of the correctness of this method is found in the fact that equal chords subtend equal angles (*Art.* 357). Join d and e ; then since ae and ec are, by construction, equal, therefore the chords ad and dc are equal; hence the angles they subtend, dba and dbc , are equal. So, likewise, chords drawn from a to f , and from f to d , are equal, and subtend the equal angles dbf and fba . Additional points *beyond* a or b may be obtained on the same principle. To obtain a point beyond a , on b , as a centre, describe with any radius the arc ion ; make on equal to oi ; through b and n draw bg ; on a as centre and with af for radius, describe the arc, cutting gb at g , then g is the point sought.

516.—To Describe a Segment of a Circle by a Set-Square.—Let ab (*Fig.* 369) be the chord, and cd the height

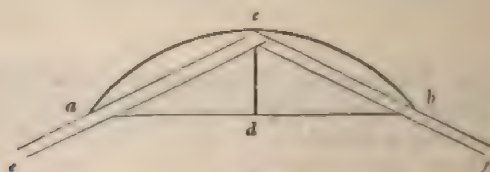


FIG. 369.

of the segment. Secure two straight-edges, or rulers, in the position ce and cf , by nailing them together at e , and affixing a brace from e to f ; put in pins at a and b ; move the angular point e in the direction acb ; keeping the edges of the triangle hard against the pins a and b ; a pencil held at e will describe the arc acb .

A curve described by this process is accurately *circular*, and is not a mere approximation to a circular arc, as some may suppose. This method produces a circular curve, because all inscribed angles on one side of a chord-line are equal (*Art.* 356). To obtain the radius from a chord and its versed sine, see *Art.* 444.

If the angle formed by the rulers at e be a right angle.

the segment described will be a semi-circle. This problem is useful in describing centres for brick arches, when they are required to be rather flat. Also, for the head hanging-stile of a window-frame, where a brick arch, instead of a stone lintel, is to be placed over it.

517.—To Find the Radius of an Arc of a Circle when the Chord and Versed Sine are Given.—The radius is equal to the sum of the squares of half the chord and of the versed sine, divided by twice the versed sine. This is expressed, algebraically, thus: $r = \frac{(\frac{c}{2})^2 + v^2}{2v}$, where r is the radius, c the chord, and v the versed sine (*Art.* 444).

Example.—In a given arc of a circle a chord of 12 feet has the rise at the middle, or the versed sine, equal to 2 feet, what is the radius?

Half the chord equals 6, the square of 6 is, $6 \times 6 = 36$

The square of the versed sine is, $2 \times 2 = 4$

Their sum equals, 40

Twice the versed sine equals 4, and 40 divided by 4 equals 10. Therefore the radius, in this case, is 10 feet. This result is shown in less space and more neatly by using the above algebraical formula. For the letters substituting their value, the formula $r = \frac{(\frac{c}{2})^2 + v^2}{2v}$ becomes $r = \frac{(\frac{12}{2})^2 + 2^2}{2 \times 2}$, and performing the arithmetical operations here indicated equals—

$$\frac{6^2 + 2^2}{4} = \frac{36 + 4}{4} = \frac{40}{4} = 10.$$

518.—To Find the Versed Sine of an Arc of a Circle when the Radius and Chord are Given.—The versed sine is equal to the radius, less the square root of the difference of the squares of the radius and half chord; expressed algebraically thus: $v = r - \sqrt{r^2 - (\frac{c}{2})^2}$, where r is the radius, v the versed sine, and c the chord. (Equation (161.) reduced.)

Example.—In an arc of a circle whose radius is 75 feet, what is the versed sine to a chord of 120 feet? By the table in the Appendix it will be seen that—

The square of the radius, 75, equals .	5625
The square of half the chord, 60, equals .	3600
The difference is	2025
The square root of this is	45
This deducted from the radius	75
The remainder is the versed sine, =	30

This is expressed by the formula, thus—

$$v = 75 - \sqrt{75^2 - (120/2)^2} = 75 - \sqrt{5625 - 3600} = 75 - 45 = 30.$$

519.—To Describe the Segment of a Circle by Intersection of Lines.—Let ab (*Fig. 370*) be the chord, and cd the

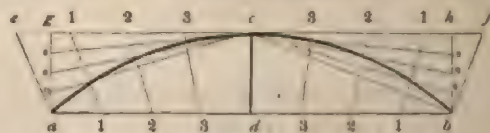


FIG. 370.

height of the segment. Through c draw ef parallel to ab , draw bf at right angles to cb ; make ce equal to cf ; draw ag and bh at right angles to ab ; divide ce , cf , da , db , ag , and bh , each into a like number of equal parts, as four; draw the lines 11 , 22 , etc., and from the points a , a , and a , draw lines to c ; at the intersection of these lines trace the curve, acb , which will be the segment required.

In very large work, or in laying out ornamental gardens, etc., this will be found useful; and where the centre of the proposed arc of a circle is inaccessible it will be invaluable. (To trace the curve, see note at *Art. 550*.)

The lines ea , cd , and fb , would, were they extended, meet in a point, and that point would be in the opposite side of the circumference of the circle of which acb is a

segment. The lines 1 1, 2 2, 3 3, would likewise, if extended, meet in the same point. The line cd , if extended to the opposite side of the circle, would become a diameter. The line fb forms, by construction, a right angle with bc , and hence the extension of fb would also form a right angle with bc , on the opposite side of bc ; and this right angle would be the inscribed angle in the semi-circle; and since this is required to be a *right* angle (*Art.* 352), therefore the construction thus far is correct, and it will be found likewise that at each point in the curve formed by the intersection of the radiating lines, these intersecting lines are at right angles.

520. — Ordinates. — Points in the circumference of a circle may be obtained arithmetically, and positively accurate, by the calculation of *ordinates*, or the parallel lines $o 1$,



FIG. 371.

$o 2$, $o 3$, $o 4$ (*Fig.* 371). These ordinates are drawn at right angles to the chord-line ab , and they may be drawn at any distance apart, either equally distant or unequally, and there may be as many of them as is desirable; the more there are the more points in the curve will be obtained. If they are located in pairs, equally distant from the versed sine cd , calculation need be made only for those on one side of cd , as those on the opposite side will be of equal lengths, respectively; for example: $o 1$, on the left-hand side of cd , is equal to $o 1$ on the right-hand side, $o 2$ on the right equals $o 2$ on the left, and in like manner for the others.

The length of any ordinate is equal to the square root of the difference of the squares of the radius and abscissa, less the difference between the radius and versed sine (*Art.* 445). The abscissa being the distance from the foot of the versed sine to the foot of the ordinate. Algebraically,

$t = \sqrt{r^2 - x^2} - (r - b)$, where t is put to represent the ordinate; x , the abscissa; b , the versed sine; and r , the radius.

Example.—An arc of a circle has its chord ab (Fig. 371) 100 feet long, and its versed sine cd , 5 feet. It is required to ascertain the length of ordinates for a sufficient number of points through which to describe the curve. To this end it is requisite, first, to ascertain the radius. This is readily done in accordance with *Art.* 517. For $\frac{(\frac{c}{2})^2 + v^2}{2v}$ becomes $\frac{50^2 + 5^2}{2 \times 5} = 252.5 = \text{radius}$. Having the radius, the curve might at once be described without the ordinate points, but for the impracticability that usually occurs, in large, flat segments of the circle, of getting a location for the centre, the centre usually being inaccessible. The ordinates are, therefore, to be calculated. In Fig. 371 the ordinates are located equidistant, and are 10 feet apart. It will only be requisite, therefore, to calculate those on one side of the versed sine cd . For the first ordinate $o1$, the formula $t = \sqrt{r^2 - x^2} - (r - b)$ becomes—

$$\begin{aligned} t &= \sqrt{252.5^2 - 10^2} - (252.5 - 5). \\ &= \sqrt{63756.25 - 100} - 247.5. \\ &= 252.3019 - 247.5. \\ &= 4.8019 = \text{the first ordinate, } o1. \end{aligned}$$

For the second—

$$\begin{aligned} t &= \sqrt{252.5^2 - 20^2} - (252.5 - 5). \\ &= 251.7066 - 247.5. \\ &= 4.2066 = \text{the second ordinate, } o2. \end{aligned}$$

For the third—

$$\begin{aligned} t &= \sqrt{252.5^2 - 30^2} - 247.5. \\ &= 250.7115 - 247.5. \\ &= 3.2115 = \text{the third ordinate, } o3. \end{aligned}$$

For the fourth—

$$\begin{aligned}
 l &= \sqrt{252 \cdot 5^2 - 40^2} - 247 \cdot 5. \\
 &= 249 \cdot 3115 - 247 \cdot 5. \\
 &= 1 \cdot 8115 = \text{the fourth ordinate, } 04.
 \end{aligned}$$

The results here obtained are in feet and decimals of a foot. To reduce these to feet, inches, and eighths of an inch, proceed as at Reduction of Decimals in the Appendix. If the two-foot rule, used by carpenters and others, were decimally divided, there would be no necessity of this reduction, and it is to be hoped that the rule will yet be thus divided, as such a reform would much lessen the labor of computations, and insure more accurate measurements.

Versed sine cd	= ft. 5.0	= ft. 5.0 inches.
Ordinates 01	= 4.8019	= 4.9 $\frac{5}{8}$ inches, nearly.
" 02	= 4.2066	= 4.2 $\frac{1}{2}$ inches, nearly.
" 03	= 3.2115	= 3.2 $\frac{1}{2}$ inches, nearly.
" 04	= 1.8115	= 1.9 $\frac{3}{4}$ inches, nearly.

521.—In a Given Angle, to Describe a Tanged Curve.
—Let abc (*Fig. 372*) be the given angle, and 1 in the line ab ,



FIG. 372.

and 5 in the line bc , the termination of the curve. Divide $1b$ and $b5$ into a like number of equal parts, as at 1, 2, 3, 4, and 5; join 1 and 1, 2 and 2, 3 and 3, etc.; and a regular curve will be formed that will be tangential to the line ab , at the point 1, and to bc at 5.

This is of much use in stair-building, in easing the angles formed between the wall-string and the base of the hall, also between the front string and level fascia, and in many other instances. The curve is not circular, but of the form of the parabola (*Fig. 418*); yet in large angles the difference

is not perceptible. This problem can be applied to describing the curve for door-heads, window-heads, etc., to rather better advantage than *Art.* 516. For instance, let ab (*Fig.* 373) be the width of the opening, and cd the height of the

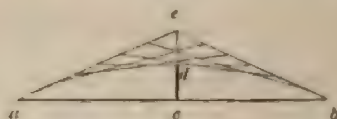


FIG. 373.

arc. Extend cd , and make de equal to cd ; join a and e , also e and b ; and proceed as directed above.

522.—To Describe a Circle within any Given Triangle, so that the Sides of the Triangle shall be Tangential.—Let abc (*Fig.* 374) be the given triangle. Bisect the angles

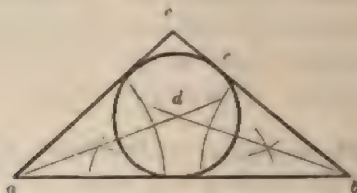


FIG. 374.

a and b according to *Art.* 506; upon d , the point of intersection of the bisecting lines, with the radius dc , describe the required circle.

523.—About a Given Circle, to Describe an Equilateral Triangle.—Let $adbce$ (*Fig.* 375) be the given circle. Draw the diameter cd ; upon d , with the radius of the given circle, describe the arc aeb ; join a and b ; draw fg at right angles to dc ; make fc and cg each equal to ab ; from f , through a , draw fh , also from g , through b , draw gh ; then fgh will be the triangle required.

524.—To Find a Right Line nearly Equal to the Circumference of a Circle.—Let $abced$ (*Fig.* 376) be the given

. Draw the diameter ac ; on this erect an equilateral triangle hac according to *Art.* 525; draw gf parallel to ac ; divide ec to f , also ea to g ; then gf will be nearly the

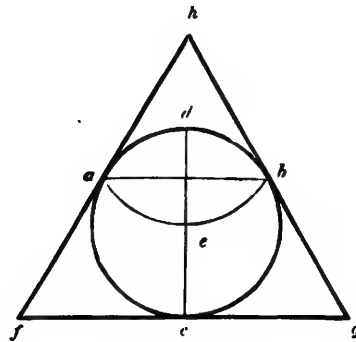


FIG. 375.

length of the semi-circle adc ; and twice gf will nearly equal the circumference of the circle $abcd$, as was required. Lines drawn from e , through any points in the circle, as ad or o , to p , p and p , will divide gf in the same way as semi-circle adc is divided. So, any portion of a circle may be transferred to a straight line. This is a very useful

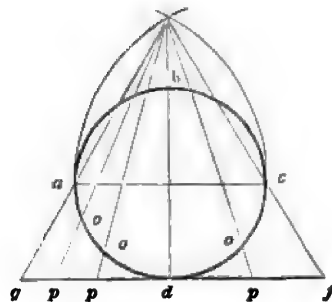


FIG. 376.

method, and should be well studied, as it is frequently used to solve problems on stairs, domes, etc.

Another method. Let $abfc$ (*Fig.* 377) be the given circle. Draw the diameter ac ; from d , the centre, and at right angles to ac , draw a line bd ; then bd will be nearly the

gles to ac , draw db ; join b and c ; bisect bc at e ; from d , through e , draw df ; then ef added to three times the diameter, will equal the circumference of the circle sufficiently near for many uses. The result is a trifle too large. If the

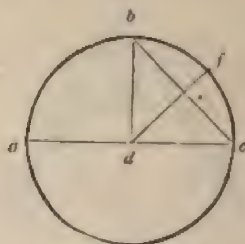


FIG. 377.

circumference found by this rule be divided by 648.22 the quotient will be the excess. Deduct this excess, and the remainder will be the true circumference. This problem is rather more curious than useful, as it is less labor to perform the operation arithmetically, simply multiplying the given diameter by 3.1416 , or, where a greater degree of accuracy is needed, by 3.1415926 . (See *Art.* 446.)

POLYGONS, ETC.

525.—Upon a Given Line to Construct an Equilateral Triangle.—Let ab (*Fig.* 378) be the given line. Upon a and



FIG. 378.

b , with ab for radius, describe arcs, intersecting at c ; join a and c , also c and b ; then acb will be the triangle required.

526.—To Describe an Equilateral Rectangle, or Square.
—Let ab (*Fig.* 379) be the length of a side of the proposed

quare. Upon a and b , with ab for radius, describe the arcs ad and bc ; bisect the arc ae in f ; upon e , with ef for radius, describe the arc efd ; join a and c , c and d , d and b ; then $acdb$ will be the square required.

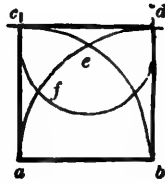


FIG. 379.

527.—Within a Given Circle, to Inscribe an Equilateral Triangle, Hexagon or Dodecagon.—Let $abcd$ (Fig. 380) be the given circle. Draw the diameter bd ; upon b , with the radius of the given circle, describe the arc aec ; join a and c , also a and d , and c and d —and the triangle is completed. For the hexagon: from a , also from c , through e , draw the lines af and cg ; join a and b , b and c , c and f , etc., and the

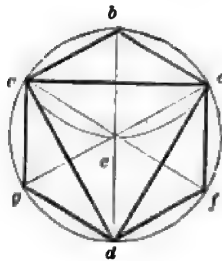


FIG. 380.

hexagon is completed. The dodecagon may be formed by bisecting the sides of the hexagon.

Each side of a regular hexagon is exactly equal to the radius of the circle that circumscribes the figure. For the radius is equal to a chord of an arc of 60 degrees; and, as every circle is supposed to be divided into 360 degrees, there is just 6 times 60, or 6 arcs of 60 degrees, in the whole circumference. A line drawn from each angle of the hexagon

to the centre (as in the figure) divides it into six equal, equilateral triangles.

528.—Within a Square to Inscribe an Octagon.—Let $abcd$ (Fig. 381) be the given square. Draw the diagonals

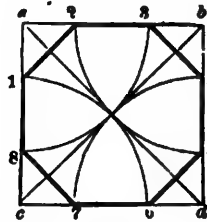


FIG. 381.

ad and bc ; upon a , b , c , and d , with ae for radius, describe arcs cutting the sides of the square at 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, and 8: join 1 and 2, 3 and 4, 5 and 6, etc., and the figure is completed.

In order to eight-square a hand-rail, or any piece that is

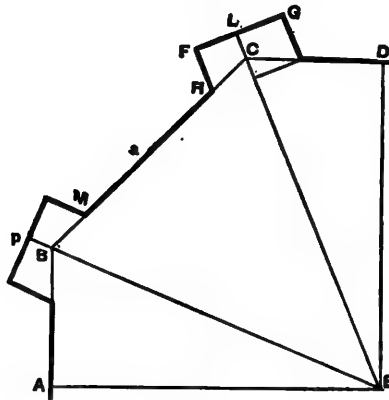


FIG. 382.

to be afterwards rounded, draw the diagonals ad and bc upon the end of it, after it has been squared-up. Set a gauge to the distance ae and run it upon the whole length of the stuff, from each corner both ways. This will show

how much is to be chamfered off, in order to make the piece octagonal (*Art.* 354).

529.—To Find the Side of a Buttressed Octagon.—Let $A B C D E$ (*Fig.* 382) represent one quarter of an octagon structure, having a buttress $H F G \mathcal{F}$ at each angle. The distance $M H$, between the buttresses, being given, as also $F G$, the width of a buttress; to find $H C$ or $C \mathcal{F}$, in order to obtain $B C$, the side of the octagon. Let $B C$, a side of the octagon, be represented by b ; or $D C$ by $\frac{1}{2} b$. Let $M H = a$; or $\mathcal{F} D = \frac{1}{2} a$; and $\mathcal{F} C = x$.

Then we have—

$$\mathcal{F} D + \mathcal{F} C = C D,$$

$$\frac{1}{2} a + x = \frac{1}{2} b,$$

$$a + 2x = b.$$

For $F G$ put p ; or $L G = K \mathcal{F} = \frac{1}{2} p$.

Now $E D$ is the radius of an inscribed circle and, as per equation (140.), equals $r = (\sqrt{2} + 1) \frac{b}{2}$.

Also, $E C$ is the radius of a circumscribed circle, and, as per equation (141.), equals $R = \sqrt{2\sqrt{2} + 4} \frac{b}{2}$.

The two triangles, $C \mathcal{F} K$ and $C E D$, are homologous; for the angles at C are common and the angles at K and D are right angles. Having thus two angles of one equal respectively to the two angles of the other, therefore (*Art.* 345) the remaining angles must be equal. Hence, the sides of the triangles are proportionate, or—

$$E D : E C :: \mathcal{F} K : C \mathcal{F}$$

$$r : R :: \frac{1}{2} p : x = \frac{1}{2} p \frac{R}{r}.$$

The value of the side, as above, is—

$$b = a + 2x = a + p \frac{R}{r}.$$

And taking the value of R and r , as above, we have—

$$\frac{R}{r} = \frac{\sqrt{2\sqrt{2}+4}^{\frac{1}{2}}}{(\sqrt{2}+1)^{\frac{1}{2}}} = \frac{\sqrt{2\sqrt{2}+4}}{\sqrt{2}+1}.$$

Substituting this for $\frac{R}{r}$, we have—

$$b = a + p \frac{\sqrt{2\sqrt{2}+4}}{\sqrt{2}+1}.$$

The numerical coefficient of p reduces to 1.0823923 or 1.0824, nearly.

Therefore we have—

$$b = a + 1.0824 p. \quad (207.)$$

Or: The *side* of a buttressed octagon equals the *distance between the buttresses* plus 1.0824 times the width of the *face of the buttress*.

For example: let there be an octagon building, which measures between the buttresses, as at MH , 18 feet, and the face of the buttresses, as FG , equals 3 feet; what, in such a building, is the length of a side BC ? For this, using equation (207.), we have—

$$\begin{aligned} b &= 18 + 1.0824 \times 3 \\ &= 18 + 3.2472 \\ &= 21.2472. \end{aligned}$$

Or: The side of the octagon BC equals 21 feet and nearly 3 inches.

530.—Within a Given Circle to Inscribe any Regular Polygon.—Let abc 2 (Figs. 383, 384, and 385) be given circles. Draw the diameter ac ; upon this erect an equilateral triangle aec , according to *Art.* 525; divide ac into as many equal parts as the polygon is to have sides, as at 1, 2, 3, 4, etc.; from e , through each even number, as 2, 4, 6, etc., draw lines

Dividing the circle in the points 2, 4, etc.; from these points draw lines at right angles to ac to the opposite part of the circle; this will give the remaining points for the polygon, as b, f , etc.

In forming a hexagon, the sides of the triangle erected

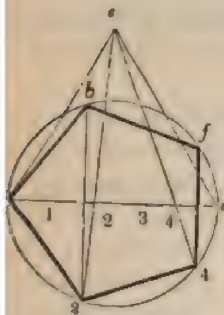


FIG. 383.

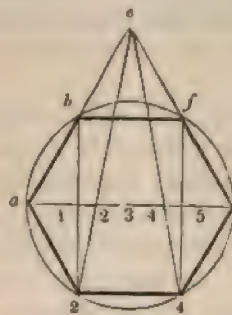


FIG. 384.

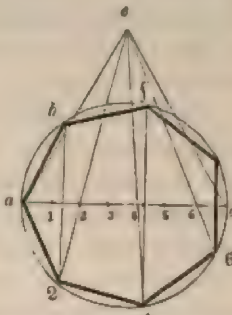


FIG. 385.

on ac (as at Fig. 384) mark the points b and f . This method of locating the angles of a polygon is an approximation sufficiently near for many purposes; it is based upon the like principle with the method of obtaining a right line nearly equal to a circle (*Art.* 524). The method shown at *Art.* 531 is accurate.



FIG. 386.

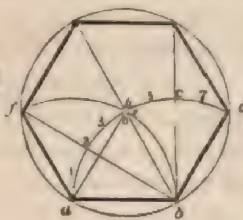


FIG. 387.

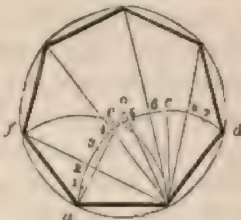


FIG. 388.

531.—Upon a Given Line to Describe any Regular Polygon.—Let ab (*Figs.* 386, 387, and 388) be given lines, equal to a side of the required figure. From b draw bc at right angles to ab ; upon a and b , with ab for radius, describe the arcs acd and feb ; divide ac into as many equal parts

as the polygon is to have sides, and extend those divisions from c towards d ; from the second point of division, counting from c towards a , as 3 (*Fig.* 386), 4 (*Fig.* 387), and 5 (*Fig.* 388), draw a line to b ; take the distance from said point of division to a , and set it from b to e ; join c and a ; upon the intersection o with the radius oa , describe the circle $afdb$, then radiating lines, drawn from b through the even numbers on the arc ad , will cut the circle at the several angles of the required figure.

In the hexagon (*Fig.* 387), the divisions on the arc ad are not necessary; for the point o is at the intersection of the arcs ad and fb , the points f and d are determined by the intersection of those arcs with the circle, and the points above g and h can be found by drawing lines from a and b through the centre o . In polygons of a greater number of sides than the hexagon the intersection o comes above the arcs; in such case, therefore, the lines ac and bs (*Fig.* 388) have to be extended before they will intersect. This method of describing polygons is founded on correct principles, and is therefore accurate. In the circle equal arcs subtend equal angles (*Arts.* 357 and 515). Although this method is accurate, yet polygons may be described as accurately and more simply in the following manner. It will be observed that much of the process in this method is for the purpose of ascertaining the centre of a circle that will circumscribe the proposed polygon. By reference to the Table of Polygons in *Art.* 442 it will be seen how this centre may be obtained arithmetically. This is the rule: multiply the given side by the tabular radius for polygons of a like number of sides with the proposed figure, and the product will be the radius of the required circumscribing circle. Divide this circle into as many equal parts as the polygon is to have sides, connect the points of division by straight lines, and the figure is complete. For example: It is desired to describe a polygon of 7 sides, and 20 inches a side. The tabular radius is 1.15238. This multiplied by 20, the product, 23.0476 is the required radius in inches. The Rules for the Reduction of Decimals, in the Appendix, show how to change decimals to the fractions of a foot or an inch. From

this, 23.0476 is equal to $23\frac{1}{16}$ inches, nearly. It is not needed to take all the decimals in the table, three or four of them will give a result sufficiently near for all ordinary practice.

532.—To Construct a Triangle whose Sides shall be severally Equal to Three Given Lines.—Let a , b and c (*Fig. 389*) be the given lines. Draw the line de and make it equal

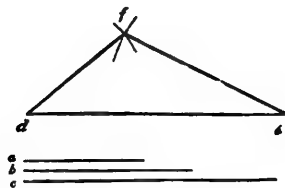


FIG. 389.

c ; upon e , with b for radius, describe an arc at f ; upon d , with a for radius, describe an arc intersecting the other at f ; join d and f , also f and e ; then dfc will be the triangle required.

533.—To Construct a Figure Equal to a Given, Right-lined Figure.—Let $abcd$ (*Fig. 390*) be the given figure. Make ef (*Fig. 391*) equal to cd ; upon f , with da for radius,

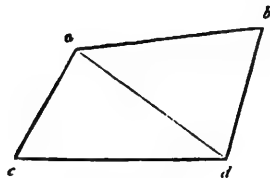


FIG. 390.

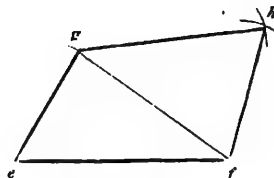


FIG. 391.

describe an arc at g ; upon e , with ca for radius, describe an arc intersecting the other at g ; join g and e ; upon f and g , with db and ab for radius, describe arcs intersecting at h ; join g and h , also h and f ; then *Fig. 391* will every way equal *Fig. 390*.

So, right-lined figures of any number of sides may be copied, by first dividing them into triangles, and then pro-

ceeding as above. The shape of the floor of any room, or of any piece of land, etc., may be accurately laid out by this problem, at a scale upon paper; and the contents in square feet be ascertained by the next.

534.—To Make a Parallelogram equal to a Given Triangle.—Let abc (Fig. 392) be the given triangle. From a draw ad at right angles to bc ; bisect ad in e ; through e

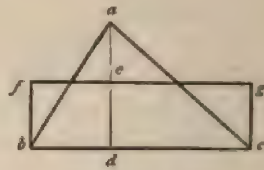


FIG. 392.

draw fg parallel to bc ; from b and c draw bf and cg parallel to de ; then $bfgc$ will be a parallelogram containing a surface exactly equal to that of the triangle abc .

Unless the parallelogram is required to be a rectangle, the lines bf and cg need not be drawn parallel to de . If a rhomboid is desired they may be drawn at an oblique angle, provided they be parallel to one another. To ascertain the area of a triangle, multiply the base bc by half the perpen-

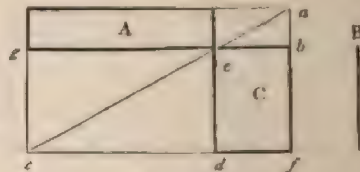


FIG. 393.

dicular height da . In doing this it matters not which side is taken for base.

535.—A Parallelogram being Given, to Construct Another Equal to it, and Having a Side Equal to a Given Line.—Let A (Fig. 393) be the given parallelogram, and B the given line. Produce the sides of the parallelogram, as at

a , b , c , and d ; make ed equal to B ; through d draw cf parallel to gb ; through e draw the diagonal ca ; from a draw af parallel to ed ; then C will be equal to A . (See *Art.* 340.)

536.—To Make a Square Equal to two or more Given Squares.—Let A and B (*Fig.* 394) be two given squares.

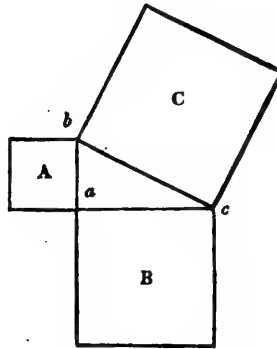


FIG. 394.

Place them so as to form a right angle, as at a ; join b and c ; then the square C , formed upon the line bc , will be equal in extent to the squares A and B added together. Again: if ab (*Fig.* 395) be equal to the side of a given square, ca , placed at right angles to ab , be the side of another given square,

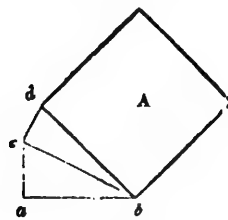


FIG. 395.

and cd , placed at right angles to cb , be the side of a third given square, then the square A , formed upon the line db , will be equal to the three given squares. (See *Art.* 353.)

The usefulness and importance of this problem are proverbial. To ascertain the length of braces and of rafters in

framing, the length of stair-strings, etc.; are some of the purposes to which it may be applied in carpentry. (See note to *Art.* 503.) If the lengths of any two sides of a right-angled triangle are known, that of the third can be ascertained. Because the square of the hypotenuse is equal to the united squares of the two sides that contain the right angle.

(1.)—The two sides containing the right angle being known, to find the hypotenuse.

Rule.—Square each given side, add the squares together, and from the product extract the square root; this will be the answer.

For instance, suppose it were required to find the length of a rafter for a house, 34 feet wide—the ridge of the roof to be 9 feet high, above the level of the wall-plates. Then 17 feet, half of the span, is one, and 9 feet, the height, is the other of the sides that contain the right angle. Proceed as directed by the rule:

17	9
<u>17</u>	<u>9</u>
119	81 = square of 9.
<u>17</u>	289 = square of 17.
289 = square of 17.	370 Product.

1) 370 (19.235 + = square root of 370; equal 19 feet 2½ in.,
 1 1 nearly; which would be the required
 29) 270 length of the rafter.

9	261
<u>382</u>	<u>000</u>
2	764
<u>3843</u>	<u>13600</u>
3	11529
<u>38465</u>	<u>207100</u>
	192325

(By reference to the table of square roots in the Appendix, the root of almost any number may be found ready calculated; also, to change the decimals of a foot to inches and parts, see Rules for the Reduction of Decimals in the Appendix.)

Again: suppose it be required, in a frame building, to find the length of a brace having a run of three feet each way from the point of the right angle. The length of the sides containing the right angle will be each 3 feet; then, as before—

$$\begin{array}{r} 3 \\ 3 \\ \hline 9 \end{array} = \text{square of one side.}$$

3 times 3 = 9 = square of the other side.

18 Product: the square root of which is 4.2426+ ft.,
or 4 feet 2 inches and $\frac{7}{8}$ full.

(2.)—The hypotenuse and one side being known, to find the other side.

Rule.—Subtract the square of the given side from the square of the hypotenuse, and the square root of the product will be the answer.

Suppose it were required to ascertain the greatest perpendicular height a roof of a given span may have, when pieces of timber of a given length are to be used as rafters. Let the span be 20 feet, and the rafters of 3 × 4 hemlock joist. These come about 13 feet long. The known hypotenuse, then, is 13 feet, and the known side, 10 feet—that being half the span of the building.

$$\begin{array}{r} 13 \\ 13 \\ \hline 39 \\ 13 \\ \hline 169 \end{array}$$

169 = square of hypotenuse.

10 times 10 = 100 = square of the given side.

69 Product: the square root of which is

8.3066+ feet, or 8 feet 3 inches and $\frac{5}{8}$ full. This will be the greatest perpendicular height, as required. Again: suppose that in a story of 8 feet, from floor to floor, a step-ladder is required, the strings of which are to be of plank 12 feet long, and it is desirable to know the greatest run such a length of string will afford. In this case, the two given sides are—hypotenuse 12, perpendicular 8 feet.

12 times 12 = 144 = square of hypotenuse,

8 times 8 = 64 = square of perpendicular.

80 Product: the square root of which is 8.9442+ feet, or 8 feet 11 inches and $\frac{5}{16}$ —the answer, as required.

Many other cases might be adduced to show the utility of this problem. A practical and ready method of ascertaining the length of braces, rafters, etc., when not of a great length, is to apply a rule across the carpenters'-square. Suppose, for the length of a rafter, the base be 12 feet and the height 7. Apply the rule diagonally on the square, so that it touches 12 inches from the corner on one side, and 7 inches from the corner on the other. The number of inches on the rule which are intercepted by the sides of the square, $13\frac{7}{8}$, nearly, will be the length of the rafter in feet; viz., 13 feet and $\frac{7}{8}$ of a foot. If the dimensions are large, as 30 feet and 20, take the half of each on the sides of the square, viz., 15 and 10 inches, then the length in inches across will be one half the number of feet the rafter is long. This method is just as accurate as the preceding; but when the length of a very long rafter is sought, it requires great care and precision to ascertain the fractions. For the least variation on the square, or in the length taken on the rule, would make perhaps several inches difference in the length of the rafter. For shorter dimensions, however, the result will be true enough.

537.—To Make a Circle Equal to two Given Circles.—

Let *A* and *B* (*Fig. 396*) be the given circles. In the right-angled triangle *abc* make *ab* equal to the diameter of the

Circle B , and cb equal to the diameter of the circle A ; then the hypotenuse ac will be the diameter of a circle C , which will be equal in area to the two circles A and B , added together.

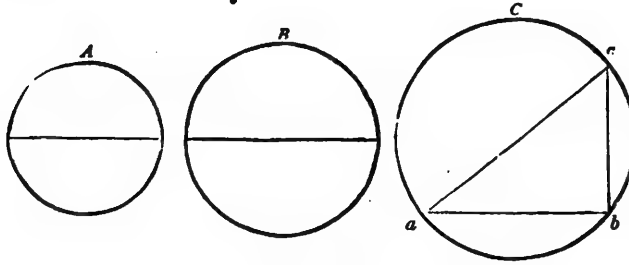


FIG. 396.

Any polygonal figure, as A (Fig. 397), formed on the hypotenuse of a right-angled triangle, will be equal to two similar figures,* as B and C , formed on the two legs of the triangle.

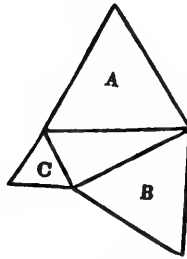


FIG. 397.

538.—To Construct a Square Equal to a Given Rectangle.—Let A (Fig. 398) be the given rectangle. Extend the side ab and make bc equal to be ; bisect ac in f , and upon f , with the radius fa , describe the semi-circle agc ; extend eb till it cuts the curve in g ; then a square $bghd$, formed on the line bg , will be equal in area to the rectangle A .

* Similar figures are such as have their several angles respectively equal, and their sides respectively proportionate.

Another method. Let A (Fig. 399) be the given rectangle. Extend the side ab and make ad equal to ac ; bisect ad in e ; upon e , with the radius ea , describe the semi-circle afd ; extend gb till it cuts the curve in f ; join a and f ; then

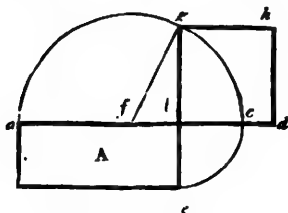


FIG. 398.

the square B , formed on the line af , will be equal in area to the rectangle A . (See *Arts.* 352 and 353.)

539.—To Form a Square Equal to a Given Triangle.—Let ab (Fig. 398) equal the base of the given triangle, and bc

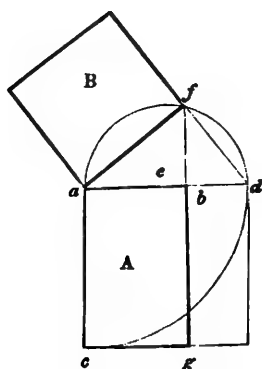


FIG. 399.

equal half its perpendicular height (see Fig. 392); then proceed as directed at *Art.* 538.

540.—Two Right Lines being Given, to Find a Third Proportional Thereto.—Let A and B (Fig. 400) be the given lines. Make ab equal to A ; from a draw ac at any angle

with ab ; make ac and ad each equal to B ; join c and b ; from d draw de parallel to cb ; then ae will be the third proportional required. That is, ae bears the same proportion to B as B does to A .

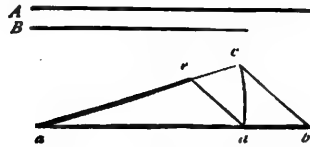


FIG. 400.

541.—Three Right Lines being Given, to Find a Fourth Proportional Thereto.—Let A , B , and C (Fig. 401) be the given lines. Make ab equal to A ; from a draw ac at any

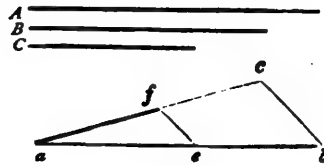


FIG. 401.

angle with ab ; make ac equal to B and ae equal to C ; join c and b ; from c draw cf parallel to cb ; then af will be the fourth proportional required. That is, af bears the same proportion to C as B does to A .

To apply this problem, suppose the two axes of a given ellipsis and the longer axis of a proposed ellipsis are given. Then, by this problem, the length of the shorter axis to the proposed ellipsis can be found; so that it will bear the same proportion to the longer axis as the shorter of the given ellipsis does to its longer. (See also *Art.* 559.)

542.—A Line with Certain Divisions being Given, to Divide Another, Longer or Shorter, Given Line in the Same Proportion.—Let A (Fig. 402) be the line to be divided, and B the line with its divisions. Make ab equal to B with all its divisions, as at 1, 2, 3, etc.; from a draw ac at any angle with ab ; make ac equal to A ; join c and b ; from

the points 1, 2, 3, etc., draw lines parallel to cb ; then these will divide the line ac in the same proportion as B is divided—as was required.

This problem will be found useful in proportioning the

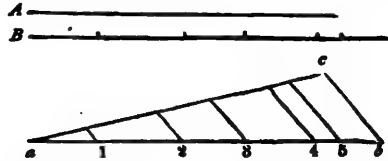


FIG. 402.

members of a proposed cornice, in the same proportion as those of a given cornice of another size. (See *Art.* 321.) So of a pilaster, architrave, etc.

543.—Between Two Given Right Lines, to Find a Mean Proportional.—Let A and B (*Fig.* 403) be the given lines. On the line ac make ab equal to A and bc equal to B ; bisect ac in e ; upon e , with ea for radius, describe the semi-circle adc ; at b erect bd at right angles to ac ; then

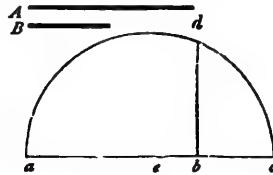


FIG. 403.

bd will be the mean proportional between A and B . That is, ab is to bd as bd is to bc . This is usually stated thus: $ab : bd :: bd : bc$, and since the product of the means equals the product of the extremes, therefore, $ab \times bc = bd^2$. This is shown geometrically at *Art.* 538.

CONIC SECTIONS.

544.—Definitions.—If a cone, standing upon a base that is at right angles with its axis, be cut by a plane, per-

pendicular to its base and passing through its axis, the section will be an isosceles triangle (as abc , *Fig. 404*); and the base will be a semi-circle. If a cone be cut by a plane in the direction ef the section will be an *ellipsis*; if in the direction ml , the section will be a *parabola*; and if in the direction ro , an *hyperbola*. (See *Art. 499*.) If the cutting planes be at right angles with the plane abc , then—

545.—To Find the Axes of the Ellipsis: bisect ef (*Fig. 404*) in g ; through g draw hi parallel to ab ; bisect hi in j ;

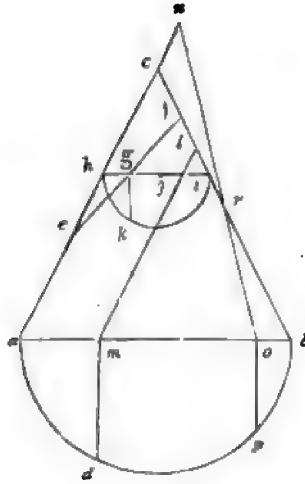


FIG. 404.

upon j , with jh for radius, describe the semi-circle hki ; from g draw gk at right angles to hi ; then twice gk will be the conjugate axis and ef the transverse.

546.—To Find the Axis and Base of the Parabola.—Let ml (*Fig. 404*), parallel to ac , be the direction of the cutting plane. From m draw md at right angles to ab ; then lm will be the axis and height, and md an ordinate and half the base, as at *Figs. 417, 418*.

547.—To Find the Height, Base, and Transverse Axis of an Hyperbola.—Let or (*Fig. 404*) be the direction of the

cutting plane. Extend or and ac till they meet at n ; from o draw op at right angles to ab ; then ro will be the height, nr the transverse axis, and op half the base; as at *Fig. 419*.

548.—The Axes being Given, to Find the Foci, and to Describe an Ellipsis with a String.—Let ab (*Fig. 405*) and cd be the given axes. Upon c , with ac or bc for radius, describe the arc ff ; then f and f , the points at which the arc cuts the transverse axis, will be the *foci*. At f and f place two pins, and another at c ; tie a string about the three pins, so as to form the triangle ffc ; remove the pin from c and place a pencil in its stead; keeping the string taut,

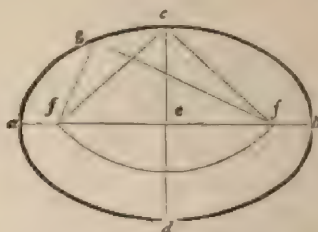


FIG. 405.

move the pencil in the direction cga ; it will then describe the required ellipsis. The lines fg and gf show the position of the string when the pencil arrives at g .

This method, when performed correctly, is perfectly accurate; but the string is liable to stretch, and is, therefore, not so good to use as the trammel. In making an ellipse by a string or twine, that kind should be used which has the least tendency to elasticity. For this reason, a cotton cord, such as chalk-lines are commonly made of, is not proper for the purpose; a linen or flaxen cord is much better.

549.—The Axes being Given, to Describe an Ellipsis with a Trammel.—Let ab and cd (*Fig. 406*) be the given axes. Place the trammel so that a line passing through the centre of the grooves would coincide with the axes; make

the distance from the pencil e to the nut f equal to half cd ; also, from the pencil e to the nut g equal to half ab ; letting the pins under the nuts slide in the grooves, move the trammel eg in the direction cbt ; then the pencil at e will describe the required ellipse.

A trammel may be constructed thus: take two straight strips of board, and make a groove on their face, in the centre of their width; join them together, in the middle of their length, at right angles to one another; as is seen at *Fig. 406*. A rod is then to be prepared, having two movable nuts made of wood, with a mortise through them of the size of the rod, and pins under them large enough to fill the grooves. Make a hole at one end of the rod, in which to

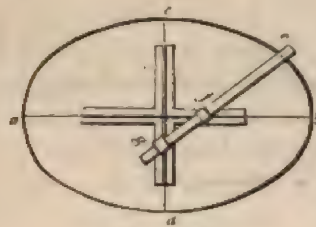


FIG. 406.

place a pencil. In the absence of a regular trammel a temporary one may be made, which, for any short job, will answer every purpose. Fasten two straight-edges at right angles to one another. Lay them so as to coincide with the axes of the proposed ellipse, having the angular point at the centre. Then, in a rod having a hole for the pencil at one end, place two brad-awls at the distances described at *Art. 549*. While the pencil is moved in the direction of the curve, keep the brad-awls hard against the straight-edges, as directed for using the trammel-rod, and one quarter of the ellipse will be drawn. Then, by shifting the straight-edges, the other three quarters in succession may be drawn. If the required ellipse be not too large, a carpenter's-square may be made use of, in place of the straight-edges.

An improved method of constructing the trammel is as

follows: make the sides of the grooves bevelling from the face of the stuff, or dove-tailing instead of square. Prepare two slips of wood, each about two inches long, which shall be of a shape to just fill the groove when slipped in at the end. These, instead of pins, are to be attached one to each of the movable nuts with a screw, loose enough for the nut to move freely about the screw as an axis. The advantage of this contrivance is, in preventing the nuts from slipping out of their places during the operation of describing the curve.

550.—To Describe an Ellipsis by Ordinates.—Let ab and cd (*Fig. 407*) be given axes. With ce or ed for radius

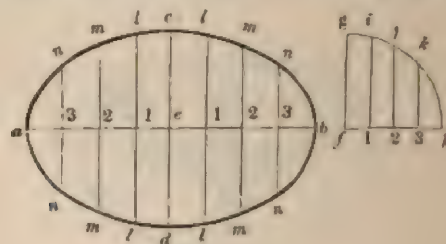


FIG. 407.

describe the quadrant fgh ; divide fh , ae , and eb , each into a like number of equal parts, as at 1, 2, and 3; through these points draw ordinates parallel to cd and fg ; take the distance $1i$ and place it at $1l$, transfer $2j$ to $2m$, and $3k$ to $3n$; through the points a , n , m , l , and c , trace a curve, and the ellipsis will be completed.

The greater the number of divisions on a , e , etc., in this and the following problem, the more points in the curve can be found, and the more accurate the curve can be traced. If pins are placed in the points n , m , l , etc., and a thin slip of wood bent around by them, the curve can be made quite correct. This method is mostly used in tracing face-moulds for stair hand-railing.

551.—To Describe an Ellipsis by Intersection of Lines.—Let ab and cd (*Fig. 408*) be given axes. Through c , draw

fg parallel to ab ; from a and b draw af and bg at right angles to ab ; divide fa , gb , ae , and eb , each into a like number of equal parts, as at 1, 2, 3, and o , o , o ; from 1, 2, and 3, draw lines to c ; through o , o , and o , draw lines from d ,

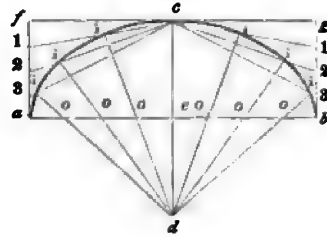


FIG. 408.

intersecting those drawn to c ; then a curve, traced through the points i , i , i , will be that of an ellipse.

Where neither trammel nor string is at hand, this, perhaps, is the most ready method of drawing an ellipse. The divisions should be small, where accuracy is desirable. By this method an ellipse may be traced without the axes, provided that a diameter and its conjugate be given. Thus, ab

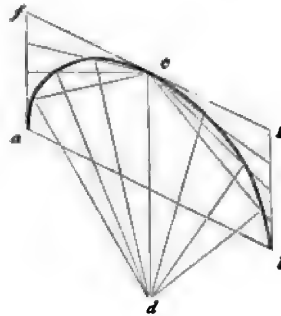


FIG. 409.

and cd (Fig. 409) are conjugate diameters: fg is drawn parallel to ab , instead of being at right angles to cd ; also, fa and gb are drawn parallel to cd , instead of being at right angles to ab .

552.—To Describe an Ellipsis by Intersecting Arcs.—

Let ab and cd (Fig. 410) be given axes. Between one of the foci, f and f , and the centre e , mark any number of points at random, as 1, 2, and 3; upon f and f , with $b1$ for radius, describe arcs at g, g, g , and g ; upon f and f , with $a1$ for

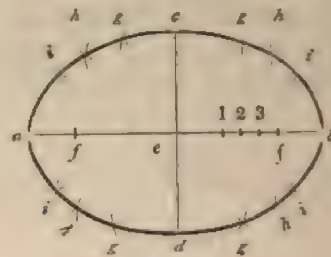


FIG. 410.

radius, describe arcs intersecting the others at g, g, g , and g ; then these points of intersection will be in the curve of the ellipsis. The other points, h and i , are found in like manner, viz.: h is found by taking $b2$ for one radius, and $a2$ for the other; i is found by taking $b3$ for one radius, and $a3$ for the

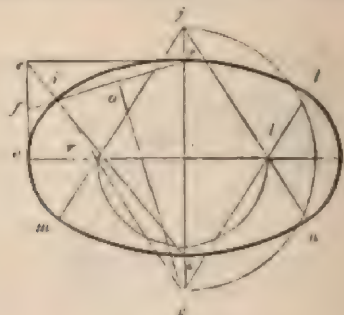


FIG. 411.

other, always using the foci for centres. Then by tracing a curve through the points c, g, h, i, b , etc., the ellipse will be completed.

This problem is founded upon the same principle as that of the string. This is obvious, when we reflect that the length of the string is equal to the transverse axis, added to

the distance between the foci. See *Fig. 405*, in which cf equals ae , the half of the transverse axis.

553.—To Describe a Figure Nearly in the Shape of an Ellipsis, by a Pair of Compasses.—Let ab and cd (*Fig. 411*) be given axes. From c draw ce parallel to ab ; from a draw ae parallel to cd ; join e and d ; bisect ea in f ; join f and c , intersecting ed in i ; bisect ic in o ; from o draw og at right angles to ic , meeting cd extended to g ; join i and g , cutting the transverse axis in r ; make hj equal to hg , and hk equal to hr ; from j , through r and k , draw jm and jn ; also, from g , through k , draw gl ; upon g and j , with gc for radius, describe the arcs il and mn ; upon r and k , with ra for

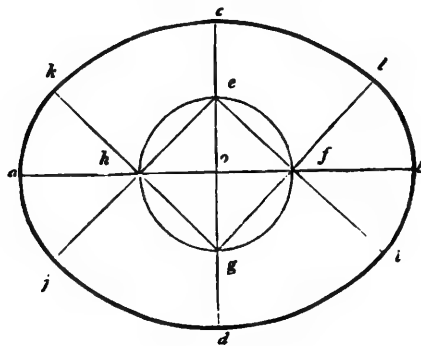


FIG. 412.

radius, describe the arcs mi and ln ; this will complete the figure.

When the axes are proportioned to one another, as at 2 to 3, the extremities, c and d , of the shortest axis, will be the centres for describing the arcs il and mn ; and the intersection of cd with the transverse axis will be the centre for describing the arc m, i , etc. As the elliptic curve is continually changing its course from that of a circle, a true ellipsis cannot be described with a pair of compasses. The above, therefore, is only an approximation.

554.—To Draw an Oval in the Proportion Seven by Nine.—Let cd (*Fig. 412*) be the given conjugate axis. Bisect

cd in o , and through o draw ab at right angles to cd ; bisect co in e ; upon o , with oe for radius, describe the circle $efgh$; from e , through h and f , draw ej and ei ; also, from g , through h and f , draw gk and gl ; upon g , with ge for radius, describe the arc kl ; upon e , with ed for radius, describe the arc ji ; upon h and f , with hk for radius, describe the arcs jk and li ; this will complete the figure.

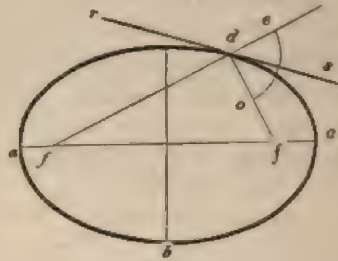


FIG. 413.

This is an approximation to an ellipsis; and perhaps no method can be found by which a well-shaped oval can be drawn with greater facility. By a little variation in the process, ovals of different proportions may be obtained. If quarter of the transverse axis is taken for the radius of the circle $efgh$, one will be drawn in the proportion five by seven.

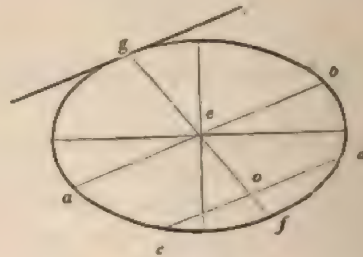


FIG. 414.

555.—To Draw a Tangent to an Ellipsis.—Let $abcd$ (Fig. 413) be the given ellipsis, and d the point of contact. Find the foci (Art. 548) f and f , and from them, through d , draw fe and fd ; bisect the angle (Art. 506) edo with the line sr ; then sr will be the tangent required.

556.—An Ellipsis with a Tangent Given, to Detect the Point of Contact.—Let $agbf$ (Fig. 414) be the given ellipsis and tangent. Through the centre e draw ab parallel to the tangent; anywhere between e and f draw cd parallel to ab ; bisect cd in o ; through o and e draw fg ; then g will be the point of contact required.

557.—A Diameter of an Ellipsis Given, to Find its Conjugate.—Let ab (Fig. 414) be the given diameter. Find the line fg by the last problem; then fg will be the diameter required.

558.—Any Diameter and its Conjugate being Given, to Ascertain the Two Axes, and thence to Describe the Ellipsis.—Let ab and cd (Fig. 415) be the given diameters, conjugate

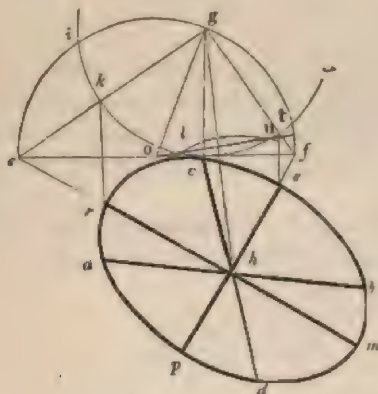


FIG. 415.

to one another. Through e draw ef parallel to ab ; from e draw eg at right angles to ef ; make eg equal to ah or hb ; join g and h ; upon g , with ge for radius, describe the arc $ikej$; upon h , with the same radius, describe the arc ln ; through the intersections l and n draw no , cutting the tangent ef in o ; upon o , with og for radius, describe the semi-circle efg ; join e and g , also g and f , cutting the arc icj in k and t ; from e , through h , draw em , also from f , through h , draw fp ; from k and t draw kr and ts parallel to gh

cutting em in r , and fp in s ; make hm equal to hr , and hp equal to hs ; then rm and sp will be the axes required, by which the ellipsis may be drawn in the usual way.

559.—To Describe an Ellipsis, whose Axes shall be Proportionate to the Axes of a Larger or Smaller Given One.—Let $acbd$ (Fig. 416) be the given ellipsis and axes, and

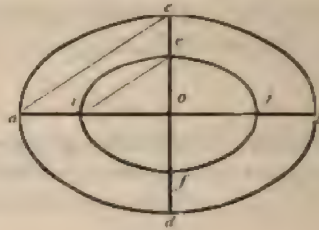


FIG. 416.

ij the transverse axis of a proposed smaller one. Join a and c ; from i draw ie parallel to ac ; make of equal to oe ; then ef will be the conjugate axis required, and will bear the same proportion to ij as cd does to ab . (See *Art.* 541.)

560.—To Describe a Parabola by Intersection of Lines.—Let ml (Fig. 417) be the axis and height (see Fig. 404) and

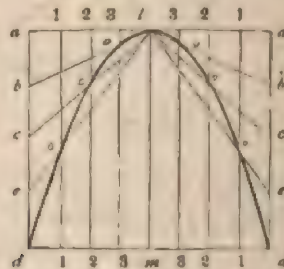


FIG. 417.

dd a double ordinate and base of the proposed parabola. Through l draw aa parallel to dd ; through d and d draw da and da parallel to ml ; divide ad and dm , each into a like number of equal parts; from each point of division in

dm draw the lines 1 1, 2 2, etc., parallel to *ml*; from each point of division in *da* draw lines to *l*; then a curve traced through the points of intersection *o*, *o*, and *o*, will be that of a parabola.

Another method. Let *ml* (Fig. 418) be the axis and height, and *dd* the base. Extend *ml* and make *la* equal to *ml*; join *a* and *d*, and *a* and *d*; divide *ad* and *ad*, each into a like number of equal parts, as at 1, 2, 3, etc.; join 1 and 1, 2 and 2, etc., and the parabola will be completed. (See *Arts.* 460 to 472.)

561.—To Describe an Hyperbola by Intersection of Lines.—Let *ro* (Fig. 419) be the height, *pp* the base, and *nr* the transverse axis. (See Fig. 404.) Through *r* draw *aa*

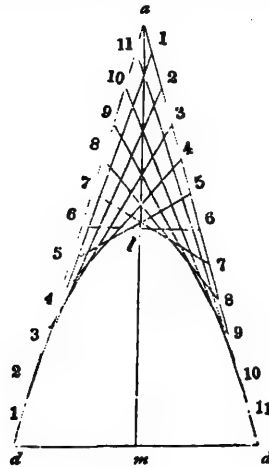


FIG. 418.

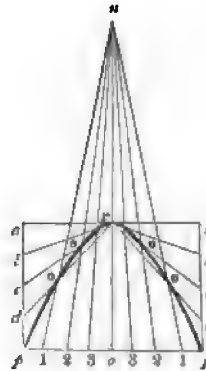


FIG. 419.

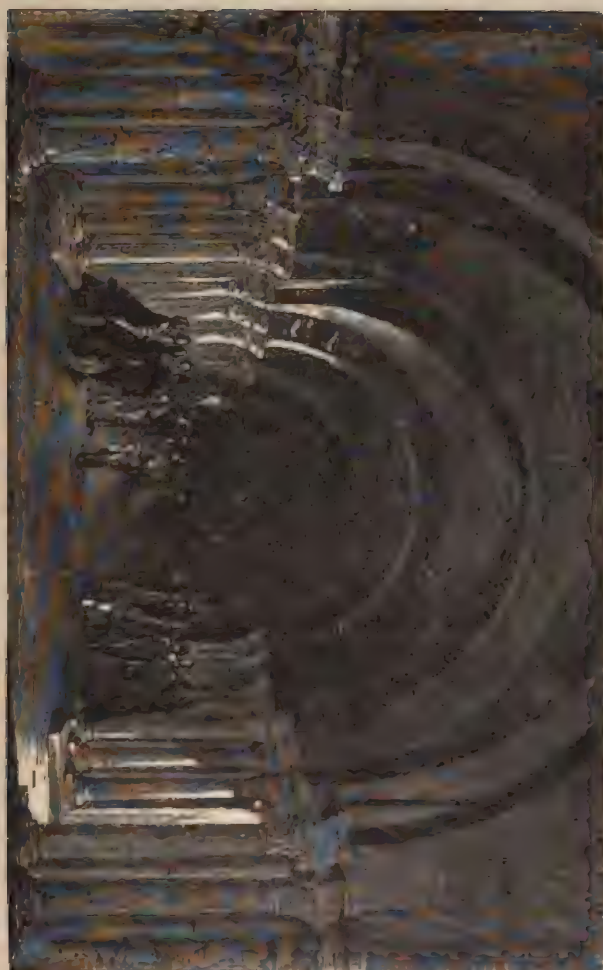
parallel to *pp*; from *p* draw *ap* parallel to *ro*; divide *ap* and *po*, each into a like number of equal parts; from each of the points of division in the base, draw lines to *n*; from each of the points of division in *ap*, draw lines to *r*; then a curve traced through the points of intersection *o*, *o*, etc., will be that of an hyperbola.

The parabola and hyperbola afford handsome curves for various mouldings. (See *Figs.* 191 to 205; 222 to 224; 241 and 242; also note to *Art.* 318.)

SECTION XVII.—SHADOWS.

562.—The Art of Drawing consists in representing solids upon a plane surface, so that a curious and nice adjustment of lines is made to present the same appearance to the eye as does the human figure, a tree, or a house. It is by the effects of light, in its reflection, shade, and shadow, that the presence of an object is made known to us; so upon paper it is necessary, in order that the delineation may appear real, to represent fully all the shades and shadows that would be seen upon the object itself. In this section I propose to illustrate, by a few plain examples, the simple elementary principles upon which shading, in architectural subjects, is based. The necessary knowledge of drawing, preliminary to this subject, is treated of in Section XV., from *Arts.* 487 to 498.

563.—The Inclination of the Line of Shadow.—This is always, in architectural drawing, 45 degrees, both on the elevation and on the plan; and the sun is supposed to be behind the spectator, and over his left shoulder. This can be illustrated by reference to *Fig.* 420, in which *A* represents a horizontal plane, and *B* and *C* two vertical planes placed at right angles to each other. *A* represents the plan, *C* the elevation, and *B* a vertical projection from the elevation. In finding the shadow of the plane *B*, the line *ab* is drawn at an angle of 45 degrees with the horizon, and the line *cb* at the same angle with the vertical plane *B*. The plane *B* being a rectangle, this makes the true direction of the sun's rays to be in a course parallel to *db*, which direction has been proved to be at an angle of 35 degrees and 16 minutes with the horizon. It is convenient, in shading, to have a set-square with the two sides that contain the



CRYPT OF ST. EUTROPE.

THE
PUBLIC LIBRARY
ASTOR, LENOX
TILDEN FOUNDATIONS

right angle of equal length; this will make the two acute angles each 45 degrees, and will give the requisite bevel when worked upon the edge of the T-square. One reason why this angle is chosen in preference to another is that when shadows are properly made upon the drawing by it, the depth of every recess is more readily known, since the breadth of shadow and the depth of the recess will be equal.

To distinguish between the terms *shade* and *shadow*, it will be understood that all such parts of a body as are not exposed to the direct action of the sun's rays are in *shade*;

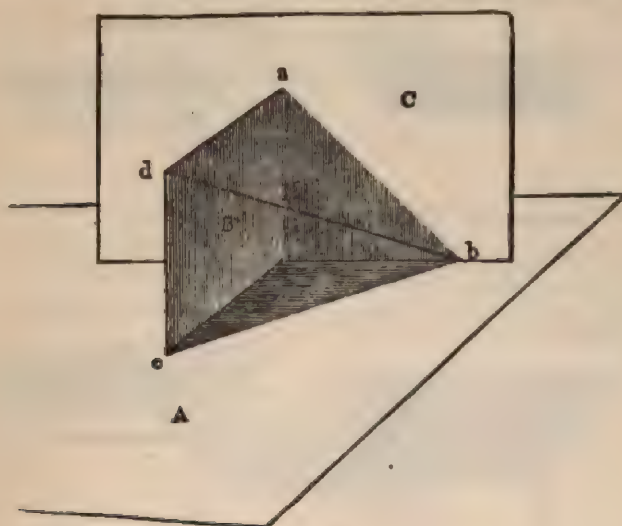


FIG. 420.

while those parts which are deprived of light by the interposition of other bodies are in *shadow*.

564.—To Find the Line of Shadow on Mouldings and other Horizontally Straight Projections.—*Figs. 421, 422, 423, and 424* represent various mouldings in elevation, returned at the left, in the usual manner of mitering around a projection. A mere inspection of the figures is sufficient to see how the line of shadow is obtained, bearing in mind that the ray *a b* is drawn from the projections at an angle of 45

degrees. When there is no return at the end, it is necessary to draw a section, at any place in the length of the mouldings, and find the line of shadow from that.

565.—To Find the Line of Shadow Cast by a Shelf.—In *Fig. 425*, *A* is the plan and *B* is the elevation of a shelf attached to a wall. From *a* and *c* draw *ab* and *cd*, according to the angle previously directed; from *b* erect a perpendicular intersecting *cd* at *d*; from *d* draw *de* parallel to

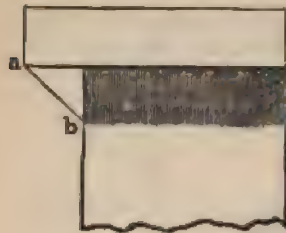


FIG. 421.

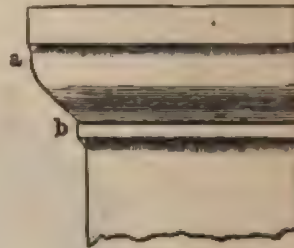


FIG. 422.

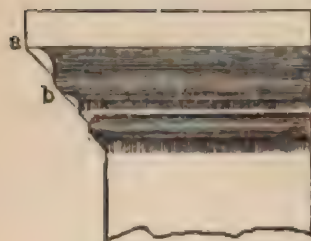


FIG. 423.

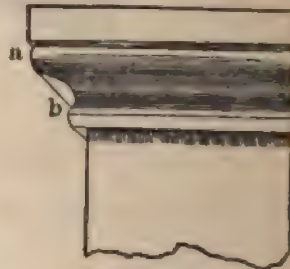


FIG. 424.

the shelf; then the lines *cd* and *de* will define the shadow cast by the shelf. There is another method of finding the shadow, without the plan *A*. Extend the lower line of the shelf to *f*, and make *cf* equal to the projection of the shelf from the wall; from *f* draw *fg* at the customary angle, and from *c* drop the vertical line *cg* intersecting *fg* at *g*; from *g* draw *ge* parallel to the shelf, and from *c* draw *cd* at the usual angle; then the lines *cd* and *de* will determine the extent of the shadow as before.

566.—To Find the Shadow Cast by a Shelf which is higher at one End than at the Other.—In *Fig. 426*, *A* is the plan, and *B* the elevation. Find the point *d*, as in the pre-

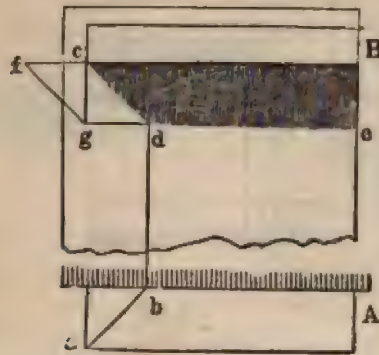


FIG. 425.

vious example, and from any other point in the front of the shelf, as *a*, erect the perpendicular *ae*; from *a* and *e* draw *ab* and *ec*, at the proper angle, and from *b* erect the perpendicu-

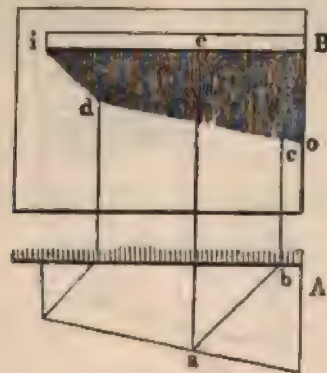


FIG. 426.

bc, intersecting *ec* in *c*; from *d*, through *c*, draw *do*; the lines *id* and *do* will give the limit of the shadow cast by the shelf.

567.—To Find the Shadow of a Shelf having one End Acute or Obtuse Angled.—*Fig. 427* shows the plan and elevation of an acute-angled shelf. Find the line eg as before:

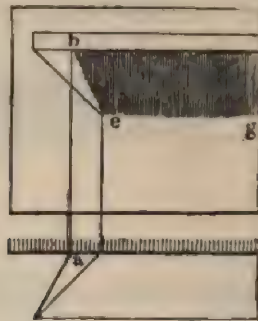


FIG. 427.

from a erect the perpendicular ab ; join b and e ; then be and eg will define the boundary of shadow.

568.—To Find the Shadow Cast by an Inclined Shelf.—In *Fig. 428* the plan and elevation of such a shelf are shown, having also one end wider than the other. Proceed as di-

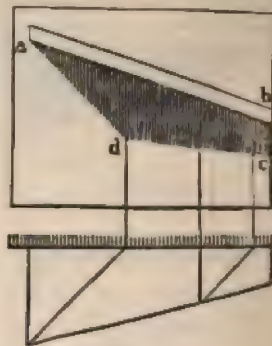


FIG. 428.

rected for finding the shadows of *Fig. 426*, and find the points d and c ; then ad and dc will be the shadow required. If the shelf had been parallel in width on the plan, then the line dc would have been parallel with the shelf ab .

569.—To Find the Shadow Cast by a Shelf Inclined in a Vertical Section either Upward or Downward.—From (Figs. 429 and 430) draw ab at the usual angle, and from b draw bc parallel with the shelf; obtain the point e by draw-

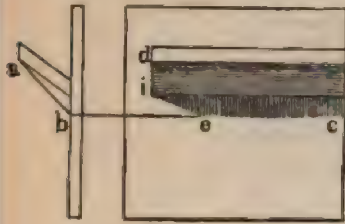


FIG. 429.

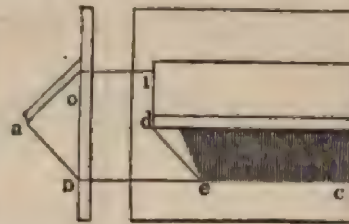


FIG. 430.

ing a line from d at the usual angle. In *Fig. 429* join e and c ; then ie and ec will define the shadow. In *Fig. 430*, from d draw oi parallel with the shelf; join i and e ; then ie and ec will be the shadow required.

The projections in these several examples are bounded

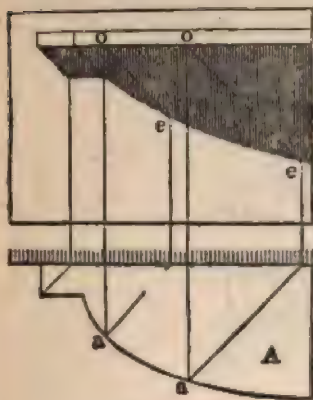


FIG. 431.

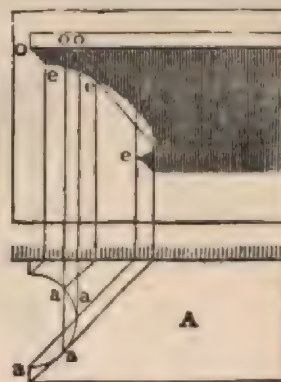


FIG. 432.

by straight lines; but the shadows of curved lines may be found in the same manner, by projecting shadows from several points in the curved line, and tracing the curve of shadow through these points. (Figs. 431 and 432.)

570.—To Find the Shadow of a Shelf having its Front Edge, or End, Curved on the Plan.—In *Figs. 431 and 432* *A* and *A'* show an example of each kind. From several points, as *a, a*, in the plan, and from the corresponding points *a, a* in the elevation, draw rays and perpendiculars intersect-

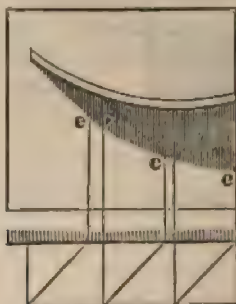


FIG. 433.

ing at *c, c*, etc.; through these points of intersection trace the curve, and it will define the shadow.

571.—To Find the Shadow of a Shelf Curved in the Elevation.—In *Fig. 433* find the points of intersection, *c, c* and



FIG. 434

c, as in the last examples, and a curve traced through them will define the shadow.

The preceding examples show how to find shadows when cast upon a *vertical plane*; shadows thrown upon *curved surfaces* are ascertained in a similar manner. (*Fig. 434*.)

572.—To Find the Shadow Cast upon a Cylindrical Wall by a Projection of any Kind.—By an inspection of *Fig. 434*, it will be seen that the only difference between this and the last examples is that the rays in the plan die against the circle *ab*, instead of a straight line.

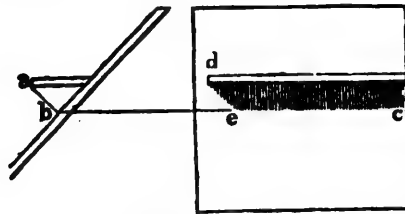


FIG. 435.

573.—To Find the Shadow Cast by a Shelf upon an Inclined Wall.—Cast the ray *ab* (*Fig. 435*) from the end of the shelf to the face of the wall, and from *b* draw *bc* parallel to the shelf; cast the ray *de* from the end of the shelf; then the lines *de* and *ec* will define the shadow.

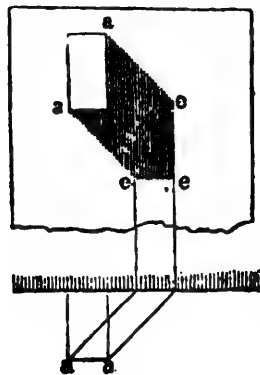


FIG. 436.

These examples might be multiplied, but enough has been given to illustrate the general principle by which shadows in all instances are found. Let us attend now to the application of this principle to such familiar objects as are likely to occur in practice.

574.—To Find the Shadow of a Projecting Horizontal Beam.—From the points *a, a*, etc. (*Fig. 436*), cast rays upon the wall; the intersections *e, e, e* of those rays with the perpendiculars drawn from the plan will define the shadow. If the beam be inclined, either on the plan or elevation, at any angle other than a right angle, the difference in the manner

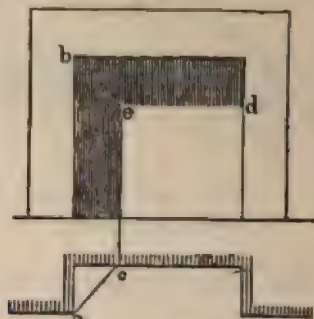


FIG. 437.

of proceeding can be seen by reference to the preceding examples of inclined shelves, etc.

575.—To Find the Shadow in a Recess.—From the point *a* (*Fig. 437*) in the plan, and *b* in the elevation, draw the rays *ac* and *be*; from *c* erect the perpendicular *ce*, and from *e*

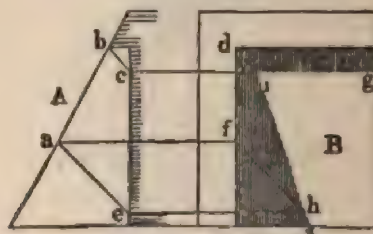


FIG. 438.

draw the horizontal line *ed*; then the lines *ce* and *ed* will show the extent of the shadow. This applies only where the back of the recess is parallel with the face of the wall.

576.—To Find the Shadow in a Recess, when the Face of the Wall is Inclined, and the Back of the Recess is Vertical.—In *Fig. 438*, *A* shows the section and *B* the eleva-

tion of a recess of this kind. From b , and from any other point in the line ba , as a , draw the rays bc and ae ; from c , a , and e draw the horizontal lines cg , af , and eh ; from d

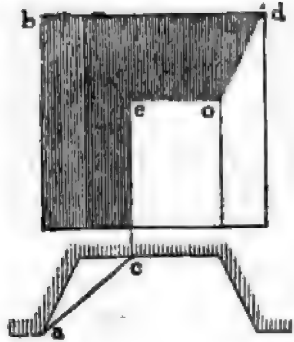


FIG. 439.

and f cast the rays di and fh ; from i , through h , draw is ; then si and ig will define the shadow.

577.—To Find the Shadow in a Fireplace.—From a and b (Fig. 439) cast the rays ac and bc , and from c erect the

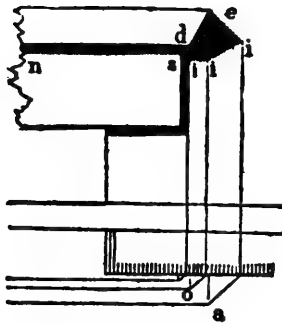


FIG. 440.

perpendicular ce ; from e draw the horizontal line eo , and join o and d ; then ce , eo , and od will give the extent of the shadow.

578.—To Find the Shadow of a Moulded Window-Lintel.—Cast rays from the projections a, o , etc., in the plan (*Fig. 440*), and d, e , etc., in the elevation, and draw the usual perpendiculars intersecting the rays at i, i , and i ; these intersections connected, and horizontal lines drawn from them, will define the shadow. The shadow on the face of the lintel is found by casting a ray back from i to s , and drawing the horizontal line sn .

579.—To Find the Shadow Cast by the Nosing of a Step.—From a (*Fig. 441*) and its corresponding point c , cast the

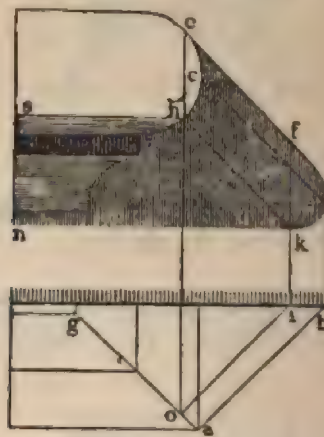


FIG. 441.

rays ab and cd , and from b erect the perpendicular bd ; tangential to the curve at c cast the ray ef , and from e drop the perpendicular eo , meeting the mitre-line ag in o ; cast a ray from o to i , and from i erect the perpendicular if ; from h draw the ray hk ; from f to d and from d to k trace the curve as shown in the figure; from k and h draw the horizontal lines kn and hs ; then the limit of the shadow will be completed.

580.—To Find the Shadow Thrown by a Pedestal upon Steps.—From a (*Fig. 442*) in the plan, and from c in the elevation, draw the rays ab and ce ; then ao will show the ex-

tent of the shadow on the first riser, as at *A*; *fg* will determine the shadow on the second riser, as at *B*; *cd* gives the amount of shadow on the first tread, as at *C*, and *hi* that on the second tread, as at *D*; which completes the shadow of

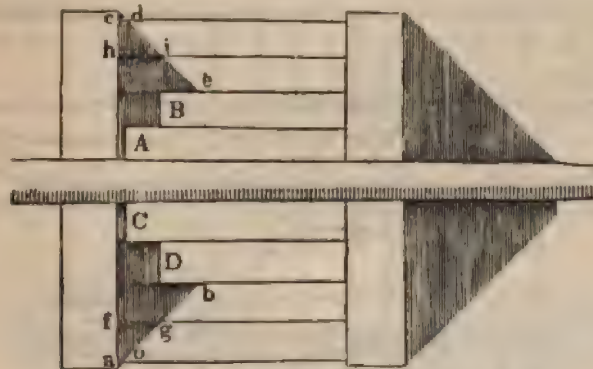


FIG. 442.

the left-hand pedestal, both on the plan and elevation. A mere inspection of the figure will be sufficient to show how the shadow of the right-hand pedestal is obtained.

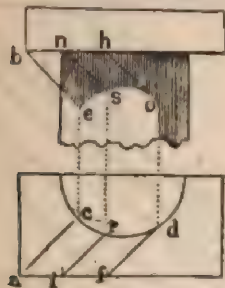


FIG. 443.



FIG. 444.

581.—To Find the Shadow Thrown on a Column by a Square Abacus.—From *a* and *b* (Fig. 443) draw the rays *ac* and *be*, and from *c* erect the perpendicular *ce*; tangential to the curve at *d* draw the ray *df*, and from *h*, corresponding to *f* in the plan, draw the ray *ho*; take any point between *a* and *f*, as *i*, and from this, as also from a corresponding point

n, draw the rays *ir* and *ns*; from *r* and from *d* erect the perpendiculars *rs* and *do*; through the points *e*, *s*, and *o* trace the curve as shown in the figure: then the extent of the shadow will be defined.

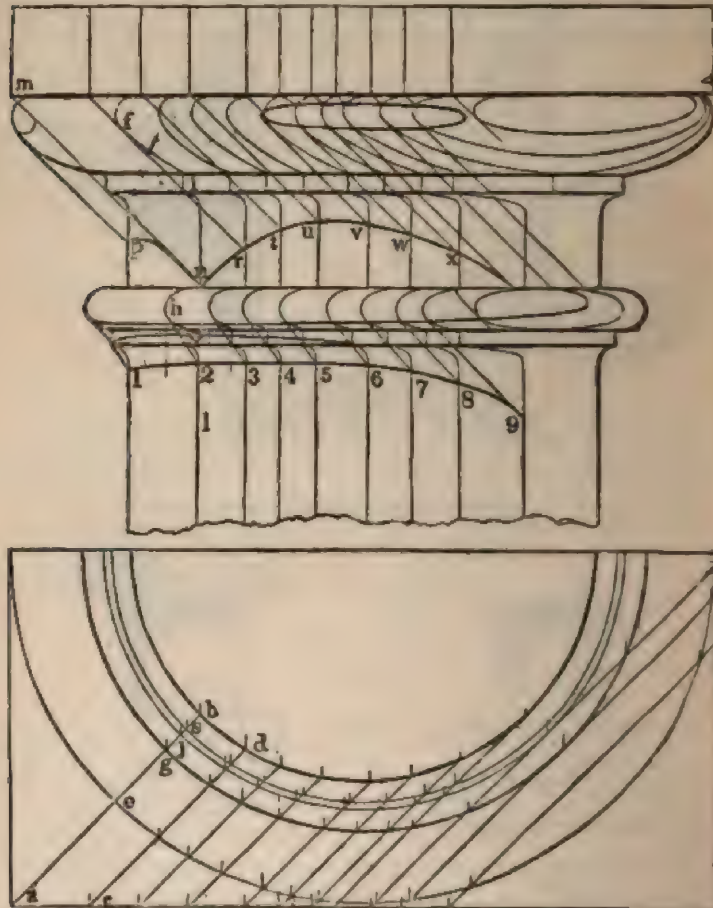


FIG. 445.

582.—To Find the Shadow Thrown on a Column by a Circular Abacus.—This is so nearly like the last example that no explanation will be necessary, farther than a reference to the preceding article.

583.—To Find the Shadows on the Capital of a Column.

--This may be done according to the principles explained in the examples already given; a quicker way of doing it, however, is as follows: if we take into consideration one ray of light in connection with all those perpendicularly under and over it, it is evident that these several rays would form a vertical plane, standing at an angle of 45 degrees with the face of the elevation. Now we may suppose the column to be *sliced*, so to speak, with planes of this nature—cutting it in the lines *a b*, *c d*, etc. (*Fig. 445*), and, in the ele-

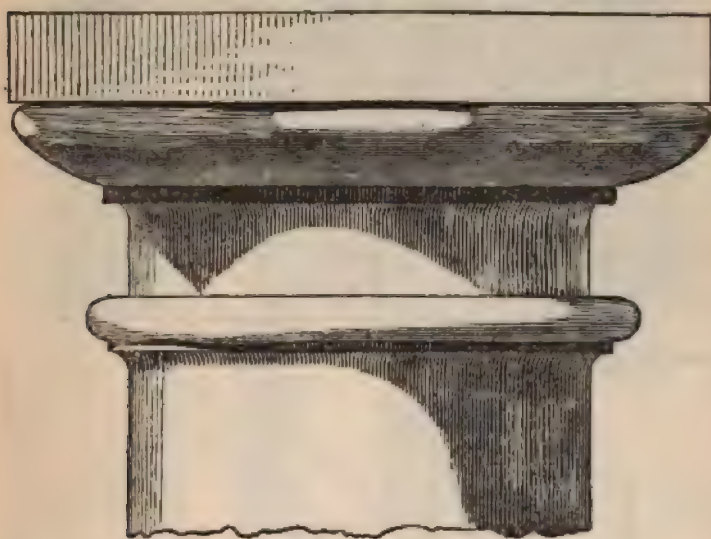


FIG. 446.

vation, find by squaring up from the plan, the *lines of section* which these planes would make thereupon. For instance: in finding upon the elevation the line of section *a b*, the plane cuts the ovolo at *e*, and therefore *f* will be the corresponding point upon the elevation; *h* corresponds with *g*, *i* with *j*, *o* with *s*, and *l* with *b*. Now, to find the shadows upon this line of section, cast from *m* the ray *mn*, from *h* the ray *ho*, etc.; then that part of the section indicated by the letters *m f i n*, and that part also between *h* and *o* will be under

shadow. By an inspection of the figure, it will be seen that the same process is applied to each line of section, and in that way the points *p*, *r*, *t*, *u*, *v*, *w*, *x*, as also 1, 2, 3, etc., are

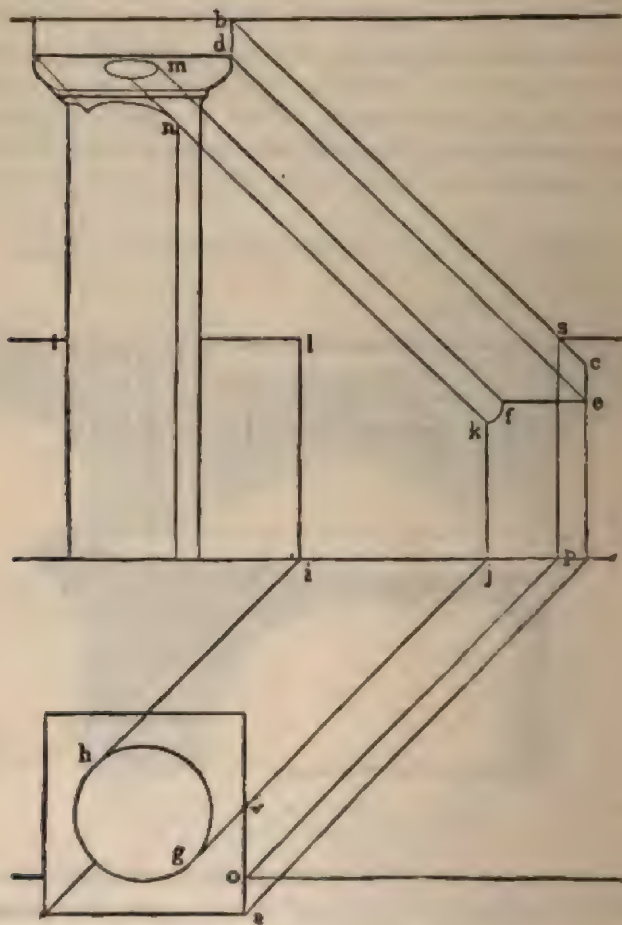


FIG. 447.

successively found, and the lines of shadow traced through them.

Fig. 446 is an example of the same capital with all the shadows finished in accordance with the lines obtained on *Fig. 445*.

584.—To Find the Shadow Thrown on a Vertical Wall by a Column and Entablature Standing in Advance of said Wall.—Cast rays from *a* and *b* (*Fig. 447*), and find the point *c* as in the previous examples; from *d* draw the ray *de*, and from *e* the horizontal line *ef*; tangential to the curve at *g* and *h* draw the rays *gj* and *hi*, and from *i* and *j* erect the perpendiculars *il* and *jk*; from *m* and *n* draw the rays *mf* and *nk*, and trace the curve between *k* and *f*; cast a ray from *o* to *p*, a vertical line from *p* to *s*, and through *s* draw the horizontal line *st*; the shadow as required will then be completed.

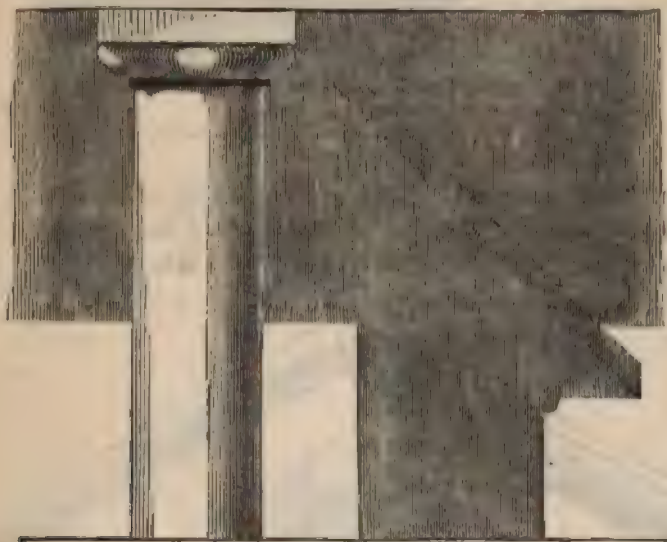


FIG. 448.

Fig. 448 is an example of the same kind as the last, with all the shadows filled in, according to the lines obtained in the preceding figure.

585.—Shadows on a Cornice.—*Figs. 449* and *450* are examples of the Tuscan cornice. The manner of obtaining the shadows is evident.

586.—Reflected Light.—In shading, the finish and life of an object depend much on reflected light. This is seen to advantage in *Fig. 446*, and on the column in *Fig. 448*. Re-

flected rays are thrown in a direction exactly the reverse of direct rays; therefore, on that part of an object which is subject to reflected light, the shadows are reversed. The

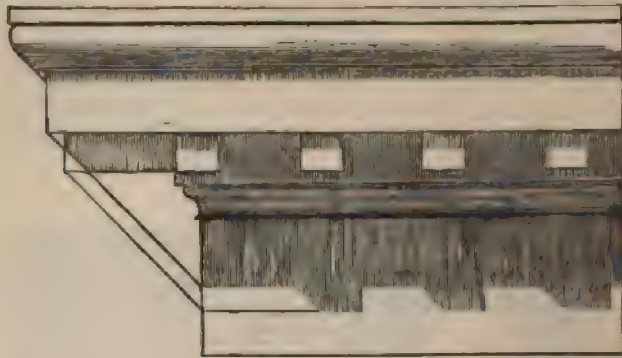


FIG. 449.

fillet of the ovolo in *Fig. 446* is an example of this. On the right hand side of the column, the face of the fillet is much darker than the cove directly under it. The reason of this



FIG. 450.

is, the face of the fillet is deprived both of direct and reflected light, whereas the cove is subject to the latter. Other instances of the effect of reflected light will be seen in the other examples.

CONTENTS.

PART I.

SECTION I.—ARCHITECTURE.

Art. 1. Building defined, p. 5.—**2.** Antique Buildings ; Tower of Babel, p. 5.—**3.** Ancient Cities and Monuments, p. 6.—**4.** Architecture in Greece, p. 6.—**5.** Architecture in Rome, p. 7.—**6.** Rome and Greece, p. 8.—**7.** Architecture debased, p. 9.—**8.** The Ostrogoths, p. 9.—**9.** The Lombards, p. 10.—**10.** The Byzantine Architects, p. 10.—**11.** The Moors, p. 10.—**12.** The Architecture of England, p. 11.—**13.** Architecture Progressive, p. 12.—**14.** Architecture in Italy, p. 12.—**15.** The Renaissance, p. 13.—**16.** Styles of Architecture, p. 13.—**17.** Orders, p. 14.—**18.** The Stylobate, p. 14.—**19.** The Column, p. 14.—**20.** The Entablature, p. 14.—**21.** The Base, p. 14.—**22.** The Shaft, p. 15.—**23.** The Capital, p. 15.—**24.** The Architrave, p. 15.—**25.** The Frieze, p. 15.—**26.** The Cornice, p. 15.—**27.** The Pediment, p. 15.—**28.** The Tympanum, p. 15.—**29.** The Attic, p. 15.—**30.** Proportions in an Order, p. 15.—**31.** Grecian Styles, p. 16.—**32.** The Doric Order, p. 16.—**33.** The Intercolumniation, p. 17.—**34.** The Doric Order, p. 19.—**35.** The Ionic Order, p. 19.—**36.** The Intercolumniation, p. 20.—**37.** To Describe the Ionic Volute, p. 20.—**38.** The Corinthian Order, p. 23.—**39.** Persians and Caryatides, p. 24.—**40.** Persians, p. 24.—**41.** Caryatides, p. 26.—**42.** Roman Styles, p. 26.—**43.** Grecian Orders modified by the Romans, p. 27.—**44.** The Tuscan Order, p. 30.—**45.** Egyptian Style, p. 30.—**46.** Building in General, p. 33.—**47.** Expression, p. 35.—**48.** Durability, p. 37.—**49.** Dwelling-Houses, p. 37.—**50.** Arranging the Stairs and Windows, p. 42.—**51.** Principles of Architecture, p. 44.—**52.** Arrangement, p. 44.—**53.** Ventilation, p. 45.—**54.** Stability, p. 45.—**55.** Decoration, p. 46.—**56.** Elementary Parts of a Building, p. 46.—**57.** The Foundation, p. 47.—**58.** The Column, or Pillar, p. 47.—**59.** The Wall, p. 48.—**60.** The Reticulated Walls, p. 49.—**61.** The Lintel, or Beam, p. 49.—**62.** The Arch, p. 50.—**63.** Hooke's Theory of an Arch, p. 50.—**64.** Gothic Arches, p. 51.—**65.** Arch : Definitions ; Principles, p. 52.—**66.** An Arcade, p. 52.—**67.** The Vault, p. 52.—**68.** The Dome, p. 53.—**69.** The Roof, p. 54.

SECTION II.—CONSTRUCTION.

Art. 70. Construction Essential, p. 56.—**71.** Laws of Pressure, p. 57.—**72.** Parallelogram of Forces, p. 59.—**73.** The Resolution of Forces, p. 59.—**74.** Inclination of Supports Unequal, p. 60.—**75.** The Strains Exceed the Weights, p. 61.—**76.** Minimum Thrust of Rafters, p. 62.—**77.** Practical Method of Determining Strains, p. 62.—**78.** Horizontal Thrust, p. 63.—**79.** Position of Supports, p. 65.—**80.** The Composition of Forces, p. 66.—**81.** Another Example, p. 67.—**82.** Ties and Struts, p. 68.—**83.** To Distinguish Ties from Struts, p. 69.—**84.** Another Example, p. 70.—**85.** Centre of Gravity, p. 71.—**86.** Effect of the Weight of Inclined Beams, p. 72.—**87.** Effect of Load on Beam, p. 74.—**88.** Effect on Bearings, p. 75.—**89.** Weight-Strength, p. 76.—**90.** Quality of Materials, p. 76.—**91.** Manner of Resisting, p. 77.—**92.** Strength and Stiffness, p. 78.—**93.** Experiments: Constants, p. 78.—**94.** Resistance to Compression, p. 79.—**95.** Resistance to Tension, p. 81.—**96.** Resistance to Transverse Strains, p. 83.—**97.** Resistance to Compression, p. 85.—**98.** Compression Transversely to the Fibres, p. 86.—**99.** The Limit of Weight, p. 86.—**100.** Area of Post, p. 86.—**101.** Rupture by Sliding, p. 87.—**102.** The Limit of Weight, p. 87.—**103.** Area of Surface, p. 88.—**104.** Tenons and Splices, p. 88.—**105.** Stout Posts, p. 89.—**106.** The Limit of Weight, p. 89.—**107.** Area of Post, p. 90.—**108.** Area of Round Posts, p. 90.—**109.** Slender Posts, p. 91.—**110.** The Limit of Weight, p. 91.—**111.** Diameter of the Post: when Round, p. 92.—**112.** Side of Post: when Square, p. 93.—**113.** Thickness of a Rectangular Post, p. 95.—**114.** Breadth of a Rectangular Post, p. 95.—**115.** Resistance to Tension, p. 96.—**116.** The Limit of Weight, p. 96.—**117.** Sectional Area, p. 97.—**118.** Weight of the Suspending Piece Included, p. 98.—**119.** Area of Suspending Piece, p. 99.

RESISTANCE TO TRANSVERSE STRAINS.

Art. 120. Transverse Strains: Rupture, p. 99.—**121.** Location of Mortises, p. 100.—**122.** Transverse Strains: Relation of Weight to Dimensions, p. 101.—**123.** Safe Weight: Load at Middle, p. 103.—**124.** Breadth of Beam with Safe Load, p. 104.—**125.** Depth of Beam with Safe Load, p. 104.—**126.** Safe Load at any Point, p. 105.—**127.** Breadth or Depth: Load at any Point, p. 106.—**128.** Weight Uniformly Distributed, p. 107.—**129.** Breadth or Depth: Load Uniformly Distributed, p. 108.—**130.** Load per Foot Superficial, p. 109.—**131.** Levers: Load at one End, p. 110.—**132.** Levers: Breadth or Depth, p. 111.—**133.** Deflection: Relation to Weight, p. 112.—**134.** Deflection: Relation to Dimensions, p. 112.—**135.** Deflection: Weight when at Middle, p. 114.—**136.** Deflection: Breadth or Depth, Weight at Middle, p. 114.—**137.** Deflection: When Weight is at Middle, p. 116.—**138.** Deflection: Load Uniformly Distributed, p. 116.—**139.** Deflection: Weight when Uniformly Distributed, p. 117.—**140.** Deflection: Breadth or Depth, Load Uniformly Distributed, p. 117.—**141.** Deflection: When Weight is Uniformly Distributed, p. 118.—**142.** Deflection of Lever, p. 119.—**143.** Deflection of a Lever: Load at End, p. 120.—**144.** Deflection of a Lever: Weight when at End, p. 120.—**145.** Deflection of a Lever: Breadth or Depth, Load at End,

p. 121.—**146.** Deflection of Levers: Weight Uniformly Distributed, p. 121.—**147.** Deflection of Levers with Uniformly Distributed Load, p. 122.—**148.** Deflection of Levers: Weight when Uniformly Distributed, p. 122.—**149.** Deflection of Levers: Breadth or Depth, Load Uniformly Distributed, p. 122.

CONSTRUCTION IN GENERAL.

Art. 150. Construction: Object Clearly Defined, p. 123.—**151.** Floors Described, p. 124.—**152.** Floor-Beams, p. 125.—**153.** Floor-Beams for Dwellings, p. 127.—**154.** Floor-Beams for First-Class Stores, p. 128.—**155.** Floor-Beams: Distance from Centres, p. 129.—**156.** Framed Openings for Chimneys and Stairs, p. 130.—**157.** Breadth of Headers, p. 130.—**158.** Breadth of Carriage-Beams, p. 132.—**159.** Breadth of Carriage-Beams Carrying Two Sets of Tail-Beams, p. 134.—**160.** Breadth of Carriage-Beam with Well-Hole at Middle, p. 136.—**161.** Cross-Bridging, or Herring-Bone Bridging, p. 137.—**162.** Bridging: Value to Resist Concentrated Loads, p. 137.—**163.** Girders, p. 140.—**164.** Girders: Dimensions, p. 141.

FIRE-PROOF TIMBER FLOORS.

Art. 165. Solid Timber Floors, p. 143.—**166.** Solid Timber Floors for Dwellings and Assembly-Rooms, p. 143.—**167.** Solid Timber Floors for First-Class Stores, p. 144.—**168.** Rolled-Iron Beams, p. 145.—**169.** Rolled-Iron Beams: Dimensions; Weight at Middle, p. 146.—**170.** Rolled-Iron Beams: Deflection when Weight is at Middle, p. 147.—**171.** Rolled-Iron Beams: Weight when at Middle, p. 148.—**172.** Rolled-Iron Beams: Weight at any Point, p. 148.—**173.** Rolled-Iron Beams: Dimensions; Weight at any Point, p. 149.—**174.** Rolled-Iron Beams: Dimensions; Weight Uniformly Distributed, p. 149.—**175.** Rolled-Iron Beams: Deflection; Weight Uniformly Distributed, p. 150.—**176.** Rolled-Iron Beams: Weight when Uniformly Distributed, p. 151.—**177.** Rolled-Iron Beams: Floors of Dwellings or Assembly-Rooms, p. 151.—**178.** Rolled-Iron Beams: Floors of First-Class Stores, p. 152.—**179.** Floor-Arches: General Considerations, p. 153.—**180.** Floor-Arches: Tie-Rods; Dwellings, p. 153.—**181.** Floor-Arches: Tie-Rods; First-Class Stores, p. 153.

TUBULAR IRON GIRDERS.

Art. 182. Tubular Iron Girders: Description, p. 154.—**183.** Tubular Iron Girders: Area of Flanges; Load at Middle, p. 154.—**184.** Tubular Iron Girders: Area of Flanges; Load at any Point, p. 155.—**185.** Tubular Iron Girders: Area of Flanges; Load Uniformly Distributed, p. 156.—**186.** Tubular Iron Girders: Shearing Strain, p. 157.—**187.** Tubular Iron Girders: Thickness of Web, p. 158.—**188.** Tubular Iron Girders for Floors of Dwellings, Assembly-Rooms, and Office Buildings, p. 159.—**189.** Tubular Iron Girders for Floors of First-Class Stores, p. 160.

CAST-IRON GIRDERS.

Art. 190. Cast-Iron Girders: Inferior, p. 161.—**191.** Cast-Iron Girder: Load at Middle, p. 161.—**192.** Cast-Iron Girder: Load Uniformly Distributed,

p. 163.—**193.** Cast-Iron Bowstring Girder, p. 163.—**194.** Substitute for the Bowstring Girder, p. 163.

FRAMED GIRDERS.

Art. 195. Graphic Representation of Strains, p. 165.—**196.** Framed Girders, p. 166.—**197.** Framed Girder and Diagram of Forces, p. 167.—**198.** Framed Girders : Load on Both Chords, p. 171.—**199.** Framed Girders : Dimensions of Parts, p. 173.

PARTITIONS.

Art. 200. Partitions, p. 174.—**201.** Examples of Partitions, p. 175.

ROOFS.

Art. 202. Roofs, p. 178.—**203.** Comparison of Roof-Trusses, p. 178.—**204.** Force Diagram : Load upon Each Support, p. 179.—**205.** Force Diagram for Truss in *Fig.* 59, p. 179.—**206.** Force Diagram for Truss in *Fig.* 60, p. 180.—**207.** Force Diagram for Truss in *Fig.* 61, p. 181.—**208.** Force Diagram for Truss in *Fig.* 63, p. 183.—**209.** Force Diagram for Truss in *Fig.* 64, p. 184.—**210.** Force Diagram for Truss in *Fig.* 65, p. 185.—**211.** Force Diagram for Truss in *Fig.* 66, p. 186.—**212.** Roof-Truss : Effect of Elevating the Tie-Beam, p. 187.—**213.** Planning a Roof, p. 188.—**214.** Load upon Roof-Truss, p. 189.—**215.** Load on Roof per Superficial Foot, p. 189.—**216.** Load upon Tie-Beam, p. 190.—**217.** Roof Weights in Detail, p. 191.—**218.** Load per Foot Horizontal, p. 192.—**219.** Weight of Truss, p. 192.—**220.** Weight of Snow on Roofs, p. 193.—**221.** Effect of Wind on Roofs, p. 193.—**222.** Total Load per Foot Horizontal, p. 197.—**223.** Strains in Roof Timbers Computed, p. 198.—**224.** Strains in Roof Timbers Shown Geometrically, p. 199.—**225.** Application of the Geometrical System of Strains, p. 202.—**226.** Roof Timbers : the Tie-Beam, p. 204.—**227.** The Rafter, p. 205.—**228.** The Braces, p. 208.—**229.** The Suspension Rod, p. 210.—**230.** Roof-Beams, Jack-Rafters, and Purlins, p. 211.—**231.** Five Examples of Roofs, p. 212.—**232.** Roof-Truss with Elevated Tie-Beam, p. 214.—**233.** Hip-Roofs : Lines and Bevels, p. 215.—**234.** The Backing of the Hip-Rafter, p. 216.

DOMES.

Art. 235. Domes, p. 216.—**236.** Ribbed Dome, p. 217.—**237.** Domes : Curve of Equilibrium, p. 218.—**238.** Cubic Parabola Computed, p. 219.—**239.** Small Domes over Stairways, p. 220.—**240.** Covering for a Spherical Dome, p. 221.—**241.** Polygonal Dome : Form of Angle-Rib, p. 223.

BRIDGES.

Art. 242. Bridges, p. 223.—**243.** Bridges : Built-Rib, p. 224.—**244.** Bridges : Framed Rib, p. 226.—**245.** Bridges : Roadway, p. 227.—**246.** Bridges : Abutments, p. 227.—**247.** Centres for Stone Bridges, p. 229.—**248.** Arch Stones : Joints, p. 223.

JOINTS.

Art. 249. Timber Joints, p. 234.

SECTION III.—STAIRS.

Art. 250. Stairs: General Requirements, p. 240.—**251.** The Grade of Stairs, p. 241.—**252.** Pitch-Board: Relation of Rise to Tread, p. 242.—**253.** Dimensions of the Pitch-Board, p. 247.—**254.** The String of a Stairs, p. 247.—**255.** Step and Riser Connection, p. 248.

PLATFORM STAIRS

Art. 256. Platform Stairs: the Cylinder, p. 248.—**257.** Form of Lower Edge of Cylinder, p. 249.—**258.** Position of the Balusters, p. 250.—**259.** Winding Stairs, p. 251.—**260.** Regular Winding Stairs, p. 251.—**261.** Winding Stairs: Shape and Position of Timbers, p. 252.—**262.** Winding Stairs with Flyers: Grade of Front String, p. 253.

HAND-RAILING.

Art. 263. Hand-Railing for Stairs, p. 256.—**264.** Hand-Railing: Definitions; Planes and Solids, p. 257.—**265.** Hand-Railing: Preliminary Considerations, p. 258.—**266.** A Prism Cut by an Oblique Plane, p. 259.—**267.** Form of Top of Prism, p. 259.—**268.** Face-Mould for Hand-Railing of Platform Stairs, p. 264.—**269.** More Simple Method for Hand-Rail to Platform Stairs, p. 267.—**270.** Hand-Railing for a Larger Cylinder, p. 271.—**271.** Face-Mould without Canting the Plank, p. 272.—**272.** Railing for Platform Stairs where the Rake meets the Level, p. 272.—**273.** Application of Face-Moulds to Plank, p. 273.—**274.** Face-Moulds for Moulded Rails upon Platform Stairs, p. 274.—**275.** Application of Face-Moulds to Plank, p. 275.—**276.** Hand-Railing for Circular Stairs, p. 278.—**277.** Face-Moulds for Circular Stairs, p. 282.—**278.** Face-Moulds, for Circular Stairs, p. 285.—**279.** Face-Moulds for Circular Stairs, again, p. 287.—**280.** Hand-Railing for Winding Stairs, p. 289.—**281.** Face-Moulds for Winding Stairs, p. 290.—**282.** Face-Moulds for Winding Stairs, again, p. 293.—**283.** Face-Moulds: Test of Accuracy, p. 295.—**284.** Application of the Face-Mould, p. 297.—**285.** Face-Mould Curves are Elliptical, p. 301.—**286.** Face-Moulds for Round Rails, p. 303.—**287.** Position of the Butt Joint, p. 303.—**288.** Scrolls for Hand-Rails: General Rule for Size and Position of the Regulating Square, p. 308.—**289.** Centres in Regulating Square, p. 308.—**290.** Scroll for Hand-Rail Over Curtail Step, p. 309.—**291.** Scroll for Curtail Step, p. 310.—**292.** Position of Balusters Under Scroll, p. 310.—**293.** Falling-Mould for Raking Part of Scroll, p. 310.—**294.** Face-Mould for the Scroll, p. 311.—**295.** Form of Newel-Cap from a Section of the Rail, p. 312.—**296.** Boring for Balusters in a Round Rail before it is Rounded, p. 313.

SPRAYED WORK.

Art. 297. The Bevels in Sprayed Work, p. 314.

SECTION IV.—DOORS AND WINDOWS.

DOORS.

Art. 298. General Requirements, p. 315.—**299.** The Proportion between Width and Height, p. 315.—**300.** Panels, p. 316.—**301.** Trimings, p. 317.—**302.** Hanging Doors, p. 317.

WINDOWS.

Art. 303. Requirements for Light, p. 317.—**304.** Window Frames, p. 318.—**305.** Inside Shutters, p. 319.—**306.** Proportion: Width and Height, p. 319.—**307.** Circular Heads, p. 320.—**308.** Form of Soffit for Circular Window Heads, p. 321.

SECTION V.—MOULDINGS AND CORNICES.

MOULDINGS.

Art. 309. Mouldings, p. 323.—**310.** Characteristics of Mouldings, p. 324.—**311.** A Profile, p. 326.—**312.** The Grecian Torus and Scotia, p. 326.—**313.** The Grecian Echinus, p. 327.—**314.** The Grecian Cavetto, p. 327.—**315.** The Grecian Cyma-Recta, p. 327.—**316.** The Grecian Cyma-Reversa, p. 328.—**317.** Roman Mouldings, p. 329.—**318.** Modern Mouldings, p. 331.

CORNICES.

Art. 319. Designs for Cornices, p. 335.—**320.** Eave Cornices Proportioned to Height of Building, p. 335.—**321.** Cornice Proportioned to a given Cornice, p. 342.—**322.** Angle Bracket in a Built Cornice, p. 343.—**323.** Raking Mouldings Matched with Level Returns, p. 344.

PART II.

SECTION VI.—GEOMETRY.

Art. 324. Mathematics Essential, p. 347.—**325.** Elementary Geometry, p. 347.—**326.** Definition—Right Angles, p. 348.—**327.** Definition—Degrees in a Circle, p. 348.—**328.** Definition—Measure of an Angle, p. 348.—**329.** Corollary—Degrees in a Right Angle, p. 348.—**330.** Definition—Equal Angles, p. 349.—**331.** Axiom—Equal Angles, p. 349.—**332.** Definition—Obtuse and Acute Angles, p. 349.—**333.** Axiom—Right Angles, p. 349.—**334.** Corollary—Two Right Angles, p. 349.—**335.** Corollary—Four Right Angles, p. 349.—**336.** Proposition—Equal Angles, p. 350.—**337.** Proposition—Equal Triangles, p. 350.—**338.** Proposition—Angles in Isosceles Triangle, p. 351.—**339.** Proposition—Diagonal of Parallelogram, p. 351.—**340.** Proposition—Equal Parallelograms, p. 352.—**341.** Proposition—Parallelograms Standing on the Same Base, p. 352.—**342.** Corollary—Parallelogram and Triangle, p. 353.—**343.** Proposition—Triangle Equal to Quadriangle, p. 353.—**344.** Proposition—Opposite Angles Equal, p. 354.—**345.** Proposition—Three Angles of Triangle Equal to Two Right Angles, p. 354.—**346.** Corollary—Right Angle in Triangle, p. 354.—**347.** Corollary—Half a Right

Angle, p. 355.—**348.** Corollary—Right Angle in a Triangle, p. 355.—**349.** Corollary—Two Angles Equal to Right Angle, p. 355.—**350.** Corollary—Two Thirds of a Right Angle, p. 355.—**351.** Corollary—Equilateral Triangle, p. 355.—**352.** Proposition—Right Angle in Semi-circle, p. 355.—**353.** Proposition—The Square of the Hypotenuse Equal to the Squares of the Sides, p. 355.—**354.** Proposition—Equilateral Octagon, p. 357.—**355.** Proposition—Angle at the Circumference of a Circle, p. 358.—**356.** Proposition—Equal Chords give Equal Angles, p. 358.—**357.** Corollary of Equal Chords, p. 359.—**358.** Proposition—Angle Formed by a Chord and Tangent, p. 359.—**359.** Proposition—Areas of Parallelograms, p. 360.—**360.** Proposition—Triangles of Equal Altitude, p. 361.—**361.** Proposition—Homologous Triangles, p. 362.—**362.** Proposition—Parallelograms of Chords, p. 363.—**363.** Proposition—Sides of Quadrangle, p. 364.

SECTION VII.—RATIO, OR PROPORTION.

Art. 364. Merchandise, p. 366.—**365.** The Rule of Three, p. 366.—**366.** Couples: Antecedent, Consequent, p. 367.—**367.** Equal Couples: an Equation, p. 367.—**368.** Equality of Ratios, p. 367.—**369.** Equals Multiplied by Equals Give Equals, p. 367.—**370.** Multiplying an Equation, p. 368.—**371.** Multiplying and Dividing one Member of an Equation: Cancelling, p. 368.—**372.** Transferring a Factor, p. 369.—**373.** Equality of Product: Means and Extremes, p. 369.—**374.** Homologous Triangles Proportionate, p. 370.—**375.** The Steelyard, p. 371.—**376.** The Lever Exemplified by the Steelyard, p. 372.—**377.** The Lever Principle Demonstrated, p. 375.—**378.** Any One of Four Proportionals may be Found, p. 377.

SECTION VIII.—FRACTIONS.

Art. 379. A Fraction Defined, p. 378.—**380.** Graphical Representation of Fractions: Effect of Multiplication, p. 378.—**381.** Form of Fraction Changed by Division, p. 380.—**382.** Improper Fractions, p. 380.—**383.** Reduction of Mixed Numbers to Fractions, p. 381.—**384.** Division Indicated by the Factors put as a Fraction, p. 381.—**385.** Addition of Fractions having Like Denominators, p. 382.—**386.** Subtraction of Fractions of Like Denominators, p. 383.—**387.** Dissimilar Denominators Equalized, p. 383.—**388.** Reduction of Fractions to their Lowest Terms, p. 384.—**389.** Least Common Denominator, p. 384.—**390.** Least Common Denominator Again, p. 385.—**391.** Fractions Multiplied Graphically, p. 386.—**392.** Fractions Multiplied Graphically Again, p. 387.—**393.** Rule for Multiplication of Fractions, and Example, p. 387.—**394.** Fractions Divided Graphically, p. 388.—**395.** Rule for Division of Fractions, p. 389.

SECTION IX.—ALGEBRA.

Art. 396. Algebra Defined, p. 392.—**397.** Example: Application, p. 393.—**398.** Algebra Useful in Constructing Rules, p. 393.—**399.** Algebraic Rules are General, p. 394.—**400.** Symbols Chosen at Pleasure, p. 395.—**401.** Arithmetical Processes Indicated by Signs, p. 396.—**402.** Examples in Addi-

tion and Subtraction : Cancelling, p. 398.—**403.** Transferring a Symbol to the Opposite Member, p. 399.—**404.** Signs of Symbols to be Changed when they are to be Subtracted, p. 400.—**405.** Algebraic Fractions, Added and Subtracted, p. 403.—**406.** The Least Common Denominator, p. 404.—**407.** Algebraic Fractions Subtracted, p. 405.—**408.** Graphical Representation of Multiplication, p. 408.—**409.** Graphical Multiplication : Three Factors, p. 408.—**410.** Graphic Representation : Two and Three Factors, p. 409.—**411.** Graphical Multiplication of a Binomial, p. 409.—**412.** Graphical Squaring of a Binomial, p. 410.—**413.** Graphical Squaring of the Difference of Two Factors, p. 412.—**414.** Graphical Product of the Sum and Difference of Two Quantities, p. 413.—**415.** Plus and Minus Signs in Multiplication, p. 415.—**416.** Equality of Squares on Hypotenuse and Sides of Right-Angled Triangle, p. 416.—**417.** Division the Reverse of Multiplication, p. 418.—**418.** Division : Statement of Quotient, p. 419.—**419.** Division : Reduction, p. 419.—**420.** Proportionals : Analysis, p. 421.—**421.** Raising a Quantity to any Power, p. 423.—**422.** Quantities with Negative Exponents, p. 423.—**423.** Addition and Subtraction of Exponential Quantities, p. 424.—**424.** Multiplication of Exponential Quantities, p. 424.—**425.** Division of Exponential Quantities, p. 424.—**426.** Extraction of Radicals, p. 425.—**427.** Logarithms, p. 425.—**428.** Completing the Square of a Binomial, p. 429.

PROGRESSION.

Art. 429. Arithmetical Progression, p. 432.—**430.** Geometrical Progression, p. 435.

SECTION X.—POLYGONS.

Art. 431. Relation of Sum and Difference of Two Lines, p. 439.—**432.** Perpendicular, in Triangle of Known Sides, p. 440.—**433.** Trigon : Radius of Circumscribed and Inscribed Circles : Area, p. 443.—**434.** Tetragon : Radius of Circumscribed and Inscribed Circles : Area, p. 446.—**435.** Hexagon : Radius of Circumscribed and Inscribed Circles : Area, p. 447.—**436.** Octagon : Radius of Circumscribed and Inscribed Circles : Area, p. 449.—**437.** Dodecagon : Radius of Circumscribed and Inscribed Circles : Area, p. 452.—**438.** Hecadecagon : Radius of Circumscribed and Inscribed Circles : Area, p. 455.—**439.** Polygons : Radius of Circumscribed and Inscribed Circles : Area, p. 460.—**440.** Polygons : Their Angles, p. 462.—**441.** Pentagon : Radius of the Circumscribed and Inscribed Circles : Area, p. 463.—**442.** Polygons : Table of Constant Multipliers, p. 465.

SECTION XI.—THE CIRCLE.

Art. 443. Circles : Diameter and Perpendicular : Mean Proportional, p. 468.—**444.** Circle : Radius from Given Chord and Versed Sine, p. 469.—**445.** Circle : Segment from Ordinates, p. 470.—**446.** Circle : Relation of Diameter to Circumference, p. 472.—**447.** Circle : Length of an Arc, p. 473.—**448.** Circle : Area, p. 475.—**449.** Circle : Area of a Sector, p. 476.—**450.** Circle : Area of a Segment, p. 477.

SECTION XII.—THE ELLIPSE.

Art. 451. Ellipse: Definitions, p. 481.—**452.** Ellipse: Equations to the Curve, p. 482.—**453.** Ellipse: Relation of Axis to Abscissas of Axes, p. 484.—**454.** Ellipse: Relation of Parameter and Axes, p. 485.—**455.** Ellipse: Relation of Tangent to the Axes, p. 485.—**456.** Ellipse: Relation of Tangent with the Foci, p. 487.—**457.** Ellipse: Relation of Axes to Conjugate Diameters, p. 487.—**458.** Ellipse: Area, p. 488.—**459.** Ellipse: Practical Suggestions, p. 489.

SECTION XIII.—THE PARABOLA.

Art. 460. Parabola: Definitions, p. 492.—**461.** Parabola: Equation to the Curve, p. 493.—**462.** Parabola: Tangent, p. 493.—**463.** Parabola: Subtangent, p. 496.—**464.** Parabola: Normal and Subnormal, p. 496.—**465.** Parabola: Diameters, p. 497.—**466.** Parabola: Elements, p. 499.—**467.** Parabola: Described Mechanically, p. 500.—**468.** Parabola: Described from Points, p. 502.—**469.** Parabola: Described from Arcs, p. 503.—**470.** Parabola: Described from Ordinates, p. 504.—**471.** Parabola: Described from Diameters, p. 507.—**472.** Parabola: Area, p. 509.

SECTION XIV.—TRIGONOMETRY.

Art. 473. Right-Angled Triangles: The Sides, p. 510.—**474.** Right-Angled Triangles: Trigonometrical Tables, p. 512.—**475.** Right-Angled Triangles: Trigonometrical Value of Sides, p. 516.—**476.** Oblique-Angled Triangles: Sines and Sides, p. 519.—**477.** Oblique-Angled Triangles: First Class, p. 520.—**478.** Oblique-Angled Triangles: Second Class, p. 522.—**479.** Oblique-Angled Triangles: Sum and Difference of Two Angles, p. 523.—**480.** Oblique-Angled Triangles: Third Class, p. 526.—**481.** Oblique-Angled Triangles: Fourth Class, p. 528.—**482.** Trigonometrical Formulæ: Right-Angled Triangles, p. 530.—**483.** Trigonometrical Formulæ: First Class, Oblique, p. 531.—**484.** Trigonometrical Formulæ: Second Class, Oblique, p. 532.—**485.** Trigonometrical Formulæ: Third Class, Oblique, p. 534.—**486.** Trigonometrical Formulæ: Fourth Class, Oblique, p. 534.

SECTION XV.—DRAWING

Art. 487. General Remarks, p. 536.—**488.** Articles Required, p. 536.—**489.** The Drawing-Board, p. 536.—**490.** Drawing-Paper, p. 537.—**491.** To Secure the Paper to the Board, p. 537.—**492.** The T-Square, p. 539.—**493.** The Set-Square, p. 539.—**494.** The Rulers, p. 540.—**495.** The Instruments, p. 540.—**496.** The Scale of Equal Parts, p. 540.—**497.** The Use of the Set-Square, p. 541.—**498.** Directions for Drawing, p. 542.

SECTION XVI.—PRACTICAL GEOMETRY.

Art. 499. Definitions of Various Terms, p. 544.

PROBLEMS.

RIGHT LINES AND ANGLES.

Art. 500. To Bisect a Line, p. 549.—**501.** To Erect a Perpendicular, p. 550.—**502.** To let Fall a Perpendicular, p. 551.—**503.** To Erect a Perpendicular at the End of a Line, p. 551.—**504.** To let Fall a Perpendicular near the End of a Line, p. 553.—**505.** To Make an Angle Equal to a Given Angle, p. 553.—**506.** To Bisect an Angle, p. 554.—**507.** To Trisect a Right Angle, p. 554.—**508.** Through a Given Point to Draw a Line Parallel to a Given Line, p. 555.—**509.** To Divide a Given Line into any Number of Equal Parts, p. 555.

THE CIRCLE.

Art. 510. To Find the Centre of a Circle, p. 556.—**511.** At a Given Point in a Circle to Draw a Tangent thereto, p. 557.—**512.** The Same, without making use of the Centre of the Circle, p. 557.—**513.** A Circle and a Tangent Given, to Find the Point of Contact, p. 558.—**514.** Through any Three Points not in a Straight Line to Draw a Circle, p. 559.—**515.** Three Points not in a Straight Line being Given, to Find a Fourth that Shall, with the Three, Lie in the Circumference of a Circle, p. 559.—**516.** To Describe a Segment of a Circle by a Set-Triangle, p. 560.—**517.** To Find the Radius of an Arc of a Circle when the Chord and Versed Sine are Given, p. 561.—**518.** To Find the Versed Sine of an Arc of a Circle when the Radius and Chord are Given, p. 561.—**519.** To Describe the Segment of a Circle by Intersection of Lines, p. 562.—**520.** Ordinates, p. 563.—**521.** In a Given Angle to Describe a Tanged Curve, p. 565.—**522.** To Describe a Circle within any Given Triangle, so that the Sides of the Triangle shall be Tangential, p. 566.—**523.** About a Given Circle to Describe an Equilateral Triangle, p. 566.—**524.** To Find a Right Line nearly Equal to the Circumference of a Circle, p. 566.

POLYGONS, ETC.

Art. 525. Upon a Given Line to Construct an Equilateral Triangle, p. 568.—**526.** To Describe an Equilateral Rectangle, or Square, p. 568.—**527.** Within a Given Circle to Inscribe an Equilateral Triangle, Hexagon, or Dodecagon, p. 569.—**528.** Within a Square to Inscribe an Octagon, p. 570.—**529.** To Find the Side of a Buttressed Octagon, p. 571.—**530.** Within a Given Circle to Inscribe any Regular Polygon, p. 572.—**531.** Upon a Given Line to Describe any Regular Polygon, p. 573.—**532.** To Construct a Triangle whose Sides shall be severally Equal to Three Given Lines, p. 575.—**533.** To Construct a Figure Equal to a Given Right-lined Figure, p. 575.—**534.** To Make a Parallelogram Equal to a Given Triangle, p. 576.—**535.** A Parallelogram being Given, to Construct Another Equal to it, and Having a Side Equal to a

Given Line, p. 576.—**536**. To Make a Square Equal to two or more Given Squares, p. 577.—**537**. To Make a Circle Equal to two Given Circles, p. 580.—**538**. To Construct a Square Equal to a Given Rectangle, p. 581.—**539**. To Form a Square Equal to a Given Triangle, p. 582.—**540**. Two Right Lines being Given, to Find a Third Proportional thereto, p. 582.—**541**. Three Right Lines being Given, to Find a Fourth Proportional thereto, p. 583.—**542**. A Line with Certain Divisions being Given, to Divide Another, Longer or Shorter, Given Line in the Same Proportion, p. 583.—**543**. Between Two Given Right Lines to Find a Mean Proportional, p. 584.

CONIC SECTIONS.

Art. 544. Definitions, p. 584.—**545**. To Find the Axes of the Ellipsis, p. 585.—**546**. To Find the Axis and Base of the Parabola, p. 585.—**547**. To Find the Height, Base, and Transverse Axis of an Hyperbola, p. 585.—**548**. The Axes being Given, to Find the Foci, and to Describe an Ellipsis with a String, p. 586.—**549**. The Axes being Given, to Describe an Ellipsis with a Trammel, p. 586.—**550**. To Describe an Ellipsis by Ordinates, p. 588.—**551**. To Describe an Ellipsis by Intersection of Lines, p. 588.—**552**. To Describe an Ellipsis by Intersecting Arcs, p. 590.—**553**. To Describe a Figure Nearly in the Shape of an Ellipsis by a Pair of Compasses, p. 591.—**554**. To Draw an Oval in the Proportion Seven by Nine, p. 591.—**555**. To Draw a Tangent to an Ellipsis, p. 592.—**556**. An Ellipsis with a Tangent Given, to Detect the Point of Contact, p. 593.—**557**. A Diameter of an Ellipsis Given, to Find its Conjugate, p. 593.—**558**. Any Diameter and its Conjugate being Given, to Ascertain the Two Axes, and thence to Describe the Ellipsis, p. 593.—**559**. To Describe an Ellipsis, whence Axes shall be Proportionate to the Axes of a Larger or Smaller Given One, p. 594.—**560**. To Describe a Parabola by Intersection of Lines, p. 594.—**561**. To Describe an Hyperbola by Intersection of Lines, p. 595.

SECTION XVII.—SHADOWS.

Art. 562. The Art of Drawing, p. 596.—**563**. The Inclination of the Line of Shadow, p. 596.—**564**. To Find the Line of Shadow on Mouldings and other Horizontally Straight Projections, p. 597.—**565**. To Find the Line of Shadow Cast by a Shelf, p. 598.—**566**. To Find the Shadow Cast by a Shelf which is Wider at one End than at the Other, p. 599.—**567**. To Find the Shadow of a Shelf having one End Acute or Obtuse Angled, p. 600.—**568**. To Find the Shadow Cast by an Inclined Shelf, p. 600.—**569**. To Find the Shadow Cast by a Shelf inclined in its Vertical Section either Upward or Downward, p. 601.—**570**. To Find the Shadow of a Shelf having its Front Edge or End Curved on the Plan, p. 602.—**571**. To Find the Shadow of a Shelf Curved in the Elevation, p. 602.—**572**. To Find the Shadow Cast upon a Cylindrical Wall by a Projection of any Kind, p. 603.—**573**. To Find the Shadow Cast by a Shelf upon an Inclined Wall, p. 603.—**574**. To Find the Shadow of a Projecting Horizontal Beam, p. 604.—**575**. To Find the Shadow

in a Recess, p. 604.—**576**. To Find the Shadow in a Recess, when the Face of the Wall is Inclined, and the Back of the Recess is Vertical, p. 604.—**577**. To Find the Shadow in a Fireplace, p. 605.—**578**. To Find the Shadow of a Moulded Window-Lintel, p. 606.—**579**. To Find the Shadow Cast by the Nosing of a Step, p. 606.—**580**. To Find the Shadow Thrown by a Pedestal upon Steps, p. 606.—**581**. To Find the Shadow Thrown on a Column by a Square Abacus, p. 607.—**582**. To Find the Shadow Thrown on a Column by a Circular Abacus, p. 608.—**583**. To Find the Shadows on the Capital of a Column, p. 609.—**584**. To Find the Shadow Thrown on a Vertical Wall by a Column and Entablature Standing in Advance of said Wall, p. 611.—**585**. Shadows on a Cornice, p. 611.—**586**. Reflected Light, p. 611.

AMERICAN HOUSE CARPENTER.

APPENDIX.

CONTENTS.

	PAGE
GLOSSARY.....	687
TABLE OF SQUARES, CUBES, AND ROOTS.....	698
RULES FOR THE REDUCTION OF DECIMALS.....	647
TABLE OF CIRCLES.....	649
TABLE SHOWING THE CAPACITY OF WELLS, CISTERNS, ETC.....	653
TABLE OF THE WEIGHTS OF MATERIALS.....	654

GLOSSARY.

Terms not found here can be found in the lists of definitions in other parts of this book, or in common dictionaries.

- Abacus.**—The uppermost member of a capital.
- Abattoir.**—A slaughter-house.
- Abbey.**—The residence of an abbot or abbess.
- Abutment.**—That part of a pier from which the arch springs.
- Acanthus.**—A plant called in English *bear's-breech*. Its leaves are employed for decorating the Corinthian and the Composite capitals.
- Acropolis.**—The highest part of a city ; generally the citadel.
- Acroteria.**—The small pedestals placed on the extremities and apex of a pediment, originally intended as a base for sculpture.
- Asie.**—Passage to and from the pews of a church. In Gothic architecture, the lean-to wings on the sides of the *nave*.
- Alcove.**—Part of a chamber separated by an *estrade*, or partition of columns. Recess with seats, etc., in gardens.
- Altar.**—A pedestal whereon sacrifice was offered. In modern churches, the area within the railing in front of the pulpit.
- Alto-relievo.**—High relief ; sculpture projecting from a surface so as to appear nearly isolated.
- Amphitheatre.**—A double theatre, employed by the ancients for the exhibition of gladiatorial fights and other shows.
- Ancones.**—Trusses employed as an apparent support to a cornice upon the flanks of the architrave.
- Annulet.**—A small square moulding used to separate others ; the fillets in the Doric capital under the ovolo, and those which separate the flutings of columns, are known by this term.
- Ante.**—A pilaster attached to a wall.
- Apiary.**—A place for keeping beehives.
- Arabesque.**—A building after the Arabian style.
- Areostyle.**—An intercolumniation of from four to five diameters.
- Arcade.**—A series of arches.
- Arch.**—An arrangement of stones or other material in a curvilinear form, so as to perform the office of a lintel and carry superincumbent weights.
- Architrave.**—That part of the entablature which rests upon the capital of a column, and is beneath the frieze. The casing and mouldings about a door or window.
- Archivolt.**—The ceiling of a vault ; the under surface of an arch.
- Area.**—Superficial measurement. An open space, below the level of the ground, in front of basement windows.

Arsenal.—A public establishment for the deposition of arms and warlike stores.

Astragal.—A small moulding consisting of a half-round with a fillet on each side.

Attic.—A low story erected over an order of architecture. A low additional story immediately under the roof of a building.

Aviary.—A place for keeping and breeding birds.

Balcony.—An open gallery projecting from the front of a building.

Baluster.—A small pillar or pilaster supporting a rail.

Balustrade.—A series of balusters connected by a rail.

Barge-course.—That part of the covering which projects over the gable of a building.

Base.—The lowest part of a wall, column, etc.

Basement-story.—That which is immediately under the principal story, and included within the foundation of the building.

Basso-relievo.—Low relief; sculptured figures projecting from a surface one half their thickness or less. See *Alto-relievo*.

Battering.—See *Talus*.

Battlement.—Indentations on the top of a wall or parapet.

Bay-window.—A window projecting in two or more planes, and not forming the segment of a circle.

Bazaar.—A species of mart or exchange for the sale of various articles of merchandise.

Bead.—A circular moulding.

Bed-mouldings.—Those mouldings which are between the corona and the frieze.

Belfry.—That part of the steeple in which the bells are hung; anciently called *campanile*.

Belvedere.—An ornamental turret or observatory commanding a pleasant prospect.

Boro-window.—A window projecting in curved lines.

Bressummer.—A beam or iron tie supporting a wall over a gateway or other opening.

Brick-nogging.—The brickwork between studs of partitions.

Buttress.—A projection from a wall to give additional strength.

Cable.—A cylindrical moulding placed in flutes at the lower part of the column.

Camber.—To give a convexity to the upper surface of a beam.

Campanile.—A tower for the reception of bells, usually, in Italy, separated from the church.

Canopy.—An ornamental covering over a seat of state.

Cantilevers.—The ends of rafters under a projecting roof. Pieces of wood or stone supporting the eaves.

Capital.—The uppermost part of a column included between the shaft and the architrave.

Caravansera.—In the East, a large public building for the reception of travellers by caravans in the desert.

Carpentry.—(From the Latin *carpentum*, carved wood.) That department of science and art which treats of the disposition, the construction, and the relative strength of timber. The first is called descriptive, the second constructive, and the last mechanical carpentry.

Caryatides.—Figures of women used instead of columns to support an entablature.

Casino.—A small country-house.

Castellated.—Built with battlements and turrets in imitation of ancient castles.

Castle.—A building fortified for military defence. A house with towers, usually encompassed with walls and moats, and having a donjon, or keep, in the centre.

Catacombs.—Subterraneous places for burying the dead.

Cathedral.—The principal church of a province or diocese, wherein the throne of the archbishop or bishop is placed.

Cavetto.—A concave moulding comprising the quadrant of a circle.

Cemetery.—An edifice or area where the dead are interred.

Cenotaph.—A monument erected to the memory of a person buried in another place.

Centring.—The temporary woodwork, or framing, whereon any vaulted work is constructed.

Cesspool.—A well under a drain or pavement to receive the waste water and sediment.

Chamfer.—The bevelled edge of anything originally right angled.

Chancel.—That part of a Gothic church in which the altar is placed.

Chantry.—A little chapel in ancient churches, with an endowment for one or more priests to say mass for the relief of souls out of purgatory.

Chapel.—A building for religious worship, erected separately from a church, and served by a chaplain.

Chaplet.—A moulding carved into beads, olives, etc.

Cincture.—The ring, listel, or fillet, at the top and bottom of a column, which divides the shaft of the column from its capital and base.

Circus.—A straight, long, narrow building used by the Romans for the exhibition of public spectacles and chariot races. At the present day, a building enclosing an arena for the exhibition of feats of horsemanship.

Clerestory.—The upper part of the nave of a church above the roofs of the aisles.

Cloister.—The square space attached to a regular monastery or large church, having a peristyle or ambulatory around it, covered with a range of buildings.

Coffer-dam.—A case of piling, water-tight, fixed in the bed of a river, for the purpose of excluding the water while any work, such as a wharf, wall, or the pier of a bridge, is carried up.

Collar-beam.—A horizontal beam framed between two principal rafters above the tie-beam.

Colonnade.—A range of columns.

Columbarium.—A pigeon-house.

Column.—A vertical cylindrical support under the entablature of an order.

Common-rafters.—The same as *jack-rafters*, which see.

Conduit.—A long, narrow, walled passage underground, for secret communication between different apartments. A canal or pipe for the conveyance of water.

Conservatory.—A building for preserving curious and rare exotic plants.

Consoles.—The same as *ancones*, which see.

Contour.—The external lines which bound and terminate a figure.

Convent.—A building for the reception of a society of religious persons.

Coping.—Stones laid on the top of a wall to defend it from the weather.

Corbels.—Stones or timbers fixed in a wall to sustain the timbers of a floor or roof.

Cornice.—Any moulded projection which crowns or finishes the part to which it is affixed.

Corona.—That part of a cornice which is between the crown-moulding and the bed-mouldings.

Cornucopia.—The horn of plenty.

Corridor.—An open gallery or communication to the different apartments of a house.

Cove.—A concave moulding.

Cripple-rafters.—The short rafters which are spiked to the hip-rafter of a roof.

Crocketts.—In Gothic architecture, the ornaments placed along the angles of pediments, pinnacles, etc.

Crosettes.—The same as *ancones*, which see.

Crypt.—The under or hidden part of a building.

Culvert.—An arched channel of masonry or brickwork, built beneath the bed of a canal for the purpose of conducting water under it. Any arched channel for water underground.

Cupola.—A small building on the top of a dome.

Curtail-step.—A step with a spiral end, usually the first of the flight.

Cusps.—The pendants of a pointed arch.

Cyma.—An ogee. There are two kinds; the *cyma-recta*, having the upper part concave and the lower convex, and the *cyma-reversa*, with the upper part convex and the lower concave.

Dado.—The die, or part between the base and cornice of a pedestal.

Dairy.—An apartment or building for the preservation of milk, and the manufacture of it into butter, cheese, etc.

Dead-shear.—A piece of timber or stone stood vertically in brickwork, to support a superincumbent weight until the brickwork which is to carry it has set or become hard.

Decastyle.—A building having ten columns in front.

Dentils.—(From the Latin, *dentes*, teeth.) Small rectangular blocks used in the bed-mouldings of some of the orders.

Diastyle.—An intercolumniation of three, or, as some say, four diameters.

Die.—That part of a pedestal included between the base and the cornice; it is also called a *dado*.

Dodecastyle.—A building having twelve columns in front.

Donjon.—A massive tower within ancient castles, to which the garrison might retreat in case of necessity.

Doeks.—A Scotch name given to wooden bricks.

Dormer.—A window placed on the roof of a house, the frame being placed vertically on the rafters.

Dormitory.—A sleeping-room.

Dovecote.—A building for keeping tame pigeons. A columbarium.

Echinus.—The Grecian ovolo.

Elevation.—A geometrical projection drawn on a plane at right angles to the horizon.

Entablature.—That part of an order which is supported by the columns ; consisting of the architrave, frieze, and cornice.

Eustyle.—An intercolumniation of two and a quarter diameters.

Exchange.—A building in which merchants and brokers meet to transact business.

Extrados.—The exterior curve of an arch.

Façade.—The principal front of any building.

Face-mould.—The pattern for marking the plank out of which hand-railing is to be cut for stairs, etc.

Facia, or *Fascia*.—A flat member, like a band or broad fillet.

Falling-mould.—The mould applied to the convex, vertical surface of the rail-piece, in order to form the back and under surface of the rail, and finish the squaring.

Festoon.—An ornament representing a wreath of flowers and leaves.

Fillet.—A narrow flat band, listel, or annulet, used for the separation of one moulding from another, and to give breadth and firmness to the edges of mouldings.

Flutes.—Upright channels on the shafts of columns.

Flyers.—Steps in a flight of stairs that are parallel to each other.

Forum.—In ancient architecture a public market ; also, a place where the common courts were held and law pleadings carried on.

Foundry.—A building in which various metals are cast into moulds or shapes.

Frieze.—That part of an entablature included between the architrave and the cornice.

Gable.—The vertical, triangular piece of wall at the end of a roof, from the level of the eaves to the summit.

Gain.—A recess made to receive a tenon or tusk.

Gallery.—A common passage to several rooms in an upper story. A long room for the reception of pictures. A platform raised on columns, pilasters, or piers.

Girder.—The principal beam in a floor, for supporting the binding and other joists, whereby the bearing or length is lessened.

Glyph.—A vertical, sunken channel. From their number, those in the Doric order are called *triglyphs*.

Granary.—A building for storing grain, especially that intended to be kept for a considerable time.

Groin.—The line formed by the intersection of two arches, which cross each other at any angle.

Gutta.—The small cylindrical pendent ornaments, otherwise called *drogs*, used in the Doric order under the triglyphs, and also pendent from the mutuli of the cornice.

Gymnasium.—Originally, a place measured out and covered with sand for the exercise of athletic games; afterward, spacious buildings devoted to the mental as well as corporeal instruction of youth.

Hall.—The first large apartment on entering a house. The public room of a corporate body. A manor-house.

Ham.—A house or dwelling-place. A street or village: hence *Nottingham*, *Buckingham*, etc. *Hamlet*, the diminutive of *ham*, is a small street or village.

Helix.—The small volute, or twist, under the abacus in the Corinthian capital.

Hem.—The projecting spiral fillet of the Ionic capital.

Hexastyle.—A building having six columns in front.

Hip-rafter.—A piece of timber placed at the angle made by two adjacent inclined roofs.

Homestall.—A mansion-house, or seat in the country.

Hotel, or *Hostel*.—A large inn or place of public entertainment. A large house or palace.

Hot-house.—A glass building used in gardening.

Hovel.—An open shed.

Hut.—A small cottage or hovel, generally constructed of earthy materials, as strong loamy clay, etc.

Impost.—The capital of a pier or pilaster which supports an arch.

Intaglio.—Sculpture in which the subject is hollowed out, so that the impression from it presents the appearance of a bas-relief.

Intercolumniation.—The distance between two columns.

Intrados.—The interior and lower curve of an arch.

Jack-rafters.—Rafters that fill in between the principal rafters of a roof; called also *common-rafters*.

Jail.—A place of legal confinement.

Jambs.—The vertical sides of an aperture.

Joggle-piece.—A post to receive struts.

Joists.—The timbers to which the boards of a floor or the laths of a ceiling are nailed.

Keep.—The same as *donjon*, which see.

Key-stone.—The highest central stone of an arch.

Kiln.—A building for the accumulation and retention of heat, in order to dry or burn certain materials deposited within it.

King-post.—The centre-post in a trussed roof.

Knee.—A convex bend in the back of a hand-rail. See *Ramp*.

Lactarium.—The same as *dairy*, which see.

Lantern.—A cupola having windows in the sides for lighting an apartment beneath.

Larmier.—The same as *corona*, which see.

Lattice.—A reticulated window for the admission of air, rather than light, as in dairies and cellars.

Lever-boards.—Blind-slats; a set of boards so fastened that they may be turned at any angle to admit more or less light, or to lap upon each other so as to exclude all air or light through apertures.

Lintel.—A piece of timber or stone placed horizontally over a door, window, or other opening.

Listel.—The same as *fillet*, which see.

Lobby.—An enclosed space, or passage, communicating with the principal room or rooms of a house.

Lodge.—A small house near and subordinate to the mansion. A cottage placed at the gate of the road leading to a mansion.

Loop.—A small narrow window. *Loophole* is a term applied to the vertical series of doors in a warehouse, through which goods are delivered by means of a crane.

Luffer-boarding.—The same as *lever-boards*, which see.

Luthern.—The same as *dormer*, which see.

Mausoleum.—A sepulchral building—so called from a very celebrated one erected to the memory of Mausolus, king of Caria, by his wife Artemisia.

Metopa.—The square space in the frieze between the triglyphs of the Doric order.

Mezzanine.—A story of small height introduced between two of greater height.

Minaret.—A slender, lofty turret having projecting balconies, common in Mohammedan countries.

Minster.—A church to which an ecclesiastical fraternity has been or is attached.

Moat.—An excavated reservoir of water, surrounding a house, castle, or town.

Modillion.—A projection under the corona of the richer orders, resembling a bracket.

Module.—The semi-diameter of a column, used by the architect as a measure by which to proportion the parts of an order.

Monastery.—A building or buildings appropriated to the reception of monks.

Monopteron.—A circular colonnade supporting a dome without an enclosing wall.

Mosaic.—A mode of representing objects by the inlaying of small cubes of glass, stone, marble, shells, etc.

Mosque.—A Mohammedan temple or place of worship.

Mullions.—The upright posts or bars which divide the lights in a Gothic window.

Muniment-house.—A strong, fire-proof apartment for the keeping and preservation of evidences, charters, seals, etc., called muniments.

Museum.—A repository of natural, scientific, and literary curiosities or of works of art.

Mutule.—A projecting ornament of the Doric cornice supposed to represent the ends of rafters.

Nave.—The main body of a Gothic church.

Newel.—A post at the starting or landing of a flight of stairs.

Niche.—A cavity or hollow place in a wall for the reception of a statue, vase, etc.

Noggs.—Wooden bricks.

Nosing.—The rounded and projecting edge of a step in stairs.

Nunnery.—A building or buildings appropriated for the reception of nuns.

Obelisk.—A lofty pillar of a rectangular form.

Octastyle.—A building with eight columns in front.

Odeum.—Among the Greeks, a species of theatre wherein the poets and musicians rehearsed their compositions previous to the public production of them.

Ogee.—See *cyma*.

Orangery.—A gallery or building in a garden or parterre fronting the south.

Oriel window.—A large bay or recessed window in a hall, chapel, or other apartment.

Ovolo.—A convex projecting moulding whose profile is the quadrant of a circle.

Pagoda.—A temple or place of worship in India.

Palisade.—A fence of pales or stakes driven into the ground.

Parapet.—A small wall of any material for protection on the sides of bridges, quays, or high buildings.

Pavilion.—A turret or small building generally insulated and comprised under a single roof.

Pedestal.—A square foundation used to elevate and sustain a column, statue, etc.

Pediment.—The triangular crowning part of a portico or aperture which terminates vertically the sloping parts of the roof; this, in Gothic architecture, is called a *gable*.

Penitentiary.—A prison for the confinement of criminals whose crimes are not of a very heinous nature.

Piazza.—A square, open space surrounded by buildings. This term is often improperly used to denote a *portico*.

Pier.—A rectangular pillar without any regular base or capital. The upright, narrow portions of walls between doors and windows are known by this term.

Pilaster.—A square pillar, sometimes insulated, but more commonly engaged in a wall, and projecting only a part of its thickness.

Piles.—Large timbers driven into the ground to make a secure foundation in marshy places, or in the bed of a river.

Pillar.—A column of irregular form, always disengaged, and always deviating from the proportions of the orders; whence the distinction between a pillar and a column.

Pinnacle.—A small spire used to ornament Gothic buildings.

Planceer.—The same as *soffit*, which see.

Plinth.—The lower square member of the base of a column, pedestal, or wall.

Porch.—An exterior appendage to a building, forming a covered approach to one of its principal doorways.

Portal.—The arch over a door or gate; the framework of the gate; the lesser gate, when there are two of different dimensions at one entrance.

Portcullis.—A strong timber gate to old castles, made to slide up and down vertically.

Portico.—A colonnade supporting a shelter over a walk, or ambulatory.

Priory.—A building similar in its constitution to a monastery or abbey, the head whereof was called a prior or prioress.

Prism.—A solid bounded on the sides by parallelograms, and on the ends by polygonal figures in parallel planes.

Prostyle.—A building with columns in front only.

Purlines.—Those pieces of timber which lie under and at right angles to the rafters to prevent them from sinking.

Pycnostyle.—An intercolumniation of one and a half diameters.

Pyramid.—A solid body standing on a square, triangle, or polygonal basis and terminating in a point at the top.

Quarry.—A place whence stones and slates are procured.

Quay.—(Pronounced *key*.) A bank formed towards the sea or on the side of a river for free passage, or for the purpose of unloading merchandise.

Quoin.—An external angle. See *Rustic quoins*.

Rabbet, or Rebate.—A groove or channel in the edge of a board.

Ramp.—A concave bend in the back of a hand-rail.

Rampant arch.—One having abutments of different heights.

Regula.—The band below the *tænia* in the Doric order.

Riser.—In stairs, the vertical board forming the front of a step.

Rostrum.—An elevated platform from which a speaker addresses an audience.

Rotunda.—A circular building.

Rubble-wall.—A wall built of unhewn stone.

Rudenture.—The same as *cable*, which see.

Rustic quoins.—The stones placed on the external angle of a building, projecting beyond the face of the wall, and having their edges bevelled.

Rustic-work.—A mode of building masonry wherein the faces of the stones are left rough, the sides only being wrought smooth where the union of the stones takes place.

Salon, or Saloon.—A lofty and spacious apartment comprehending the height of two stories with two tiers of windows.

Sarcophagus.—A tomb or coffin made of one stone.

Scantling.—The measure to which a piece of timber is to be or has been cut.

Scarfing.—The joining of two pieces of timber by bolting or nailing transversely together, so that the two appear but one.

Scotia.—The hollow moulding in the base of a column, between the fillets of the tori.

Scroll.—A carved curvilinear ornament, somewhat resembling in profile the turnings of a ram's horn.

Sepulchre.—A grave, tomb, or place of interment.

Sewer.—A drain or conduit for carrying off soil or water from any place.

Shaft.—The cylindrical part between the base and the capital of a column.

Shoar.—A piece of timber placed in an oblique direction to support a building or wall.

Sill.—The horizontal piece of timber at the bottom of framing; the timber or stone at the bottom of doors and windows.

Soffit.—The underside of an architrave, corona, etc. The underside of the heads of doors, windows, etc.

Summer.—The lintel of a door or window; a beam tenoned into a girder to support the ends of joists on both sides of it.

Systyle.—An intercolumniation of two diameters.

Tania.—The fillet which separates the Doric frieze from the architrave.

Talus.—The slope or inclination of a wall, among workmen called *bat-tering*.

Terrace.—An area raised before a building, above the level of the ground, to serve as a walk.

Tessellated pavement.—A curious pavement of mosaic work, composed of small square stones.

Tetrastyle.—A building having four columns in front.

Thatch.—A covering of straw or reeds used on the roofs of cottages, barns, etc.

Theatre.—A building appropriated to the representation of dramatic spectacles.

Tile.—A thin piece or plate of baked clay or other material used for the external covering of a roof.

Tomb.—A grave, or place for the interment of a human body, including also any commemorative monument raised over such a place.

Torus.—A moulding of semi-circular profile used in the bases of columns.

Tower.—A lofty building of several stories, round or polygonal.

Transept.—The transverse portion of a cruciform church.

Transom.—The beam across a double-lighted window; if the window have no transom, it is called a *cleve-story* window.

Thread.—That part of a step which is included between the face of its riser and that of the riser above.

Trellis.—A reticulated framing made of thin bars of wood for screens, windows, etc.

Triglyph.—The vertical tablets in the Doric frieze, chamfered on the two vertical edges, and having two channels in the middle.

Tripod.—A table or seat with three legs.

Trochilus.—The same as *scotia*, which see.

Truss.—An arrangement of timbers for increasing the resistance to cross-strains, consisting of a tie, two struts, and a suspending-piece.

Turret.—A small tower, often crowning the angle of a wall, etc.

Tusk.—A short projection under a tenon to increase its strength.

Tympanum.—The naked face of a pediment, included between the level and the raking mouldings.

Underpinning.—The wall under the ground-sills of a building.

University.—An assemblage of colleges under the supervision of a senate, etc.

Vault.—A concave arched ceiling resting upon two opposite parallel walls.

Venetian-door.—A door having side-lights.

Venetian-window.—A window having three separate apertures.

Veranda.—An awning. An open portico under the extended roof of a building.

Vestibule.—An apartment which serves as a medium of communication to another room or series of rooms.

Vestry.—An apartment in a church, or attached to it, for the preservation of the sacred vestments and utensils.

Villa.—A country-house for the residence of an opulent person.

Vinery.—A house for the cultivation of vines.

Volute.—A spiral scroll, which forms the principal feature of the Ionic and the Composite capitals.

Voussoirs.—Arch-stones.

Wainscoting.—Wooden lining of walls, generally in panels.

Water-table.—The stone covering to the projecting foundation or other walls of a building.

Well.—The space occupied by a flight of stairs. The space left beyond the ends of the steps is called the *well-hole*.

Wicket.—A small door made in a gate.

Winders.—In stairs, steps not parallel to each other.

Zophorus.—The same as *frieze*, which see.

Zystos.—Among the ancients, a portico of unusual length, commonly appropriated to gymnastic exercises.

TABLE OF SQUARES, CUBES, AND ROOTS.

(From Hutton's Mathematics.)

No.	Square.	Cube.	Sq. Root.	Cube Root.	No.	Square.	Cube.	Sq. Root.	Cube Root.
1	1	1	1.0000000	1.000000	68	4624	314432	8.2162113	4.081600
2	4	8	1.4142136	1.259921	69	4761	328509	8.3095233	4.161900
3	9	27	1.7320508	1.442250	70	4900	343000	8.3995900	4.242100
4	16	64	2.0000000	1.587401	71	5041	357911	8.486438	4.322300
5	25	125	2.2360680	1.709976	72	5184	373248	8.5712814	4.402500
6	36	216	2.4494897	1.817121	73	5329	389017	8.6540007	4.482700
7	49	343	2.6457513	1.912931	74	5476	405224	8.7346253	4.562900
8	64	512	2.8284271	2.000000	75	5625	421875	8.8131510	4.643100
9	81	729	3.0000000	2.080084	76	5776	438976	8.8896814	4.723300
10	100	1000	3.1622777	2.154435	77	5929	456533	8.9642144	4.803500
11	121	1331	3.3166248	2.223380	78	6084	474552	9.0368514	4.883700
12	144	1728	3.4641016	2.289429	79	6241	493039	9.1075919	4.963900
13	169	2197	3.6155513	2.353335	80	6400	512000	9.1764379	5.044100
14	196	2744	3.7416574	2.415142	81	6561	531441	9.2433811	5.124300
15	225	3375	3.8729833	2.476012	82	6724	551364	9.3084236	5.204500
16	256	4096	4.0000000	2.535842	83	6889	571769	9.3715664	5.284700
17	289	4913	4.1231056	2.594742	84	7056	592664	9.4328094	5.364900
18	324	5832	4.2426407	2.652741	85	7225	614065	9.4921524	5.445100
19	361	6859	4.3588949	2.709842	86	7396	635976	9.5495954	5.525300
20	400	8000	4.4721360	2.766118	87	7569	658403	9.6051384	5.605500
21	441	9261	4.5825757	2.821621	88	7744	681352	9.6587814	5.685700
22	484	10648	4.6901158	2.876353	89	7921	704821	9.7105244	5.765900
23	529	12167	4.7958315	2.930316	90	8100	728800	9.7603674	5.846100
24	576	13824	4.8989795	2.983449	91	8281	753299	9.8083104	5.926300
25	625	15625	5.0000000	3.035842	92	8464	778312	9.8543534	6.006500
26	676	17576	5.0990195	3.087496	93	8649	803841	9.8984964	6.086700
27	729	19683	5.1961524	3.138400	94	8836	829884	9.9407394	6.166900
28	784	21952	5.2915025	3.188553	95	9025	856445	9.9810824	6.247100
29	841	24389	5.3851618	3.237917	96	9216	883524	10.0195254	6.327300
30	900	27000	5.4772256	3.286482	97	9409	911121	10.0560684	6.407500
31	961	29791	5.5677644	3.334247	98	9604	939244	10.0907114	6.487700
32	1024	32768	5.6568542	3.381212	99	9801	967881	10.1234544	6.567900
33	1089	35937	5.7445526	3.427331	100	10000	1000000	10.1542974	6.648100
34	1156	39304	5.8309519	3.472612	101	10201	1033001	10.1832404	6.728300
35	1225	42875	5.9160798	3.517106	102	10404	1066404	10.2102834	6.808500
36	1296	46656	6.0000000	3.560893	103	10609	1099209	10.2354264	6.888700
37	1369	50653	6.0827625	3.603922	104	10816	1132416	10.2686694	6.968900
38	1444	54872	6.1644140	3.646195	105	11025	1166025	10.2999124	7.049100
39	1521	59319	6.2449980	3.687711	106	11236	1199044	10.3291554	7.129300
40	1600	64000	6.3245553	3.728452	107	11449	1232461	10.3563984	7.209500
41	1681	68921	6.4031242	3.768417	108	11664	1266288	10.3816414	7.289700
42	1764	74088	6.4807107	3.807602	109	11881	1299521	10.4048844	7.369900
43	1849	79507	6.5574345	3.846034	110	12100	1333160	10.4261274	7.450100
44	1936	85184	6.6332146	3.883748	111	12321	1367201	10.4453704	7.530300
45	2025	91125	6.7080933	3.920762	112	12544	1401644	10.4626134	7.610500
46	2116	97336	6.7820300	3.957015	113	12769	1436489	10.4778564	7.690700
47	2209	103813	6.8550546	3.992529	114	12996	1471736	10.4910994	7.770900
48	2304	110568	6.9272032	4.027302	115	13225	1507385	10.5033424	7.851100
49	2401	117649	7.0000000	4.061346	116	13456	1543436	10.5135854	7.931300
50	2500	125000	7.0710678	4.094703	117	13689	1579889	10.5228284	8.011500
51	2601	132651	7.1414284	4.127313	118	13924	1616744	10.5310714	8.091700
52	2704	140608	7.2111026	4.159181	119	14161	1653901	10.5383144	8.171900
53	2809	148877	7.2800939	4.190316	120	14400	1691360	10.5445574	8.252100
54	2916	157464	7.3484092	4.220729	121	14641	1729121	10.5497994	8.332300
55	3025	166375	7.4161385	4.250422	122	14884	1767184	10.5540424	8.412500
56	3136	175616	7.4833118	4.279395	123	15129	1805549	10.5572854	8.492700
57	3249	185193	7.5498341	4.307748	124	15376	1844216	10.5605284	8.572900
58	3364	195112	7.6157731	4.335481	125	15625	1883185	10.5627714	8.653100
59	3481	205379	7.6811457	4.362596	126	15876	1922456	10.5640144	8.733300
60	3600	216000	7.7459667	4.389099	127	16129	1962029	10.5652574	8.813500
61	3721	226981	7.8102497	4.414992	128	16384	2001904	10.5665004	8.893700
62	3844	238328	7.8740079	4.440275	129	16641	2042081	10.5677434	8.973900
63	3969	250047	7.9372539	4.464958	130	16900	2082560	10.5689864	9.054100
64	4096	262144	8.0000000	4.489041	131	17161	2123341	10.5702294	9.134300
65	4225	274625	8.0622577	4.512524	132	17424	2164424	10.5714724	9.214500
66	4356	287496	8.1240344	4.535407	133	17689	2205809	10.5727154	9.294700
67	4489	300763	8.1853323	4.557690	134	17956	2247496	10.5739584	9.374900

TABLE OF SQUARES, CUBES, AND ROOTS.

No.	Square.	Cube.	Sq. Root.	Cube Root.	No.	Square.	Cube.	Sq. Root.	Cube Root.
135	18225	2460375	116189500	5129928	202	40804	8242408	142136704	5867461
136	18496	2515456	116619934	5142563	203	41209	8365427	142478068	5877131
137	18769	2571353	117046999	5155137	204	41616	8489664	142825569	5886765
138	19044	2628672	117473401	5167649	205	42025	8615125	143178211	5896368
139	19321	2686619	117899261	5180101	206	42436	8741816	143535700	5905941
140	19600	2744400	118324596	5192494	207	42849	8869743	143897946	5915482
141	19881	2802821	118749412	5204928	208	43264	8998912	144264951	5924992
142	20164	2861883	119163753	5217403	209	43681	9129329	144636723	5934473
143	20449	2921497	119577637	5229921	210	44100	9261000	145013367	5943923
144	20736	2981674	120000000	5242483	211	44521	9393931	145394789	5953342
145	21025	3042425	120413946	5255088	212	44944	9528128	145781098	5962732
146	21316	3103760	120828460	5267737	213	45369	9663597	146172295	5972093
147	21609	3165683	121243557	5280432	214	45796	9800344	146568388	5981424
148	21904	3228196	121659251	5293172	215	46225	9938375	146969385	5990726
149	22201	3291309	122076555	5305957	216	46656	10077696	147376294	6000000
150	22500	3355032	122494487	5318788	217	47089	10218313	147789119	6009245
151	22801	3419375	122913057	5331665	218	47524	10360332	148207954	6018462
152	23104	3484336	123332280	5344588	219	47961	10503759	148632793	6027650
153	23409	3549919	123753169	5357557	220	48400	10648600	149053637	6036811
154	23716	3616136	124174737	5370572	221	48841	10794861	149479486	6045943
155	24025	3683000	124597999	5383633	222	49284	10942544	149911341	6055046
156	24336	3750521	125022960	5396740	223	49729	11091657	150349202	6064121
157	24649	3818700	125449637	5409893	224	50176	11242192	150793069	6073168
158	24964	3887539	125877947	5423093	225	50625	11394159	151242944	6082187
159	25281	3957040	126307907	5436340	226	51076	11546668	151698827	6091179
160	25600	4027200	126739533	5449633	227	51529	11699729	152160728	6100146
161	25921	4098021	127172841	5462972	228	51984	11854304	152628647	6109089
162	26244	4169504	127607837	5476357	229	52441	12009431	153092584	6118008
163	26569	4241649	128044529	5489788	230	52900	12165100	153562639	6126903
164	26896	4314456	128482924	5503265	231	53361	12322321	154038814	6135774
165	27225	4387935	128923029	5516788	232	53824	12480192	154521119	6144621
166	27556	4462088	129364851	5530357	233	54289	12638725	155009554	6153444
167	27889	4536915	129808387	5543972	234	54756	12797920	155504119	6162243
168	28224	4612416	130253644	5557633	235	55225	12957775	156004814	6171018
169	28561	4688591	130700629	5571340	236	55696	13118296	156511639	6179769
170	28900	4765440	131149351	5585093	237	56169	13279481	157024594	6188496
171	29241	4842961	131600817	5598893	238	56644	13441320	157543689	6197199
172	29584	4921156	132054035	5612740	239	57121	13603825	158068924	6205878
173	29929	5000025	132509013	5626633	240	57600	13767000	158600309	6214533
174	30276	5079568	132965759	5640572	241	58081	13931841	159137844	6223164
175	30625	5159785	133424281	5654557	242	58564	14097344	159681529	6231771
176	30976	5240676	133884587	5668588	243	59049	14264505	160231364	6240354
177	31329	5322241	134346685	5682665	244	59536	14432320	160787349	6248913
178	31684	5404480	134810583	5696788	245	60025	14600791	161349484	6257448
179	32041	5487393	135276289	5710957	246	60516	14769920	161917769	6265959
180	32400	5570980	135743813	5725172	247	61009	14939719	162492204	6274446
181	32761	5655241	136213163	5739433	248	61504	15110184	163072799	6282909
182	33124	5740176	136684337	5753740	249	62001	15281311	163659554	6291348
183	33489	5825785	137157345	5768093	250	62500	15453100	164252469	6300763
184	33856	5912068	137632195	5782493	251	63001	15625551	164851544	6310154
185	34225	6000025	138108897	5796940	252	63504	15798664	165456779	6319521
186	34596	6088656	138587451	5811433	253	64009	15972431	166068174	6328864
187	34969	6177961	139067867	5825972	254	64516	16146856	166685729	6338183
188	35344	6267940	139550145	5840557	255	65025	16321935	167309444	6347478
189	35721	6358593	140034295	5855188	256	65536	16497664	167939319	6356749
190	36100	6450000	140520327	5869865	257	66049	16674049	168575354	6365996
191	36481	6542161	141008251	5884588	258	66564	16851080	169217549	6375219
192	36864	6635088	141498077	5899357	259	67081	17028851	169865804	6384418
193	37249	6728781	142000000	5914172	260	67600	17207360	170520119	6393593
194	37636	6823140	142504129	5929033	261	68121	17386609	171180494	6402744
195	38025	6918165	143010473	5943940	262	68644	17566592	171846929	6411871
196	38416	7013856	143519041	5958893	263	69169	17747321	172519424	6420974
197	38809	7110213	144029843	5973893	264	69696	17928796	173197979	6430053
198	39204	7207236	144542889	5988940	265	70225	18110925	173882594	6439108
199	39601	7304925	145058181	5994033	266	70756	18293716	174573269	6448139
200	40000	7403280	145575719	6009172	267	71289	18477169	175269904	6457146
201	40401	7502301	146095503	6024357	268	71824	18661280	175972599	6466129

[illegible]

No.	Square.	Cube.	Sq. Root.	Cube Root.	No.	Square.	Cube.	Sq. Root.	Cube Root.
403	162409	65450827	20-0718599	7-346437	470	224900	103423000	21-6794391	7-774986
404	163216	65939254	20-0937512	7-392542	471	225841	104187111	21-7025341	7-780496
405	164025	66431125	20-1246118	7-398696	472	226784	104951048	21-7255610	7-785993
406	164836	66923116	20-1494417	7-404721	473	227729	105723817	21-7485632	7-791487
407	165649	67419113	20-1742419	7-410795	474	228676	106496424	21-7715411	7-796974
408	166464	67917312	20-1990929	7-416859	475	229625	107271875	21-7944917	7-802454
409	167281	68417929	20-2237484	7-422914	476	230576	108050176	21-8174242	7-807925
410	168100	68921060	20-2484567	7-428959	477	231529	108831333	21-8403227	7-813389
411	168921	69426731	20-2731319	7-434991	478	232484	109615352	21-8632111	7-818846
412	169744	69934124	20-2977831	7-441019	479	233441	110402239	21-8860896	7-824294
413	170569	70443297	20-3224014	7-447034	480	234400	111192000	21-9089483	7-829743
414	171396	70954344	20-3469899	7-453039	481	235361	111984641	21-9317722	7-835193
415	172225	71467375	20-3715488	7-459035	482	236324	112780168	21-9545494	7-840645
416	173056	71982396	20-3960831	7-465022	483	237289	113578697	21-9772610	7-846098
417	173889	72499417	20-4205779	7-470999	484	238256	114380232	21-9999000	7-851542
418	174724	73018462	20-4450483	7-476966	485	239225	115184875	22-0224755	7-856984
419	175561	73539559	20-4694955	7-482924	486	240196	115992632	22-0450477	7-862424
420	176400	74062700	20-4939195	7-488872	487	241169	116803509	22-0676165	7-867861
421	177241	74587911	20-5183245	7-494811	488	242144	117617512	22-0901829	7-873294
422	178084	75115184	20-5427086	7-500741	489	243121	118434649	22-1127471	7-878724
423	178929	75644529	20-5670638	7-506661	490	244100	119254900	22-1353083	7-884153
424	179776	76175956	20-5913903	7-512571	491	245081	120078271	22-1578665	7-889580
425	180625	76709485	20-6156981	7-518473	492	246064	120904768	22-1804217	7-895004
426	181476	77245124	20-6399874	7-524365	493	247049	121734397	22-2029739	7-899924
427	182329	77782881	20-6642583	7-530248	494	248036	122567164	22-2255231	7-904841
428	183184	78322768	20-6885109	7-536122	495	249025	123403075	22-2480693	7-909754
429	184041	78864789	20-7127452	7-541987	496	250016	124242128	22-2706125	7-914664
430	184900	79408944	20-7369614	7-547842	497	251009	125084329	22-2931527	7-919571
431	185761	80005251	20-7611595	7-553689	498	252004	125929684	22-3156899	7-924474
432	186624	80603720	20-7853497	7-559526	499	253001	126778199	22-3382241	7-929373
433	187489	81204369	20-8095320	7-565355	500	254000	127629880	22-3607553	7-934268
434	188356	81807196	20-8336965	7-571174	501	255001	128484731	22-3832835	7-939159
435	189225	82412211	20-8578532	7-576985	502	256004	129342756	22-4058087	7-944046
436	190096	82919424	20-8819921	7-582786	503	257009	130203961	22-4283309	7-948929
437	190969	83428835	20-9061139	7-588579	504	258016	131068352	22-4508491	7-953808
438	191844	83940456	20-9292495	7-594363	505	259025	131935933	22-4733633	7-958683
439	192721	84454289	20-9523698	7-600138	506	260036	132806709	22-4958735	7-963554
440	193600	84970336	20-9754749	7-605895	507	261049	133680684	22-5183797	7-968421
441	194481	85488609	21-0000000	7-611643	508	262064	134557864	22-5408819	7-973284
442	195364	86009116	21-0237960	7-617412	509	263081	135438253	22-5633791	7-978143
443	196249	86531867	21-0475652	7-623192	510	264100	136321856	22-5858713	7-982998
444	197136	87056872	21-0713075	7-628984	511	265121	137208679	22-6083595	7-987849
445	198025	87584141	21-0950231	7-634697	512	266144	138108728	22-6308437	7-992696
446	198916	88113676	21-1187121	7-640431	513	267169	139012009	22-6533239	7-997539
447	199809	88645489	21-1423745	7-646186	514	268196	139918528	22-6757991	8-002377
448	200704	89179584	21-1660105	7-651962	515	269225	140828291	22-6982693	8-007211
449	201601	89716069	21-1896231	7-657744	516	270256	141741304	22-7207355	8-012041
450	202500	90254944	21-2132034	7-663544	517	271289	142657573	22-7431977	8-016867
451	203401	90796211	21-2367606	7-669366	518	272324	143577004	22-7656559	8-021689
452	204304	91339880	21-2602916	7-675209	519	273361	144499693	22-7881091	8-026507
453	205209	91885967	21-2837967	7-681073	520	274400	145425636	22-8105583	8-031321
454	206116	92434484	21-3072758	7-686958	521	275441	146354839	22-8330035	8-036131
455	207025	92985535	21-3307290	7-692864	522	276484	147287300	22-8554447	8-040937
456	207936	93539124	21-3541565	7-698792	523	277529	148223024	22-8778819	8-045739
457	208849	94095269	21-3775583	7-704742	524	278576	149162017	22-9003151	8-050537
458	209764	94653984	21-4009346	7-710713	525	279625	150104284	22-9227463	8-055331
459	210681	95215289	21-4242853	7-716705	526	280676	151049829	22-9451725	8-060121
460	211600	95779196	21-4476106	7-722719	527	281729	152008656	22-9675947	8-064907
461	212521	96345711	21-4709106	7-728753	528	282784	152970781	22-9899129	8-069689
462	213444	96914844	21-4941853	7-734806	529	283841	153936209	23-0122271	8-074467
463	214369	97486599	21-5174348	7-740878	530	284900	154904944	23-0345373	8-079241
464	215296	98060984	21-5406592	7-746969	531	285961	155877000	23-0568435	8-084011
465	216225	98638011	21-5638587	7-753079	532	287024	156852384	23-0791457	8-088777
466	217156	99217680	21-5870331	7-759209	533	288089	157831109	23-1014439	8-093539
467	218089	99800001	21-6101828	7-765358	534	289156	158813280	23-1237381	8-098297
468	219024	100385024	21-6333077	7-771526	535	290225	159808809	23-1460283	8-103051
469	219961	100972769	21-6564078	7-777713	536	291296	160807800	23-1683145	8-107801

No.	Square.	Cube.	Sq. Root.	Cube Root.	No.	Square.	Cube.	Sq. Root.	Cube Root.
537	284369	154851153	23 1732605	8 124145	604	3 4816	220348864	24 5764 115	8 46028
538	284444	154730872	23 1948270	8 133187	605	3 6025	221445125	24 5865 478	8 46569
539	29 1521	156590819	23 2163735	8 134223	606	3 7236	222543016	24 6176 673	8 46928
540	291600	157461030	23 2379001	8 143253	607	3 8449	223645543	24 6373 760	8 467 00
541	292681	158340121	23 2594067	8 148276	608	3 9664	224755712	24 6576 560	8 47167
542	293764	159220884	23 2808935	8 153294	609	3 0881	225866529	24 6777 254	8 47628
543	294849	160103307	23 3023904	8 158305	610	3 2100	226981000	24 6981 781	8 48099
544	295936	160989184	23 3238976	8 163310	611	3 3321	228099131	24 7184 142	8 48570
545	297025	161878625	23 3454251	8 168309	612	3 4544	229220928	24 7386 338	8 49041
546	298116	162771336	23 3669429	8 173302	613	3 5769	230346397	24 7588 568	8 49512
547	299209	163667323	23 3880311	8 178289	614	3 6996	231475544	24 7790 231	8 50000
548	300304	164566592	23 4091998	8 183269	615	3 8225	232608375	24 7991 935	8 50489
549	301401	165469149	23 4307190	8 188244	616	3 9456	233744896	24 8193 473	8 50978
550	302500	166375000	23 4527888	8 193213	617	3 0689	234885113	24 8394 417	8 51467
551	303600	167284151	23 4743392	8 198175	618	3 1924	236029032	24 8594 558	8 51956
552	304704	168196608	23 4964802	8 203134	619	3 3161	237176599	24 8794 166	8 52445
553	305809	169112377	23 5192526	8 208082	620	3 4400	238328400	24 8993 992	8 52934
554	306916	170031464	23 5372016	8 213027	621	3 5641	239483661	24 9193 716	8 53423
555	308025	170953875	23 5554430	8 217966	622	3 6884	240643484	24 9393 278	8 53912
556	309136	171879616	23 5736522	8 222899	623	3 8129	241807167	24 9592 673	8 54401
557	310249	172808693	23 6008474	8 227825	624	3 9376	242974824	24 9791 924	8 54890
558	311364	173741112	23 6220236	8 232746	625	3 0625	244146325	25 0000000	8 55379
559	312481	174676879	23 6431808	8 237661	626	3 1876	245321376	25 0208981	8 55868
560	313600	175616000	23 6643191	8 242571	627	3 3129	246499883	25 0417961	8 56357
561	314721	176558481	23 6854386	8 247474	628	3 4384	247681952	25 0626922	8 56846
562	315844	177504328	23 7065392	8 252371	629	3 5641	248867489	25 0798721	8 57335
563	316969	178453547	23 7276210	8 257263	630	3 6900	250056500	25 0999008	8 57824
564	318096	179406144	23 7486842	8 262149	631	3 8161	251249051	25 1197134	8 58313
565	319225	180362125	23 7697285	8 267029	632	3 9424	252445096	25 1393102	8 58802
566	320356	181321496	23 7907545	8 271904	633	4 0689	253644677	25 1597913	8 59291
567	321489	182284253	23 8117618	8 276773	634	4 1956	254847804	25 1799566	8 59780
568	322624	183250442	23 83275 6	8 281635	635	4 3225	256054475	25 1999963	8 60269
569	323761	184220049	23 8537209	8 286493	636	4 4496	257264636	25 2198101	8 60758
570	324900	185193000	23 8746728	8 291344	637	4 5769	258478383	25 2394959	8 61247
571	326041	186169411	23 8956063	8 296190	638	4 7044	259695732	25 2590541	8 61736
572	327184	187149248	23 9165215	8 301039	639	4 8321	260916689	25 2784843	8 62225
573	328329	188132517	23 9374184	8 305885	640	4 9600	262141160	25 2978873	8 62714
574	329476	189119224	23 9582971	8 310734	641	5 0881	263369151	25 3171624	8 63203
575	330625	190109375	23 9791576	8 315574	642	5 2164	264600668	25 3364189	8 63692
576	331776	191102976	24 0000000	8 320415	643	5 3449	265835707	25 3555447	8 64181
577	332929	192100033	24 0208423	8 325247	644	5 4736	267074272	25 3746401	8 64670
578	334084	193100552	24 0416736	8 330079	645	5 6025	268316367	25 3937059	8 65159
579	335241	194104539	24 0624988	8 334915	646	5 7316	269561996	25 4127424	8 65648
580	336400	195112000	24 0833189	8 339745	647	5 8609	270811163	25 4317497	8 66137
581	337561	196122941	24 1041341	8 344571	648	5 9904	272063872	25 4507278	8 66626
582	338724	197137368	24 1249462	8 349392	649	6 1201	273320127	25 4696766	8 67115
583	339889	198155297	24 1457562	8 354205	650	6 2500	274579932	25 4885962	8 67604
584	341056	199176704	24 1665649	8 359018	651	6 3801	275843291	25 5074866	8 68093
585	342225	200201645	24 1873732	8 363824	652	6 5104	277110216	25 5263479	8 68582
586	343396	201230055	24 2081815	8 368631	653	6 6409	278380717	25 5451801	8 69071
587	344569	202261908	24 2289908	8 373437	654	6 7716	279654796	25 5640832	8 69560
588	345744	203297247	24 2498021	8 378244	655	6 9025	280932457	25 5829573	8 70049
589	346921	204336042	24 2706152	8 383051	656	7 0336	282213704	25 6018024	8 70538
590	348100	205378200	24 2914305	8 387858	657	7 1649	283508539	25 6206185	8 71027
591	349281	206423771	24 3122476	8 392664	658	7 2964	284806968	25 6394056	8 71516
592	350464	207472788	24 3330661	8 397471	659	7 4281	286109097	25 6581637	8 72005
593	351649	208525267	24 3538868	8 402278	660	7 5600	287414832	25 6768928	8 72494
594	352836	209581232	24 3747097	8 407085	661	7 6921	288724177	25 6956029	8 72983
595	354025	210640687	24 3955348	8 411892	662	7 8244	290037136	25 7142840	8 73472
596	355216	211703636	24 4163621	8 416700	663	7 9569	291353704	25 7329361	8 73961
597	356409	212770085	24 4371916	8 421508	664	8 0896	292673887	25 7515682	8 74450
598	357604	213840040	24 4580233	8 426316	665	8 2225	294007592	25 7701803	8 74939
599	358801	214913499	24 4788572	8 431124	666	8 3556	295344823	25 7887724	8 75428
600	360000	216000000	24 4996933	8 435932	667	8 4889	296685584	25 8073445	8 75917
601	361201	217081801	24 5195313	8 440740	668	8 6224	298030881	25 8258966	8 76406
602	362404	218167208	24 5395633	8 445548	669	8 7561	299380712	25 8444287	8 76895
603	363609	219256227	24 5596953	8 450356	670	8 8900	300735073	25 8629308	8 77384

No.	Square.	Cube.	Sq. Root.	Cube Root.	No.	Square.	Cube.	Sq. Root.	Cube Root.
671	450241	302111711	25 0036677	8 751691	738	544044	401947872	27 1661554	9 036880
672	451584	303169448	25 0229628	8 753034	739	546121	403834419	27 1845511	9 040865
673	452929	304232127	25 0422435	8 754381	740	548200	405724000	27 2029468	9 044850
674	454276	305299824	25 0615100	8 755729	741	550281	407616621	27 2213425	9 048835
675	455625	306372545	25 0807691	8 757073	742	552364	409512284	27 2397382	9 052820
676	456976	307450304	25 0000000	8 758423	743	554449	411410989	27 2581339	9 056805
677	458329	310288733	25 0192237	8 759778	744	556536	413312736	27 2765296	9 060790
678	459684	311366752	25 0384431	8 761130	745	558625	415217525	27 2949253	9 064775
679	461041	312444863	25 0576628	8 762487	746	560716	417124366	27 3133210	9 068760
680	462400	313523060	25 0768826	8 763847	747	562809	419033249	27 3317167	9 072745
681	463761	314601341	25 0960976	8 765208	748	564904	420944224	27 3501124	9 076730
682	465124	315680704	25 1153129	8 766572	749	567001	422857299	27 3685081	9 080715
683	466489	316761153	25 1345287	8 767939	750	569100	424772476	27 3869038	9 084700
684	467856	317842692	25 1537447	8 769308	751	571201	426689855	27 4052995	9 088685
685	469225	318925325	25 1729611	8 770679	752	573304	428609484	27 4236952	9 092670
686	470596	320009056	25 1921779	8 772053	753	575409	430531359	27 4420909	9 096655
687	471969	321093889	25 2113951	8 773429	754	577516	432455484	27 4604866	9 100640
688	473344	322179824	25 2306127	8 774807	755	579625	434381859	27 4788823	9 104625
689	474721	323266869	25 2498307	8 776187	756	581736	436309484	27 4972780	9 108610
690	476100	324355020	25 2690491	8 777569	757	583849	438238359	27 5156737	9 112595
691	477481	325444281	25 2882679	8 778953	758	585964	440168484	27 5340694	9 116580
692	478864	326534656	25 3074871	8 780339	759	588081	442099859	27 5524651	9 120565
693	480249	327626149	25 3267067	8 781727	760	590200	444032484	27 5708608	9 124550
694	481636	328718764	25 3459267	8 783117	761	592321	445966359	27 5892565	9 128535
695	483025	329812505	25 3651471	8 784509	762	594444	447901484	27 6076522	9 132520
696	484416	330907376	25 3843679	8 785903	763	596569	449837909	27 6260479	9 136505
697	485809	332003383	25 4035891	8 787299	764	598696	451775634	27 6444436	9 140490
698	487204	333100532	25 4228107	8 788697	765	600825	453714659	27 6628393	9 144475
699	488601	334208829	25 4420327	8 790097	766	602956	455654984	27 6812350	9 148460
700	490000	335318280	25 4612551	8 791499	767	605089	457596609	27 7000000	9 152445
701	491401	336428889	25 4804779	8 792903	768	607224	459539434	27 7187649	9 156430
702	492804	337540656	25 5000000	8 794309	769	609361	461483459	27 7375298	9 160415
703	494209	338653585	25 5196223	8 795717	770	611500	463428684	27 7562947	9 164400
704	495616	339767680	25 5392449	8 797127	771	613641	465375109	27 7750596	9 168385
705	497025	340882945	25 5588678	8 798539	772	615784	467322734	27 7938245	9 172370
706	498436	342000384	25 5784911	8 799953	773	617929	469271559	27 8125894	9 176355
707	499849	343119001	25 5981147	8 801369	774	620076	471221584	27 8313543	9 180340
708	501264	344238800	25 6177387	8 802787	775	622225	473172909	27 8501192	9 184325
709	502681	345359785	25 6373631	8 804207	776	624376	475125434	27 8688841	9 188310
710	504100	346481960	25 6569879	8 805629	777	626529	477079159	27 8876490	9 192295
711	505521	347605329	25 6766131	8 807053	778	628684	479034084	27 9064139	9 196280
712	506944	348730000	25 6962387	8 808479	779	630841	480990209	27 9251788	9 200265
713	508369	349855985	25 7158647	8 810007	780	633000	482947534	27 9439437	9 204250
714	509796	350983280	25 7354911	8 811537	781	635161	484906059	27 9627086	9 208235
715	511225	352111889	25 7551179	8 813069	782	637324	486865784	27 9814735	9 212220
716	512656	353241716	25 7747451	8 814603	783	639489	488826709	27 1002384	9 216205
717	514089	354372865	25 7943727	8 816139	784	641656	490788834	27 1020033	9 220190
718	515524	355505344	25 8139997	8 817677	785	643825	492752159	27 1037682	9 224175
719	516961	356639169	25 8336271	8 819217	786	645996	494716684	27 1055331	9 228160
720	518400	357774352	25 8532549	8 820759	787	648169	496682409	27 1072980	9 232145
721	519841	358910895	25 8728831	8 822303	788	650344	498649334	27 1090629	9 236130
722	521284	360048800	25 8925107	8 823849	789	652521	500617459	27 1108278	9 240115
723	522729	361188069	25 9121387	8 825397	790	654700	502586784	27 1125927	9 244100
724	524176	362328608	25 9317671	8 826947	791	656881	504557309	27 1143576	9 248085
725	525625	363470433	25 9513959	8 828499	792	659064	506529034	27 1161225	9 252070
726	527076	364613550	25 9710251	8 830053	793	661249	508501959	27 1178874	9 256055
727	528529	365757965	25 9906547	8 831609	794	663436	510476084	27 1196523	9 260040
728	529984	366903680	26 0102847	8 833167	795	665625	512451409	27 1214172	9 264025
729	531441	368050799	26 0300151	8 834727	796	667816	514427934	27 1231821	9 268010
730	532900	369200320	26 0497459	8 836289	797	670009	516405659	27 1249470	9 271995
731	534361	370351255	26 0694771	8 837853	798	672204	518384584	27 1267119	9 275980
732	535824	371503596	26 0892087	8 839419	799	674401	520364709	27 1284768	9 279965
733	537289	372657347	26 1089407	8 840987	800	676600	522346034	27 1302417	9 283950
734	538756	373812504	26 1286731	8 842557	801	678801	524328559	27 1320066	9 287935
735	540225	374969071	26 1484059	8 844129	802	681004	526312284	27 1337715	9 291920
736	541696	376127052	26 1681391	8 845703	803	683209	528297209	27 1355364	9 295905
737	543169	377286453	26 1878727	8 847279	804	685416	530283334	27 1373013	9 299890

No.	Square.	Cube.	Sq. Root.	CubeRoot.	No.	Square.	Cube.	Sq. Root.	CubeRoot.
805	644025	521661925	2837.5219	9302177	872	760384	66315448	275206461	9560512
806	649636	532646616	283801391	9306324	873	762129	665338617	275465731	9567362
807	651249	53557343	284077454	9310173	874	763476	667627624	275634910	9574002
808	652864	537514112	284253408	9314019	875	765224	669921875	275803389	9580542
809	654481	539475129	284429253	9317860	876	767376	672221376	275972972	9587082
810	656100	541441000	284604999	9321697	877	769129	674526133	276144854	9593622
811	657721	543411731	284780647	9325532	878	771884	676836152	276316648	9600162
812	659344	545387328	284956137	9329363	879	774100	679151439	276489302	9606702
813	660969	547367797	285131549	9333192	880	776161	681472000	276661729	9613242
814	662596	549353114	285306852	9337017	881	778161	683797441	276834142	9619782
815	664225	551343375	285482048	9340839	882	779924	686128668	277006384	9626322
816	665856	553338496	285657137	9344657	883	779689	688465387	277178459	9632862
817	667489	555338513	285832119	9348473	884	781456	690807704	277350375	9639402
818	669124	557343432	286006993	9352286	885	783225	693154425	277522126	9645942
819	670761	559353259	286181760	9356095	886	784999	695506456	277693751	9652482
820	672400	561368000	286356421	9359902	887	786769	697863103	277865252	9659022
821	674041	563387661	286530976	9363705	888	788544	700224376	278036629	9665562
822	675684	565412248	286705424	9367505	889	790321	702590269	278207884	9672102
823	677329	567441767	286879766	9371302	890	792100	704960800	278379019	9678642
824	678976	569476224	287054002	9375096	891	793881	707336971	278550034	9685182
825	680625	571515625	287228132	9378887	892	795664	709718888	278720929	9691722
826	682276	573559976	287402157	9382675	893	797449	712106577	278891754	9698262
827	683929	575609283	287576077	9386460	894	799236	714499944	279062509	9704802
828	685584	577663532	287749891	9390242	895	801025	716898895	279233184	9711342
829	687241	579722789	287923601	9394021	896	802816	719303436	279403789	9717882
830	688899	581787000	288097206	9397805	897	804609	721713473	279574314	9724422
831	690560	583856191	288270706	9401584	898	806404	724128912	279744759	9730962
832	692224	585930368	288444102	9405359	899	808201	726549759	279915124	9737502
833	693890	588009537	288617394	9409135	900	810000	728976000	280085409	9744042
834	695569	590093704	288790582	9412909	901	811801	731407701	280255624	9750582
835	697250	592182873	288963666	9416683	902	813604	733844808	280425769	9757122
836	698933	594277056	289136646	9420458	903	815409	736287369	280595844	9763662
837	700618	596376253	289309523	9424231	904	817216	738735436	280765849	9770202
838	702305	598480472	289482397	9428004	905	819025	741188965	280935784	9776742
839	703994	599589719	289655167	9431776	906	820836	743647916	281105649	9783282
840	705685	600704000	289827935	9435548	907	822649	746112369	281275434	9789822
841	707378	601823321	290000600	9439319	908	824464	748582312	281445149	9796362
842	709073	602947688	290173263	9443089	909	826281	751057769	281614784	9802902
843	710770	604077007	290345823	9446859	910	828100	753538736	281784349	9809442
844	712469	605211284	290518381	9450628	911	829921	756025209	281953834	9815982
845	714170	606350515	290690937	9454397	912	831744	758517184	282123249	9822522
846	715873	607494736	290863491	9458166	913	833569	761014673	282292584	9829062
847	717578	608643953	291036044	9461935	914	835396	763517568	282461849	9835602
848	719285	609798172	291208596	9465704	915	837225	766025969	282631034	9842142
849	720994	610957391	291381147	9469473	916	839056	768539876	282800149	9848682
850	722705	612121610	291553697	9473242	917	840889	771059289	282969184	9855222
851	724418	613290829	291726246	9477011	918	842724	773584208	283138149	9861762
852	726133	614465048	291898793	9480780	919	844561	776114633	283307034	9868302
853	727850	615644267	292071339	9484549	920	846400	778650464	283475849	9874842
854	729569	616828486	292243884	9488318	921	848241	781191701	283644584	9881382
855	731290	618017705	292416429	9492087	922	850084	783738336	283813249	9887922
856	733013	619211924	292588973	9495856	923	851929	786290389	283981834	9894462
857	734738	620411143	292761517	9499625	924	853776	788847856	284150349	9901002
858	736465	621615362	292934060	9503394	925	855625	791410737	284318784	9907542
859	738194	622824581	293106603	9507163	926	857476	793979072	284487149	9914082
860	739925	624038800	293279146	9510932	927	859329	796552869	284655434	9920622
861	741658	625258019	293451689	9514701	928	861184	799132120	284823649	9927162
862	743393	626482238	293624232	9518470	929	863041	801716921	284991784	9933702
863	745130	627711457	293796775	9522239	930	864900	804317280	285160049	9940242
864	746869	628945676	293969318	9526008	931	866761	806933191	285328234	9946782
865	748610	630184895	294141861	9529777	932	868624	809564656	285496349	9953322
866	750353	631429114	294314404	9533546	933	870489	812211677	285664384	9959862
867	752100	632678333	294486947	9537315	934	872356	814874256	285832349	9966402
868	753849	633932552	294659490	9541084	935	874225	817552395	286000334	9972942
869	755600	635191771	294832033	9544853	936	876096	820246096	286168249	9979482
870	757353	636456990	295004576	9548622	937	877969	822955359	286336084	9986022
871	759108	637728209	295177119	9552391	938	879844	825670176	286503849	9992562

No.	Square.	Cube.	Sq. Root.	Cube Root.	No.	Square.	Cube.	Sq. Root.	Cube Root.
939	881721	827936019	316431069	9792386	970	940900	912673000	311418230	9908983
940	883600	830584000	316594194	9795861	971	942841	915486111	311608729	9912883
941	885481	833257621	316757233	9799331	972	944784	918300048	311769115	9916782
942	887364	835936888	316920185	9802804	973	946729	921167317	311929479	9920678
943	889249	838618007	317083051	9806271	974	948676	924010424	312089731	9924571
944	891136	841302344	317245830	9809736	975	950625	926859375	312249900	9928462
945	893025	843990925	317408523	9813199	976	952576	929714176	312409987	9932351
946	894916	846683636	317571130	9816659	977	954529	932571833	312569992	9936238
947	896809	849380483	317733651	9820117	978	956484	935441352	312729915	9940122
948	898704	851971392	317896086	9823572	979	958441	938313739	312889757	9944004
949	900601	854670349	318058436	9827025	980	960400	941192800	313049517	9947884
950	902500	857375000	318220700	9830476	981	962361	944076141	313209155	9951761
951	904401	860085351	318382879	9833924	982	964324	946966168	313368792	9955636
952	906304	862801408	318544972	9837369	983	966289	949862987	313528308	9959509
953	908209	865523177	318706981	9840813	984	968256	952766204	313687713	9963380
954	910116	868250664	318868904	9844254	985	970225	955671625	313847097	9967249
955	912025	870983875	319030743	9847692	986	972196	958585256	314006369	9971114
956	913936	873722816	319192497	9851128	987	974169	961500803	314165561	9974977
957	915849	876467493	319354166	9854562	988	976144	964420872	314324673	9978839
958	917764	879217912	319515751	9857993	989	978121	967346169	314483704	9982698
959	919681	881974079	319677251	9861422	990	980100	9702696000	314642654	9986555
960	921600	884736000	319838668	9864848	991	982081	973242271	314801525	9990409
961	923521	887503681	319999999	9868272	992	984064	976191488	314960315	9994262
962	925444	890277128	310161248	9871694	993	986049	979146657	315119025	9998112
963	927369	893056347	310322413	9875113	994	988036	982107784	315277655	9999959
964	929296	895841344	310483494	9878530	995	990025	985071875	315436206	9998305
965	931225	898632125	310644491	9881945	996	992016	988047936	315594677	9996649
966	933156	901428696	310805405	9885357	997	994009	991026973	315753068	9994990
967	935089	904231063	310966236	9888767	998	996004	994011992	315911380	9993329
968	937024	907039232	311126984	9892175	999	998001	997006299	316069613	9991666
969	938961	909853209	311287648	9895580	1000	1000000	1000000000	316227766	10000000

The following rules are for finding the squares, cubes, and roots of numbers exceeding 1000.

To find the square of any number divisible without a remainder. Rule.—Divide the given number by such a number from the foregoing table as will divide it without a remainder; then the square of the quotient, multiplied by the square of the number found in the table, will give the answer.

Example.—What is the square of 2000? 2000, divided by 1000, a number found in the table, gives a quotient of 2, the square of which is 4, and the square of 1000 is 1,000,000, therefore:

$$4 \times 1,000,000 = 4,000,000: \text{the Ans.}$$

Another Example.—What is the square of 1230? 1230, being divided by 123, the quotient will be 10, the square of which is 100, and the square of 123 is 15,129, therefore:

$$100 \times 15,129 = 1,512,900: \text{the Ans.}$$

To find the square of any number not divisible without a remainder. Rule.—Add together the squares of such two adjoining numbers from the table as shall together equal the given number, and multiply the sum by 2; then this product, less 1, will be the answer.

Example.—What is the square of 1487? The adjoining numbers, 743 and 744, added together, equal the given number, 1487, and the square of 743 = 552,049, the square of 744 = 553,536, and these added = 1,105,585, therefore:

$$1,105,585 \times 2 = 2,211,170 - 1 = 2,211,169: \text{the Ans.}$$

To find the cube of any number divisible without a remainder. Rule.—Divide the given number by such a number from the foregoing table as will divide

it without a remainder ; then the cube of the quotient, multiplied by the cube of the number found in the table, will give the answer.

Example.—What is the cube of 2700? 2700, being divided by 900, the quotient is 3, the cube of which is 27 and the cube of 900 is 729,000,000, therefore :

$$27 \times 729,000,000 = 19,683,000,000 : \text{the Ans.}$$

To find the square or cube root of numbers higher than is found in the table.

Rule.—Select, in the column of squares or cubes, as the case may require, that number which is nearest the given number ; then the answer, when decimals are not of importance, will be found directly opposite, in the column of numbers.

Example.—What is the square root of 87,620? In the column of squares, 87,616 is nearest to the given number ; therefore, 296, immediately opposite in the column of numbers, is the answer, nearly.

Another example.—What is the cube root of 110,591? In the column of cubes, 110,592 is found to be nearest to the given number ; therefore, 48, the number opposite, is the answer, nearly.

To find the cube root more accurately. Rule.—Select from the column of cubes that number which is nearest the given number, and add twice the number so selected to the given number ; also, add twice the given number to the number selected from the table. Then, as the former product is to the latter, so is the root of the number selected to the root of the number given.

Example.—What is the cube root of 9200? The nearest number in the column of cubes is 9261, the root of which is 21, therefore :

9261	9200
2	2
18522	18400
9200	9261

As 27,722 is to 27,661, so is 21 to 20.953 +, the Ans.

Thus, $27,001 \times 21 = 580,881$, and this divided by 27,722 = 20.953 +.

To find the square or cube root of a whole number with decimals. Rule.—Subtract the root of the whole number from the root of the next higher number, and multiply the remainder by the given decimal ; then the product, added to the root of the given whole number, will give the answer correctly to three places of decimals in the square root, and to seven in the cube root.

Example.—What is the square root of 11.14? The square root of 11 is 3.3166, and the square root of the next higher number, 12, is 3.4641 ; the former from the latter, the remainder is 0.1475, and this by 0.14 equals 0.02065. This added to 3.3166, the sum, 3.33725, is the square root of 11.14.

To find the roots of decimals by the use of the table. Rule.—Seek for the given decimal in the column of numbers, and opposite in the columns of roots will be found the answer, correct as to the figures, but requiring the decimal point to be shifted. The transposition of the decimal point is to be performed thus : For every place the decimal point is removed in the root, remove it in the number two places for the square root and three places for the cube root.

Examples.—By the table, the square root of 86.0 is 9.2736, consequently by the rule the square root of 0.86 is 0.92736. The square root of 9. is 3., hence the square root of 0.09 is 0.3. For the square root of 0.0657 we have 0.25632, found opposite No. 657. So, also, the square root of 0.000927 is 0.030446, found opposite No. 927. And the square root of 8.73 (whole number with decimals) is 2.9546, found opposite No. 873. The cube root of 0.8 is 0.928, found at No. 800; the cube root of 0.08 is 0.4308, found opposite No. 80, and the cube root of 0.008 is 0.2, as 2.0 is the cube root of 8.0. So also the cube root of 0.047 is 0.36088, found opposite No. 47.

RULES FOR THE REDUCTION OF DECIMALS.

To reduce a fraction to its equivalent decimal. Rule.—Divide the numerator by the denominator, annexing cyphers as required.

Example.—What is the decimal of a foot equivalent to three inches?

3 inches is $\frac{3}{12}$ of a foot, therefore :

$$\begin{array}{r} \frac{3}{12} \dots\dots 12 \overline{) 3.00} \\ \underline{24} \\ .25 \text{ Ans.} \end{array}$$

Another example.—What is the equivalent decimal of $\frac{7}{8}$ of an inch?

$$\begin{array}{r} \frac{7}{8} \dots\dots 8 \overline{) 7.000} \\ \underline{56} \\ .875 \text{ Ans.} \end{array}$$

To reduce a compound fraction to its equivalent decimal. Rule.—In accordance with the preceding rule, reduce each fraction, commencing at the lowest, to the decimal of the next higher denomination, to which add the numerator of the next higher fraction, and reduce the sum to the decimal of the next higher denomination, and so proceed to the last; and the final product will be the answer.

Example.—What is the decimal of a foot equivalent to five inches, $\frac{3}{8}$ and $\frac{1}{16}$ of an inch?

The fractions in this case are, $\frac{1}{2}$ of an eighth, $\frac{3}{8}$ of an inch, and $\frac{1}{16}$ of a foot, therefore :

$$\begin{array}{r} \frac{1}{2} \dots\dots\dots 2 \overline{) 1.0} \\ \underline{2} \\ .5 \\ \underline{3} \text{ eighths.} \\ \frac{3}{8} \dots\dots\dots 8 \overline{) 3.5000} \\ \underline{24} \\ .4375 \\ \underline{5} \text{ inches.} \\ \frac{1}{16} \dots\dots\dots 12 \overline{) 5.437500} \\ \underline{48} \\ .453125 \text{ Ans.} \end{array}$$

The process may be condensed, thus : write the numerators of the given

fractions, from the least to the greatest, under each other, and place each denominator to the left of its numerator, thus :

$$\begin{array}{r|l}
 \frac{1}{2} \dots\dots 2 & 1.0 \\
 \frac{1}{8} \dots\dots 8 & 3.5000 \\
 \frac{1}{12} \dots\dots 12 & 5.437500 \\
 \hline
 & .453125 \text{ Ans.}
 \end{array}$$

To reduce a decimal to its equivalent in terms of lower denominations. Rule.—Multiply the given decimal by the number of parts in the next less denomination, and point off from the product as many figures to the right hand as there are in the given decimal ; then multiply the figures pointed off by the number of parts in the next lower denomination, and point off as before, and so proceed to the end ; then the several figures pointed off to the left will be the answer.

Example.—What is the expression in inches of 0.390625 feet ?

$$\begin{array}{rcl}
 \text{Feet } 0.390625 & & \\
 \hline
 & 12 \text{ inches in a foot.} & \\
 \text{Inches } 4.687500 & & \\
 \hline
 & 8 \text{ eighths in an inch.} & \\
 \text{Eighths } 5.5000 & & \\
 \hline
 & 2 \text{ sixteenths in an eighth.} & \\
 \text{Sixteenth } 1.0 & & \\
 \hline
 & \text{Ans., 4 inches, } \frac{1}{2} \text{ and } \frac{1}{16}. &
 \end{array}$$

Another example.—What is the expression, in fractions of an inch of 0.6875 inches?

$$\begin{array}{rcl}
 \text{Inches } 0.6875 & & \\
 \hline
 & 8 \text{ eighths in an inch.} & \\
 \text{Eighths } 5.5000 & & \\
 \hline
 & 2 \text{ sixteenths in an eighth.} & \\
 \text{Sixteenth } 1.0 & & \\
 \hline
 & \text{Ans., } \frac{1}{2} \text{ and } \frac{1}{16}. &
 \end{array}$$

TABLE OF CIRCLES.

(From Gregory's Mathematics.)

From this table may be found by inspection the area or circumference of a circle of any diameter, and the side of a square equal to the area of any given circle from 1 to 100 inches, feet, yards, miles, etc. If the given diameter is in inches, the area, circumference, etc., set opposite, will be inches; if in feet, then feet, etc.

Diam.	Area.	Circum.	Side of equal sq.	Diam.	Area.	Circum.	Side of equal sq.
.25	49908	78539	22155	.75	9076257	3377212	952633
.5	19635	157079	44311	11	9503317	3155751	971819
.75	44178	235619	66467	.25	9940195	3534291	997005
1	78539	314159	88622	.5	10386800	3612831	1049160
.25	122718	392699	110778	.75	10843403	3691371	1041316
.5	176714	471238	133034	12	11309733	3769911	1063472
.75	240528	549775	155082	.25	11785881	3844451	1085627
2	314159	628318	177245	.5	12271816	3926990	1107783
.25	397607	706858	199401	.75	12767628	4005530	1129939
.5	490873	785394	221556	13	13273228	4084070	1152095
.75	593257	863937	243712	.25	13788616	4162610	1174250
3	706858	942477	265868	.5	14313881	4241150	1196406
.25	820576	1021017	288023	.75	14848934	4319689	1218562
.5	942477	1099557	310179	14	15393804	4398229	1240717
.75	1104466	1178097	332335	.25	15948491	4476769	1262873
4	1256637	1256637	354490	.5	16512996	4555309	1285029
.25	1418625	1335176	376646	.75	17087318	4633849	1307184
.5	1590431	1413716	398802	15	17671458	4712388	1329340
.75	1772054	1492256	420957	.25	18265416	4790928	1351496
5	1963495	1570796	443113	.5	18869190	4869468	1373651
.25	2164753	1649336	465269	.75	19482783	4948008	1395807
.5	2375829	1727875	487424	16	20106192	5026548	1417963
.75	2596722	1806415	509580	.25	20739420	5105088	1440118
6	2827433	1884955	531736	.5	21382464	5183627	1462274
.25	3067961	1963495	553891	.75	22035327	5262167	1484430
.5	3318307	2042035	576047	17	22698006	5340707	1506585
.75	3578470	2120575	598203	.25	23370504	5419247	1528741
7	3848456	2199114	620358	.5	24052818	5497787	1550897
.25	4128249	2277654	642514	.75	24744950	5576326	1573052
.5	4417861	2356194	664670	18	25446900	5654866	1595208
.75	4717297	2434734	686825	.25	26158667	5733406	1617364
8	5026548	2513274	708981	.5	26880252	5811946	1639519
.25	5335616	2591813	731137	.75	27611654	5890486	1661675
.5	5654501	2670353	753292	19	28352873	5969026	1683831
.75	6013201	2748893	775448	.25	29103910	6047565	1705986
9	6381725	2827433	797604	.5	29864765	6126105	1728142
.25	6760063	2905973	819759	.75	30635437	6204645	1750298
.5	7088218	2984513	841915	20	31415926	6283185	1772453
.75	7466191	3063052	864071	.25	32206233	6361725	1794609
10	7853981	3141592	886226	.5	33006357	6440264	1816765
.25	8251589	3220132	908382	.75	33816299	6518804	1838920
.5	8659014	3298672	930538	21	34636059	6597344	1861076

Diam.	Area.	Circum.	Side of equal sq.	Diam.	Area.	Circum.	Side of equal sq.
21-25	354-65635	66-75884	18-83232	38-	1134-11494	119-38052	33-67662
5	363-05030	67-54424	19-053-7	-25	1149-08660	120-16501	33-89817
-75	371-54241	68-32964	19-27543	-5	1164-15642	120-95131	34-11973
22-	380-13271	69-11503	19-49699	-75	1179-32442	121-73671	34-34129
-25	388-82117	69-90843	19-71854	39-	1194-59060	122-52211	34-56285
-5	397-60782	70-68583	19-94010	-25	1209-95195	123-30751	34-78440
-75	406-49263	71-47123	20-16166	-5	1225-11748	124-09290	35-00596
23-	415-17532	72-25663	20-38321	-75	1240-27818	124-87830	35-22752
-25	424-55679	73-04202	20-60477	40-	1255-63704	125-66370	35-44907
-5	433-73613	73-82742	20-82633	-25	1272-30411	126-44910	35-67063
-75	443-01365	74-61282	21-04789	-5	1288-24933	127-23450	35-89219
24-	452-38934	75-39822	21-26944	-75	1304-23273	128-01990	36-11374
-25	461-80320	76-18362	21-49100	41-	1320-25431	128-80529	36-33530
-5	471-14324	76-96902	21-71255	-25	1336-40406	129-59069	36-55686
-75	481-10546	77-75441	21-93411	-5	1352-65198	130-37609	36-77841
25-	490-87385	78-53981	22-15567	-75	1368-90808	131-16149	36-99997
-25	500-74041	79-32521	22-37722	42-	1385-44236	131-94689	37-22153
-5	510-70515	80-11061	22-59878	-25	1401-98480	132-73228	37-44308
-75	520-76806	80-89601	22-82034	-5	1418-62543	133-51768	37-66464
26-	530-92915	81-68140	23-04190	-75	1435-36423	134-30308	37-88620
-25	541-18842	82-46680	23-26345	45-	1452-20120	135-08848	38-10775
-5	551-54586	83-25220	23-48501	-25	1469-13615	135-87388	38-32931
-75	562-00147	84-03760	23-70657	-5	1486-16967	136-65928	38-55087
27-	572-55326	84-82300	23-92812	-75	1503-30117	137-44467	38-77242
-25	583-20722	85-60839	24-14968	44-	1520-53084	138-23007	38-99398
-5	593-65736	86-39379	24-37124	-25	1537-85869	139-01547	39-21554
-75	604-80567	87-17919	24-59279	-5	1556-28471	139-80087	39-43709
28-	615-75216	87-96459	24-81435	-75	1572-80920	140-58627	39-65865
-25	626-79582	88-74999	25-03591	45-	1589-43128	141-37166	39-88021
-5	637-93665	89-53539	25-25746	-25	1608-15182	142-15706	40-10176
-75	649-18066	90-32078	25-47902	-5	1625-97054	142-94246	40-32332
29-	660-51985	91-10618	25-70058	-75	1643-88741	143-72786	40-54488
-25	671-65721	91-89158	25-92213	46-	1661-90251	144-51326	40-76643
-5	683-42275	92-67698	26-14359	-25	1680-01575	145-29866	40-98799
-75	695-12646	93-46238	26-36525	-5	1698-22717	146-08405	41-20955
30-	706-85831	94-24777	26-58680	-75	1716-53677	146-86945	41-43110
-25	718-68840	95-03317	26-80836	47-	1734-94454	147-65485	41-65266
-5	730-61664	95-81857	27-02992	-25	1753-35048	148-44025	41-87422
-75	742-64005	96-60397	27-25147	-5	1772-05460	149-22565	42-09577
31-	754-76763	97-38937	27-47303	-75	1790-75649	150-01104	42-31733
-25	766-99035	98-17477	27-69459	48-	1809-56746	150-79644	42-53889
-5	779-31132	98-96016	27-91614	-25	1828-45601	151-58184	42-76044
-75	791-73943	99-74556	28-13770	-5	1847-45282	152-36724	42-98200
32-	804-24771	100-53096	28-35926	-75	1866-54782	153-15264	43-20356
-25	816-86317	101-31636	28-58081	49-	1885-74099	153-93804	43-42511
-5	829-57681	102-10176	28-80237	-25	1905-83223	154-72344	43-64667
-75	842-38861	102-88715	29-02393	-5	1924-42484	155-50883	43-86823
33-	855-29859	103-67255	29-24548	-75	1943-90354	156-29423	44-08978
-25	868-30675	104-45795	29-46704	50-	1963-42510	157-07963	44-31134
-5	881-41308	105-24335	29-68860	-25	1983-17944	157-86503	44-53290
-75	894-61759	106-02875	29-91015	-5	2002-36166	158-65042	44-75445
34-	907-92027	106-81415	30-13171	-75	2022-84205	159-43582	44-97601
-25	921-32113	107-59954	30-35327	51-	2042-82062	160-22122	45-19757
-5	934-82016	108-38494	30-57482	-25	2062-89735	161-00662	45-41912
-75	948-41736	109-17034	30-79638	-5	2083-07227	161-79202	45-64068
35-	962-11275	109-95574	31-01794	-75	2103-31526	162-57741	45-86224
-25	975-50630	110-74114	31-23949	52-	2123-71663	163-36281	46-08380
-5	989-79803	111-52653	31-46105	-25	2144-18607	164-14821	46-30535
-75	1003-78794	112-31193	31-68261	-5	2164-75308	164-93361	46-52691
36-	1017-87601	113-09733	31-90416	-75	2185-41947	165-71901	46-74847
-25	1032-46227	113-88273	32-12572	53-	2206-18344	166-50441	46-97003
-5	1046-31670	114-66813	32-34728	-25	2227-04557	167-28980	47-19158
-75	1060-72330	115-45353	32-56883	-5	2248-00589	168-07520	47-41314
37-	1075-21008	116-23892	32-79038	-75	2269-06138	168-86060	47-63469
-25	1089-78903	117-02432	33-01193	54-	2290-22104	169-64600	47-85625
-5	1104-46616	117-80972	33-23350	-25	2311-47548	170-43140	48-07780
-75	1119-24147	118-59512	33-45506	-5	2332-82889	171-21679	48-29936

TABLE OF CIRCLES.

651

Diam.	Area.	Circum.	Side of equal sq.	Diam.	Area.	Circum.	Side of equal sq.
54-75	2354-28898	172-60219	48-52082	71-5	4015-15176	224-62347	63-36522
55-	2375-82141	172-78759	48-71218	-75	4043-27883	225-10-27	63-58678
-25	2397-47698	173-57299	48-96403	72-	4071-58407	226-19467	63-80833
-5	2419-22269	174-35839	49-18559	-25	4099-82759	226-38006	64-02889
-75	2441-06657	175-14379	49-40715	-5	4128-21909	227-76546	64-25115
56-	2463-00864	175-92918	49-62870	-75	4156-76886	228-55086	64-47300
-25	2485-01887	176-71458	49-85026	73-	4185-38681	229-33626	64-69456
-5	2507-18724	177-49998	50-07182	-25	4214-10293	230-12166	64-91612
-75	2529-42347	178-28638	50-29337	-5	4242-91722	230-90706	65-13767
57-	2551-75863	179-07078	50-51493	-75	4271-82969	231-69245	65-35923
-25	2574-19156	179-85617	50-73649	74-	4300-84034	232-47785	65-58079
-5	2596-72267	180-64157	50-95804	-25	4329-94916	233-26325	65-80234
-75	2619-35196	181-42697	51-17960	-5	4359-15615	234-04865	66-02390
58-	2642-07942	182-21237	51-40116	-75	4388-96132	234-83405	66-24546
-25	2664-90505	182-99777	51-62271	75-	4417-86466	235-61944	66-46701
-5	2687-82886	183-78317	51-84427	-25	4447-36618	236-40484	66-68857
-75	2710-85081	184-56856	52-06583	-5	4476-96588	237-19024	66-91013
59-	2733-07100	185-35396	52-28738	-75	4506-66374	237-97564	67-13168
-25	2757-18333	186-13936	52-50894	76-	4536-15079	238-76104	67-35324
-5	2780-50584	186-92476	52-73050	-25	4566-35400	239-54643	67-57480
-75	2803-92053	187-71016	52-95205	-5	4596-34640	240-33183	67-79635
60-	2827-43334	188-49555	53-17361	-75	4626-43696	241-11723	68-01791
-25	2851-04442	189-28095	53-39517	77-	4656-62571	241-90263	68-23947
-5	2874-75392	190-06635	53-61672	-25	4686-91262	242-68803	68-46102
-75	2898-56100	190-85175	53-83828	-5	4717-29771	243-47343	68-68258
61-	2922-46666	191-63715	54-05984	-75	4747-78098	244-25882	68-90414
-25	2946-47029	192-42255	54-28139	78-	4778-36242	245-04422	69-12570
-5	2970-57220	193-20794	54-50295	-25	4809-04234	245-82962	69-34725
-75	2994-77224	193-99334	54-72451	-5	4839-81983	246-61502	69-56881
62-	3019-07551	194-77871	54-94606	-75	4870-79579	247-40042	69-79037
-25	3043-4637	195-56414	55-16762	79-	4901-68993	248-18581	70-01192
-5	3067-96157	196-35051	55-38918	-25	4932-74225	248-97121	70-23348
-75	3092-55135	197-13693	55-61073	-5	4963-91274	249-75661	70-45504
63-	3117-24531	197-92333	55-83229	-75	4995-18110	250-54201	70-67659
-25	3142-03444	198-70973	56-05385	80-	5026-54824	251-32741	70-89815
-5	3166-92174	199-49613	56-27540	-25	5058-01325	252-11281	71-11971
-75	3191-90722	200-28253	56-49696	-5	5089-57644	252-89820	71-34126
64-	3216-99687	201-06893	56-71852	-75	5121-23781	253-68360	71-56282
-25	3242-17270	201-85432	56-94007	81-	5152-99735	254-46900	71-78438
-5	3267-45270	202-63972	57-16163	-25	5184-85596	255-25440	72-00593
-75	3292-93888	203-42512	57-38319	-5	5216-81095	256-03980	72-22749
65-	3318-30724	204-21052	57-60475	-75	5248-86501	256-82520	72-44905
-25	3343-88176	204-99592	57-82630	82-	5281-01725	257-61059	72-67060
-5	3369-55447	205-77431	58-04786	-25	5313-26766	258-39599	72-89216
-75	3395-32534	206-55571	58-26942	-5	5345-61624	259-18139	73-11372
66-	3421-19439	207-33511	58-49097	-75	5378-06301	259-96679	73-33527
-25	3447-16162	208-11551	58-71253	83-	5410-60794	260-75219	73-55683
-5	3473-22762	208-89591	58-93409	-25	5443-25105	261-53758	73-77839
-75	3499-30060	209-67631	59-15564	-5	5475-99234	262-32298	73-99994
67-	3525-05235	210-45670	59-37720	-75	5508-83180	263-10838	74-22150
-25	3551-01228	211-23710	59-59876	84-	5541-76914	263-89378	74-44306
-5	3577-47034	212-01750	59-82031	-25	5574-80525	264-67918	74-66461
-75	3603-02665	212-79790	60-04187	-5	5607-93223	265-46457	74-88617
68-	3629-68110	213-57830	60-26343	-75	5641-37139	266-24997	75-10773
-25	3655-43373	214-35870	60-48498	85-	5674-50173	267-03537	75-32928
-5	3681-28153	215-13909	60-70654	-25	5707-93023	267-82077	75-55084
-75	3707-23360	215-91949	60-92810	-5	5741-45692	268-60617	75-77240
69-	3733-28065	216-69989	61-14965	-75	5775-08178	269-39157	75-99395
-25	3759-76027	217-48029	61-37121	86-	5808-80481	270-17696	76-21551
-5	3786-66047	218-26068	61-59277	-25	5842-62602	270-96236	76-43707
-75	3812-01115	219-04108	61-81432	-5	5876-34540	271-74776	76-65862
70-	3838-45100	219-82148	62-03588	-75	5910-56296	272-53316	76-88018
-25	3865-98002	220-60188	62-25744	87-	5944-57869	273-31856	77-10174
-5	3893-42522	221-38228	62-47899	-25	5978-89260	274-10395	77-32329
-75	3921-35959	222-16268	62-70055	-5	6013-20468	274-88935	77-54485
71-	3949-19214	223-05307	62-92211	-75	6047-61494	275-67475	77-76641
-25	3977-12246	223-83347	63-14366	88-	6082-12337	276-46015	77-98796

Diam.	Area.	Circum.	Side of equal sq.	Diam.	Area.	Circum.	Side of equal sq.
88.25	6116.74994	277.24555	78.20952	94.25	6976.74097	286.09510	83.52685
.5	6151.43476	278.03094	78.43103	.5	7011.40194	286.88050	83.74844
.75	6186.23772	278.81634	78.65263	.75	7050.36109	287.66590	83.97003
89.	6221.13885	279.60174	78.87419	95.	7084.21442	288.45130	84.19155
.25	6256.13815	280.38714	79.09575	.25	7125.57992	289.23670	84.41311
.5	6291.23563	281.17254	79.31730	.5	7163.02759	290.02209	84.63467
.75	6326.43129	281.95794	79.53886	.75	7200.57344	290.80749	84.85622
90.	6361.72512	282.74333	79.76042	96.	7238.22947	291.59289	85.07778
.25	6397.11712	283.52873	79.98198	.25	7275.97767	292.37829	85.29934
.5	6432.60730	284.31413	80.20353	.5	7313.82401	293.16369	85.52089
.75	6468.19536	285.09953	80.42509	.75	7351.76859	293.94908	85.74245
91.	6503.88219	285.88493	80.64669	97.	7389.81131	294.73448	85.96401
.25	6539.66649	286.67032	80.86829	.25	7427.95221	295.51988	86.18556
.5	6575.54977	287.45572	81.08976	.5	7466.19129	296.30528	86.40712
.75	6611.53382	288.24112	81.31132	.75	7504.52853	297.09068	86.62868
92.	6647.61005	289.02652	81.53287	98.	7542.96396	297.87608	86.85023
.25	6683.78745	289.81192	81.75442	.25	7581.49755	298.66147	87.07177
.5	6720.06303	290.59732	81.97599	.5	7620.12933	299.44687	87.29332
.75	6756.43678	291.38271	82.19754	.75	7658.85927	300.23227	87.51486
93.	6792.90871	292.16811	82.41910	99.	7697.68739	301.01767	87.73641
.25	6829.47881	292.95351	82.64066	.25	7736.61369	301.80307	87.95796
.5	6866.14709	293.73891	82.86221	.5	7775.63816	302.58846	88.17951
.75	6902.91354	294.52431	83.08377	.75	7814.76081	303.37386	88.40113
94.	6939.77817	295.30970	83.30533	100.	7853.98163	314.15926	88.62269

The following rules are for extending the use of the above table.

To find the area, circumference, or side of equal square, of a circle having a diameter of more than 100 inches, feet, etc. Rule.—Divide the given diameter by a number that will give a quotient equal to some one of the diameters in the table; then the circumference or side of equal square, opposite that diameter, multiplied by that divisor, or the area opposite that diameter, multiplied by the square of the aforesaid divisor, will give the answer.

Example.—What is the circumference of a circle whose diameter is 228 feet? 228, divided by 3, gives 76, a diameter of the table, the circumference of which is 238.761, therefore :

$$\begin{array}{r} 238.761 \\ 3 \\ \hline 716.283 \text{ feet. Ans.} \end{array}$$

Another example.—What is the area of a circle having a diameter of 150 inches? 150, divided by 10, gives 15, one of the diameters in the table, the area of which is 176.71458, therefore :

$$\begin{array}{r} 176.71458 \\ 100 = 10 \times 10 \\ \hline 17,671.4580 \text{ inches. Ans.} \end{array}$$

To find the area, circumference, or side of equal square, of a circle having an intermediate diameter to those in the table. Rule.—Multiply the given diameter by a number that will give a product equal to some one of the diameters in the table; then the circumference or side of equal square opposite that diameter, divided by that multiplier, or the area opposite that diameter divided by the square of the aforesaid multiplier, will give the answer.

Example.—What is the circumference of a circle whose diameter is $6\frac{1}{2}$, or 6.125 inches? 6.125, multiplied by 2, gives 12.25, one of the diameters of the table, whose circumference is 38.484, therefore :

$$\begin{array}{r} 2)38.484 \\ \hline 19.242 \text{ inches. Ans.} \end{array}$$

Another example.—What is the area of a circle, the diameter of which is 3.2 feet? 3.2, multiplied by 5, gives 16, and the area of 16 is 201.0619, therefore :

$$\begin{array}{r} 5 \times 5 = 25)201.0619(8.0424 + \text{feet. Ans.} \\ \hline 200 \\ \hline 106 \\ \hline 100 \\ \hline 61 \\ \hline 50 \\ \hline 119 \\ \hline 100 \\ \hline 19 \end{array}$$

Note.—The diameter of a circle, multiplied by 3.14159, will give its circumference ; the square of the diameter, multiplied by .78539, will give its area ; and the diameter, multiplied by .88622, will give the side of a square equal to the area of the circle.

TABLE SHOWING THE CAPACITY OF WELLS, CISTERNS, ETC.

The gallon of the State of New York, by an act passed April 11, 1851, is required to conform to the standard gallon of the United States government. This standard gallon contains 231 cubic inches. In conformity with this standard the following table has been computed.

One foot in depth of a cistern of

3 feet diameter will contain.....	52.872 gallons.
3 $\frac{1}{2}$ " "	71.965 "
4 " "	93.995 "
4 $\frac{1}{2}$ " "	118.963 "
5 " "	146.868 "
5 $\frac{1}{2}$ " "	177.710 "
6 " "	211.490 "
6 $\frac{1}{2}$ " "	248.207 "
7 " "	287.861 "
8 " "	375.982 "
9 " "	475.852 "
10 " "	587.472 "
12 " "	845.959 "

Note.—To reduce cubic feet to gallons, multiply by 7.48. The weight of a gallon of water is 8.355 lbs. To find the contents of a round cistern, multiply the square of the diameter by the height, both in feet, and this product by 5.875.

TABLE OF WEIGHTS.

MATERIALS USED IN THE CONSTRUCTION OR LOADING OF
BUILDINGS.

WEIGHTS PER CUBIC FOOT.

*As per Barlow, Gallier, Haswell, Hurst, Rankine, Tredgold, Wood
and the Author.*

MATERIAL.	FROM	TO	AVERAGE.	MATERIAL.	FROM	TO	AVERAGE.
WOODS.				Mahogany, St. Domingo....	45	65	55
Acacia.....	41	51	46	Maple.....	33	40	41
Alder.....	35	51	39	Mulberry.....	35	53	45
Apple-tree.....	49	51	50	Oak, Adriatic.....	60	65	63
Ash.....	41	57	49	Black Bog.....	60	65	63
Beech.....	39	53	46	Canadian.....	..	..	51
Birch.....	35	49	42	Dantec.....	..	..	47
Box.....	59	65	62	English.....	38	70	51
French.....	..	..	53	Live.....	57	79	68
Brazil-wood.....	..	..	64	Red.....	47	54	51
Cedar.....	27	35	31	White.....	43	57	50
Canadian.....	47	57	52	Olive.....	..	..	58
Pavane.....	30	38	34	Orange.....	..	..	44
Virginia Red.....	..	..	40	Pear-tree.....	40	44	42
Cherry.....	32	46	39	Pine, Georgia (pitch).....	38	53	48
Chestnut, Horse.....	29	41	35	Mar Forest.....	..	..	43
Sweet.....	27	55	41	Memel and Riga.....	29	35	32
Cork.....	..	..	15	Red.....	..	..	37
Cypress.....	27	41	34	Scotch.....	20	31	39
Spanish.....	..	..	40	White.....	21	35	28
Deal, Christiana.....	..	..	44	Yellow.....	27	30	33
English.....	..	..	29	Plum.....	41	40	45
(Norway Spruce).....	21	33	27	Poplar.....	21	37	30
Dogwood.....	..	..	47	Quince.....	..	..	44
Ebony.....	69	83	76	Redwood.....	..	..	23
Elder.....	..	..	43	Rosewood.....	..	..	45
Elm.....	33	59	46	Sassafras.....	..	..	30
Fir (Norway Spruce).....	21	33	27	Satinwood.....	55	50	57
(Red Pine).....	39	44	37	Spruce.....	24	26	30
Riga.....	..	..	47	Sycamore.....	30	40	38
Gum, Blue.....	..	..	53	Teak.....	41	61	51
Water.....	..	..	62	Tulip-tree.....	..	..	30
Hackmatack.....	..	..	37	Vine.....	77	83	80
Hemlock.....	21	31	26	Walnut, Black.....	20	40	33
Hickory.....	40	58	49	White.....	40	50	49
Lance-wood.....	41	63	52	Whitewood.....	25	30	27
Larch.....	31	35	33	Yew.....	..	..	50
Red.....	31	54	43	METALS.			
White.....	..	..	23	Bismuth, Cast.....	..	..	614
Lignum-vitæ.....	41	61	62	Brass, Cast.....	407	523	506
Locust.....	42	51	46	Gun-metal.....	..	..	544
Logwood.....	..	..	57	Plate.....	538	534	531
Mahogany, Honduras.....	35	40	38	Bronze.....	508	524	516

TABLE OF WEIGHTS.—(Continued.)

MATERIALS USED IN THE CONSTRUCTION OR LOADING OF BUILDINGS.

WEIGHTS PER CUBIC FOOT.

As per Barlow, Gallier, Haswell, Hurst, Rankine, Tredgold, Wood and the Author.

MATERIAL.	FROM	TO	AVERAGE.	MATERIAL.	FROM	TO	AVERAGE.
Copper, Cast.....	537	549	543	Brick-work.....	96	112	104
" Hammered.....	...	...	536	" dry.....	...	...	100
" Plate.....	...	...	511	" in Cement.....	...	...	112
Gold.....	...	...	1206	" in Mortar.....	100	120	110
" Standard.....	...	...	1108	Caen Stone.....	...	...	130
Gun-metal.....	...	...	609	Cement, Portland.....	...	...	81
Iron, Bar.....	475	487	481	" Roman, Cast.....	...	...	100
" Cast.....	434	474	454	" " and Sand.....	...	...	113
" Malleable.....	...	...	475	" equal parts.....	...	...	145
" Wrought.....	474	486	480	Chalk.....	116	174	145
Lead, Cast.....	...	...	709	Clay.....	119	125	122
" English Cast.....	...	...	717	" with Gravel.....	...	...	160
" Milled.....	...	...	713	Coal, Anthracite.....	90	102	96
Mercury at 32°.....	...	...	851	" Bituminous.....	76	90	83
" 60°.....	...	...	849	" Canoe.....	77	81	79
" 82°.....	...	...	837	" Cumberland.....	...	...	85
Nickel, Cast.....	...	...	488	Coke.....	46	62	54
Pewter.....	...	...	453	Concrete, Cement.....	125	125	130
Platina, Crude.....	...	...	975	Coquina.....	...	...	100
" Pure.....	...	...	1345	Earth, Common.....	95	125	110
" Rolled.....	...	...	1370	" Loamy.....	...	...	126
Plumbago.....	...	...	142	" with Gravel.....	...	...	250
Silver, Parisian Standard.....	...	...	636	Emery.....	...	...	160
" Pure Cast.....	...	...	655	Feldspar.....	...	...	185
" " Hammered.....	...	...	658	Flagging, Silver Gray.....	...	...	163
" Standard.....	...	...	644	Flint.....	...	...	160
Steel.....	486	493	489	Glass, Crown.....	155	165	160
Tin, Cast.....	456	463	462	" Flint.....	171	195	183
Zinc, Cast.....	499	449	489	" Green.....	...	...	163
STONES, EARTHS, ETC.				" Plate.....	153	171	163
Alabaster.....	165	180	173	" White.....	167	181	174
Asphalt, Gritted.....	...	...	166	Granite.....	128	172	165
Asphaltum.....	...	...	80	" Aberdeen.....	...	...	164
Barytes, Sulphate of.....	57	103	80	" Egyptian Red.....	...	...	185
Basalt.....	250	304	277	" Guernsey.....	...	...	166
Bath Stone.....	155	187	171	" Quincy.....	...	...	105
Béton Coignet.....	122	156	139	Gravel.....	90	120	134
Béton Coignet.....	122	156	139	Grindstone.....	...	...	140
Blue Stone, Common.....	124	134	129	Gypsum.....	135	141	138
Brick.....	...	...	160	Lime, Unslaked.....	...	...	52
" Fire.....	85	110	102	Limestone.....	139	159	160
" " common hard.....	...	...	138	" Aubigné.....	...	...	146
" " N. R. common hard.....	...	...	107	" Limerick.....	...	...	162
" " Salmon.....	...	...	100	Marble.....	161	178	170
" Philadelphia Front.....	...	...	105	" Brocatel.....	...	...	166
				" Carrara.....	...	...	170

TABLE OF WEIGHTS.—(Continued.)

MATERIALS USED IN THE CONSTRUCTION OR LOADING OF BUILDINGS.

WEIGHTS PER CUBIC FOOT.

As per Barlow, Gallier, Haswell, Hurst, Rankine, Tredgold, Wood and the Author.

MATERIAL.	FROM	TO	AVERAGE.	MATERIAL.	FROM	TO	AVERAGE.
Marble, Enstchester.....	167	178	173	Serpentine.....	...	...	165
" Egyptian.....	...	...	167	" Chester, Pa.....	...	...	144
" French.....	...	...	166	" Green.....	...	...	152
" Italian.....	165	169	167	Shingle.....	...	...	95
Marl.....	100	179	140	Slate.....	337	381	159
Masonry.....	110	149	125	" Common.....	...	...	162
Mica.....	...	...	175	" Cornwall.....	...	...	157
Millstone.....	...	...	155	" Welsh.....	...	...	180
Mortar.....	87	109	98	Stone, Artificial.....	120	150	135
" dry.....	83	128	103	" Paving.....	...	...	151
" new.....	...	...	107	Stone-work.....	120	160	140
" Hair, incl. Lath and	...	...	...	" Hewn.....	...	...	160
" Nails, per foot sup.	7	11	9	" Rubble.....	...	...	140
" Hair, dry.....	...	...	86	Sulphur, Melted.....	...	...	124
" new.....	...	...	105	Tiles, Common plain.....	...	...	115
" Sand and Lime paste.....	...	...	100	Trap Rock.....	...	...	170
" " " " " " "	...	...	...	Tufa, Roman.....	...	...	76
" well beat together.....	...	...	118				
Peat, Hard.....	...	...	63	MISCELLANEOUS.			
Petrified Wood.....	...	...	146	Ashes, Wood.....	...	...	58
Pitch.....	...	...	72	Bark, Peruvian.....	...	...	49
Plaster, Cast.....	...	...	80	Butter.....	...	...	59
Porphyry, Green.....	...	...	180	Camphor.....	...	...	62
" Red.....	...	...	175	Charcoal.....	17	34	26
Portland Stone.....	132	161	147	Cotton, baled.....	14	25	20
Pumice-stone.....	...	...	56	Fat.....	...	...	58
Puzzolana.....	...	...	165	Gunpowder.....	52	62	57
Quartz, Crystallized.....	...	...	165	Gutta-percha.....	...	...	61
Rotten-stone.....	...	...	124	Hay, Fald.....	29	24	17
Sand, Coarse.....	...	...	112	India Rubber.....	56	66	61
" Common.....	92	118	105	Iringlass.....	...	...	69
" Dry.....	90	120	105	Ivory.....	...	...	111
" Moist.....	113	128	123	Plaster of Paris.....	...	...	73
" Mortar.....	...	...	105	Plumbago.....	...	...	131
" Pit.....	92	101	97	Red Lead.....	...	...	559
" Quartz.....	...	...	172	Resin.....	...	...	68
" with Gravel.....	...	...	126	Rock Crystal.....	...	...	171
Sandstone.....	130	158	144	Salt.....	...	...	133
" Amherst, O.....	...	...	133	Saltpetre.....	...	...	131
" Belleville, N. J.....	...	...	142	Snow.....	8	20	14
" Berea, O.....	...	...	134	Sugar.....	60	100	80
" Dorchester, N. S.....	...	...	141	Water, Rain.....	...	...	62
" Little Falls, N. J.....	...	...	134	" Sea.....	...	...	64
" Marietta, O.....	...	...	162	Whalebone.....	...	...	81
" Middletown, Ct.....	...	...	150				

INDEX.

	PAGE		PAGE
Abcissas of Axes, Ellipse.....	484	Algebra, Progression, Arithmeti-	
Abutments, Bridges, Strength of.	227	cal.....	432
Abutments, Houses, Strength of..	53	Algebra, Progression, Geometrical	435
Acute Angle Defined.....	349, 544	Algebra, Proportion Essential....	347
Acute-angled Triangle Defined...	545	Algebra, Proportionals, Lever	
Acute or Lancet Arch.....	51	Formula.....	421
Algebra, Addition.....	398	Algebra, Quantities, Addition and	
Algebra, Application of.....	393	Subtraction.....	424
Algebra, Binomial, Multiplica-		Algebra, Quantities, Division of.	424
tion of.....	409	Algebra, Quantities, Multiplica-	
Algebra, Binomial, Square of a... 429		tion of	424
Algebra, Binomial, Squaring a... 410		Algebra, Quantities with Negative	
Algebra Defined.....	392	Exponents.....	423
Algebra, Denominator, Least		Algebra, Quantity, Raising to any	
Common....	404	Power.....	423
Algebra, Division, the Quotient..	419	Algebra, Radicals, Extraction of..	425
Algebra, Division, Reduction....	419	Algebra, Rules are General.....	394
Algebra, Division, Reverse of		Algebra, Rules, Useful Construc-	
Multiplication	418	ting.....	394
Algebra, Factors, Multiplication		Algebra, Signs.....	397
of Two and Three.....	409	Algebra, Signs, Arithmetical Pro-	
Algebra, Factors, Multiplication		cess by.....	396
of Three	408	Algebra, Signs, Changed when	
Algebra, Factors, Squaring Differ-		Subtracted.....	400
ence of Two.....	412	Algebra, Signs, Multiplication of	
Algebra, Fractions Added and		Plus and Minus... ..	415
Subtracted.....	403	Algebra, Squares on Right-Angled	
Algebra, Fractions, Denominators	407	Triangle.....	417
Algebra, Fractions Subtracted... 405		Algebra, Subtraction.....	398
Algebra, Hypothenuse, Equality		Algebra, Sum and Difference, Pro-	
of Squares on.....	416	duct of.....	413
Algebra, Letters, Customary Uses		Algebra, Symbols Chosen at Pleas-	
of.....	396	ure.....	395
Algebra, Logarithms Explained..	425	Algebra, Symbol, Transferring a..	399
Algebra, Logarithms, Examples in	426	Algebra, Triangle, Squares on	
Algebra, Multiplication, Graphical	408	Right-angled.....	417

	PAGE		PAGE
Alhambra, or Red House, Ancient Palace of the.....	11	Arch, Ogee.....	51
Ancient Cities, Historical Accounts of	6	Arch, Rampant.....	51
Ancient Monuments, their Architects.....	6	Arch, Span of an.....	52
Angle at Circumference of Circle.....	358	Arch, Spring in an.....	52
Angle Defined	544	Arch, Stone Bridges.....	230
Angle to Bracket of Cornice, To Obtain.....	343	Arch-stones, Bridges, Jointing... ..	233
Angle, To Measure a, Geometry..	348	Arch, Strength of.....	50
Angle rib to Polygonal Dome....	223	Arch of Titus, Composite Order..	28
Angle-rib, Shape of Polygonal Domes.....	223	Arch, Uses of.....	50
Amulet or Fillet, Classic Moulding.....	323	Arch, Voussoir in.....	52
Antæ Cap, Modern Moulding....	334	Architect and Builder, Construction Necessary to.....	56
Antique Columns, Forms of.....	48	Architect, Derivation of the Word	5
Antiquity of Building.....	5	Architects of Italy, 14th Century.	12
Arabian and Moorish Styles, Antiquities of	11	Architecture, Classic Mouldings in.....	323
Aræostyle, Intercolumniations... ..	20	Architecture, Ecclesiastical, Origin of.....	14
Arc of Circle Defined.....	547	Architecture, Egyptian, Character of.....	33
Arc of Circle, Length, Rule for..	475	Architecture, Egyptian, Features of.....	30
Arc, Radius of, To Find.....	561	Architecture, English, Cottage Style.....	35
Arc, Versed Sine, To Find (Geometry).....	561	Architecture, English, Early.....	11
Arcade.....	52	Architecture, Grecian and Roman	8
Arcade of Arches, Resistance in..	52	Architecture, Grecian, History of.	6
Arcade in Bridges, Strength of Piers.....	52	Architecture, Hindoo, Character of.....	30
Arch.....	50	Architecture, Order, Three Principal parts of.....	14
Arch, Acute or Lancet.....	51	Architecture, Principles of.....	44
Arch, Archivolt in.....	52	Architecture, Roman, Ruins of... ..	11
Arch, Bridge, Pressure on.....	51	Architecture in Rome Defined....	7
Arch, Building, Manner of.....	50	Architecture, Result of Necessity..	13
Arch, Catenary.....	51	Architrave Defined.....	15
Arch, Construction of.....	50	Area of Circle, To Find.....	475
Arch, Definitions and Principles of	52	Area of Post, Rule for Finding... ..	90
Arch, Extrados of.....	52	Area of Round Post, Rule.....	90
Arch, Form of	50	Area of Surface, Sliding Rupture, Rule.....	53
Arch, Formation in Bridges.....	51	Arithmetical Progression (Algebra).....	432
Arch, Hooke's Theory of an.....	50	Astragal, or Bead, Classic Moulding	323
Arch, Horseshoe or Moorish.....	51	Athens, Parthenon, Columns of..	45
Arch, Impost in.....	52	Attic, a Small Order, Top of Building.....	15
Arch, Intrados of.....	52		
Arch, Keystone, Position of.....	50		
Arch, Lateral Thrust in.....	52		

	PAGE		PAGE
Attic Story, Upper Story.....	15	Bottom Rail for Doors, Rule for	
Axes of Ellipse (Geometry).....	585	Width.....	316
Axiom Defined (Geometry).....	348	Bow, Mr., On Economics and	
Axis Defined.....	548	Construction.....	166
Balusters, Handrailing, Winding		Bowstring Girder, Cast-Iron,	
Stairs.....	310	Should not be Used.....	163
Baluster, Platform Stairs, Position		Brace, Length of, To Find (Geom-	
of.....	250	etry).....	579
Baluster in Round Rail, Winding		Braces, Rafters, etc., To Find	
Stairs.....	313	Length.....	580
Base, Shaft, and Capital Defined.	14	Braces in Roof, Rule for, Same as	
Bathing, Necessary Arrangements		Rafter.....	208
for.....	45	Breaking Weight Defined.....	84
Baths of Diocletian, Splendor of..	27	Brick or Stone Buildings.....	37
Bead, or Astragal, Classic Mould-		Brick Walls, Modern.....	49
ings.....	323	Bridge Abutments, Strength of...	227
Beams, Bearings of, Rules for		Bridge Arches, Formation of....	51
Pressure.....	75	Bridge Arch-stones, Joints of....	233
Beams, Breaking Weight on.....	74	Bridges, Construction of Various.	223
Beams, Framed, Rules for Thick-		Bridge, London, Age of Piles	
ness.....	130	under.....	229
Beams, Framed, Position of Mor-		Bridge Piers, Construction and	
tise.....	236	Sizes.....	228
Beams, Headers Defined.....	130	Bridge, Rib-built.....	224
Beams, Horizontal Thrust, Rules		Bridge, Rib, Construction of....	225
for.....	72	Bridge, Rib, Framed, Construction	
Beams, Inclined, Effect of Weight		and Distance.....	226
on.....	72	Bridge, Rib, Radials of.....	226
Beams, Load on, Effect of.....	74	Bridge, Rib, Table of Least Rise	
Beams, Splicing.....	235	in.....	224
Beams, Tail, Defined.....	130	Bridge, Rib, Rule for Area of....	225
Beams, Trimmers or Carriage, De-		Bridge, Rib, Rule for Depth of...	226
finied.....	130	Bridge, Roadway, Width of.....	227
Beams, Weight on, Proportion of.	130	Bridge, Stone, Arch Construction	230
Beams, White Pine, Table of		Bridge, Stone, Arch-stones, Table	
Weights.....	177	of Pressures on.....	230
Beams, Wooden, Use of Limited.	154	Bridge, Stone, Arch, Centres for,	
Bearings for Girders.....	141	Bad Construction.....	229
Binomials, Multiplication of (Al-		Bridge, Arch, Spring of.....	247
gebra).....	409	Bridge, Stone, Strength of Truss-	
Binomials, Square of (Algebra)...	429	ing.....	232
Binomials, Squaring (Algebra)...	410	Bridge, Weight, Greatest on.....	225
Bisect an Angle (Geometry).....	554	Bridge, without Tie-Beam.....	224
Bisect a Line (Geometry).....	549	Bridging, Cross-, Additional	
Blocking out Rail, Winding Stairs	301	Strength by.....	137
Blondel's Method, Rise and Tread		Bridging, Cross-, Defined.....	137
in Stairs.....	242	Bridging, Cross-, Resistance by	
		Adjoining Beams.....	139

	PAGE		PAGE
Building, Antiquity of.....	5	Cavetto, Roman Moulding.....	329
Building, Elementary Parts of a..	46	Ceiling, Cracking, How to Pre-	
Building, Expression in a.....	35	vent.....	125
Building by the Greeks.....	35	Centre of Circles, To Find (Ge-	
Building, Modes of, Defined.....	9	ometry).....	556
Building by the Romans.....	26	Centre of Gravity, Position of....	71
Building, Style of, Selected to Suit		Centre of Gravity, Rule for Find-	
Destination.....	35	ing, Examples.....	71
Butt-Joint on Handrail to Stairs..	303	Chimneys, How Arranged.....	43
Butt-Joint, Handrail, Stairs, Posi-		Chinese Structure, The Tent the	
tion of.....	307	Model of.....	14
Byzantine Style, Lombard.....	10	Chord of Circle Defined.....	547
		Chords Giving Equal Rectangles..	363
Campanile, or Leaning Tower,		Circle, Arc, Rule for Length of... 475	
Twelfth Century.....	12	Circle, Area, Circumference, etc.,	
Capital, Uppermost Part of a		Examples.....	652
Column.....	15	Circle, Area, Rule for, Length of	
Carriage Beam, Well-Hole in Mid-		Arc Given.....	473
dle, Find Breadth.....	136	Circle, Area, To Find.....	473
Carriage Beam, One Header, Rule		Circle, Circumference, To Find.. 473	
for Breadth.....	133	Circle Defined.....	546
Carriage Beam or Trimmer De-		Circle, Describe within Triangle.. 566	
finied.....	130	Circle, Diameter and Circumfer-	
Carriage Beam, Rule for Breadth.. 132		ence.....	472
Carriage Beam, Two Sets of Tail		Circle, Diameter and Perpendicu-	
Beams, Rule for Breadth..	134	lar.....	468
Caryatides, Description and Ori-		Circle Equal Given Circles, To	
gin of.....	26	Make.....	580
Cast-Iron Bowstring Girder,		Circle, Ordinates, Rule for..... 471	
Should not be Used.....	163	Circle, Radius from Chord and	
Cast-Iron Girder, Load at Middle,		Versed Sine.....	469
Size of Flanges.....	162	Circle, Sector, Area of.....	476
Cast-Iron Girder, Load Uniform,		Circle, Segment, Area of.....	477
Size of Flanges.....	163	Circle, Segment from Ordinates.. 479	
Cast-Iron Girder, Manner of Mak-		Circle, Segment, Rule for Area of 479	
ing a.....	161	Circles, Table of.....	649-652
Cast-Iron Girder, Proper Form... 161		Circle through Given Points..... 559	
Cast-Iron, Tensile Strength of... 161		Circular Headed Doors.....	320
Cast-Iron Untrustworthy.....	161	Circular Headed Doors, To Form	
Catenary Arch, Hooke's Theory of. 51		Soffit.....	321
Cathedral of Cologne.....	11	Circular Headed Windows.....	320
Cathedrals, Domes of.....	53	Circular Headed Windows, To	
Cathedrals of Pisa, Erection in		Form Soffit.....	321
1016.....	12	Circular Stairs, Face Mould for (1). 282	
Cavern, The Original Place of		Circular Stairs, Face Mould for (2). 285	
Shelter.....	13	Circular Stairs, Face Mould for (3). 287	
Cavetto or Cove, Classic Moulding 323		Circular Stairs, Face Mould, First	
Cavetto, Grecian Moulding.....	327	Section.....	283

	PAGE		PAGE
Circular Stairs, Falling Mould for Rail.....	281	Compression, Resistance to.....	77
Circular Stairs, Handrailing for ..	278	Compression, Resistance to Crushing and Bending.....	85
Circular Stairs, Plan of.....	279	Compression, Resistance to, Pressures Classified	83
Circular Stairs, Plumb Bevel Defined	282	Compression, Resistance to, Table of.....	79
Circular Stairs, Timbers Put in after Erection.....	253	Compression, Resistance to, in Proportion to Depth.....	101
Cisterns, Wells, etc., Table of Capacity of	653	Compression at Right Angles and Parallel to Length.....	206
City Houses, General Idea of....	42	Compression of Stout Posts.....	89
City Houses, Arrangements for...	37	Compression and Tension, Framed Girders.....	174
Civil Architecture Defined.....	5	Compression Transversely to Fibres.....	86
Classic Architecture, Mouldings in.....	323	Cone Defined	548
Classic Moulding, Annulet or Fillet.	323	Conic Sections.....	584
Classic Moulding, Astragal or Bead.....	323	Conjugate Axis Defined	548
Classic Moulding, Cavetto or Cove.....	323	Conjugate Diameters to Axes of Ellipse.....	487
Classic Moulding, Cyma-Recta...	324	Construction Essential	56
Classic Moulding, Cyma-Reversa.	324	Construction of Floors, Roof, etc., Economy Important.....	123
Classic Moulding, Ogee	324	Construction, Framing, Heavy Weight.....	56
Classic Moulding, Ovolo	323	Construction, Joints, Effect of Many.....	123
Classic Moulding, Scotia.....	323	Construction, Object of Defined..	123
Classic Moulding, Torus.....	323	Construction, Simplest Form Best.	123
Coffer Walls.....	49	Construction, Superfluous Material.....	56
Cohesive Strength of Materials...	76	Contents, Table of, General...613-624	
Collar Beam in Truss.....	238	Corinthian Capital, Fanciful Origin of.....	24
Cologne, Cathedral of.....	11	Corinthian Order Appropriate in Buildings.....	24
Columns, Antique, Form of	48	Corinthian Order, Character of....	16
Column, Base, Shaft and Capital.	14	Corinthian Order, Description of.	23
Columns, Egyptian, Dimensions, etc.....	33	Corinthian Order, Elegance of....	23
Column, Gothic Pillar, Form of..	48	Corinthian Order, The Favorite at Rome.....	27
Column, Outline of.....	47	Corinthian Order, Grecian Origin of.....	16
Columns, Parthenon at Athens, Forms of.....	48	Corinthian Order, Modification of.	27
Column or Pillar.....	47	Cornice, Angle Bracket, To Obtain the.....	343
Column, Resistance of	47	Cornice, Eaves, To Find Depth of.	335
Column, Shaft, Form of.....	47		
Column, Shaft, Swell of, Called Entasis.....	48		
Complex, or Ground Vault.....	52		
Composite Arch of Titus	28		
Composite, Corinthian or Roman Order.....	28		

	PAGE		PAGE
Cornice, Mouldings, Depth of....	342	Decimals, Reduction of, Examples	647
Cornice, Projection, To Find....	342	Decorated Style, 14th Century....	31
Cornice, Projecting Part of En-		Decoration, Attention to be given	
tablature.....	15	to.....	46
Cornice, Rake and Level Mould-		Decoration, Roman.....	27
ings, To Match.....	344	Deflection, Defined.....	112
Cornice, Shading, Rule for.....	611	Deflection, Differs in Different Ma-	
Cornice, Stucco, for Interior, De-		terials.....	113
signs.....	340	Deflection, Elasticity not Dimin-	
Corollary Defined (Geometry)....	348	ished by.....	112
Corollary of Triangle and Right		Deflection, Floor-beams, Dwell-	
Angle.....	355	ings, Dimensions.....	137
Cottage Style, English.,.....	35	Deflection, Floor-beams, First-	
Country-Seat, Style of a.....	37	class Stores, Dimensions.....	123
Cross-Bridging, Additional		Deflection, Floor-beams, Ordinary	
Strength by.....	137	Stores, Dimensions.....	127
Cross-Bridging, Furring Import-		Deflection, Lever, Principle of... 119	
ant.....	137	Deflection, Lever and Beam, Rela-	
Cross-Bridging, Resistance of Ad-		tion Between.....	119
joining Beams.....	139	Deflection, Lever, To Find, Load	
Cross- or Herring-Bone Bridging		at End.....	120
Defined.....	137	Deflection, Lever, Breadth or	
Cross-Furring Defined.....	125	Depth, Load at End.....	121
Cross-Strains, Resistance to....77, 99		Deflection, Lever, Load Uniform.	121
Crushing and Bending Pressure..	85	Deflection, Lever, Breadth or	
Crushing, Liability of Rafter to...	205	Depth, Load Uniform.....	122
Crushing Strength of Stout Posts.	89	Deflection, Lever, for Certain,	
Cube Root, Examples in.....	645	Load Uniform.....	122
Cubes, Squares and Roots, Table		Deflection, Load Uniform or at	
of.....	638-645	Middle, Proportion of.....	116
Cubic Feet to Gallons, To Reduce.	653	Deflection, Load Uniform, Breadth	
Cupola or Dome.....	53	and Depth.....	117
Curb or Mansard Roof.....	54	Deflection, Load Uniform or at	
Curvo Ellipse, Equations to.....	482	Middle, Proportion of.....	119
Curve Equilibrium of Dome.....	218	Deflection, in Proportion to	
Cylinder, Defined.....	549	Weight.....	112
Cylinder, Platform Stairs.....	248	Deflection, Resistance to, Rule	
Cylinder, Platform Stairs, Lower		for.....	113
Edge of.....	249	Deflection, Safe Weight for Pre-	
Cylinders and Prisms, Stair-Build-		vention.....	170
ing.....	257	Deflection, Weight at Middle,	
Cyma-Recta, Classic Moulding..	324	Breadth and Depth.....	114
Cyma-Reversa, Classic Moulding.	324	Deflection, Weight at Middle, for	
Cyma Recta, Grecian Moulding..	327	Certain.....	124
Cyma-Reversa, Grecian Moulding.	325	Deflection, Weight at Middle, Cer-	
		tain, for.....	116
Deafening, Weight per Foot.....	177	Deflection, Weight Uniform, for	
Decagon, Defined.....	546	Certain.....	117

	PAGE		PAGE
Deflection, Weight Uniform, Certain, for.....	118	Dome, Small, over Stairways, Form of.....	220
Denominator, Least Common (Algebra).....	404	Dome, Spherical, To Form.....	221
Denominator, Least Common (Fractions).....	384	Dome, St. Paul's, London. . . .	54
Dentils, Teeth-like Mouldings in Cornice	20	Dome, Strains on, Tendencies of.	219
Diagonal Crossing Parallelogram (Geometry).....	351	Domes, Wooden.....	54
Diagonal of Square Forming Octagon.....	357	Doors, Circular Head.....	320
Diagram of Forces, Example....	166	Doors, Circular Head, to Form Soffit.....	321
Diameter, Circle, Defined.....	547	Doors, Construction of.....	317
Diameter, Ellipse, Defined.....	549	Doors, Folding and Sliding, Proportions.....	316
Diastyle, Explanation of the Word	19	Doors, Front, Location of.....	320
Diastyle, Intercolumniation.....	20	Doors, Height, Rule for, Width Given.....	315
Diocletian, Baths, Splendor of....	27	Door Hanging, Manner of.....	317
Division, Fractions, Rule for....	389	Doors, Panel, Bottom and Lock Rail, Width.....	316
Division, by Factors (Fractions)..	381	Doors, Panel, Four Necessary...	317
Division, Quotient (Algebra).....	419	Doors, Panel, Mouldings, Width.	317
Division, Reduction (Algebra)...	419	Doors, Panel, Styles and Muntins, Width.....	316
Dodecagon, Defined.....	546	Doors, Panel, Top Rail, Width...	317
Dodecagon, To Inscribe.....	569	Doors, Stop for, How to Form...	317
Dodecagon, Radius of Circles (Polygons).....	452	Doors, Single and Double, height of.....	316
Dodecagon, Side and Area (Polygons).....	453	Doors, Trimmings Explained....	317
Dome, Abutments, Strength of...	53	Doors, Uses and Requirements of	315
Domes of Cathedrals.....	53	Doors, Width of.....	315
Dome, Character of.....	53	Doors, Should not be Winding...	317
Dome, Construction and Form of... :	216	Doors, Width and Height, Proportion of.....	315
Dome, Construction and Strength of.....	53	Doors, Width, Rule for, Height Given.....	316
Dome, Cubic Parabola computed	219	Doric Order, Character of.....	16
Dome or Cupola, the.....	53	Doric Order, Grecian Origin of..	16
Dome, Curve of Equilibrium, rule for.....	218	Doric Order, Modified by the Romans.....	27
Dome, Halle du Bled, Paris.....	54	Doric Order, Used by Greeks only at First.....	19
Dome, Pantheon at Rome.....	53	Doric Order, Peculiarities of....	17
Dome, Pendentives of.....	53	Doric Order, Rudeness of.....	30
Dome, Polygonal, Shape of Angle Rib.....	223	Doric Order, Specimen Buildings in.....	19
Dome, Ribbed, Form and Construction.....	217	Doric Temples, Fanciful Origin of.....	17
Dome, Scantling for, Table of Thickness.....	218	Doric Temples.....	19
		Drawing, Articles Required.....	536

	PAGE		PAGE
Drawing-board Better without Clamps.....	537	Elasticity of Materials.....	84
Drawing-board Liable to Warp, How Remedied.....	537	Elasticity not Diminished by Deflection.....	112
Drawing-board, Difficulty in Stretching Paper.....	539	Elasticity, Result of Exceeding Limit.....	120
Drawing-board, Ordinary Size....	536	Elevation, a Front View.....	37
Drawing, Diagrams aid Understanding.....	536	Elevated Tie-beam Roof Truss Objectionable.....	214
Drawing, Inking in.....	542	Ellipse, Area.....	483
Drawing, Laying Out the.....	541	Ellipse, Axes, Two, To Find, Diameter and Conjugate Given....	503
Drawing, the Paper.....	537	Ellipse Defined.....	481
Drawing in Pencil, To Make Lines	542	Ellipse, Equations to the Curve..	492
Drawing, Secure Paper to Board.	537	Ellipse, Major and Minor Axes Defined.....	481
Drawing, Shade Lining.....	543	Ellipse, Ordinates, Length of ...	491
Drawing, Stretching Paper.....	537	Ellipse, Parameter and Axis, Relation of.....	485
Durability in a Building.....	37	Ellipse, Practical Suggestions....	489
Dwelling, Arrangement of Rooms	38	Ellipse, Semi-major, Axis Defined	486
Dwellings, Floor-beams, To Find Dimensions	127	Ellipse, Subtangent Defined.....	486
Dwellings, Floor-beams, Safe Weight for.....	126	Ellipse, Tangent to Axes, Relation of.....	485
Dwelling-houses, Dimensions and Style.....	37	Ellipse, Tangent with Foci, Relation of.....	487
Eaves Cornice, Designs for.....	335	Ellipsis, Axes of, To Find (Geometry).....	585
Eaves Cornice, Rule for Depth...	335	Ellipsis, Conjugate Diameters (Geometry).....	503
Ecclesiastical Architecture, Pointed Style.....	11	Ellipsis Defined.....	548, 585
Ecclesiastical Style, Origin of....	14	Ellipsis, Diameter Defined.....	549
Echinus, Grecian Moulding.....	327	Ellipsis, Foci, To Find.....	586
Economy, Construction Floors, Roofs, Bridges.....	123	Ellipsis, by Intersecting Arcs....	590
Eddystone and Bell Rock Light House.....	48	Ellipsis, by Intersecting Lines...	588
Egyptian Architecture.....	30	Ellipsis, by Ordinates.....	588
Egyptian Architecture, Appropriate Buildings for.....	33	Ellipsis, Point of Contact with Tangent, To Find.....	593
Egyptian Architecture, Character of.....	33	Ellipsis, Proportionate Axes, to Describe with.....	594
Egyptian Architecture, Origin in Caverns.....	14	Ellipsis, Trammel, to Find, Axes Given.....	586
Egyptian Architecture, Principal Features of.....	30	Elliptical Arch, Joints, Direction of.....	233
Egyptian Columns, Dimensions and Proportions.....	33	English Architecture, Early.....	11
Egyptian Walls, Massiveness of..	33	English Cottage Style Extensively Used.....	35
Egyptian Works of Art	30	England and France, Fourteenth Century.....	12

	PAGE		PAGE
Entablature, above Columns and Horizontal.....	14	Flanges, Area of, Tubular Iron Girder.....	155
Entasis, Swell of Shaft of Column	48	Flanges, Area of Bottom, Tubular Iron Girder.....	159
Equal Angles Defined	349	Flanges, Load at Middle of Cast-iron Girder, Sizes.....	162
Equal Angles, Example in.....	350	Flanges, Load Uniform on Tubular Iron Girder, Sizes.....	156
Equal Angles, in Circle.....	358	Flanges, Proportion of, Tubular Iron Girder.....	157
Equal Angles (Geometry).....	553	Flexure, Compared with Rupture.....	84
Equilateral Rectangle, to Describe.....	568	Flexure of Rafter	205
Equilateral Triangle Defined (Geometry).....	545	Flexure, Resistance to, Defined..	145
Equilateral Triangle, to Construct (Geometry).....	568	Floor-arches, How Constructed..	153
Equilateral Triangle, to Describe (Geometry).....	566	Floor-arches, Tie-rods, Dwellings, Sizes.....	153
Equilateral Triangle, to Inscribe (Geometry).....	569	Floor-arches, Tie-rods, First-class Stores, Sizes.....	153
Equilateral Triangle (Polygons).....	445	Floor-beams, Distance from Centres, Sizes Fixed.....	129
Eustyle Defined.....	20	Floor-beams, Dwellings, Safe Weight for.....	126
Exponents, Quantities with Negative (Algebra).....	423	Floor-beams, Dwellings, Deflection Given, Sizes.....	127
Extrados of an Arch.....	52	Floor-beams, First-class Stores, Deflection Given, Sizes.....	128
Face Mould, Accuracy of, Winding Stairs.....	295	Floor-beams, Ordinary Stores, Deflection Given, Sizes.....	127
Face Mould, Curves Elliptical, Winding Stairs.....	301	Floor-beams, Stores, Safe Weight for.....	126
Face Mould, Drawing of, Winding Stairs.....	296	Floor-beams, Reference to Rules for Sizes.....	125
Face Mould, Sliding of, Winding Stairs.....	299	Floor-beams, Reference to <i>Transverse Strains</i>	126
Face Mould, Application of, Platform Stairs.....	275	Floor-beams, Proportion of Weight on All.....	130
Face Mould, a Simple, Kell's Method for	268	Floors Constructed, Single or Double.....	124
Factors, Multiplication (Algebra)	409	Floors, Fire-proof Iron, Action of Fire on.....	143
Factors, Two, Squaring Difference of (Algebra).....	412	Floors, Framed, Seldom Used...	124
Fibrous Structure of Materials...	76	Floors, Framed, Openings in.....	130
Figure Equal, Given Figure (Geometry).....	575	Floors, Headers, Defined.....	130
Figure, Nearly Elliptical, To Make (Geometry).....	591	Floors, Ordinary, Effect of Fire on.....	143
Fillet or Amulet, Classic Moulding.....	323	Floors, Solid Timber, Dwellings and Assembly, Depth.....	143
Fire-proof Floors, Action of Fire on.....	113		
Flanges, Cast-iron Girder.....	163		

	PAGE		PAGE
Floors, Solid Timber, First-class		Fractions Divided Graphically...	366
Stores, Depth.....	144	Fractions Graphically Expressed...	370
Floors, Solid Timber, to Make		Fractions, Improper, Defined...	380
Fire-proof.....	143	Fractions, Least Common Denom-	
Floors, Tail-beams Defined.....	130	inator.....	384
Floors, Trimmers or Carriage-		Fractions, Multiplication, Rule...	387
beams Defined.....	130	Fractions Multiplied Graphically...	386
Floors, Wooden, More Fire-proof		Fractions, Numerator and Denom-	
than Iron, Some Cases.....	143	inator.....	378
Flyers and Winders, Winding		Fractions, Reduce Mixed Num-	
Stairs.....	251	bers.....	381
Foci Defined.....	548	Fractions, Reduction to Lowest	
Foci of Ellipsis To Find.....	586	Terms.....	384
Foci of Ellipse, Tangent.....	487	Fractions Subtracted (Algebra)...	405
Force Diagram, Load on Each		Fractions, Subtraction Like De-	
Support.....	179	nominators.....	383
Force Diagram, Truss, Figs. 59,		Fractions, Unlike Denominators	
68 and 69.....	179	Equalized.....	383
Force Diagram, Truss, Figs. 60, 70		Framed Beams, Thickness of,	
and 71.....	180	Rules.....	130
Force Diagram, Truss, Figs. 61,		Framed Girder, Bays Defined....	167
72 and 73.....	181	Framed Girders, Compression and	
Force Diagram Truss, Figs. 63		Tension, Dimensions.....	174
74 and 75.....	183	Framed Girders, Construction	
Force Diagram, Truss, Figs. 64,		and Uses.....	160
77 and 78.....	184	Framed Girders, Height and	
Force Diagram, Truss, Figs. 65,		Depth.....	167
78 and 79.....	185	Framed Girders, Kinds of Pres-	
Force Diagram, Truss, Figs. 66,		sure.....	173
80 and 81.....	186	Framed Girders, Long, Construc-	
Forces, Parallelogram of.....	59	tion of.....	174
Forces, Composition of.....	66	Framed Girders, Panels on Under	
Forces, Composition, Reverse of		Chord, Table of.....	167
Resolution.....	67	Framed Girders, Ties and Struts,	
Forces, Resolution of.....	59	Effect of.....	174
Forces, Resolution of, Oblique		Framed Girders, Triangular Pres-	
Pressure.....	59	sure, Upper Chord.....	166
Foundations, Description of....	47	Framed Girders, Triangular Pres-	
Foundations in Marshes, Timbers		sure, Both Chords.....	171
Used.....	47	Framed Openings in Floors.....	130
Fractions, Addition, Like Denom-		Framing Beams, Effect of Splic-	
inators.....	382	ing.....	235
Fractions Added and Subtracted		Framing Roof Truss.....	237
(Algebra).....	403	Framing Roof Truss, Iron Straps,	
Fractions Changed by Division..	380	Size of.....	239
Fractions Defined.....	378	France and England, Fourteenth	
Fractions, Division, Rule for....	389	Century.....	12
Fractions, Division by Factors..	381	Friction, Effect of.....	52

	PAGE		PAGE
Frieze between Architrave and Cornice.....	15	Geometry, Square Equal Rectangle, To Make	581
Furring Defined.....	125	Geometry, Square Equal Given Squares, To make.....	577
Gable, a Pediment in Gothic Architecture.....	15	Geometry, Square Equal Triangle, To Make... ..	582
Gaining a Beam Defined.....	100	German or Romantic Style, Thirteenth and Fourteenth Centuries.	11
General Contents, Table of...613-624		Girder, Bearings, Space Allowed for.....	141
Geometrical Progression (Algebra).....	435	Girder, Bow-String, Cast-Iron, Should not be Used.....	163
Geometry, Angles of Triangle, Three, Equal Right Angle....	354	Girder, Bow-String, Substitute for.	163
Geometry Chords Giving Equal Rectangles.....	363	Girder, Construction with Long Bearings.....	140
Geometry Defined.....	544	Girder, Cast-Iron, Load Uniform, Flanges.....	163
Geometry, Divide a Given Line..	555	Girder, Cast-Iron, Load at Middle, Flanges.....	162
Geometry, Divisions in Line Proportionate.....	583	Girder, Cast-Iron, Proper Form of.....	161
Geometry, Elementary.....	347	Girder Defined, Position and Use of.....	140
Geometry, Equal Angles.....	553	Girder, Different Supports for....	140
Geometry, Equal Angles, Example.....	350	Girder, Dwellings, Sizes for.....	141
Geometry, Figure Equal to Given Figure, Construct.....	575	Girder, Framed, Bays Defined....	167
Geometry, Figure Nearly Elliptical by Compasses.....	591	Girders, Framed, Compression and Tension, Dimensions.....	174
Geometry, Measure an Angle....	348	Girder, Framed, Construction of..	140
Geometry Necessary in Handrailing, Stairs.....	257	Girder, Framed, Construction and Uses.....	166
Geometry, Opposite Angles Equal.	354	Girder, Framed, Construction of Long.....	174
Geometry, Parallel Lines.....	555	Girder, Framed, Kinds of Pressure.....	173
Geometry, a Perpendicular, To Erect.....	550	Girders, Framed, Height and Depth.....	167
Geometry, Perpendicular, let Fall a.	551	Girders, Framed, Panels on Under Chord, Table of.....	167
Geometry, Perpendicular, Erect at End of Line.....	551	Girders, Framed, Triangular Pressure Upper Chord....	168
Geometry, Perpendicular, Let Fall Near End of Line.....	553	Girders, Framed, Triangular Pressure Both Chords.....	171
Geometry, Plane Defined (Stairs).	257	Girders, Framed, and Tubular Iron.....	140
Geometry, Point of Contact.....	558	Girders, First-Class Stores, Sizes for.....	141
Geometry, Points, Three Given, Find Fourth.....	559	Girders, Sizes, To Obtain.....	141
Geometry, Right Line Equal Circumference.....	566		
Geometry, Right Lines, Proportion Between.....	584		
Geometry, Right Lines, Two Given, Find Third.....	582		

	PAGE		PAGE
Girders, Strengthening, Manner of.....	140	Grecian Orders Modified by the Romans.....	27
Girders, Supports, Length of, Rule.....	157	Grecian Origin of the Doric Order.....	16
Girders, Tubular Iron, Construction of.....	154	Grecian Origin of Ionic Order ...	16
Girders, Tubular Iron, Area of Flange, Load at Middle.....	154	Grecian Style in America.....	13
Girders, Tubular Iron, Area of Flange, Load at any Point.....	155	Grecian Styles, their Different Orders.....	16
Girders, Tubular Iron, Area of Flange, Load Uniform.....	156	Greek Architecture, Doric Order Used.....	19
Girders, Tubular Iron, Dwellings, Area of Bottom Flange.....	159	Greek Building.....	35
Girders, Tubular Iron, First-Class Stores, Area of Bottom Flange..	160	Greek Moulding, Form of.....	325
Girders, Tubular Iron, Rivets, Allowance for	157	Greek, Persian, and Caryatides Orders.....	24
Girders, Tubular Iron, Flanges, Proportion of.....	157	Greek Style Originally in Wood..	14
Girders, Tubular Iron, Shearing Strain.....	157	Greek Styles Only Known by Them.....	16
Girders, Tubular Iron, Web, Thickness of.....	158	Groined or Complex Vault.....	52
Girders, Weakening, Manner of..	140	Halle du Bled, Paris, Dome of...	54
Girders, Wooden, Objectionable.	154	Halls of Justice, N. Y. C., Specimen of Egyptian Architecture..	8
Girders, Wooden, Supporting, Manner of.....	154	Handrailing, Circular Stairs.....	278
Glossary of Terms.....	627-637	Handrailing, Platform Stairs. ...	269
Gothic Arches.....	51	Handrailing, Platform Stairs, Face Mould.....	264
Gothic Buildings, Roofs of.....	55	Handrailing, Platform Stairs, Large Cylinder.....	271
Gothic and Norman Roofs, Construction of.....	178	Handrailing Stairs, Geometry Necessary.....	257
Gothic Pillar, Form of.....	48	Handrailing Stairs, "Out of Wind" Defined.....	257
Gothic Style, Characteristics of...	12	Handrailing Stairs, Tools Used..	257
Goths, Ruins Caused by.....	12	Handrailing, Winding Stairs..	256, 259
Granular Structure of Materials..	76	Handrailing Winding Stairs, Balusters Under Scroll.....	310
Gravity, Centre of, Position.....	71	Handrailing, Winding Stairs, Centres in Square.....	308
Gravity, Centre of, Examples, and Rule for.....	71	Handrailing, Winding Stairs, Face for Scroll.....	311
Grecian Architecture, History of.	6	Handrailing, Winding Stairs, Falling Mould.....	310
Grecian Art, Elegance of.....	27	Handrailing Winding Stairs, General Considerations ...	258
Grecian Moulding, Cyma-Recta..	327	Handrailing Winding Stairs, Scroll.....	308
Grecian Moulding, Cyma-Reversa.....	328	Handrailing Winding Stairs, Scroll at Newel.....	309
Grecian Moulding, Echinus and Cavetto.....	327		
Grecian Moulding, Scotia.....	326		
Grecian Moulding, Torus.....	326		

	PAGE		PAGE
Handrailing, Winding Stairs, Scroll Over Curtail Step.....	309	Hut, Original Habitation	13
Handrailing, Winding Stairs, Scroll for Curtail Step.....	310	Hydraulic Method, Testing Woods.....	80
Headers, Breadth of.....	130	Hyperbola Defined.....	548, 585
Headers Defined.....	130	Hyperbola, Height, To Find, Base and Axis Given.....	585
Headers, Mortises, Allowance for Weakening by.....	131	Hyperbola by Intersecting Lines.	595
Headers, Stores and Dwellings, Same for Both.....	132	Hypothénuse, Equality of Squares (Algebra)	416
Hecadecagon, Complete Square (Polygons).....	458	Hypothénuse, Formula for (Trig- onometry).....	516
Hecadecagon, Radius of Circles (Polygons).....	455	Hypothénuse, Side, To Find (Ge- ometry).....	579
Hecadecagon, Rules (Polygons)..	459	Hypothénuse, Right Angled Tri- angle (Geometry).....	355
Hecadecagon, Side and Area (Polygons).....	457	Hypothénuse, Triangle (Trigo- nometry).....	518
Height and Projection, Numbers of an Order.....	16	Ichnographic Projection, Ground Plan.....	37
Hemlock, Weight per Foot Super- ficial.....	177	Improper Fractions Defined.....	380
Heptagon Defined.....	546	India Ink in Drawing.....	540
Herring-bone Bridging Defined...	137	Inertia, Moment of, Defined.....	145
Hexagon Defined.....	546	Inking-in Drawing.....	542
Hexagon, To Inscribe.....	569	Inside Shutters for Windows, Re- quirements.....	319
Hexagons, Radius of Circles....	447	Instruments in Drawing.....	540
Hexastyle, Intercolumniation....	20	Intercolumniation Defined.....	17
Hindoo Architecture, Ancient, Character of.....	30	Intercolumniation of Orders.....	20
Hip-Rafter, Backing of.....	216	Intrados of Arch.....	52
Hip-Roofs, Diagram and Expla- nation.....	215	Ionic Order, Character of.....	16
History of Architecture.....	44	Ionic Order, Grecian Origin of...	16
Hogged Ridge in Roof Truss....	338	Ionic Order Modified by the Ro- mans.....	27
Homologous Triangles (Geom- etry).....	362	Ionic Order, Origin of.....	20
Homologous Triangles (Ratio and Proportion).....	370	Ionic Order, Suitable for What Buildings.....	20
Hooke's Theory of an Arch.....	50	Ionic Volute, To Describe an....	20
Hooke's Theory, Bridge Arch, Pressure on.....	51	Iron Beams, Breaking Weight at Middle.....	148
Hooke's Theory, Catenary Arch..	51	Iron Beams, Deflection, To Find, Weight at Middle.....	147
Horizontal and Inclined Roofing, Weight.....	190	Iron Beams, Deflection, To Find, Weight Uniform.....	150
Horizontal Pressure on Roof, To Remove.....	74	Iron Beams, Dimensions, To Find, Weight any Point.....	149
Horizontal Thrust in Beams.....	72	Iron Beams, Dimensions, To Find, Weight Uniform.....	149
Horizontal Thrust, Tendency of..	88		

	PAGE		PAGE
Iron Beams, Dwellings, Distance from Centres.....	151	Laws of Pressure.....	57
Iron Beams, First-Class Stores, Distance from Centres.....	152	Laws of Pressure, Inclined, Examples.....	57
Iron Beams, Rectangular Cross-Section.....	145	Laws of Pressure, Vertical, Examples.....	57
Iron Beams, Rolled, Sizes.....	145	Leaning Tower or Campanile, Twelfth Century.....	11
Iron Beams, Safe Weight, Load any Point.....	148	Length, Breadth, or Thickness, Relation to Pressure.....	73
Iron Beams, Safe Weight, Load Uniform.....	151	Lever, Breadth or Depth, To Find.....	121
Iron Beams, Table IV.....	146	Lever, Deflection as Relating to Beam.....	119
Iron Beams, Weight at Middle, Deflection Given.....	146	Lever, Deflection, Load at End.....	120
Iron Fire-Proof Floors, Action of Fire On.....	143	Lever, Deflection, Load Uniform.....	121
Iron Straps, Framing, to Prevent Rusting.....	239	Lever, Deflection, Breadth or Depth, Load at End.....	121
Irregular Polygon, Trigon (Geometry).....	546	Lever, Deflection, Breadth or Depth, Load Uniform.....	121
Isosceles Triangle Defined.....	545, 584	Lever, Deflection, Load Required.....	121
Italian Architecture, Thirteenth, Fourteenth, and Fifteenth Centuries.....	12	Lever Formula, Proportionals in (Algebra).....	421
Italian Use of Roman Styles.....	13	Lever Load Uniformly Distributed.....	111
Italy, Tuscan Order the Principal Style.....	30	Lever, Load at One End.....	110
Jack-Rafters, Location of.....	212	Lever Principle Demonstrated (Ratio).....	375
Jack-Rafters and Purlins in Roof.....	211	Lever, Support, Relative Strength of One.....	110
Jack-Rafters, Weight per Superficial Foot.....	189	Light-Houses, Eddystone and Bell Rock.....	48
Joists and Studs Defined.....	174	Line Defined (Geometry).....	544
Jupiter, Temple of, at Thebes, Extent of.....	33	Lines, Divisions in, Proportionate (Geometry).....	583
Kell's Method, Simple Face Mould, Stairs.....	268	Lintel, Position of.....	49
Keystone for Arch, Position of.....	50	Lintel, Strength of.....	49
King-Post, Bad Framing, Effect of.....	237	Load, per foot, Horizontal.....	192
King-Post, Location of.....	213	Load on Roof Truss, per Superficial Foot.....	189
King-Post in Roof.....	54	Load on Tie-Beam, Ceiling, etc.....	190
Lamina in Girders Defined.....	174	Lock Rail for Doors, Width.....	316
Lancet Arch.....	51	Logarithms Explained (Algebra).....	425
Lateral Thrust in Arch.....	52	Logarithms, Examples.....	426
		Logarithms, Sine and Tangents (Polygons).....	424
		Lombard, Byzantine Style.....	10
		Lombard Style, Seventh Century.....	10
		London Bridge, Piles, Age of.....	229

	PAGE		PAGE
Materials, Cohesive Strength of. .	76	Mouldings, Classic Architecture.	323
Materials, Compression, Resistance to.	77	Moulding, Classic, Cavetto or Cove.	323
Materials, Cross-strain, Resistance to.	77	Moulding, Classic, Cyma-Recta. .	324
Materials, Structure of.	76	Moulding, Classic, Cyma-Reversa.	324
Materials, Tension, Resistance to.	77	Moulding, Classic, Ogee.	324
Materials Tested, General Description.	80	Moulding, Classic, Ovolo.	323
Materials, Weights, Table of. . .	654	Moulding, Classic, Scotia.	323
Major and Minor Axes of Ellipse Defined.	481	Moulding, Classic, Torus.	323
Marshes, Foundation for Timbers in.	47	Mouldings, Common to all Orders.	324
Mathematics Essential.	347	Mouldings Defined.	323
Maxwell, Prof. I. Clerk, Diagrams of Forces, etc.	165	Mouldings, Diagrams of.	330
Memphis, Pyramids of, Estimate of Stone in.	33	Mouldings, Doors, Rule for Width.	317
Minster, Tower of Strassburg. . .	11	Moulding, Grecian, Cyma-Recta.	327
Minutes, Sixty Equal Parts, to Proportion an Order.	15	Moulding, Grecian, Cyma-Reversa.	328
Mixed Numbers in Fractions, To Reduce.	381	Moulding, Grecian Echinus and Cavetto.	327
Modern Architecture, First Appearance of.	9	Mouldings, Greek, Form of. . . .	325
Modern Tuscan, Appropriate for Buildings.	30	Mouldings, Grecian Torus and Scotia.	326
Moment of Inertia Defined. . . .	145	Mouldings, Modern.	331
Mono-triglyph, Explanation of the Word.	19	Moulding, Modern, Antæ Cap. .	334
Monuments, Ancient, Their Architects.	6	Mouldings, Modern Interior, Diagrams.	332
Moorish and Arabian Styles, Antiquities of.	11	Mouldings, Modern, Plain. . . .	333
Mortises, Proper Location of. . .	100	Mouldings, Names, Derivations of.	324
Mortising, Beam, Effect on Strength of.	100	Mouldings, Profile Defined. . . .	326
Mortising Beam at Top, Injurious Effect of.	100	Mouldings, Roman, Forms of. . .	325
Mortising Beam, Effect of. . . .	231	Mouldings, Roman, Comments on.	329
Mortising, Beam, Position of. . .	236	Mouldings, Roman, Ovolo and Cavetto.	329
Mortising Headers, Allowance for Weakening	131	Mouldings, Uses and Positions of.	324
Moulding, Classic, Astragal or Bead.	323	Multiplication (Algebra).	408
Moulding, Classic, Annulet or Fillet.	323	Multiplication, Plus and Minus (Algebra).	415
		Multiplication, Three Factors (Algebra).	408
		Multiplication, Fractions. . . .	387
		Newel Cap, Form of, Winding Stairs.	312
		Nicholson's Method, Plane Through Cylinder (Stairs). . . .	259
		Nicholson's Method, Twists in Stairs.	259
		Nonagon Defined.	546

	PAGE		PAGE
Normal and Subnormal in Parabola.....	496	Order of Architecture, Three Principal Parts.....	14
Norinan and Gothic Construction of Roofs.....	178	Orders of Architecture, Persians and Caryatides.....	21
Norman Style, Peculiarities of...	11	Ordinates to an Arc (Geometry)...	593
Nosing and Tread, Position in Stairs.....	241	Ordinates, Circle, Rule for.....	471
		Ordinates of Ellipse.....	491
Oblique Angle Defined.....	544	Ostrogoths, Style of the.....	9
Oblique Pressure, Resolution of Forces.....	59	Oval, To Describe a (Geometry)...	501
Oblique Triangle, Difference Two Angles (Trigonometry).....	523	Ovolo, Classic Moulding.....	323
Oblique Triangle, First Class (Trigonometry).....	520	Ovolo, Roman Moulding.....	329
Oblique Triangles, First Class, Formulæ (Trigonometry).....	531		
Oblique Triangles, Second Class (Trigonometry).....	522	Paper, The, in Drawing, Secure to Board.....	557
Oblique Triangles, Second Class, Formulæ (Trigonometry).....	532	Pantheon at Rome, Dome of, and Walls.....	55
Oblique Triangles, Third Class (Trigonometry).....	526	Pantheon and Roman Buildings, Walls of.....	49
Oblique Triangles, Third Class, Formulæ (Trigonometry).....	534	Parabola, Arcs Described from...	503
Oblique Triangles, Fourth Class (Trigonometry).....	528	Parabola, Area, Rule for.....	509
Oblique Triangles, Fourth Class, Formulæ (Trigonometry).....	534	Parabola, Axis and Base, to find (Geometry).....	565
Oblique Triangles, Two Sides (Trigonometry).....	521	Parabola, Curve, Equations to...	493
Oblique Triangles, Sines and Sides (Trigonometry).....	519	Parabola Defined.....	492
Obtuse Angle Defined.....	349, 544	Parabola Defined (Geometry)...	548, 585
Obtuse Angled Triangle Defined...	545	Parabola, Diameters.....	497
Octagon, Butressed, Find Side (Geometry).....	571	Parabola Described from Ordinates.....	504
Octagon Defined.....	546	Parabola Described from Diameters.....	507
Octagon, Diagonal of Square Forming.....	357	Parabola Described from Points...	502
Octagon, Inscribe a (Geometry)...	570	Parabola of Dome Computed....	219
Octagon, Rules (Polygons).....	451	Parabola, General Rules.....	499
Octagon, Radius of Circles (Polygons).....	449	Parabola by Intersecting Lines...	504
Octastyle, Intercolumniation....	20	Parabola Mechanically Described...	500
Ogee Mouldings, Classic.....	324	Parabola, Normal and Subnormal.....	496
Opposite Angles Equal (Geometry).....	354	Parabola, Ordinate Defined....	496
		Parabola, Subtangent.....	496
		Parabola, Tangent.....	493
		Parabola, Vertical Tangent Defined.....	495
		Parabolic Arch, Direction of Joints.....	234
		Parallel Lines Defined.....	544
		Parallel Lines (Geometry).....	555
		Parallelogram, Construct a.....	576
		Parallelogram Defined.....	545

	PAGE		PAGE
Parallelogram Equal to Triangles, To Make.....	576	Perpendicular in Triangle (Polygons).....	440
Parallelogram of Forces, Strains by.....	165	Persians, Origin and Description of.....	24
Parallelograms Proportioned to Bases (Geometry).	360	Persians and Caryatides, Orders Used by Greeks.....	24
Parallelogram in Quadrangle (Geometry).....	364	Piers, Arrangement, in City Front of House.....	44
Parallelogram, Same Base (Geometry).....	352	Piers, Bridges, Construction and Sizes.....	228
Parameter Defined.....	548	Piles, London Bridge, Age of... ..	229
Parameter, Axes (Ellipse).....	485	Pine, White, Beams, Table of Weights for.....	177
Parthenon at Athens, Columns of.	48	Pisa, Cathedral of, Eleventh Century.....	12
Partitions, Bracing and Trussing.	176	Pisa, Cathedral of, Erection in 1016.....	12
Partitions, How Constructed.....	174	Pisé Wall of France.....	49
Partition, Door in Middle, Construction.....	175	Pitch Board, To Make, for Stairs.	247
Partition, Doors at End, Construction of.....	176	Pitch Board, Winding Stairs.....	252
Partition, Great Strength, Construction.....	176	Plane Defined.....	257
Partitions, Location and Connection.....	175	Plane Defined (Geometry).....	544
Partitions, Materials, Quality of..	175	Plank, Weight of, on Roof, per foot.	189
Partitions, Plastered, Proper Supports for.....	175	Plastering, Defective, To what Due.....	174
Partitions, Pressure on, Rules....	177	Plastering, Strength of.....	174
Partitions, Principal, of what Composed.....	175	Plastering, Weight per foot.....	177
Partitions, Trussing in, Effects of.	175	Platform Stairs, Baluster, Position of.....	250
Pedestal, a Separate Substructure.....	14	Platform Stairs Beneficial.....	240
Pediment, Triangular End of Building.....	15	Platform Stairs, Cylinder of.....	248
Pencil and Rulers, Drawing.....	540	Platform Stairs, Cylinder, Lower Edge.....	249
Pentagon Defined.....	546	Platform Stairs, Face Mould, Application of Plank.....	273
Pentagon, Circumscribed Circles (Polygons).....	463	Platform Stairs, Face Mould, Handrailing in.....	264
Perpendicular Height of Roof, To find.....	579	Platform Stairs, Face Mould, Simple Method.....	267
Perpendicular, Erect a.....	550	Platform Stairs, Face Mould, Moulded Rails.....	274
Perpendicular, Erect a, at End of Line.....	551	Platform Stairs, Face Mould, Application of.....	275
Perpendicular, Let Fall a.....	551	Platform Stairs, Face Mould Without Canting Plank.....	272
Perpendicular, Let Fall a, at End of Line.....	553	Platform Stairs, Handrail to.....	269
Perpendicular Style, Fifteenth Century.....	12	Platform Stairs, Handrailing Large Cylinder.....	271

	PAGE		PAGE
Platform Stairs, Railing Where Rake Meets Level.....	272	Pressure, Triangular, Framed Girders.....	171
Platform Stairs, Twist-Rail, Cut- ting of.....	277	Pressure, Upper Chord, Triangu- lar Girder.....	168
Platform Stairs, Wreath of Round Rail.....	267	Prisms Cut by Oblique Plane.....	259
Point of Contact (Geometry).....	558	Prisms and Cylinders, Stair-Build- ing.....	257
Point Defined (Geometry).....	544	Prisms Defined (Stairs).....	257, 259
Pointed Style, Ecclesiastical Arch- itecture.....	11	Prism, Top, Form of, in Perspec- tive.....	259
Polygons, Angles of.....	462	Profile of Mouldings Defined....	326
Polygons, Circumscribed and In- scribed Circles, Radius of....	460	Progression, Arithmetical (Alge- bra).....	432
Polygons Defined (Geometry)....	546	Progression, Geometrical (Algebra)	435
Polygons, Equilateral Triangle...	445	Projection and Height, Members of Orders of Architecture.....	16
Polygons, General Rules.....	461	Protractor, Useful in Drawing...	541
Polygons, Irregular, Trigon (Ge- ometry).....	546	Purlins and Jack-Rafters in Roof.	211
Polygons, Perpendicular in Tri- angle	440	Purlins, Location of.....	212
Polygon, Regular, Defined (Geom- etry).....	546	Pyramids of Memphis, Amount of Stone in.....	35
Polygons, Regular, To Describe (Geometry).....	573	Pycnostyle, Explanation of.....	20
Polygons, Regular, To Inscribe in Circle (Geometry).....	572	Quadrangle Defined.....	545
Polygons, Sum and Difference, Two Lines.....	439	Quadrangle Equal Triangle.....	353
Polygons, Table Explained.....	466	Quadrant Defined.....	547
Polygons, Table of Multipliers..	465	Quantities, Addition and Sub- traction (Algebra).....	424
Polygons, Triangle, Altitude of..	442	Quantities, Division of (Algebra).	424
Polygonal Dome, Shape of Angle- Rib.....	223	Quantities, Multiplication of (Al- gebra).....	424
Posts, Area, To Find.....	86	Queen-Post, Location of.....	213
Posts, Diameter, To Find.....	92	Queen-Post in Roof.....	34
Posts, Rectangular, Safe Weight..	92	Radials of Rib in Bridge.....	226
Posts, Rectangular, To Find Thick- ness.....	94	Radials of Rib for Wedges.....	226
Posts, Rectangular, Breadth Less than Thickness.....	96	Radicals, Extraction of (Algebra).	425
Posts, Rectangular, To Find Breadth.....	95	Radius of Arc, To Find.....	561
Posts, To Find Side.....	93	Radius of Circle Defined.....	547
Posts, Slender, Safe Weight for..	91	Rafters, Braces, etc., Length, To Find.....	580
Posts, Stout, Crushing Strength of.	89	Rafters, Least Thrust, Rule for...	62
Pressures Classified.....	85	Rafters, Length of, To Find.....	573
Pressure, Oblique, Resolution of Forces.....	59	Rafters, Liability to Crush Other Materials.....	205
		Rafters, Liability to Being Crushed	205
		Rafters, Liability to Flexure.....	205
		Rafters, Minimum Thrust of.....	62

	PAGE		PAGE
Rafters in Roof, Effect of Weight on	179	Reflected Light, Opposite of Shade.....	611
Rafters in Roof, Strains Subjected to.....	205	Regular Polygon in Circle, To Inscribe (Geometry).....	572
Rafters and Tie-Beams, Safe Weight.....	87	Regular Polygon Defined (Geometry).....	546
Rafters, Uses in Roof.....	54	Regular Polygons, To Describe (Geometry).....	573
Rake in Cornice Matched with Level Mouldings.....	344	Resistance, Capability of.....	86
Railing, Platform Stairs Rake Meets Level.....	272	Resistance to Compression, Application of Pressure.....	85
Ratio or Proportion, Equals Multiplied	367	Resistance to Compression, Crushing and Bending.....	85
Ratio or Proportion, Equality of Products.....	370	Resistance to Compression, Materials.....	77
Ratio or Proportion, Equality of Ratios.....	367	Resistance to Compression, Pressure Classified.....	85
Ratio or Proportion Equation, Form of.....	367	Resistance to Compression in Proportion to Depth.....	101
Ratio or Proportion, Examples... ..	366	Resistance to Compression, Stout Posts, Rule.....	89
Ratio or Proportion, Four Proportionals, to Find.....	377	Resistance to Compression, Table of Woods.....	79
Ratio or Proportion, Homologous Triangles.....	370	Resistance to Cross-Strains.....	77
Ratio or Proportion, Lever Principle in.....	372	Resistance to Cross-Strains Defined.....	99
Ratio or Proportion, Lever Principle Demonstrated.....	375	Resistance to Deflection, Rule... ..	113
Ratio or Proportion, Multiply an Equation.....	368	Resistance Depending on Compactness and Cohesion.....	78
Ratio or Proportion, Multiply and Divide One Number.....	368	Resistance Depending on Location, Soil, etc.....	79
Ratio or Proportion, Rule of Three.....	366	Resistance to Flexure Defined... ..	145
Ratio or Proportion, Steelyard as Example in.....	371	Resistance Inversely in Proportion to Length.....	102
Ratio or Proportion, Terms of Quantities.....	367	Resistance to Oblique Force.....	206
Ratio or Proportion, Transfer a Factor.....	369	Resistance, Power of, How Obtained.....	78
Rectangle Defined	545	Resistance, Proportion to Area... ..	86
Rectangle, Equilateral, To Describe.....	568	Resistance, Strains, To What Due. ..	78
Rectangular Cross-Section, Iron Beams.....	145	Resistance to Tension Greatest in Direction of Length.....	81
Reduction Cubic Feet to Gallons, Rule.....	653	Resistance to Tension, Proportion in Materials.....	81
Reduction Decimals, Examples..	647	Resistance to Tension, Table of Materials.....	82
		Resistance to Tension, Materials. ..	77
		Resistance to Tension, Results from <i>Transverse Strains</i>	82

	PAGE		PAGE
Resistance to Transverse Strains, Table of.....	83	Roman Architecture, Ruins of...	11
Resistance to Transverse Strains, Description of Table.....	84	Roman Architecture, Excess of Enrichment.....	46
Resistance Variable in One Material.....	79	Roman Building.....	26
Reticulated Walls.....	49	Roman Composite and Corinthian Orders.....	28
Rhomboid Defined.....	546	Roman Decoration.....	27
Rhombus Defined.....	545	Roman Empire, Overthrow of....	13
Ribbed Bridge, Area of Rule....	225	Romans, Ionic Order Modified by	27
Ribbed Bridge, Built.....	224	Roman Moulding, Cavetto.....	329
Ribbed Bridge, Least Rise, Table of.....	224	Roman Mouldings, Comments on.	329
Right Angle Defined.....	348, 544	Roman Moulding, Ovolo.....	329
Right Angle in Semicircle (Geometry).....	355	Roman Mouldings, Forms of....	325
Right Angle, To Trisect a.....	554	Roman Pantheon, etc., Walls of..	49
Right Angled Triangle Defined..	545	Roman Styles of Architecture....	26
Right Angled Triangle, Squares on (Algebra).....	417	Roman Styles Spread by the Italians.....	13
Right Angled Triangles (Trigonometry).....	510	Romantic or German Style, Thirteenth and Fourteenth Centuries.....	11
Right Angled Triangles, Formula for (Trigonometry).....	530	Rome, Ancient Buildings of.....	12
Right Lines (Geometry).....	584	Rome and Greece, Architecture of.....	8
Right Line Equal Circumference.	566	Roof, The.....	54
Right Lines, Mean Proportionals Between.....	584	Roofs, Ancient Norman and Gothic, Construction.....	173
Right Lines, Two Given, Find Third.....	582	Roof Beams, Weight per Superficial Foot.....	189
Right Lines, Three Given, Find Fourth.....	583	Roof, Brace in, Rule Same as for Rafter.....	208
Right or Straight Line Defined...	544	Roofs, Construction of.....	55
Right Prism Defined (Stairs)....	257	Roof Covering, Mode of.....	188
Risers, Number of, Rule to Obtain (Stairs).....	246	Roof Covering, Weights, Table of.	191
Rise and Tread (Stairs).....	241	Roof, Curb or Mansard.....	54
Rise and Tread, Connection of (Stairs).....	248	Roofs, Diagrams and Description of.....	212
Rise and Tread, Blondel's Method of Finding (Stairs).....	242	Roof, Gothic Buildings.....	55
Rise and Tread, Table of, for Shops and Dwellings (Stairs)...	245	Roofs, Gothic and Norman Buildings, Construction.....	178
Rise and Tread, To Obtain (Winding Stairs).....	251	Roofs, Hip, Diagram and Explanation.....	215
Rolled Iron Beams, Extensive Use of.....	161	Roof, Hip.....	54
Roman Architecture Defined.....	7	Roof, Horizontal Pressure, To Remove from.....	74
		Roof, Jack-Rafters and Purlins...	211
		Roof, King-Post in.....	54
		Roof, Load per Foot Horizontal, Rule.....	192

	PAGE		PAGE
Roof, Load, Total per Foot Horizontal, Rule.....	197	Roof Truss, Load on	189
Roofs, Modern, Trussing Necessary.....	178	Roof Trusses, Strains, Effect of, on Different.....	179
Roofs, Norman and Gothic Buildings.....	178	Roof Truss, Weights, Table of, per Superficial Foot.....	189
Roof, Pent, To Find.....	54	Roof Truss, Weight per Superficial Foot.....	190
Roof, Perpendicular Height, To Find.....	579	Roof, Trussing in.....	54
Roof Plank, Weight per Superficial Foot.....	189	Roof Trussing, Designs for.....	178
Roof, Planning a.....	188	Roof Trussing, Framing for.....	237
Roof, Pressure on.....	55	Roof Trussing, Hogged Ridge....	238
Roof, Queen-Post in.....	54	Roof Trussing, King-Post, Effect of Bad Framing on.....	237
Roof, Rafters in.....	54	Roofs, United States.....	55
Roof, Sagging, To Prevent.....	54	Roof, Vertical Pressure of Wind on, Effect of.....	194
Roof, Slope Should Vary According to Climate.....	191	Roof, Snow, Weight per Horizontal Foot.....	193
Roof Supports, Distance between.	189	Roof Weight on Rafter, Effect of..	179
Roof, Suspension Rods, Safe Weight for.....	210	Roof, Wind, Horizontal and Vertical Pressure of.....	193
Roof, Tie-Beam in.....	54	Roofing, Weight of Horizontal and Inclined.....	190
Roof, Tie-Beam, Tensile Strain, Rule.....	204	Roofing, Weight per Superficial Foot.....	190
Roof Timbers, Mortising.....	55	Roots, Cubes, and Squares, Table of.....	638-645
Roof Timbers, Scarfing of.....	55	Round Post, Area of.....	90
Roof Timbers, Splicing of.....	55	Rubble Walls.....	48
Roof Timbers, Strains by Parallelogram of forces.....	198	Rulers and Pencil in Drawing....	540
Roof Timbers, Strain Shown Geometrically.....	199, 202	Rupture Compared with Flexure.	84
Roof Truss, Arched Ceiling.....	214	Rupture, Crushing, Safe Weight..	89
Roof Truss, Elevated Tie-Beam Objectionable.....	214	Rupture, Sliding, Safe Weight....	87
Roof Truss, Elevating Tie-Beam, Effect of.....	187	Rupture, Transverse, Safe Weight.	86
Roof Truss, Force Diagram, Figs. 59, 68, and 69.....	179	Rusting Iron Framing Straps, To Prevent.....	239
Roof Truss, Force Diagram, Figs. 60, 70, and 71.....	180	Safe Load for Material.....	81
Roof Truss, Force Diagram, Figs. 61, 72, and 73.....	181	Safe Weight, Allowance for.....	84
Roof Truss, Force Diagram, Figs. 63, 74, and 75.....	183	Safe Weight at Any Point, Rule..	106
Roof Truss, Force Diagram, Figs. 64, 77, and 78.....	184	Safe Weight, Beam at Middle....	103
Roof Truss, Force Diagram, Figs. 66, 80, and 81.....	186	Safe Weight, Bending.....	91
		Safe Weight, Beam, Breadth of, To Find.....	104
		Safe Weight, Beam, Depth, To Find.....	104
		Safe Weight, Breadth or Depth, To Find, Load at Middle.....	106

	PAGE		PAGE
Safe Weight, Breadth or Depth, To Find, Load Uniform.....	108	Shadow of Circular Abacus on Column.....	608
Safe Weight, Crushing Rupture..	89	Shadow of Column on Wall.....	611
Safe Weight Defined.....	84	Shadow on Cornice.....	611
Safe Weight, Deflection, To Pre- vent.....	110	Shadow in Fireplace.....	605
Safe Weight, Floor Beams, Dwell- ings.....	126	Shadow of Horizontal Beam.....	604
Safe Weight, Floor Beams, Stores.	126	Shadow, Inclination of the Line of tel.....	596
Safe Weight, Load Evenly Distri- buted.....	107	Shadow of Moulded Window Lin- tel.....	606
Safe Weight, Load per Superficial Foot of Floor.....	109	Shadow of Nosing of Step.....	606
Safe Weight, Margin Greater than Table.....	104	Shadow of Pedestal on Steps.....	606
Safe Weight, Rafter and Tie-Beam, Example.....	87	Shadow of Projection on Cylindri- cal Wall.....	603
Safe Weight, Rectangular Posts..	92	Shadow in Recess.....	604
Safe Weight, Slender Posts.....	91	Shadow in Recess, Back Vertical.	604
Safe Weight, Sliding Rupture....	87	Shadows, Reflected Light Opposite of.....	611
Safe Weight, Strain at Middle of Beam.....	105	Shadow and Shade, Distinction Between.....	597
Safe Weight, Suspension Rods in Roof.....	210	Shadow of Shelf.....	598
Safe Weight, Tensile Strain.....	96	Shadow of Shelf, Acute Angled..	600
Safe Weight, Tensile Strain, To Find.....	97	Shadow of Shelf, Front Edge Curved.....	600
Safe Weight, Transverse Rupture,	86	Shadow of Shelf Inclined.....	600
Scale of Equal Parts, for an Order.....	15	Shadow of Shelf Inclined in Verti- cal Section.....	601
Scale, Use of, in Drawing.....	540	Shadow of Shelf on Inclined Wall.	603
Scalene Triangle Defined.....	545	Shadow of Square Abacus on Col- umn.....	607
Scantling, Thickness for Domes..	218	Shadow on Straight Projections and Mouldings.....	587
Scotia, Classic Moulding.....	323	Shadow on Shelf of Uneven Width	599
Scotia, Grecian Moulding.....	326	Shadows, Usefulness of.....	596
Sectional Area, Explanation of...	97	Shaft, Base and Capital of Column Defined.....	14
Sector, Area in Circle.....	476	Shaft of Column.....	47
Sector Defined.....	547	Shaft, Upright Part of Column...	15
Segment of Circle, Area, To Find.	479	Shearing Strain, Tubular Iron Girder.....	157
Segment of Circle Defined.....	547	Shutters, Inside, for Windows, Requirements.....	319
Segment of Circle, To Describe (Geometry).....	560, 562	Sines and Tangents, Logarithms (Polygons).....	464
Segment of Circle from Ordinates.	470	Slate, Weight per Superficial Foot.	189
Segment of Cylinder Defined.....	549	Snow on Roof, Weight per Hori- zontal Foot.....	193
Semi-major Axes of Ellipse De- fined.....	486	Snow on Roof, Weight per Super- ficial Foot.....	190
Shade Lining, Drawing.....	543		
Shadow on Capital of Column....	609		

	PAGE		PAGE
Soffit of Circular Headed Windows.....	321	Stairs, Handrailing, Tools Used..	257
Solid Defined (Geometry).....	544	Stairs, Light and Ventilation.....	240
Solid Timber Floors, First-Class Stores, Depth.....	144	Stairs, for Men and Women, Rise and Tread.....	243
Solid Timber Floors, Dwellings and Assembly, Depth.....	143	Stairs, Nosing and Tread, Position of.....	241
Solid Timber Floors, Fire-Proof, To Make.....	143	Stairs, Pitch Board, To Make....	247
Span of Arch.....	52	Stairs, Plan of, Defined.....	257
Spherical Dome, Shape, To Find.	221	Stairs, Plane and Cylinder, Nicholson's Method.....	259
Splicing Beams.....	235	Stairs, Platform, Baluster, Position of.....	250
Splicing, Depth of Indents, To Find.....	235	Stairs, Platform, Beneficial.....	240
Splicing, Effect of.....	236	Stairs, Platform, Cutting Twist-Rail.....	277
Splicing Roof Timbers.....	55	Stairs, Platform, Cylinder of....	248
Splicing or Scarfing Tie-Beam....	234	Stairs, Platform, Face Mould Without Canting Plank.....	272
Spring in Arch.....	52	Stairs, Platform, Face Mould, Application to Plank.....	273
Square Defined.....	545	Stairs, Platform, Face Mould, Application to Plank.....	275
Square or Cube Roots, Example.	645	Stairs, Platform, Face Mould for Handrail.....	264
Squares, Cubes and Roots, Table of.....	638-645	Stairs, Platform, Face Mould, Moulded Rail.....	274
Square Equal Rectangle, To Make (Geometry).....	581	Stairs, Platform, Face Mould, Simple Method.....	267
Square Equal Given Squares, To Make (Geometry).....	581	Stairs, Platform, Handrail to....	269
Square Equal Triangle, To Make (Geometry).....	582	Stairs, Platform, Handrail, Large Cylinder.....	271
Stability, Principles of.....	45	Stairs, Platform, Handrail Where Rake Meets Level.....	272
Stairs, Circular, Face Mould, First Section.....	283	Stairs, Platform, Lower Edge of Cylinder.....	249
Stairs, Circular, Face Mould for.....	282, 285, 287	Stairs, Platform, Wreath for Round Rail.....	267
Stairs, Circular, Falling Mould for Rail.....	281	Stairs, Position and Requirements.....	240
Stairs, Circular, Handrailing for.	278	Stairs, Prisms and Cylinders....	257
Stairs, Circular, Plan of.....	279	Stairs, Rise and Tread.....	241
Stairs, Circular, Plumb Bevel Defined.....	282	Stairs, Rise and Tread, Blondel's Method.....	242
Stairs, Circular, Timbers put in After Erection.....	253	Stairs, Rise and Tread, Table for Shops and Dwellings.....	245
Stairs for Dwellings, Rule.....	244	Stairs, Rises, Number of, Height Given.....	246
Stairs, Face Mould, Kell's Method for Simple.....	268	Stairs, Shops, Rise for.....	244
Stairs, Handrailing, Geometry Necessary.....	257		
Stairs, Handrailing, "Out of Wind" Defined.....	257		

	PAGE		PAGE
Stairs, Space for Timber and Plaster.....	247	Stairs, Winding, Handrailing, General Considerations.....	254
Stairs, Stone, Public Building....	240	Stairs, Winding, Handrailing, Scrolls for.....	304
Stairs, String of, To Make.....	247	Stairs, Winding, Handrailing, Scroll Over Curtail Step.....	305
Stairs, Tread, To Find, Rise Given.....	242, 246	Stairs, Winding, Handrailing, Scroll for Curtail Step.....	310
Stairs, Tread and Riser Connection.....	248	Stairs, Winding, Scroll at Newel.....	307
Stairs, Width, Rule for.....	241	Stairs, Winding, Illustrations by Planes.....	261
Stairs, Winding, Balusters in Round Rail.....	313	Stairs, Winding, Moulds for Quarter Circle.....	255
Stairs, Winding, Bevels in Splayed Work.....	314	Stairs, Winding, Newel Cap, Form of.....	312
Stairs, Winding, Blocking Out Rail.....	301	Stairs, Winding, Objectionable..	240
Stairs, Winding, Butt-Joint on Handrail.....	303	Stairs, Winding, Pitch Board, To Obtain.....	252
Stairs, Winding, Butt-Joint, Correct Lines for.....	307	Stairs, Winding, Rise and Tread, To Obtain.....	257
Stairs, Winding, Diagrams Explained.....	263	Stairs, Winding, Sliding of Face Mould.....	290
Stairs, Winding, Face Mould, Accuracy of.....	295	Stairs, Winding, String, To Obtain.....	252
Stairs, Winding, Face Mould, Application.....	297	Stairs, Winding, Timbers, Position of.....	252
Stairs, Winding, Face Mould, Care in Drawing.....	295	Stairs and Windows, How Arranged.....	42
Stairs, Winding, Face Mould, Curves Elliptical.....	301	Stiles of Windows, Allowance for.....	319
Stairs, Winding, Face Mould for.....	290, 293	St. Mark, Tenth or Eleventh Century.....	12
Stairs, Winding, Face Mould, Round Rail.....	303	Stone Bridge Building, Truss Work.....	212
Stairs, Winding, Face Mould for Twist.....	291	Stone Bridge, Building Arch.....	200
Stairs, Winding, Flyers and Winders.....	251	Stone Bridge, Centres for, Construction.....	220
Stairs, Winding, Front String, Grade of.....	253	Stone Bridge, Pressure on Arch Stones.....	230
Stairs, Winding, Handrailing.....	256, 289	Stop for Doors.....	317
Stairs, Winding, Handrailing, Balusters Under Scroll.....	310	Stores, Floor Beams, Safe Weight.....	126
Stairs, Winding, Handrailing, Centres for Square.....	308	Stores, Ordinary, Floor Beams, Sizes, To Find.....	127
Stairs, Winding, Handrailing, Face Mould for Scroll....	311	Stores, First-Class, Floor Beams, Sizes, To Find.....	128
Stairs, Winding, Handrailing, Falling Mould for Raking Scroll...	310	St. Paul's, London, Dome of....	54
		St. Peter's, Rome, Fourteenth and Fifteenth Centuries.....	12
		Straight or Right Line Defined...	544

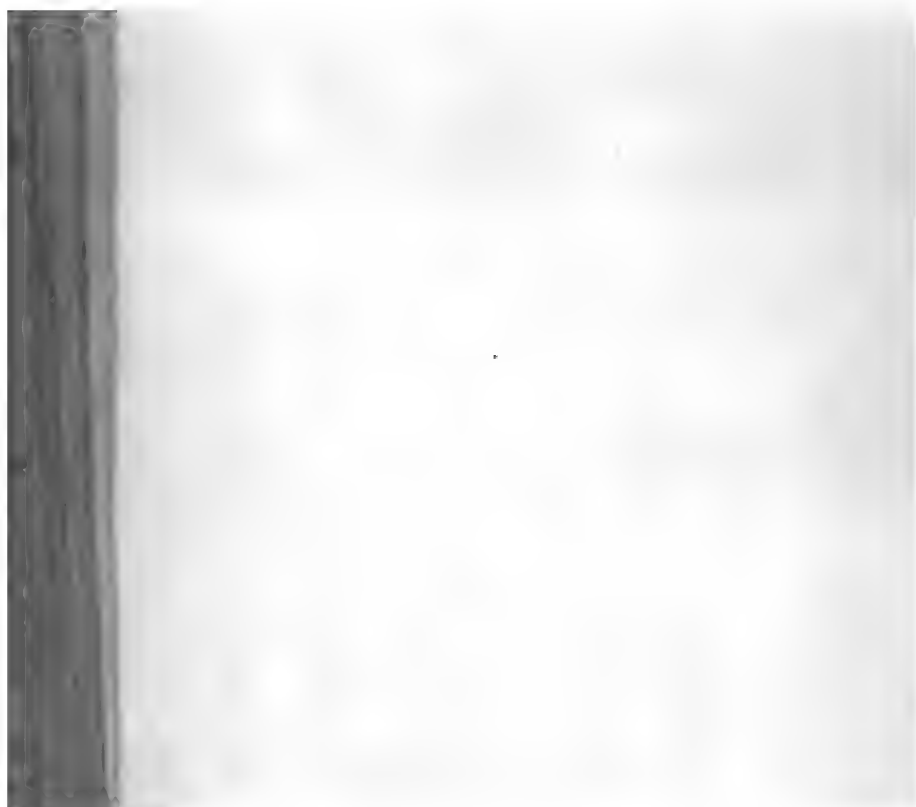
	PAGE		PAGE
Strains, Cross, Resistance to.....	77	Suspension Rods, Location in	
Strains on Domes, Tendency of..	219	Roof.....	212
Strains Exceed Weights.....	61	Suspension Rods in Roof, Safe	
Strains, Graphic Representation..	165	Weight.....	210
Strain Greatest at Middle of Beam.	105	Symbols Chosen at Pleasure (Al-	
Strains by Parallelogram of		gebra).....	395
Forces.....	165	Symbols, Transferring (Algebra).	399
Strains, Practical Method of De-		Systyle, Explanation of.....	20
termining.....	62		
Strains of Rafter in Roof.....	205	Table of Circles.....	649-652
Strains, Resistance, To What Due.	78	Table of Contents.....	613-624
Strain on Roof Timbers Shown		Table of Capacity of Wells, Cis-	
Geometrically.....	199	terns, etc.....	653
Strains on Roof Timbers Geomet-		Table of Squares, Cubes, and	
rically Applied.....	202	Roots.....	638-645
Strains on Roof Timbers, Parallel-		Table of Woods, Description of..	80
ogram of Forces.....	198	Tail-Beams Defined.....	130
Strain, Shearing, Tubular Iron		Tanged Curve, To Describe (Ge-	
Girder.....	157	ometry).....	565
Strain Unequal, Cause of.....	83	Tangent to Axes, Ellipse.....	485
Straps, Iron, Roof Truss.....	239	Tangent Defined.....	547
Strassburg, Cathedral of.....	12	Tangent with Foci, Ellipse.....	487
Strassburg, Towers of the Min-		Tangent to Ellipse. To Draw.....	592
ster.....	11	Tangent at Given Point in Cir-	
Strength and Stiffness of Mate-		cle.....	557
rials.....	78	Tangent at Given Point, Without	
Structure of Materials.....	76	Centre.....	557
Struts Defined.....	173	Tangent of Parabola ..	493
Struts and Ties.....	68	Tangents and Sines, Logarithms	
Struts and Ties, Difference Be-		(Polygons).....	464
tween.....	69	Temples Built in the Doric Style.	19
St. Sophia, Sixth Century.....	12	Temple, Doric, Origin of the....	17
Stucco Cornice for Interior.....	340	Temple of Jupiter at Thèbes....	33
Studs and Joists Defined.....	174	Tenons and Splices, Knowledge	
Styles, Grecian, Only Known by		Important	88
Them.....	16	Tensile Strain, Area of Piece, To	
Stylobate, Substructure for Col-		Find.....	99
umns.....	14	Tensile Strain, Compressed Ma-	
Subnormal and Normal (in Para-		terial.....	100
bola).....	496	Tensile Strain, Condition of Sus-	
Subtangent, Parabola.....	496	pended Piece.....	98
Subtangent of Ellipse Defined...	486	Tensile Strain, Safe Weight... ..	96
Subtraction and Addition (Alge-		Tensile Strain, Safe Weight, To	
bra).....	398	Compute.....	97
Superficies Defined (Geometry)...	544	Tensile Strain, Sectional Area, To	
Supports, Girders, Length, Rule..	157	Obtain.....	97
Supports, Position of.....	65	Tensile Strain, Suspended, Mate-	
Supports, Inclination of, Unequal.	60	rial Extended.....	100

	PAGE		PAGE
Tensile Strain on Tie-Beam in Roof Truss.....	204	Top Rail, Doors, Width, Rule....	317
Tensile Strain, Weight of Suspended Piece.....	98	Torus, Classic Moulding.....	323
Tensile Strength of Cast Iron....	161	Torus, Grecian Moulding.....	326
Tension and Compression, Framed Girders.....	174	Tower of Babel, History of.....	5
Tension, Resistance to.....	77	Towers of the Minster, Strassburg..	11
Tension, Resistance to, Table of Materials.....	82	Transverse Axis Defined.....	548
Tension, Resistance to, Results Obtained.....	82	Transverse Strains, Compressed and Extended, Material.....	100
Tension, Resistance to, Proportion in Materials.....	81	Transverse Strains, Defined.....	97
Tent, Habitation of the Shepherd..	13	Transverse Strains, Explanation of Table III.....	101
Testing Machine, Description in <i>Transverse Strains</i>	80	Transverse Strains, Greater Strength of One Piece.....	101
Testing Materials, Hydraulic Method.....	80	Transverse Strains, Neutral Line Defined.....	100
Testing Materials, Dates of.....	80	Transverse Strains, Proportion to Breadth.....	101
Testing Materials, Manner of....	80	<i>Transverse Strains</i> , Hatfield's, Reference to... 80, 121, 133, 135, 143, 144, 145, 146, 148	
Tetragon Defined.....	546	Transverse Strains, Resistance to, Table of.....	53
Tetragon, Radius of Circles (Polygons).....	446	Transverse Strains, Description of Table.....	54
Tetrastyle, Intercolumniation....	20	Transverse Strains, Strength Diminished by Division.....	101
Thebes, Thickness of Walls at... 33		Trapezoid Defined.....	546
Thrust, Horizontal.....	63	Trapezium Defined.....	546
Thrust, Horizontal, Examples....	64	Tread, To Find, Rise Given (Stairs).....	242, 246
Thrust, Horizontal, Tendency of..	88	Tread and Nosing, Position of (Stairs).....	241
Tie-Beam in Ceiling, Load on... 190		Tread and Rise, To Find, Winding Stairs.....	251
Tie-Beam and Rafter, Safe Weight..	87	Tread and Rise, To Find, Blondel's Method.....	243
Tie-Beam in Roof.....	54	Tread and Rise, Table for Shops and Dwellings.....	245
Tie-Beam in Roof, Tensile Strain..	204	Tread and Riser, Connection of (Stairs).....	248
Tie-Rods, Diameter, To Find....	164	Triangle, Altitude of (Polygons)..	442
Tie-Rods, Floor Arches, Dwellings.....	153	Triangles, Base, Formula for (Trigonometry).....	516
Tie-Rods, Floor Arches, First-Class Stores.....	153	Triangle, Construct a (Geometry)..	587
Tie-Rods, Wrought Iron.....	164	Triangle, Construct Equal-Sided (Geometry).....	575
Ties Defined.....	173	Triangle Defined.....	545
Ties and Struts, To Distinguish..	69	Triangle, Examples (Geometry)...	380
Ties and Struts, Framed Girders..	174		
Ties and Struts, Principles of....	68		
Ties, Timbers in a State of Tension.....	68		
Titus, Composite Arch of.....	28		
Trimmer, Breadth, To Find, Two Sets Tail-Beams.....	134		

	PAGE		PAGE
Triangles, Equal Altitude.....	361	Trigonometry, Right Angled Tri-	
Triangle Equal Quadrangle.....	353	angles.....	510
Triangles, Equation of (Trigo-		Trigonometry, Right Angled Tri-	
nometry).....	515	angles, Third Side, To Find... 511	
Triangles, Homologous (Geom-		Trigonometry, Right Angled Tri-	
etry).....	362	angle, Formula.....	530
Triangles, Hypothenuse, Formula		Trigonometry, Tables.....	513
for.....	516	Trigonometry, Triangles, Base,	
Triangles, Hypothenuse, To Find		Formula for.....	516
(Trigonometry).....	518	Trigonometry, Triangles, Equa-	
Triangles, Perpendicular, To Find		tions of.....	515
(Trigonometry).....	517	Trigonometry, Triangles, Hypoth-	
Triangle or Set-Square in Draw-		enuse, Formula.....	516
ing.....	539	Trigonometry, Triangles, Hypoth-	
Triangle or Set-Square, Use of... 541		enuse, To Find.....	518
Triangles, Terms Defined (Trigo-		Trigonometry, Triangles, Perpen-	
nometry).....	512	dicular, To Find.....	517
Triangles, Three Angles Equal		Trigonometry, Triangles, Terms	
Right Angle.....	354	Defined.....	512
Triangles, Value of Sides (Trigo-		Trigonometry, Triangles, Value of	
nometry).....	516	Sides.....	516
Trigon, Irregular Polygons (Ge-		Trimmer or Carriage Beam,	
ometry).....	546	Breadth, To Find.....	132
Trigon, Radius of Circle (Poly-		Trimmer or Carriage Beams De-	
gons).....	443	finied.....	130
Trigon, Rule (Polygons).....	441	Trimmer, One Header, Breadth,	
Trigonometry, Oblique Triangles,		To Find, Dwellings and Stores. 133	
Two Angles.....	523	Trimmer, Well-Hole in Middle,	
Trigonometry, Oblique Triangles,		Breadth, To Find.....	136
Two Sides.....	521	Trisect a Right Angle.....	544
Trigonometry, Oblique Triangles,		Truss, Diagram of.....	200
First Class.....	520	Truss, Force Diagrams, Figs. 59,	
Trigonometry, Oblique Triangles,		68 and 69.....	179
Second Class.....	522	Figs. 60, 70 and 71.....	130
Trigonometry, Oblique Triangles,		Figs. 61, 72 and 73.....	181
Third Class.....	526	Figs. 63, 74 and 75.....	183
Trigonometry, Oblique Triangles,		Figs. 64, 77 and 78.....	184
Fourth Class.....	528	Figs. 65, 78 and 79.....	185
Trigonometry, Oblique Triangles,		Figs. 66, 80 and 81.....	186
Sines and Sides.....	519	Truss, Roof, Framing for.....	237
Trigonometry, Oblique Triangles,		Truss, Roof, Iron Straps.....	239
Formula, First Class.....	531	Truss, Weight, per Horizontal	
Trigonometry, Oblique Triangles,		Foot, To Find.....	192
Formula, Second Class.....	532	Truss Work, Stone Bridge Build-	
Trigonometry, Oblique Triangles,		ing.....	232
Formula, Third Class.....	534	Trussing and Framing, Gravity	
Trigonometry, Oblique Triangles,		and Resistance.....	76
Formula, Fourth Class.....	534	Trussing Partitions, Effect of... 175	

	PAGE		PAGE
Trussing Loads, Effect of	177	Walls, Construction and Forma-	
Trussing Load in Glass	178	tion	43
Trussing Load, Proper Area of Sur-		Walls, Egyptian and Red Rock	
face Flange, Sweelings	179	Capituleses	45
Trussing Load, Proper Area of Sur-		Walls, Egyptian, Massiveness of	33
face Flange, Flow-Back Sur-	180	Walls, Modern Brick	49
Trussing Load, Proper Area of		Walls of Parthenon and Roman	
Flange Load in Middle	181	Buildings	49
Trussing Load, Proper Area of		Walls of Parthenon at Rome	53
Flange Load and Form	182	Walls, Pisa of France	49
Trussing Load, Proper Area of		Walls, Romanesque	49
Flange Load Modern	183	Walls, Stone	45
Trussing Load, Proper Flanges		Walls, Strength of	45
Proportion of	184	Walls, Tilted Ends	49
Trussing Load, Proper Construction		Walls, Wooden	49
of	185	Weakening, Proper, Manner of	140
Trussing Load, Proper Rivers, Al-		Wet in Tilted Load, Garden	
lowance for	187	Thickness of	155
Trussing Load, Proper Shearing		Weight of Materials for Building	
Beam	188	Table of	654-656
Trussing Load, Proper, Wet of	189	Wells, Cisterns, etc., Table of	
Trussing, Modern, Arrangement for		Capacity	655
Beams	190	Wire Pins, Weights of Beams	
Trussing, Proper, Construction of the	191	Table of	177
Trussing, Proper, Proportion, Size of		Wind, Greatest Pressure, per Sq-	
Foot	192	Foot, Force	90
Twelve, Proper, Beams, Table	193	Wind, Load, Effect of Vertical	
Twelve, Proper, Beams, Table	194	Pressure	194
Twelve, Proper, Beams, Table	195	Wind, Load, Effect of Horizontal and	
Twelve, Proper, Beams, Table	196	Vertical Pressure	195
Twelve, Proper, Beams, Table	197	Windows and Sills, How to Place	
Twelve, Proper, Beams, Table	198	the	42
Twelve, Proper, Beams, Table	199	Windows and Floors, Sills	351
Twelve, Proper, Beams, Table	200	Windows, Arrangement of	44
Twelve, Proper, Beams, Table	201	Windows, Circular Headed	320
Twelve, Proper, Beams, Table	202	Windows, Circular Headed, To	
Twelve, Proper, Beams, Table	203	Form Sills	321
Twelve, Proper, Beams, Table	204	Windows, Dimensions, To Find	318
Twelve, Proper, Beams, Table	205	Window-Frame Size of	318
Twelve, Proper, Beams, Table	206	Windows, Front of Building, Ef-	
Twelve, Proper, Beams, Table	207	fect of	320
Twelve, Proper, Beams, Table	208	Windows, Heights, Table of	
Twelve, Proper, Beams, Table	209	With Green	320
Twelve, Proper, Beams, Table	210	Windows, Height from Floor	320
Twelve, Proper, Beams, Table	211	Windows, Inside Shutters, Re-	
Twelve, Proper, Beams, Table	212	quirement of	319
Twelve, Proper, Beams, Table	213	Windows, Position and Light	
Twelve, Proper, Beams, Table	214	from	317
Twelve, Proper, Beams, Table	215		
Twelve, Proper, Beams, Table	216		
Twelve, Proper, Beams, Table	217		
Twelve, Proper, Beams, Table	218		
Twelve, Proper, Beams, Table	219		
Twelve, Proper, Beams, Table	220		
Twelve, Proper, Beams, Table	221		
Twelve, Proper, Beams, Table	222		
Twelve, Proper, Beams, Table	223		
Twelve, Proper, Beams, Table	224		
Twelve, Proper, Beams, Table	225		
Twelve, Proper, Beams, Table	226		
Twelve, Proper, Beams, Table	227		
Twelve, Proper, Beams, Table	228		
Twelve, Proper, Beams, Table	229		
Twelve, Proper, Beams, Table	230		
Twelve, Proper, Beams, Table	231		
Twelve, Proper, Beams, Table	232		
Twelve, Proper, Beams, Table	233		
Twelve, Proper, Beams, Table	234		
Twelve, Proper, Beams, Table	235		
Twelve, Proper, Beams, Table	236		
Twelve, Proper, Beams, Table	237		
Twelve, Proper, Beams, Table	238		
Twelve, Proper, Beams, Table	239		
Twelve, Proper, Beams, Table	240		
Twelve, Proper, Beams, Table	241		
Twelve, Proper, Beams, Table	242		
Twelve, Proper, Beams, Table	243		
Twelve, Proper, Beams, Table	244		
Twelve, Proper, Beams, Table	245		
Twelve, Proper, Beams, Table	246		
Twelve, Proper, Beams, Table	247		
Twelve, Proper, Beams, Table	248		
Twelve, Proper, Beams, Table	249		
Twelve, Proper, Beams, Table	250		
Twelve, Proper, Beams, Table	251		
Twelve, Proper, Beams, Table	252		
Twelve, Proper, Beams, Table	253		
Twelve, Proper, Beams, Table	254		
Twelve, Proper, Beams, Table	255		
Twelve, Proper, Beams, Table	256		
Twelve, Proper, Beams, Table	257		
Twelve, Proper, Beams, Table	258		
Twelve, Proper, Beams, Table	259		
Twelve, Proper, Beams, Table	260		
Twelve, Proper, Beams, Table	261		
Twelve, Proper, Beams, Table	262		
Twelve, Proper, Beams, Table	263		
Twelve, Proper, Beams, Table	264		
Twelve, Proper, Beams, Table	265		
Twelve, Proper, Beams, Table	266		
Twelve, Proper, Beams, Table	267		
Twelve, Proper, Beams, Table	268		
Twelve, Proper, Beams, Table	269		
Twelve, Proper, Beams, Table	270		
Twelve, Proper, Beams, Table	271		
Twelve, Proper, Beams, Table	272		
Twelve, Proper, Beams, Table	273		
Twelve, Proper, Beams, Table	274		
Twelve, Proper, Beams, Table	275		
Twelve, Proper, Beams, Table	276		
Twelve, Proper, Beams, Table	277		
Twelve, Proper, Beams, Table	278		
Twelve, Proper, Beams, Table	279		
Twelve, Proper, Beams, Table	280		
Twelve, Proper, Beams, Table	281		
Twelve, Proper, Beams, Table	282		
Twelve, Proper, Beams, Table	283		
Twelve, Proper, Beams, Table	284		
Twelve, Proper, Beams, Table	285		
Twelve, Proper, Beams, Table	286		
Twelve, Proper, Beams, Table	287		
Twelve, Proper, Beams, Table	288		
Twelve, Proper, Beams, Table	289		
Twelve, Proper, Beams, Table	290		
Twelve, Proper, Beams, Table	291		
Twelve, Proper, Beams, Table	292		
Twelve, Proper, Beams, Table	293		
Twelve, Proper, Beams, Table	294		
Twelve, Proper, Beams, Table	295		
Twelve, Proper, Beams, Table	296		
Twelve, Proper, Beams, Table	297		
Twelve, Proper, Beams, Table	298		
Twelve, Proper, Beams, Table	299		
Twelve, Proper, Beams, Table	300		
Twelve, Proper, Beams, Table	301		
Twelve, Proper, Beams, Table	302		
Twelve, Proper, Beams, Table	303		
Twelve, Proper, Beams, Table	304		
Twelve, Proper, Beams, Table	305		
Twelve, Proper, Beams, Table	306		
Twelve, Proper, Beams, Table	307		
Twelve, Proper, Beams, Table	308		
Twelve, Proper, Beams, Table	309		
Twelve, Proper, Beams, Table	310		
Twelve, Proper, Beams, Table	311		
Twelve, Proper, Beams, Table	312		
Twelve, Proper, Beams, Table	313		
Twelve, Proper, Beams, Table	314		
Twelve, Proper, Beams, Table	315		
Twelve, Proper, Beams, Table	316		
Twelve, Proper, Beams, Table	317		
Twelve, Proper, Beams, Table	318		
Twelve, Proper, Beams, Table	319		
Twelve, Proper, Beams, Table	320		
Twelve, Proper, Beams, Table	321		
Twelve, Proper, Beams, Table	322		
Twelve, Proper, Beams, Table	323		
Twelve, Proper, Beams, Table	324		
Twelve, Proper, Beams, Table	325		
Twelve, Proper, Beams, Table	326		
Twelve, Proper, Beams, Table	327		
Twelve, Proper, Beams, Table	328		
Twelve, Proper, Beams, Table	329		
Twelve, Proper, Beams, Table	330		
Twelve, Proper, Beams, Table	331		
Twelve, Proper, Beams, Table	332		
Twelve, Proper, Beams, Table	333		
Twelve, Proper, Beams, Table	334		
Twelve, Proper, Beams, Table	335		
Twelve, Proper, Beams, Table	336		
Twelve, Proper, Beams, Table	337		
Twelve, Proper, Beams, Table	338		
Twelve, Proper, Beams, Table	339		
Twelve, Proper, Beams, Table	340		
Twelve, Proper, Beams, Table	341		
Twelve, Proper, Beams, Table	342		
Twelve, Proper, Beams, Table	343		
Twelve, Proper, Beams, Table	344		
Twelve, Proper, Beams, Table	345		
Twelve, Proper, Beams, Table	346		
Twelve, Proper, Beams, Table	347		
Twelve, Proper, Beams, Table	348		
Twelve, Proper, Beams, Table	349		
Twelve, Proper, Beams, Table	350		
Twelve, Proper, Beams, Table	351		
Twelve, Proper, Beams, Table	352		
Twelve, Proper, Beams, Table	353		
Twelve, Proper, Beams, Table	354		
Twelve, Proper, Beams, Table	355		
Twelve, Proper, Beams, Table	356		
Twelve, Proper, Beams, Table	357		
Twelve, Proper, Beams, Table	358		
Twelve, Proper, Beams, Table	359		
Twelve, Proper, Beams, Table	360		
Twelve, Proper, Beams, Table	361		
Twelve, Proper, Beams, Table	362		
Twelve, Proper, Beams, Table	363		
Twelve, Proper, Beams, Table	364		
Twelve, Proper, Beams, Table	365		
Twelve, Proper, Beams, Table	366		
Twelve, Proper, Beams, Table	367		
Twelve, Proper, Beams, Table	368		
Twelve, Proper, Beams, Table	369		
Twelve, Proper, Beams, Table	370		
Twelve, Proper, Beams, Table	371		
Twelve, Proper, Beams, Table	372		
Twelve, Proper, Beams, Table	373		
Twelve, Proper, Beams, Table	374		
Twelve, Proper, Beams, Table	375		
Twelve, Proper, Beams, Table	376		
Twelve, Proper, Beams, Table	377		
Twelve, Proper, Beams, Table	378		
Twelve, Proper, Beams, Table	379		
Twelve, Proper, Beams, Table	380		
Twelve, Proper, Beams, Table	381		
Twelve, Proper, Beams, Table	382		
Twelve, Proper, Beams, Table	383		
Twelve, Proper, Beams, Table	384		
Twelve, Proper, Beams, Table	385		
Twelve, Proper, Beams, Table	386		
Twelve, Proper, Beams, Table	387		
Twelve, Proper, Beams, Table	388		
Twelve, Proper, Beams, Table	389		
Twelve, Proper, Beams, Table	390		
Twelve, Proper, Beams, Table	391		
Twelve, Proper, Beams, Table	392		
Twelve, Proper, Beams, Table	393		
Twelve, Proper, Beams, Table	394		
Twelve, Proper, Beams, Table	395		
Twelve, Proper, Beams, Table	396		
Twelve, Proper, Beams, Table	397		
Twelve, Proper, Beams, Table	398		
Twelve, Proper, Beams, Table	399		
Twelve, Proper, Beams, Table	400		

	PAGE		PAGE
Windows and Stairs, How Arranged.....	42	Winding Stairs, Handrailing, Balusters Under Scroll.....	310
Windows, Stiles, Allowance for..	319	Winding Stairs, Handrailing, Centres in Square.....	308
Windows, Width Uniform, Height Varying.....	319	Winding Stairs, Handrailing, Face Mould for Scroll.....	311
Winding Stairs, Balusters in Round Rail.....	313	Winding Stairs, Handrailing, Falling Mould.....	310
Winding Stairs, Bevels in Splayed Work.....	314	Winding Stairs, Handrailing, General Considerations.....	258
Winding Stairs, Blocking Out Rail.....	301	Winding Stairs, Handrailing, Scrolls for.....	308
Winding Stairs, Butt Joint, Position of.....	303	Winding Stairs, Handrailing, Scroll Over Curtail Step.....	309
Winding Stairs, Butt Joint.....	307	Winding Stairs, Handrailing, Scroll for Curtail Step.....	310
Winding Stairs, Diagram of, Explained.....	263	Winding Stairs, Handrailing, Scrolls at Newel.....	309
Winding Stairs, Face Mould for.....	297, 293	Winding Stairs, Illustrations by Planes.....	261
Winding Stairs, Face Mould, Accuracy of.....	295	Winding Stairs, Moulds for Quarter Circle.....	255
Winding Stairs, Face Mould, Application of.....	297	Winding Stairs, Newel Cap, Form of.....	312
Winding Stairs, Face Mould, Curves Elliptical.....	301	Winding Stairs Objectionable....	240
Winding Stairs, Face Mould, Drawing.....	296	Winding Stairs, Pitch Board, To Obtain.....	252
Winding Stairs, Face Mould, Round Rail.....	303	Winding Stairs, Rise and Tread, To Obtain.....	251
Winding Stairs, Face Mould, Sliding of.....	299	Winding Stairs, String, To Obtain.	252
Winding Stairs, Face Mould for Twist.....	291	Winding Stairs, Timbers, Position of.....	252
Winding Stairs, Flyers and Winders.....	251	Wood, Destruction by Fire.....	37
Winding Stairs, Front String, Grade of.....	253	Wooden Beams, Use Limited.....	154
Winding Stairs, Handrailing.....	256, 289	Woods, Hydraulic Method of Testing.....	80
		Wreath for Round Rail, Platform Stairs.....	267







DEC. 12 1921

